

Altivar Machine ATV340

Variable Speed Drives for Asynchronous and Synchronous Motors

Programming Manual

09/2016



The information provided in this documentation contains general descriptions and/or technical characteristics of the performance of the products contained herein. This documentation is not intended as a substitute for and is not to be used for determining suitability or reliability of these products for specific user applications. It is the duty of any such user or integrator to perform the appropriate and complete risk analysis, evaluation and testing of the products with respect to the relevant specific application or use thereof. Neither Schneider Electric nor any of its affiliates or subsidiaries shall be responsible or liable for misuse of the information contained herein. If you have any suggestions for improvements or amendments or have found errors in this publication, please notify us.

No part of this document may be reproduced in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopying, without express written permission of Schneider Electric.

All pertinent state, regional, and local safety regulations must be observed when installing and using this product. For reasons of safety and to help ensure compliance with documented system data, only the manufacturer should perform repairs to components.

When devices are used for applications with technical safety requirements, the relevant instructions must be followed.

Failure to use Schneider Electric software or approved software with our hardware products may result in injury, harm, or improper operating results.

Failure to observe this information can result in injury or equipment damage.

© 2016 Schneider Electric. All Rights Reserved.

Table of Contents



Safety Information.....	13
About the Book.....	17
Part I Introduction.....	21
Chapter 1 Setup	23
Initial Steps	24
Steps for Setting-Up the Drive.....	26
Chapter 2 Overview.....	27
Factory Configuration	28
Application Functions	30
Display Terminals	32
Product LEDs	37
Structure of the Parameter Table	40
Finding a Parameter in This Document.....	41
Chapter 3 Cyber Security	43
Cyber Security.....	43
Part II Programming	45
Chapter 4 [Simply start] S Y S -	47
[Simply start] S ,P - Menu	48
[My menu] P Y P n - Menu.....	55
[Modified parameters] L P d - Menu	55
Chapter 5 [Dashboard] d S H -	57
[System] d S E - Menu.....	58
[Dashboard] d S H - Menu	59
[kWh Counters] K W C - menu.....	60
[Dashboard] d S H - Menu	62
Chapter 6 [Diagnostics] d ,R -	63
6.1 [Diag. data]	64
[Diag. data] d d E - Menu	65
[Service message] S E r - Menu	71
[Other State] S S E - Menu	71
[Diagnostics] d R u - Menu	72
[Identification] o ,d - Menu.....	72
6.2 [Error history] P F H - Menu	73
[Error history] P F H - Menu	73
6.3 [Warnings] R L r - Menu	76
[Actual warnings] R L r d - Menu	77
[Warning group 1 definition] R 1 C - Menu	77
[Warning group 2 definition] R 2 C - Menu	77
[Warning group 3 definition] R 3 C - Menu	77
[Warning group 4 definition] R 4 C - Menu	78
[Warning group 5 definition] R 5 C - Menu	78
[Warnings] R L r - Menu	78
Chapter 7 [Display] P o n -	79
7.1 [Energy parameters]	80
[Elec Ener Input Counter] E L , - Menu	81
[Elec Ener Output Counter] E L o - Menu	83
[Mechanical energy] P E C - Menu	85
[Energy saving] E S R - Menu	86
7.2 [Application parameters]	87
[Application parameters] R P r - Menu	87

7.3	[M/S parameters]	88
	[M/S Local Display] $\text{P } 5 \text{ o}$ - Menu	89
	[M/S System Display] $\text{P } 5 \text{ r}$ - Menu	91
7.4	[Motor parameters]	93
	[Motor parameters] $\text{P } \Pi \text{ o}$ - Menu	93
7.5	[Drive parameters]	95
	[Drive parameters] $\text{P } P \text{ , }$ - Menu	95
7.6	[Thermal monitoring]	99
	[Thermal Monitoring] $E \text{ P } \Pi$ - Menu	99
7.7	[PID display]	100
	[PID display] $P \text{ , } L$ - Menu	100
7.8	[Counter management]	101
	[Counter Management] $E \text{ L } E$ - Menu	101
7.9	[Other state]	103
	[Other state] $S \text{ S } E$ - Menu	103
7.10	[I/O map]	104
	[Digital Input Map] $L \text{ , } R$ - Menu	105
	[AI1] $R \text{ , } 1C$ - Menu	106
	[AI2] $R \text{ , } 2C$ - Menu	108
	[AI3] $R \text{ , } 3C$ - Menu	109
	[AI4] $R \text{ , } 4C$ - Menu	110
	[AI5] $R \text{ , } 5C$ - Menu	111
	[Analog inputs image] $R \text{ , } R$ - Menu	112
	[Digital output map] $L \text{ o } R$ - Menu	112
	[AQ1] $R \text{ o } 1C$ - Menu	113
	[AQ2] $R \text{ o } 2C$ - Menu	117
	[PTO Frequency] $P \text{ E } \text{ o } C$ - Menu	119
	[DI7 frequency measured] $P \text{ F } C \text{ 7}$ - Menu	121
	[DI8 frequency measured] $P \text{ F } C \text{ 8}$ - Menu	123
	[PTI Freq Measured] $P \text{ E } , F$ - Menu	124
7.11	[Communication map]	126
	[Communication map] $C \text{ } \Pi \Pi$ - Menu	127
	[Modbus network diag] $\text{P } n \text{ d}$ - Menu	131
	[Com. scanner input map] $, 5R$ - Menu	132
	[Com scan output map] $\text{o } 5R$ - Menu	133
	[Modbus HMI Diag] $\text{P } d \text{ H}$ - Menu	134
	[Ethernet Emb Diag] $\text{P } P \text{ E}$ - Menu	135
	[DeviceNet Diag] $d \text{ V } n$ - Menu	136
	[Profibus Diag] $P \text{ r } b$ - Menu	137
	[PROFINET Diag] $P \text{ r } n$ - Menu	139
	[EtherCAT Module Diag] $E \text{ E } d$ - Menu	141
	[Command word image] $C \text{ W },$ - Menu	141
	[Freq. ref. word map] $r \text{ W },$ - Menu	142
	[CANopen map] $C \text{ n } \Pi$ - Menu	143
	[PDO1 image] $P \text{ o } I$ - Menu	144
	[PDO2 image] $P \text{ o } 2$ - Menu	146
	[PDO3 image] $P \text{ o } 3$ - Menu	147
	[CANopen map] $C \text{ n } \Pi$ - Menu	148
7.12	[Data logging]	149
	[Distributed logging] $d \text{ L } \text{ o}$ - Menu	150
	[Log dstrb prm select] $L \text{ d } P$ - Menu	151
	[Distributed logging] $d \text{ L } \text{ o}$ - Menu	152

Chapter 8	[Complete settings] <i>C 5 E</i> -	153
8.1	[Motor parameters] <i>P P R</i> - Menu	155
	[Motor parameters] <i>P P R</i> - Menu	156
	[Data] <i>P E d</i> - Menu	158
	[Angle test setting] <i>A S R</i> - Menu	168
	[Motor tune] <i>P E u</i> - Menu	171
	[Motor monitoring] <i>P o P</i> - Menu	178
	[Thermal monitoring] <i>E P P</i> - Menu	179
	[Motor monitoring] <i>P o P</i> - Menu	188
	[Motor control] <i>d r C</i> - Menu	191
	[Fluxing by DI] <i>F L</i> , - Menu	196
	[Spd Loop Optimization] <i>P C L</i> - Menu	199
	[Motor control] <i>d r C</i> - Menu	209
	[Switching frequency] <i>S W F</i> - Menu	211
8.2	[Define system units]	213
	[Define system units] <i>S u C</i> - Menu	213
8.3	[Command and Reference] <i>C r P</i> - Menu	215
	[Command and Reference] <i>C r P</i> - Menu	215
8.4	[Master/Slave]	229
	MultiDrive Link Mechanism	230
	[M/S System Architecture] <i>P S R</i> - Menu	232
	[Speed Ref AI1 Config.] <i>P S r 1</i> - Menu	235
	[Speed Ref AI2 Config.] <i>P S r 2</i> - Menu	236
	[Speed Ref AI3 Config.] <i>P S r 3</i> - Menu	237
	[Speed Ref AI4 Config.] <i>P S r 4</i> - Menu	238
	[Speed Ref AI5 Config.] <i>P S r 5</i> - Menu	239
	[M/S System Architecture] <i>P S R</i> - Menu	240
	[Torque Ref AI1 Config.] <i>P E r 1</i> - Menu	241
	[Torque Ref AI2 Config.] <i>P E r 2</i> - Menu	242
	[Torque Ref AI3 Config.] <i>P E r 3</i> - Menu	243
	[Torque Ref AI4 Config.] <i>P E r 4</i> - Menu	244
	[Torque Ref AI5 Config.] <i>P E r 5</i> - Menu	245
	[M/S System Architecture] <i>P S R</i> - Menu	246
	[Speed Ref AQ1 Config.] <i>P S P 1</i> - Menu	247
	[Speed Ref AQ2 Config.] <i>P S P 2</i> - Menu	248
	[M/S System Architecture] <i>P S R</i> - Menu	249
	[Torque Ref AQ1 Config.] <i>P E P 1</i> - Menu	250
	[Torque Ref AQ2 Config.] <i>P E P 2</i> - Menu	251
	[M/S System Architecture] <i>P S R</i> - Menu	252
	[M/S Control] <i>P S E</i> - Menu	254
	[M/S Torque Control] <i>P S Q</i> - Menu	257
	[M/S Control] <i>P S E</i> - Menu	261
	[M/S Filters] <i>P S F</i> - Menu	262
	[Load Sharing M/S] <i>P S b</i> - Menu	266
	[M/S Control] <i>P S E</i> - Menu	269
8.5	[Hoisting Functions]	271
	[Brake logic control] <i>b L C</i> - Menu	272
	[High speed hoisting] <i>H S H</i> - Menu	285
	[Load Sharing] <i>L d S</i> - Menu	291
	[Rope Slack Handling] <i>S d r</i> - Menu	294
8.6	[Hoisting monitoring]	295
	[Dynamic load detect.] <i>d L d</i> - Menu	295

8.7	[Machine Functions]	297
	[Load Sharing] <i>L d S</i> - Menu	298
	[Backlash compensation] <i>b S P</i> - Menu	299
	[Positioning by sensors] <i>L P o</i> - Menu	308
	[Brake logic control] <i>b L C</i> - Menu	308
	[Torque control] <i>E o r</i> - Menu	308
8.8	[Generic functions] - [Speed limits]	309
	[Speed limits] <i>S L P</i> - Menu	309
8.9	[Generic functions] - [Ramp]	312
	[Ramp] <i>r A P P</i> - Menu	312
8.10	[Generic functions] - [Ramp switching]	315
	[Ramp switching] <i>r P E</i> - Menu	315
8.11	[Generic functions] - [Stop configuration]	317
	[Stop configuration] <i>S E E</i> - Menu	317
8.12	[Generic functions] - [Auto DC injection]	323
	[Auto DC injection] <i>A d C</i> - Menu	323
8.13	[Generic functions] - [Ref. operations]	326
	[Ref. operations] <i>a R i</i> - Menu	326
8.14	[Generic functions] - [Preset speeds]	328
	[Preset speeds] <i>P S S</i> - Menu	328
8.15	[Generic functions] - [+/- speed]	332
	[+/- speed] <i>u P d</i> - Menu	332
8.16	[Generic functions] - [+/- speed around ref]	335
	[+/- speed around ref] <i>S r E</i> - Menu	335
8.17	[Generic functions] - [Jump frequency]	338
	[Jump frequency] <i>J u F</i> - Menu	338
8.18	[Generic functions] - [PID controller]	339
	[PID controller] <i>P , d</i> - Overview	340
	[Feedback] <i>F d b</i> - Menu	343
	[PID Reference] <i>r F</i> - Menu	348
	[PID preset references] <i>P r ,</i> - Menu	351
	[Reference frequency] <i>r F</i> - Menu	353
	[Settings] <i>S E</i> - Menu	354
8.19	[Generic functions] - [Threshold reached]	357
	[Threshold reached] <i>E H r E</i> - Menu	357
8.20	[Generic functions] - [Mains contactor command]	360
	[Mains contactor command] <i>L L C</i> - Menu	360
8.21	[Generic functions] - [Reverse disable]	362
	[Reverse disable] <i>r E , n</i> - Menu	362
8.22	[Generic functions] - [Torque limitation]	363
	[Torque limitation] <i>E o L</i> - Menu	363
8.23	[Generic functions] - [2nd current limit.]	367
	[2nd current limit.] <i>L L ,</i> - Menu	367
8.24	[Generic functions] - [Jog]	369
	[Jog] <i>J o G</i> - Menu	369
8.25	[Generic functions] - [High Speed Switching]	371
	[High Speed Switching] <i>E H S</i> - Menu	371
8.26	[Generic functions] - [Memo reference frequency]	373
	[Memo reference frequency] <i>S P P</i> - Menu	373
8.27	[Generic functions] - [Brake logic control]	374
	[Brake logic control] <i>b L C</i> - Menu	374
8.28	[Generic functions] - [Limit switches]	375
	[Limit switches] <i>L S E</i> - Menu	375
8.29	[Generic functions] - [Positioning by sensors]	377
	[Positioning by sensors] <i>L P o</i>	377

8.30	[Generic functions] - [Torque control]	385
	[Torque control] <i>T</i> <i>o</i> <i>r</i> - Menu	385
8.31	[Generic functions] - [Parameters switching]	392
	[Parameters switching] <i>P</i> <i>L</i> <i>P</i> - Menu	393
	[Set 1] <i>P</i> <i>S</i> <i>I</i> - Menu	397
	[Set 2] <i>P</i> <i>S</i> <i>Z</i> - Menu	397
	[Set 3] <i>P</i> <i>S</i> <i>E</i> - Menu	397
8.32	[Generic functions] - [Stop after speed timeout]	398
	[Stop after speed timeout] <i>P</i> <i>r</i> <i>S</i> <i>P</i> - Menu	398
8.33	[Generic functions] - [DC bus supply]	400
	[DC bus supply] <i>d</i> <i>C</i> <i>a</i> - Menu	400
8.34	[Generic functions] - [Multimotors config]	402
	[Multimotors config] <i>M</i> <i>M</i> <i>C</i> - Menu	402
8.35	[Generic functions] - [24 V Supply Output]	406
	[24 V Supply Output] <i>S</i> <i>P</i> <i>4</i> <i>V</i> - Menu	406
8.36	[Generic monitoring]	407
	[Process underload] <i>u</i> <i>L</i> <i>d</i> - Menu	408
	[Process overload] <i>o</i> <i>L</i> <i>d</i> - Menu	410
	[Stall monitoring] <i>S</i> <i>t</i> <i>P</i> <i>r</i> - Menu	412
	[Thermal monitoring] <i>E</i> <i>P</i> <i>P</i> - Menu	413
	[Frequency meter] <i>F</i> <i>q</i> <i>F</i> - Menu	414
8.37	[Input/Output] - [I/O assignment]	417
	[DI1 assignment] <i>L</i> <i>1</i> <i>R</i> - Menu	418
	[DI2 assignment] <i>L</i> <i>2</i> <i>R</i> - Menu	420
	[DI3 assignment] <i>L</i> <i>3</i> <i>R</i> - Menu	420
	[DI4 assignment] <i>L</i> <i>4</i> <i>R</i> - Menu	420
	[DI5 assignment] <i>L</i> <i>5</i> <i>R</i> - Menu	421
	[DI6 assignment] <i>L</i> <i>6</i> <i>R</i> - Menu	421
	[DI7 assignment] <i>L</i> <i>7</i> <i>R</i> - Menu	421
	[DI8 assignment] <i>L</i> <i>8</i> <i>R</i> - Menu	422
	[DI11 assignment] <i>L</i> <i>11</i> <i>R</i> - Menu	422
	[DI12 assignment] <i>L</i> <i>12</i> <i>R</i> - Menu	422
	[DI13 assignment] <i>L</i> <i>13</i> <i>R</i> - Menu	423
	[DI14 assignment] <i>L</i> <i>14</i> <i>R</i> - Menu	423
	[DI15 assignment] <i>L</i> <i>15</i> <i>R</i> - Menu	423
	[DI16 assignment] <i>L</i> <i>16</i> <i>R</i> - Menu	424
	[DI7 Pulse Input Assign] <i>P</i> <i>,7</i> <i>R</i> - Menu	425
	[DI8 Pulse Input Assign] <i>P</i> <i>,8</i> <i>R</i> - Menu	426
	[RP assignment] <i>P</i> <i>,R</i> - Menu	426
	[AI1 assignment] <i>A</i> <i>,1</i> <i>R</i> - Menu	427
	[AI2 assignment] <i>A</i> <i>,2</i> <i>R</i> - Menu	428
	[AI3 assignment] <i>A</i> <i>,3</i> <i>R</i> - Menu	428
	[AI4 assignment] <i>A</i> <i>,4</i> <i>R</i> - Menu	428
	[AI5 assignment] <i>A</i> <i>,5</i> <i>R</i> - Menu	429
	[AIV1 assignment] <i>A</i> <i>V</i> <i>,1</i> <i>R</i> - Menu	429
8.38	[Input/Output] - [DI/DQ]	430
	[DI1 Configuration] <i>d</i> <i>,1</i> - Menu	431
	[DI2 Configuration] <i>d</i> <i>,2</i> - Menu	433
	[DI3 Configuration] <i>d</i> <i>,3</i> - Menu	433
	[DI4 Configuration] <i>d</i> <i>,4</i> - Menu	434
	[DI5 Configuration] <i>d</i> <i>,5</i> - Menu	434
	[DI6 Configuration] <i>d</i> <i>,6</i> - Menu	435
	[DI7 Configuration] <i>d</i> <i>,7</i> - Menu	435
	[DI8 Configuration] <i>d</i> <i>,8</i> - Menu	436
	[DI11 Configuration] <i>d</i> <i>,11</i> - Menu	436

[DI12 Configuration]	<i>d</i>	/2 - Menu	437
[DI13 Configuration]	<i>d</i>	/3 - Menu	437
[DI14 Configuration]	<i>d</i>	/4 - Menu	438
[DI15 Configuration]	<i>d</i>	/5 - Menu	438
[DI16 Configuration]	<i>d</i>	/6 - Menu	439
[DI7 Pulse Config]	<i>P R</i>	/7 - Menu	440
[DI8 Pulse Config]	<i>P R</i>	/8 - Menu	442
[Pulse Input]	<i>P E</i>	/ - Menu	443
[PTO configuration]	<i>P E</i>	/o - Menu	445
[PTO configuration]	<i>P E</i>	/oo - Menu	447
[DQ1 Configuration]	<i>d o</i>	/1 - Menu	449
[DQ2 Configuration]	<i>d o</i>	/2 - Menu	450
[DQ11 Configuration]	<i>d o</i>	/11 - Menu	451
[DQ12 Configuration]	<i>d o</i>	/12 - Menu	452
8.39 [Input/Output] - [Analog I/O]			453
[AI1 configuration]	<i>A</i>	/1 - Menu	454
[AI2 configuration]	<i>A</i>	/2 - Menu	457
[AI3 configuration]	<i>A</i>	/3 - Menu	458
[AI4 configuration]	<i>A</i>	/4 - Menu	459
[AI5 configuration]	<i>A</i>	/5 - Menu	461
[AQ1 configuration]	<i>A</i>	/o1 - Menu	462
[AQ2 configuration]	<i>A</i>	/o2 - Menu	467
[Virtual AI1]	<i>A</i>	/u1 - Menu	469
8.40 [Input/Output] - [Relay]			470
[R1 configuration]	<i>r</i>	/1 - Menu	471
[R2 configuration]	<i>r</i>	/2 - Menu	474
[R3 configuration]	<i>r</i>	/3 - Menu	475
[R4 configuration]	<i>r</i>	/4 - Menu	475
[R5 configuration]	<i>r</i>	/5 - Menu	476
[R6 configuration]	<i>r</i>	/6 - Menu	476
[Input/Output]	<i>i</i>	/o - Menu	477
8.41 [Encoder configuration]			479
[Encoder configuration]	<i>E</i>	/n - Menu	479
8.42 [Embedded Encoder]			485
[Embedded Encoder]	<i>E</i>	/E - Menu	485
8.43 [Error/Warning handling]			488
[Auto fault reset]	<i>R E</i>	/r - Menu	489
[Fault reset]	<i>r</i>	/5 E - Menu	490
[Catch on the fly]	<i>F L</i>	/r - Menu	492
[Error detection disable]	<i>i</i>	/n H - Menu	494
[External error]	<i>E</i>	/F - Menu	496
[Output phase loss]	<i>o</i>	/PL - Menu	498
[Input phase loss]	<i>i</i>	/PL - Menu	499
[4-20mA loss]	<i>L</i>	/FL - Menu	500
[Fallback speed]	<i>L</i>	/FF - Menu	502
[Fieldbus monitoring]	<i>C</i>	/LL - Menu	503
[Embedded Modbus TCP]	<i>E</i>	/PE C - Menu	504
[Communication module]	<i>C</i>	/n o - Menu	505
[Undervoltage handling]	<i>u</i>	/5 b - Menu	508
[Ground Fault]	<i>G</i>	/r FL - Menu	510
[Motor thermal monit]	<i>E</i>	/H E - Menu	511
[Encoder monitoring]	<i>S</i>	/dd - Menu	512
[Braking Resistor monit]	<i>b</i>	/r P - Menu	513
[Torque or i lim. detect]	<i>E</i>	/d - Menu	514
[Drive overload monit]	<i>o</i>	/b r - Menu	515

[Warn grp 1 definition]	<i>R 1 C</i>	- Menu	517
[Warn grp 2 definition]	<i>R 2 C</i>	- Menu	519
[Warn grp 3 definition]	<i>R 3 C</i>	- Menu	519
[Warn grp 4 definition]	<i>R 4 C</i>	- Menu	519
[Warn grp 5 definition]	<i>R 5 C</i>	- Menu	519
8.44	[Maintenance]	520
	[Diagnostics]	<i>d R u</i> - Menu	521
	[Customer event 1]	<i>C E 1</i> - Menu	522
	[Customer event 2]	<i>C E 2</i> - Menu	523
	[Customer event 3]	<i>C E 3</i> - Menu	523
	[Customer event 4]	<i>C E 4</i> - Menu	524
	[Customer event 5]	<i>C E 5</i> - Menu	524
	[Customer events]	<i>C u E V</i> - Menu	525
	[Fan management]	<i>F R P R</i> - Menu	526
	[Maintenance]	<i>C S P R</i> - Menu	527
Chapter 9	[Communication]	<i>C o P</i> -	529
	[Modbus Fieldbus]	<i>P d I</i> - Menu	530
	[Com. scanner input]	<i>, C S</i> - Menu	532
	[Com. scanner output]	<i>o C S</i> - Menu	533
	[Modbus HMI]	<i>P d 2</i> - Menu	534
	[Embd Eth Config]	<i>E E E</i> - Menu	535
	[Fast Device Replacement]	<i>F d r</i> - Menu	536
	[CANopen]	<i>C n o</i> - Menu	538
	[DeviceNet]	<i>d n C</i> - Menu	538
	[Profibus]	<i>P b C</i> - Menu	538
	[Profinet]	<i>P n C</i> - Menu	538
	[EtherCAT Module]	<i>E E C</i> - Menu	539
Chapter 10	[File management]	<i>F P E</i> -	541
	[Transfer config file]	<i>E L F</i> - Menu	542
	[Factory settings]	<i>F C S</i> - Menu	542
	[Parameter group list]	<i>F r Y</i> - Menu	543
	[Factory settings]	<i>F C S</i> - Menu	544
	[Firmware update diag]	<i>F W u d</i> - Menu	545
	[Identification]	<i>o , d</i> - Menu	547
	[Package version]	<i>P F V</i> - Menu	547
	[Firmware update]	<i>F W u P</i> - Menu	548
Chapter 11	[My preferences]	<i>P Y P</i> -	549
11.1	[Language]	550
	[Language]	<i>L n G</i> - Menu	550
11.2	[Password]	551
	[Password]	<i>C o d</i> - Menu	551
11.3	[Parameter access]	553
	[Restricted channels]	<i>P C d</i> - Menu	554
	[Restricted param]	<i>P P R</i> - Menu	554
	[Visibility]	<i>V , S</i> - Menu	555
11.4	[Customization]	556
	[My menu config.]	<i>P Y C</i> - Menu	557
	[Display screen type]	<i>P S C</i> - Menu	557
	[Param. Bar Select]	<i>P b S</i> - Menu	558
	[Customer parameters]	<i>C Y P</i> - Menu	558
	[Service message]	<i>S E r</i> - Menu	559
11.5	[Date & Time settings]	560
	[Date/time settings]	<i>r E C</i> - Menu	560
11.6	[Access level]	561
	[Access level]	<i>L R C</i> - Menu	561

11.7	[Webserver]	562
	[Webserver] <i>W b S</i> - Menu	562
11.8	[Functions key mgnt]	563
	[Functions key mgnt] <i>F K G</i> - Menu	563
11.9	[LCD settings]	564
	[LCD settings] <i>L n L</i> - Menu	564
11.10	[QR code]	565
	[QR code] <i>Q r C</i> - Menu	565
11.11	[QR code] - [My link 1]	566
	[My link 1] <i>P Y L 1</i> - Menu	566
11.12	[QR code] - [My link 2]	567
	[My link 2] <i>P Y L 2</i> - Menu	567
11.13	[QR code] - [My link 3]	568
	[My link 3] <i>P Y L 3</i> - Menu	568
11.14	[QR code] - [My link 4]	569
	[My link 4] <i>P Y L 4</i> - Menu	569
11.15	[Pairing password]	570
	[Pairing password] <i>PP</i>	570
Part III	Maintenance and diagnostics.	571
Chapter 12	Maintenance.	573
	Maintenance.	573
Chapter 13	Diagnostics and Troubleshooting.	575
13.1	Warning Codes	576
	Warning Codes	576
13.2	Error Codes	578
	Overview	581
	[Load slipping] <i>R n F</i>	582
	[Angle error] <i>R S F</i>	582
	[Brake Control] <i>b L F</i>	583
	[Brake Resistor ovid] <i>b o F</i>	583
	[Brake Feedback] <i>b r F</i>	584
	[Backlash Error] <i>b S Q F</i>	584
	[DB unit sh. circuit] <i>b u F</i>	585
	[DB unit op. circuit] <i>b u F o</i>	585
	[Circuit Breaker Error] <i>C b F</i>	586
	[Incorrect Configuration] <i>C F F</i>	586
	[Invalid Configuration] <i>C F</i>	587
	[Conf Transfer Error] <i>C F , 2</i>	587
	[Empty Configuration] <i>C F , 4</i>	588
	[Fieldbus Com Interrupt] <i>C n F</i>	588
	[CANopen Com Interrupt] <i>C o F</i>	589
	[Precharge Capacitor] <i>C r F</i>	589
	[Channel Switch Error] <i>C S F</i>	590
	[Dynamic Load Error] <i>d L F</i>	590
	[Encoder Coupling] <i>E C F</i>	591
	[EEPROM Control] <i>E E F I</i>	591
	[EEPROM Power] <i>E E F 2</i>	592
	[Encoder] <i>E n F</i>	592
	[External Error] <i>E P F I</i>	593
	[Fieldbus Error] <i>E P F 2</i>	593
	[Embd Eth Com Interrupt] <i>E t H F</i>	594
	[Firmware Update Error] <i>F W E r</i>	594
	[Boards Compatibility] <i>H C F</i>	595
	[Input Overheating] <i>I H F</i>	595
	[Internal Link Error] <i>I L F</i>	596

[Internal Error 0] <i>i n F D</i>	596
[Internal Error 1] <i>i n F I</i>	597
[Internal Error 2] <i>i n F 2</i>	597
[Internal Error 3] <i>i n F 3</i>	598
[Internal Error 4] <i>i n F 4</i>	598
[Internal Error 6] <i>i n F 6</i>	599
[Internal Error 7] <i>i n F 7</i>	599
[Internal Error 8] <i>i n F 8</i>	600
[Internal Error 9] <i>i n F 9</i>	600
[Internal Error 10] <i>i n F A</i>	601
[Internal Error 11] <i>i n F b</i>	601
[Internal Error 12] <i>i n F C</i>	602
[Internal Error 13] <i>i n F d</i>	602
[Internal Error 14] <i>i n F E</i>	603
[Internal Error 15] <i>i n F F</i>	603
[Internal Error 16] <i>i n F G</i>	604
[Internal Error 17] <i>i n F H</i>	604
[Internal Error 18] <i>i n F I</i>	605
[Internal Error 19] <i>i n F J</i>	605
[Internal Error 20] <i>i n F K</i>	606
[Internal Error 21] <i>i n F L</i>	606
[Internal Error 22] <i>i n F M</i>	607
[Internal Error 25] <i>i n F P</i>	607
[Internal Error 27] <i>i n F r</i>	608
[Input Contactor] <i>L C F</i>	608
[AI1 4-20mA loss] <i>L F F I</i>	609
[AI3 4-20mA loss] <i>L F F 3</i>	609
[AI4 4-20mA loss] <i>L F F 4</i>	610
[AI5 4-20mA loss] <i>L F F 5</i>	610
[DC Bus Overvoltage] <i>o b F</i>	611
[Overcurrent] <i>o C F</i>	611
[Drive Overheating] <i>o H F</i>	612
[Process Overload] <i>o L C</i>	612
[Motor Overload] <i>o L F</i>	613
[Single Output Phase Loss] <i>o P F I</i>	613
[Output Phase Loss] <i>o P F 2</i>	614
[Supply Mains Overvoltage] <i>o S F</i>	614
[Program Loading Error] <i>P G L F</i>	615
[Program Running Error] <i>P G r F</i>	615
[Input phase loss] <i>P H F</i>	616
[Rotation Angle Monit] <i>r A d F</i>	616
[Safety Function Error] <i>S R F F</i>	617
[Motor short circuit] <i>S C F I</i>	617
[Ground Short Circuit] <i>S C F 3</i>	618
[IGBT Short Circuit] <i>S C F 4</i>	618
[Motor Short Circuit] <i>S C F 5</i>	619
[Modbus Com Interruption] <i>S L F I</i>	619
[PC Com Interruption] <i>S L F 2</i>	620
[HMI Com Interruption] <i>S L F 3</i>	620
[Motor Overspeed] <i>S o F</i>	621
[Encoder Feedback Loss] <i>S P F</i>	621
[Torque timeout] <i>S r F</i>	622
[Torque Limitation Error] <i>S S F</i>	622
[Motor Stall Error] <i>S t F</i>	623
[AI1 Thermal Sensor Error] <i>E I C F</i>	623

[AI3 Thermal Sensor Error] <i>E 3 C F</i>	624
[AI4 Thermal Sensor Error] <i>E 4 C F</i>	624
[AI5 Thermal Sensor Error] <i>E 5 C F</i>	625
[Encoder Th Sensor Error] <i>E E C F</i>	625
[AI1 Th Detected Error] <i>E H 1 F</i>	626
[AI3 Th Detected Error] <i>E H 3 F</i>	626
[AI4 Th Detected Error] <i>E H 4 F</i>	627
[AI5 Th Detected Error] <i>E H 5 F</i>	627
[Encoder Th Detected Error] <i>E H E F</i>	628
[IGBT Overheating] <i>E J F</i>	628
[Drive Overload] <i>E L o F</i>	629
[Autotuning Error] <i>E n F</i>	629
[Process Underload] <i>u L F</i>	630
[Supply Mains UnderV] <i>u S F</i>	630
13.3 FAQ	631
FAQ	631
Glossary	633

Safety Information



Important Information

NOTICE

Read these instructions carefully, and look at the equipment to become familiar with the device before trying to install, operate, service, or maintain it. The following special messages may appear throughout this documentation or on the equipment to warn of potential hazards or to call attention to information that clarifies or simplifies a procedure.



The addition of this symbol to a "Danger" or "Warning" safety label indicates that an electrical hazard exists which will result in personal injury if the instructions are not followed.



This is the safety alert symbol. It is used to alert you to potential personal injury hazards. Obey all safety messages that follow this symbol to avoid possible injury or death.

⚠ DANGER

DANGER indicates a hazardous situation which, if not avoided, **will result in** death or serious injury.

⚠ WARNING

WARNING indicates a hazardous situation which, if not avoided, **could result in** death or serious injury.

⚠ CAUTION

CAUTION indicates a hazardous situation which, if not avoided, **could result in** minor or moderate injury.

NOTICE

NOTICE is used to address practices not related to physical injury.

PLEASE NOTE

Electrical equipment should be installed, operated, serviced, and maintained only by qualified personnel. No responsibility is assumed by Schneider Electric for any consequences arising out of the use of this material.

A qualified person is one who has skills and knowledge related to the construction and operation of electrical equipment and its installation, and has received safety training to recognize and avoid the hazards involved.

Qualification Of Personnel

Only appropriately trained persons who are familiar with and understand the contents of this manual and all other pertinent product documentation are authorized to work on and with this product. In addition, these persons must have received safety training to recognize and avoid hazards involved. These persons must have sufficient technical training, knowledge and experience and be able to foresee and detect potential hazards that may be caused by using the product, by changing the settings and by the mechanical, electrical and electronic equipment of the entire system in which the product is used. All persons working on and with the product must be fully familiar with all applicable standards, directives, and accident prevention regulations when performing such work.

Intended Use

This product is a drive for three-phase synchronous, reluctance and asynchronous motors and intended for industrial use according to this manual. The product may only be used in compliance with all applicable safety standard and local regulations and directives, the specified requirements and the technical data. The product must be installed outside the hazardous ATEX zone. Prior to using the product, you must perform a risk assessment in view of the planned application. Based on the results, the appropriate safety measures must be implemented. Since the product is used as a component in an entire system, you must ensure the safety of persons by means of the design of this entire system (for example, machine design). Any use other than the use explicitly permitted is prohibited and can result in hazards. Electrical equipment should be installed, operated, serviced, and maintained only by qualified personnel.

Product Related Information

Read and understand these instructions before performing any procedure with this drive.

DANGER

HAZARD OF ELECTRIC SHOCK, EXPLOSION OR ARC FLASH

- Only appropriately trained persons who are familiar with and understand the contents of this manual and all other pertinent product documentation and who have received safety training to recognize and avoid hazards involved are authorized to work on and with this drive system. Installation, adjustment, repair and maintenance must be performed by qualified personnel.
- The system integrator is responsible for compliance with all local and national electrical code requirements as well as all other applicable regulations with respect to grounding of all equipment.
- Many components of the product, including the printed circuit boards, operate with mains voltage. Do not touch. Use only electrically insulated tools.
- Do not touch unshielded components or terminals with voltage present.
- Motors can generate voltage when the shaft is rotated. Prior to performing any type of work on the drive system, block the motor shaft to prevent rotation.
- AC voltage can couple voltage to unused conductors in the motor cable. Insulate both ends of unused conductors of the motor cable.
- Do not short across the DC bus terminals or the DC bus capacitors or the braking resistor terminals.
- Before performing work on the drive system:
 - Disconnect all power, including external control power that may be present.
 - Place a **Do Not Turn On** label on all power switches.
 - Lock all power switches in the open position.
 - Wait 15 minutes to allow the DC bus capacitors to discharge. The DC bus LED is not an indicator of the absence of DC bus voltage that can exceed 800 Vdc.
 - Measure the voltage on the DC bus between the DC bus terminals (PA+, PC-) using a properly rated voltmeter to verify that the voltage is < 42 Vdc.
 - If the DC bus capacitors do not discharge properly, contact your local Schneider Electric representative. Do not repair or operate the product.
- Install and close all covers before applying voltage.

Failure to follow these instructions will result in death or serious injury.

Drive systems may perform unexpected movements because of incorrect wiring, incorrect settings, incorrect data or other errors.

WARNING

UNANTICIPATED EQUIPMENT OPERATION

- Carefully install the wiring in accordance with the EMC requirements.
- Do not operate the product with unknown or unsuitable settings or data.
- Perform a comprehensive commissioning test.

Failure to follow these instructions can result in death, serious injury, or equipment damage.

Damaged products or accessories may cause electric shock or unanticipated equipment operation.

DANGER

ELECTRIC SHOCK OR UNANTICIPATED EQUIPMENT OPERATION

Do not use damaged products or accessories.

Failure to follow these instructions will result in death or serious injury.

Contact your local Schneider Electric sales office if you detect any damage whatsoever.

WARNING

LOSS OF CONTROL

- The designer of any control scheme must consider the potential failure modes of control paths and, for critical control functions, provide a means to achieve a safe state during and after a path failure. Examples of critical control functions are emergency stop, overtravel stop, power outage and restart.
- Separate or redundant control paths must be provided for critical control functions.
- System control paths may include communication links. Consideration must be given to the implications of unanticipated transmission delays or failures of the link.
- Observe all accident prevention regulations and local safety guidelines (1).
- Each implementation of the product must be individually and thoroughly tested for proper operation before being placed into service.

Failure to follow these instructions can result in death, serious injury, or equipment damage.

(1) For USA: Additional information, refer to NEMA ICS 1.1 (latest edition), Safety Guidelines for the Application, Installation, and Maintenance of Solid State Control and to NEMA ICS 7.1 (latest edition), Safety Standards for Construction and Guide for Selection, Installation and Operation of Adjustable-Speed Drive Systems.

NOTICE

DESTRUCTION DUE TO INCORRECT MAINS VOLTAGE

Before switching on and configuring the product, verify that it is approved for the mains voltage

Failure to follow these instructions can result in equipment damage.

The temperature of the products described in this manual may exceed 80 °C (176 °F) during operation.

WARNING

HOT SURFACES

- Ensure that any contact with hot surfaces is avoided.
- Do not allow flammable or heat-sensitive parts in the immediate vicinity of hot surfaces.
- Verify that the product has sufficiently cooled down before handling it.
- Verify that the heat dissipation is sufficient by performing a test run under maximum load conditions.

Failure to follow these instructions can result in death, serious injury, or equipment damage.

This equipment has been designed to operate outside of any hazardous location. Only install this equipment in zones known to be free of a hazardous atmosphere.

DANGER

POTENTIAL FOR EXPLOSION

Install and use this equipment in non-hazardous locations only.

Failure to follow these instructions will result in death or serious injury.

Machines, controllers, and related equipment are usually integrated into networks. Unauthorized persons and malware may gain access to the machine as well as to other devices on the network/fieldbus of the machine and connected networks via insufficiently secure access to software and networks.

WARNING

UNAUTHORIZED ACCESS TO THE MACHINE VIA SOFTWARE AND NETWORKS

- In your hazard and risk analysis, consider all hazards that result from access to and operation on the network/fieldbus and develop an appropriate cyber security concept.
- Verify that the hardware infrastructure and the software infrastructure into which the machine is integrated as well as all organizational measures and rules covering access to this infrastructure consider the results of the hazard and risk analysis and are implemented according to best practices and standards covering IT security and cyber security (such as: ISO/IEC 27000 series, Common Criteria for Information Technology Security Evaluation, ISO/ IEC 15408, IEC 62351, ISA/IEC 62443, NIST Cybersecurity Framework, Information Security Forum - Standard of Good Practice for Information Security).
- Verify the effectiveness of your IT security and cyber security systems using appropriate, proven methods.

Failure to follow these instructions can result in death, serious injury, or equipment damage.

About the Book



At a Glance

Document Scope

The purpose of this document is to:

- help you to set up the drive,
- show you how to program the drive,
- show you the different menus, modes, and parameters,
- help you in maintenance and diagnostics.

Validity Note

This documentation is valid for the Altivar Machine drives.

The technical characteristics of the devices described in this document also appear online. To access this information online:

Step	Action
1	Go to the Schneider Electric home page www.schneider-electric.com .
2	In the Search box type the reference of a product or the name of a product range. <ul style="list-style-type: none">● Do not include blank spaces in the reference or product range.● To get information on grouping similar modules, use asterisks (*).
3	If you entered a reference, go to the Product Datasheets search results and click on the reference that interests you. If you entered the name of a product range, go to the Product Ranges search results and click on the product range that interests you.
4	If more than one reference appears in the Products search results, click on the reference that interests you.
5	Depending on the size of your screen, you may need to scroll down to see the data sheet.
6	To save or print a data sheet as a .pdf file, click Download XXX product datasheet .

The characteristics that are presented in this manual should be the same as those characteristics that appear online. In line with our policy of constant improvement, we may revise content over time to improve clarity and accuracy. If you see a difference between the manual and online information, use the online information as your reference.

Related Documents

Use your tablet or your PC to quickly access detailed and comprehensive information on all our products on www.schneider-electric.com

The internet site provides the information you need for products and solutions

- The whole catalog for detailed characteristics and selection guides
- The CAD files to help design your installation, available in over 20 different file formats
- All software and firmware to maintain your installation up to date
- A large quantity of White Papers, Environment documents, Application solutions, Specifications... to gain a better understanding of our electrical systems and equipment or automation
- And finally all the User Guides related to your drive, listed below:

Title of Documentation	Reference Number
ATV340 Getting Started	NVE37643 (English), NVE37642 (French), NVE37644 (German), NVE37646 (Spanish), NVE37647 (Italian), NVE37648 (Chinese)
ATV340 Getting Started Annex (SCCR)	NVE37641 (English)
ATV340 Installation Manual	NVE61069 (English), NVE61071 (French), NVE61074 (German), NVE61075 (Spanish), NVE61078 (Italian), NVE61079 (Chinese)
ATV340 Programming Manual	NVE61643 (English), NVE61644 (French), NVE61645 (German), NVE61647 (Spanish), NVE61648 (Italian), NVE61649 (Chinese)
ATV340 Modbus manual (Embedded)	NVE61654 (English)
ATV340 Ethernet manual (Embedded)	NVE61653 (English)
ATV340 PROFIBUS DP manual (VW3A3607)	NVE61656 (English)
ATV340 DeviceNet manual (VW3A3609)	NVE61683 (English)
ATV340 PROFINET manual (VW3A3627)	NVE61678 (English)
ATV340 CANopen manual (VW3A3608, 618, 628)	NVE61655 (English)
ATV340 EtherCAT manual - (VW3A3601)	NVE61686 (English)
ATV340 Communication Parameters	NVE61728 (English)
ATV340 Atex manual	NVE61651 (English)
ATV340 Embedded Safety Function Manual	NVE64143 (English)
ATV340 Safety Functions manual	NVE61741 (English), NVE61742 (French), NVE61745 (German), NVE61747 (Spanish), NVE61749 (Italian), NVE61752 (Chinese)
SoMove: FDT	SoMove FDT (English, French, German, Spanish, Italian, Chinese)
Altivar 340: DTM	ATV340 DTM Library EN (English), ATV340 DTM Library FR (French), ATV340 DTM Language DE (German), ATV340 DTM Library SP (Spanish), ATV340 DTM Library IT (Italian), ATV340 DTM Library CN (Chinese)

You can download these technical publications and other technical information from our website at <http://download.schneider-electric.com>

Terminology

The technical terms, terminology, and the corresponding descriptions in this manual normally use the terms or definitions in the relevant standards.

The technical terms, terminology, and the corresponding descriptions in this manual normally use the terms or definitions in the relevant standards.

Among others, these standards include:

- IEC 61800 series: Adjustable speed electrical power drive systems
- IEC 61508 Ed.2 series: Functional safety of electrical/electronic/programmable electronic safety-related
- EN 954-1 Safety of machinery - Safety related parts of control systems
- EN ISO 13849-1 & 2 Safety of machinery - Safety related parts of control systems.
- IEC 61158 series: Industrial communication networks - Fieldbus specifications
- IEC 61784 series: Industrial communication networks - Profiles
- IEC 60204-1: Safety of machinery - Electrical equipment of machines – Part 1: General requirements

In addition, the term **zone of operation** is used in conjunction with the description of specific hazards, and is defined as it is for a **hazard zone** or **danger zone** in the EC Machinery Directive (2006/42/EC) and in ISO 12100-1.

Also see the glossary at the end of this manual.

Part I

Introduction

What Is in This Part?

This part contains the following chapters:

Chapter	Chapter Name	Page
1	Setup	23
2	Overview	27
3	Cyber Security	43

Chapter 1

Setup

What Is in This Chapter?

This chapter contains the following topics:

Topic	Page
Initial Steps	24
Steps for Setting-Up the Drive	26

Initial Steps

Before Powering up the Drive

WARNING

UNANTICIPATED EQUIPMENT OPERATION

Before switching on the device, verify that no unintended signals can be applied to the digital inputs that could cause unintended movements.

Failure to follow these instructions can result in death, serious injury, or equipment damage.

If the drive was not connected to mains for an extended period of time, the capacitors must be restored to their full performance before the motor is started.

NOTICE

REDUCED CAPACITOR PERFORMANCE

- Apply mains voltage to the drive for one hour before starting the motor if the drive has not been connected to mains for the following periods of time:
 - 12 months at a maximum storage temperature of +50°C (+122°F)
 - 24 months at a maximum storage temperature of +45°C (+113°F)
 - 36 months at a maximum storage temperature of +40°C (+104°F)
- Verify that no Run command can be applied before the period of one hour has elapsed.
- Verify the date of manufacture if the drive is commissioned for the first time and run the specified procedure if the date of manufacture is more than 12 months in the past.

Failure to follow these instructions can result in equipment damage.

If the specified procedure cannot be performed without a Run command because of internal mains contactor control, perform this procedure with the power stage enabled, but the motor being at standstill so that there is no appreciable mains current in the capacitors.

Start-up

NOTE:

If a Run command such as Run forward, Run reverse, DC injection is still active during:

- A product reset to the factory settings,
- A manual "Fault Reset" using **[Fault Reset Assign] ↵ 5 F**,
- A manual "Fault reset" by applying a product switched off and on again,
- A stop command given by a channel that is not the active channel command (such as Stop key of the display terminal in 2/3 wires control),

The drive is in a blocking state and displays **[Freewheel Stop] ↵ 5 E**. It will be necessary to deactivate all active Run commands prior to authorizing a new Run command.

Mains Contactor

NOTICE

RISK OF DAMAGE TO THE DRIVE

Do not switch on the drive at intervals of less than 60 s.

Failure to follow these instructions can result in equipment damage.

Using a Motor with a Lower Rating or Dispensing with a Motor Altogether

In factory settings, the motor output phase loss detection is active: [OutPhaseLoss Assign] $\square P L$ is set to [OPF Error Triggered] $\square E 5$. For details, refer to the parameter description ([see page 498](#)). For commissioning tests or maintenance phase, the drive could be connected to a small motor power size and thus trigger an error [Output Phase Loss] $\square P F 2$ or [Single output phase loss] $\square P F 1$ when a Run command is applied. For that purpose, the function can be disabled by setting [OutPhaseLossAssign] $\square P L$ to [Function Inactive] $\square \square$.

Set also [Motor control type] $\square E E$ to [SVC V] $\square V E$ in [Motor parameters] $\square P R -$. For details, refer to .

NOTICE

MOTOR OVERHEATING

Install external thermal monitoring equipment under the following conditions:

- If a motor with a nominal current of less than 20% of the nominal current of the drive is connected.
- If you use the function Motor Switching.

Failure to follow these instructions can result in equipment damage.

DANGER

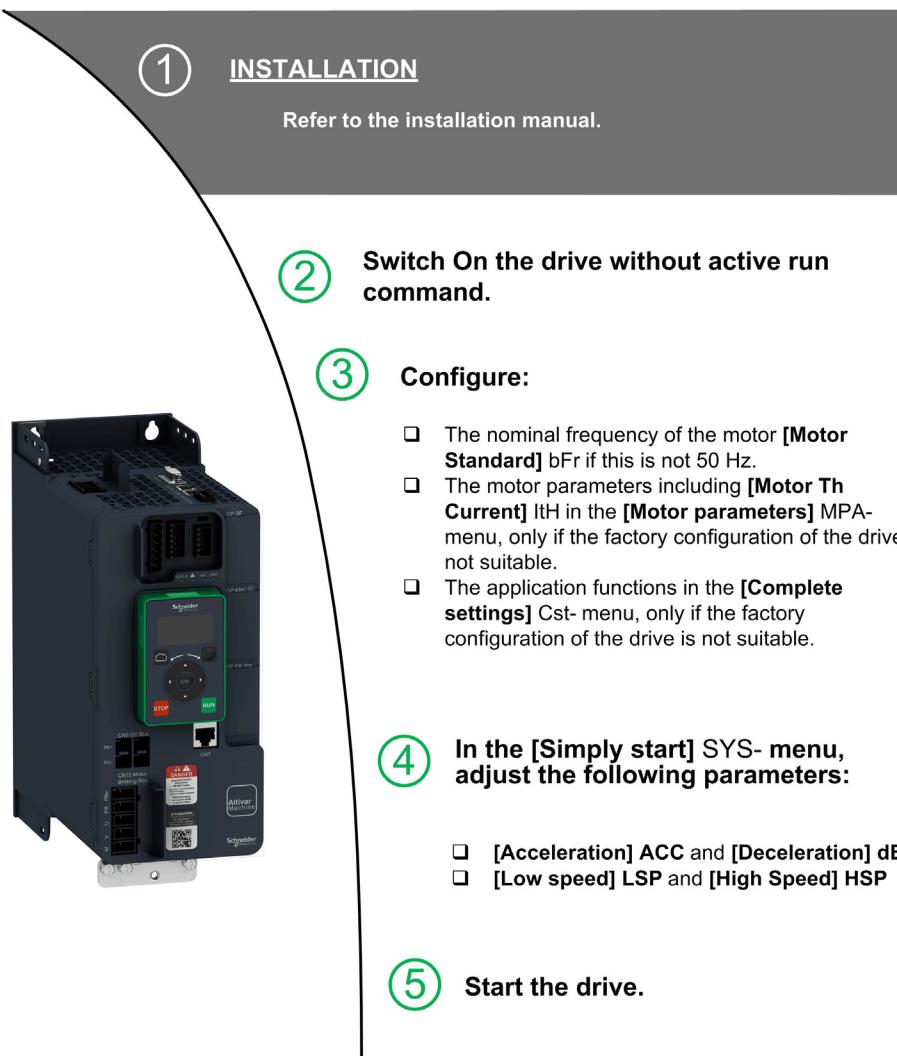
HAZARD OF ELECTRIC SHOCK, EXPLOSION OR ARC FLASH

If output phase monitoring is disabled, phase loss and, by implication, accidental disconnection of cables, are not detected.

- Verify that the setting of this parameter does not result in unsafe conditions.

Failure to follow these instructions will result in death or serious injury.

Steps for Setting-Up the Drive



⚠ WARNING

UNEXPECTED MOVEMENT

Drive systems may perform unexpected movements because of incorrect wiring, incorrect settings, incorrect data or other errors.

- Carefully install the wiring in accordance with the EMC requirements.
- Do not operate the product with unknown or unsuitable settings or data.
- Perform a comprehensive commissioning test.

Failure to follow these instructions can result in death, serious injury, or equipment damage.

Tips

Use the **[Config. Source]** *F E 5*, parameter (*see page 542*) to restore the factory settings at any time.

NOTE: The following operations must be performed for optimum drive performance in terms of accuracy and response time:

- Enter the values indicated on the motor nameplate in the **[Motor parameters]** *M P R* - menu.
- Perform autotuning with the motor cold and connected using the **[Autotuning]** *E u n* parameter.

Chapter 2

Overview

What Is in This Chapter?

This chapter contains the following topics:

Topic	Page
Factory Configuration	28
Application Functions	30
Display Terminals	32
Product LEDs	37
Structure of the Parameter Table	40
Finding a Parameter in This Document	41

Factory Configuration

Factory Settings

The drive is factory-set for common operating conditions:

- Display: drive ready [**[Pre-Ramp Ref Freq]** $F_r H$ when motor is ready to run and **[Motor Frequency]** $r F_r$ when motor is running.
- Stop mode when error detected: freewheel.

This table presents the basic parameters of the drive and their factory setting values:

Code	Name	Factory setting values
b F r	[Motor Standard]	[50 Hz IEC] 5 0
t L C	[2/3-Wire Control]	[2-Wire Control] 2 L : 2-wire control
C E t	[Motor control type]	[SVC V] V V L : voltage vector control
A C C	[Acceleration]	3.0 s
d E C	[Deceleration]	3.0 s
L S P	[Low Speed]	0.0 Hz
H S P	[High Speed]	50.0 Hz
, E H	[Motor Th Current]	Nominal motor current (value depending on drive rating)
F r d	[Forward]	[DI1] d , I : Digital input DI1
r r S	[Reverse]	[DI2] d , 2 : Digital input DI2
F r I	[Ref Freq 1 Config]	[AI1] R , I : Analog input AI1
r I	[R1 Assignment]	[Operating State Fault] F L E : the contact opens when the drive has detected error or when the drive has been switched off
b r A	[Dec.Ramp Adapt]	[Yes] Y E S : function active (automatic adaptation of deceleration ramp)
A E r	[Auto Fault Reset]	[No] n o : function inactive
S E t	[Type of stop]	[On Ramp] r N P : on ramp
R o 1	[AQ1 assignment]	[Motor Frequency] o F r : Motor frequency
R o 2	[AQ2 assignment]	[Motor Current] o C r : Motor current
r S F	[Fault Reset Assign]	[DI4] d , 4 : Digital input DI4

NOTE: If you want to restore the drive presettings to their factory values, set **[Config. Source]** $F L S$, to **[Macro Config]** $, n ,$.

Verify whether the above values are compatible with the application and modify them if required.

Inputs / Outputs Differences

On ATV340, depending on the drive catalog number, the inputs and outputs capabilities are not the same. The following table gives the number of inputs and outputs depending of the drive rating:

	ATV340U07N4• to ATV340D22N4•	ATV340D30N4E to ATV340D75N4E
Digital inputs	7	8
Digital outputs	2 ⁽¹⁾	1
Relays	2	3
AI1	10 Vdc, 0-20mA, Thermal	10 Vdc, 0-20mA, Thermal
AI2	+10 Vdc	+10 Vdc
AI3	-	10 Vdc, 0-20mA, Thermal
AQ1	10 Vdc, 0-20mA	10 Vdc, 0-20mA
AQ2	-	10 Vdc, 0-20mA
Pulse Input	Dedicated PTI connector	DI7, DI8
Pulse Output	Dedicated PTO connector	DQ1
(1) When using:		
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● DQ1, DI6 is no longer available. ● DQ2, DI7 is no longer available 		

Application Functions

Introduction

The following tables show the combinations of functions and applications in order to guide your selection.

The functions in these tables relate to the following applications:

- Packaging:
 - Palletizer
 - Shrink wrapping machines
 - Card box erector
- Material Handling:
 - Standard crane
 - Automatic storage system
 - Grouping conveyors
- Material Working:
 - Slitter
 - Panel dividing saw
 - Cable twisting

Each application has its own special features, and the combinations listed here are not mandatory or exhaustive.

Some functions are designed specifically for a given application. In this case, the application is identified by a tab in the margin on the relevant programming pages.

Combinations of Functions and Applications functions:

Function	Packaging	Material Handling	Material Working
Brake sequence		✓	
Boost for conical motors		✓	
Limit switch management		✓	
Torque regulation		✓	✓
Positioning / Autostop on distance	✓	✓	
Positioning value for PLC	✓	✓	
Load sharing	✓	✓	
Master/Slave management	✓	✓	
Master/Slave on rigid coupling	✓	✓	
Master/Slave on elastic coupling	✓	✓	
High-speed hoisting		✓	
High-speed commutation		✓	✓

Combination of Functions and Monitoring functions:

Function	Packaging	Material Handling	Material Working
External error	✓	✓	✓
Catch on the fly	✓	✓	✓
Motor Overspeed	✓	✓	✓
Torque limitation		✓	✓
Encoder check	✓	✓	
Reverse disable	✓		✓
Thermal monitoring of the braking resistor		✓	
Under load detection			✓
Fast stop	✓	✓	✓
Dynamic load detection		✓	
Mechanical resonance rejection	✓	✓	✓
Stall monitoring	✓	✓	✓
Load slipping monitoring		✓	
Rope slack and anti rope slack detection		✓	

Combination of Functions and Configuration management:

Function	Packaging	Material Handling	Material Working
Motor switching	✓		✓
Configuration switching	✓	✓	✓
Parameter switching	✓		✓
Current threshold function		✓	✓
Torque threshold reached	✓	✓	✓
Thermal state reached	✓	✓	✓
Automatic fault reset	✓	✓	✓
High speed reached	✓	✓	✓
Surge voltage on motor		✓	
Parameter customization	✓	✓	✓
Pulse input configuration	✓	✓	
Dual rating	✓	✓	✓

Display Terminals

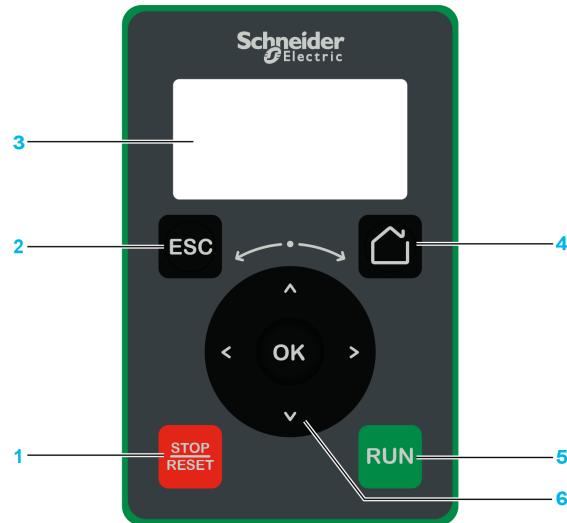
Introduction

The drive is compatible with the Plain Text Display Terminal (VW3A1113) or with the Graphic Display Terminal (VW3A1111). These display terminals can be ordered separately.

NOTE: In this manual, the term Display Terminal is used when it concerns both display terminals.

Description of the Plain Text Display Terminal

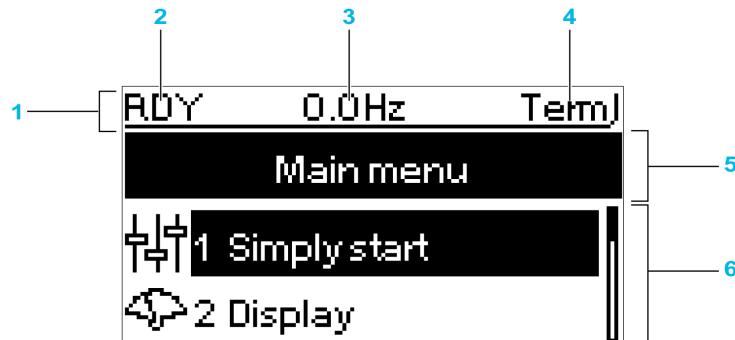
The Plain Text Display Terminal is a local control unit which can be either plugged on the drive or mounted on the door of an enclosure with its dedicated door mounting kit (VW3A1114).



- 1 **STOP / RESET:** Stop command / apply a Fault Reset.
- 2 **ESC:** used to quit a menu/parameter or remove the currently displayed value in order to revert to the previous value retained in the memory
- 3 **Graphic display.**
- 4 **Home:** access directly the home page.
- 5 **RUN:** executes the function assuming it has been configured.
- 6 **Touch wheel / OK:** used to save the current value or access the selected menu/parameter. The touch wheel is used to scroll fast into the menus. Up/down arrows are used for precise selections, right/left arrows are used to select digits when setting a numerical value of a parameter.

NOTE: Keys 1, 5 and 6 can be used to control the drive, if control via the Display Terminal is activated. To activate the keys on the Display Terminal, you first need to set [Ref Freq 1 Config] *F r 1* to [Ref.Freq-Rmt.Term] *L E E*.

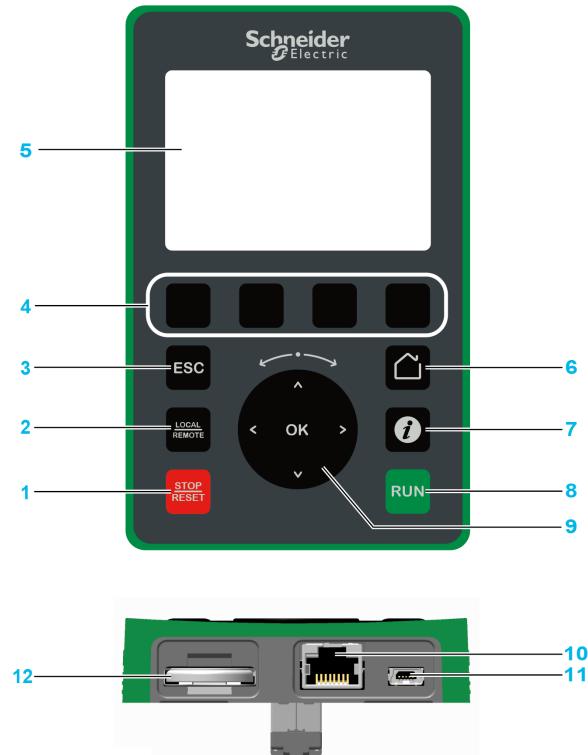
Description of the Graphic Display



Key	
1	Display line: its content can be configured
2	[Drive state] HPI 5
3	Customer defined
4	Active control channel <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● TERM: Terminals ● HMI: Display Terminal ● MDB: Integrated Modbus serial ● CAN: CANopen® ● NET: Fieldbus module ● ETH: Integrated Ethernet (for ATV340...N4E) ● PWS: DTM based commissioning software
5	Menu line: indicates the name of the current menu or submenu
6	Menus, submenus, parameters, values, bar charts, and so on, are displayed in drop-down window format on a maximum of 2 lines. The line or value selected by the navigation button is displayed in reverse video

Description of the Graphic Display Terminal

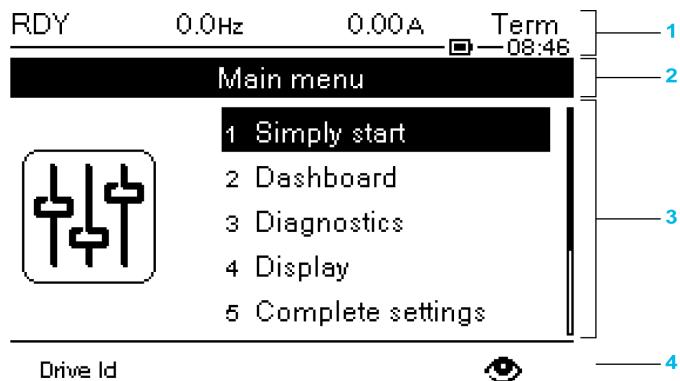
The Graphic Display Terminal is a local control unit which can be mounted on the door of an enclosure with its dedicated door mounting kit (VW3A1112). The Graphic Display Terminal embeds a real time clock used for the time stamping of logged data and all other functions which require time information.



- 1 **STOP / RESET:** Stop command / apply a Fault Reset.
- 2 **LOCAL / REMOTE:** used to switch between local and remote control of the drive.
- 3 **ESC:** used to quit a menu/parameter or remove the currently displayed value in order to revert to the previous value retained in the memory
- 4 **F1 to F4:** function keys used to access drive id, QR code, quick view, and submenus. Simultaneous press of F1 and F4 keys generates a screenshot file in the Graphic Display Terminal internal memory.
- 5 **Graphic display.**
- 6 **Home:** used to access directly at the home page.
- 7 **Information:** used to have more information about menus, submenus, and parameters. The selected parameter or menu code is displayed on the first line of the information page.
- 8 **RUN:** executes the function assuming it has been configured.
- 9 **Touch wheel / OK:** used to save the current value or access the selected menu/parameter. The touch wheel is used to scroll fast into the menus. Up/down arrows are used for precise selections, right/left arrows are used to select digits when setting a numerical value of a parameter.
- 10 **RJ45 Modbus serial port:** used to connect the Graphic Display Terminal to the drive in remote control.
- 11 **MiniB USB port:** used to connect the Graphic Display Terminal to a computer.
- 12 **Battery** (10 years service life. Type: CR2032). The battery positive pole points to the front face of the Graphic Display Terminal .

NOTE: Keys 1, 8 and 9 can be used to control the drive if control via the Display Terminal is activated. To activate the keys on the Display Terminal, you first need to set [Ref Freq 1 Config] *F r /* to [Ref.Freq-Rmt.Term] *L E E*.

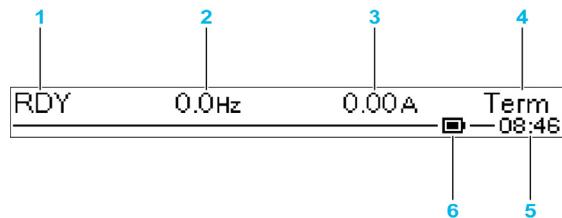
Description of the VW3A1111 Graphic Display



- 1 Display line: its content can be configured
- 2 Menu line: indicates the name of the current menu or submenu
- 3 Menus, submenus, parameters, values, bar charts, and so on, are displayed in drop-down window format on a maximum of five lines. The line or value selected by the navigation button is displayed in reverse video
- 4 Section displaying tabs (1 to 4 by menu), these tabs can be accessed using F1 to F4 keys

NOTE: The numbers in front of the menus and submenus in the Graphic Display Terminal are different from chapters numbers in this programming manual.

Display line details:



Key	
1	[Drive state] <i>HΠ</i> , 5
2	Customer defined parameter value
3	Customer defined parameter value
4	Active control channel <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● TERM: terminals ● HMI: Display Terminal ● MDB: integrated Modbus serial ● CAN: CANopen® ● NET: fieldbus module ● ETH: integrated Ethernet (for ATV340***N4E) ● PWS: DTM based commissioning software
5	Present time
6	Battery level

Graphic Display Terminal Connected to a Computer

NOTICE

RISK OF DAMAGE TO THE COMPUTER

Do not connect the Graphic Display Terminal to the drive via a Modbus RJ45 link and to the computer via a USB link at the same time.

Failure to follow these instructions can result in equipment damage.

The Graphic Display Terminal is recognized as a USB storage device named SE_VW3A1111 while plugged on a computer.

This allows to access the saved drive configurations (DRVCONF menu) and the Graphic Display Terminal screenshots (PRTSCR menu).

Screenshots can be stored by a simultaneous press on F1 and F4 function keys

The Graphic Display Terminal language files can also be accessed and updated (LANG menu).

Language files are available on www.schneider-electric.com.

NOTE: Make a backup of the original language file prior to you replace it by another one.

Product LEDs

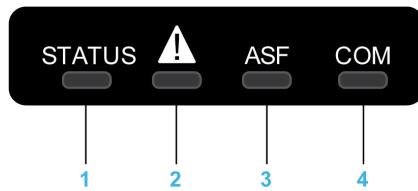
Introduction

The drive embeds status LEDs that are used to indicate the drive status.

The number of LEDs available depends of the drive rating.

- For ATV340U07N4• to ATV340D22N4•: 4 LEDs.
- For ATV340D30N4E to ATV340D75N4E: 10 LEDs.

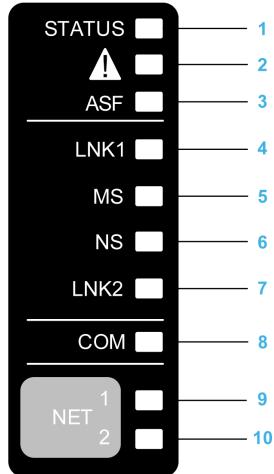
LEDs Description for ATV340U07N4• to ATV340D22N4•



Following table provides the details of the drive status LEDs:

Item	LED	Color & status	Description
1	STATUS	OFF	Indicates that the drive is powered off
		Green flashing	Indicates that the drive is not running, ready to start
		Green blinking	Indicates that the drive is in transitory status (acceleration, deceleration, and so on)
		Green on	Indicates that the drive is running
		Yellow on	Device visual identification when using the DTM based commissioning software
2	Warning/Error	Red flashing	Indicates that the drive has detected a warning
		Red on	Indicates that the drive has detected an error
3	ASF	Yellow on	Indicates that the safety function has been triggered
4	COM	Yellow flashing	Indicates embedded Modbus serial activity

LEDs Description for ATV340D30N4E to ATV340D75N4E



Following table provides the details of the drive status LEDs:

Item	LED	Color & status	Description
1	STATUS	OFF	Indicates that the drive is powered off
		Green flashing	Indicates that the drive is not running, ready to start
		Green blinking	Indicates that the drive is in transitory status (acceleration, deceleration, and so on)
		Green on	Indicates that the drive is running
		Yellow on	Device Visual identification function when using SoMove or the device DTM
2	Warning/Error	Red flashing	Indicates that the drive has detected a warning
		Red on	Indicates that the drive has detected an error
3	ASF	Yellow on	Indicates that the safety function has been triggered

Following table provides the details of the embedded Ethernet LEDs:

Item	LED	Color & status	Description
4	LNK1	OFF	No link.
		Green/Yellow flashing	Power on testing.
		Green on	Link established at 100 Mbit/s.
		Green flashing	Link established at 10 Mbit/s.
		Yellow flashing	Fieldbus activity at 100 Mbit/s.
		Yellow on	Fieldbus activity at 10 Mbit/s.
5	MS	OFF	No power is supplied to the device.
		Green/Red flashing	Power up testing.
		Green on	The device is operating correctly.
		Green flashing	The device has not been configured.
		Red flashing	The device has detected a recoverable minor detected error.
		Red on	The device has detected a non-recoverable major detected error.
6	NS	OFF	The device does not have an IP address or powered off.
		Green/Red flashing	Power on testing.
		Green on	A connection is established to control the command word.
		Green flashing	Device has a valid IP, but no command word connection.
		Red flashing	Duplicated IP.
		Red on	An established connection to control the command word is closed or timed out.

Item	LED	Color & status	Description
7	LNK2	OFF	No link.
		Green/Yellow flashing	Power on testing.
		Green on	Link established at 100 Mbit/s.
		Green flashing	Link established at 10 Mbit/s.
		Yellow flashing	Fieldbus activity at 100 Mbit/s.
		Yellow on	Fieldbus activity at 10 Mbit/s.

Following table provides the details of the embedded Modbus serial LEDs:

Item	LED	Color & status	Description
8	COM	Yellow flashing	Indicates embedded Modbus serial activity

Following table provides the details of the fieldbus module LEDs:

Item	LED	Color & status	Description
9	NET 1	Green/Red	for details, refer to the fieldbus manual
10	NET 2	Green/Red	for details, refer to the fieldbus manual

Structure of the Parameter Table

General Legend

Pictogram	Description
★	These parameters only appear if the corresponding function has been selected in another menu. When the parameters can also be accessed and adjusted from within the configuration menu for the corresponding function, their description is detailed in these menus, on the pages indicated, to aid programming.
⌚	Setting of this parameter can be done during operation or when stopped. NOTE: It is recommended to stop the motor before modifying any of the settings.
⌚	To change the assignment of the parameter, reinforced validation is required.

Parameter Presentation

Below is an example of a parameter presentation:

[Sample Menu] Configuration – Menu

Access

Parameters described below can be accessed by:

[Path] → [Sub-path]

About this menu

Description of the menu or function

[Parameter1] Configuration /

Description of the parameter

Example of a table with a setting range:

Setting ()	Description
0.0... 10,000.0	Setting range Factory setting: 50.0

[Parameter2] Configuration 2

Description of the parameter

Example of a table with a list of choices:

Setting ()	Code / Value	Description
[50 Hz IEC]	5 ⏺	IEC Factory setting
[60 Hz NEMA]	6 ⏺	NEMA

Finding a Parameter in This Document

With the Manual

It is possible to use either the parameter name or the parameter code to search in the manual the page giving details of the selected parameter.

Difference Between Menu and Parameter

A dash after menu and submenu codes is used to differentiate menu commands from parameter codes.

Example:

Level	Name	Code
Menu	[Ramp]	r R P P -
Parameter	[Acceleration]	R C C

Chapter 3

Cyber Security

Cyber Security

Introduction

Cyber Security is a branch of network administration that addresses attacks on or by computer systems and through computer networks that can result in accidental or intentional disruptions.

The objective of Cyber Security is to help provide increased levels of protection for information and physical assets from theft, corruption, misuse, or accidents while maintaining access for their intended users.

No single Cyber Security approach is adequate. Schneider Electric recommends a defense-in-depth approach. Conceived by the **National Security Agency** (NSA), this approach layers the network with security features, appliances, and processes.

The basic components of this approach are:

- Risk assessment
- A security plan built on the results of the risk assessment
- A multi-phase training campaign
- Physical separation of the industrial networks from enterprise networks using a demilitarized zone (DMZ) and the use of firewalls and routing to establish other security zones
- System access control
- Device hardening
- Network monitoring and maintenance

This chapter defines the elements that help you configure a system that is less susceptible to cyber attacks.

For detailed information on the defense-in-depth approach, refer to the TVDA: **How Can I Reduce Vulnerability to Cyber Attacks in the Control Room** on the Schneider Electric website.

To submit a Cyber Security question, report security issues, or get the latest news from Schneider Electric, visit the Schneider Electric website.

Password Management

The system is secured thanks to several passwords:

- Drive password (*see page 551*) must contain six characters (blanks are allowed)
- Webserver password (*see page 562*) must contain:
 - A total of eight characters
 - At least one upper-case letter
 - At least one lower-case letter
 - At least one special character (for example, @, #, \$)
 - No blank character

NOTE: After five unsuccessful login attempts, the access must be reactivated by the administrator.

Schneider Electric recommends to:

- Change the password every 90 days
- Use a dedicated password (not related to your personal password)

NOTE: No responsibility is assumed by Schneider Electric for any consequences if anyone hacks your product password and if you use the same password for personal usage.

Backing-up and Restoring the Software Configuration

To protect your data, Schneider Electric recommends backing-up the drive configuration and keeping your backup file in a safe place. The backup is available in the drive DTM, using "load from device" and "store to device" functions.

Remote Access to the Drive

When remote access is used between a device and the drive, please ensure your network is secure (VPN, Firewall...).

Machines, controllers, and related equipment are usually integrated into networks. Unauthorized persons and malware may gain access to the machine as well as to other devices on the network/fieldbus of the machine and connected networks via insufficiently secure access to software and networks.

WARNING

UNAUTHORIZED ACCESS TO THE MACHINE VIA SOFTWARE AND NETWORKS

- In your hazard and risk analysis, consider all hazards that result from access to and operation on the network/fieldbus and develop an appropriate cyber security concept.
- Verify that the hardware infrastructure and the software infrastructure into which the machine is integrated as well as all organizational measures and rules covering access to this infrastructure consider the results of the hazard and risk analysis and are implemented according to best practices and standards covering IT security and cyber security (such as: ISO/IEC 27000 series, Common Criteria for Information Technology Security Evaluation, ISO/ IEC 15408, IEC 62351, ISA/IEC 62443, NIST Cybersecurity Framework, Information Security Forum - Standard of Good Practice for Information Security).
- Verify the effectiveness of your IT security and cyber security systems using appropriate, proven methods.

Failure to follow these instructions can result in death, serious injury, or equipment damage.

Data Flow Restriction

To secure the access to the drive and limit the data flow, the use of a firewall device is recommended.

ConneXium Tofino Firewall Product

The ConneXium TCSEFEA Tofino Firewall is a security appliance that provides levels of protection against cyber threats for industrial networks, automation systems, SCADA systems, and process control systems.

This Firewall is designed to permit or deny communications between devices connected to the external network connection of the Firewall and the protected devices connected to the internal network connection.

The Firewall can restrict network traffic based on user defined rules that would permit only authorized devices, communication types and services.

The Firewall includes built-in security modules and an off-line configuration tool for creating secure zones within an industrial automation environment.

Control Command Restriction

To prevent unauthorized use of the command of the drive, it is possible to grant access to a limited number of IP address using the IP master parameter.

The parameter IP Master defines which device can command with the drive. This parameter is available in the drive DTM.

Recommendations for unused functions

To avoid unauthorized access, we recommend deactivating unused functions.

Example: WebServer, Fast Device Replacement ...

Part II

Programming

What Is in This Part?

This part contains the following chapters:

Chapter	Chapter Name	Page
4	[Simply start] 5 ү 5 -	47
5	[Dashboard] ȏ 5 H -	57
6	[Diagnostics] ȏ , R -	63
7	[Display] ȏ o n -	79
8	[Complete settings] ȏ 5 E -	153
9	[Communication] ȏ o P -	529
10	[File management] F ȏ E -	541
11	[My preferences] ȏ ү P -	549

Chapter 4

[Simply start] 5 ү 5 -

Introduction



[Simply start] 5 ү 5 - menu contains 3 tabs for quick access to mains features:

- Simply Start tab which gives a quick access to basic parameters to set.
- My Menu tab which is a user-defined menu for quick access to specific parameters.
- Modified Parameters tab which gives a quick access to the last modified parameters.

What Is in This Chapter?

This chapter contains the following topics:

Topic	Page
[Simply start] 5 ү 5 - Menu	48
[My menu] 7 ү 7 - Menu	55
[Modified parameters] L ү d - Menu	55

[Simply start] 5 , 7 - Menu

Access

[Simply start] → [Simply start]

About This Menu

 WARNING	
LOSS OF CONTROL	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Fully read and understand the manual of the connected motor. • Verify that all motor parameters are correctly set by referring to the nameplate and the manual of the connected motor. <p>Failure to follow these instructions can result in death, serious injury, or equipment damage.</p>	

This menu provides a quick access to the basic parameters to set.

[Motor Standard] b F r ★

Motor standard.

This parameter can be accessed if [Motor control type] L E E is not set to:

- [Sync. mot.] 5 Y n, or
- [Sync.CL.] F S Y, or
- [SYN_U VC] S Y n u, or
- [Rel. Mot.] S r V L.

This parameter modifies the presets of the following parameters:

- [High Speed] H S P
- [Motor Freq Thd] F t d
- [Nom Motor Voltage] u n S
- [Nominal Motor Freq] F r S
- [Max Frequency] E F r

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[50 Hz IEC]	S D	IEC Factory setting
[60 Hz NEMA]	E D	NEMA

[Nominal motor power] n P r ★

Nominal motor power.

This parameter can be accessed if:

- [Motor control type] L E E is not set to:
 - [Sync. mot.] 5 Y n, or
 - [Sync.CL.] F S Y, or
 - [SYN_U VC] S Y n u, or
 - [Rel. Mot.] S r V L, and
- [Motor param choice] P P L is set to [Mot Power] n P r.

Rated motor power given on the nameplate, in kW if [Motor Standard] b F r is set to [50 Hz IEC] S D, in HP if [Motor Standard] b F r is set to [60 Hz NEMA] E D.

Setting	Description
According to drive rating	– Factory setting: according to the drive rating

[Nom Motor Voltage]

Nominal motor voltage.

This parameter can be accessed if [Motor control type]  is not set to:

- [Sync. mot.] , or
- [Sync.CL.] , or
- [SYN_U VC] , or
- [Rel. Mot.] .

Rated motor voltage given on the nameplate.

Setting	Description
100.0...690.0 Vac	Setting range Factory setting: according to drive rating and [Motor Standard] 

[Nom Motor Current]

Rated motor current given on the nameplate.

This parameter can be accessed if [Motor control type]  is not set to:

- [Sync. mot.] , or
- [Sync.CL.] , or
- [SYN_U VC] , or
- [Rel. Mot.] .

Setting	Description
0.25...1.8 In ⁽¹⁾	Setting range Factory setting: according to drive rating and [Motor Standard] 

(1) Corresponding to the rated drive current indicated in the installation manual and on the drive nameplate.

[Nominal Motor Freq]

Nominal motor frequency.

This parameter can be accessed if [Motor control type]  is not set to:

- [Sync. mot.] , or
- [Sync.CL.] , or
- [SYN_U VC] , or
- [Rel. Mot.] .

The factory setting is 50 Hz, or preset to 60 Hz if [Motor Standard]  is set to 60 Hz.

Setting	Description
10.0...599.0 Hz	Setting range Factory setting: 50.0 Hz

[Nominal Motor Speed] n $S P$ ★

Nominal motor speed.

This parameter can be accessed if [Motor control type] $C E E$ is not set to:

- [Sync. mot.] $S Y n$, or
- [Sync.CL.] $F S Y$, or
- [SYN_U VC] $S Y n u$, or
- [Rel. Mot.] $S r V C$.

If the nameplate indicates the synchronous speed and the slip in Hz or as a %, use one of the formulas to calculate the rated speed:

- Nominal speed = Synchronous speed $\times \frac{100 - \text{slip as a \%}}{100}$
- Nominal speed = Synchronous speed $\times \frac{60 - \text{slip in Hz}}{60}$ (60 Hz motors)
- Nominal speed = Synchronous speed $\times \frac{50 - \text{slip in Hz}}{50}$ (50 Hz motors).

Setting	Description
0...65,535 rpm	Setting range Factory setting: according to drive rating

[Motor 1 Cosinus Phi] $C o S$ ★

Nominal motor cosinus Phi.

This parameter can be accessed if:

- [Motor control type] $C E E$ is not set to:
 - [Sync. mot.] $S Y n$, or
 - [Sync.CL.] $F S Y$, or
 - [SYN_U VC] $S Y n u$, or
 - [Rel. Mot.] $S r V C$, and
- [Motor param choice] $P P C$ is set to [Mot Cosinus] $C o S$.

Setting	Description
0.50...1.00	Setting range Factory setting: according to the drive rating

[2/3-Wire Control]

2-wire or 3-wire control.

WARNING

UNANTICIPATED EQUIPMENT OPERATION

If this parameter is changed, the parameters [Reverse Assign] and [2-wire type] and the assignments of the digital inputs are reset to the factory setting.

Verify that this change is compatible with the type of wiring used.

Failure to follow these instructions can result in death, serious injury, or equipment damage.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[2-Wire Control]		<p>2-wire control (level commands): This is the input state (0 or 1) or edge (0 to 1 or 1 to 0), which controls running or stopping.</p> <p>Example of source wiring:</p> <p>Factory setting</p>
[3-Wire Control]		<p>3-wire control (pulse commands) [3 wire]: A forward or reverse pulse is sufficient to command starting, a stop pulse is sufficient to command stopping.</p> <p>Example of source wiring:</p> <p>DI1 Stop DI2 Forward DIx Reverse</p>

[Max Frequency]

Maximum output frequency.

The factory setting is 60 Hz, or preset to 72 Hz if [Motor Standard] is set to 60 Hz.

Setting	Description
10.0...599.0 Hz	Setting range Factory setting: 60 Hz

[Autotuning] 

WARNING

UNEXPECTED MOVEMENT

Autotuning moves the motor in order to tune the control loops.

- Only start the system if there are no persons or obstructions in the zone of operation.

Failure to follow these instructions can result in death, serious injury, or equipment damage.

During autotuning, noise development and oscillations of the system are normal.

If [Autotuning Type]  is set to [Standard]  , during autotuning, the motor makes small movements.

If [Autotuning Type]  is set to [Rotation]  , during autotuning, the motor runs at half of its nominal frequency.

In any case, the motor has to be stopped before performing a tune operation. Verify that the application does not make the motor turn during the tune operation.

The tune operation optimizes:

- The motor performances at low speed.
- The estimation of the motor torque.

Autotuning is only performed if no stop command has been activated. If a “freewheel stop” or “fast stop” function has been assigned to a digital input, this input must be set to 1 (active at 0).

Autotuning takes priority over any run or prefluxing commands, which will be taken into account after the autotuning sequence.

If autotuning has detected error, the drive always displays [No action]  and, depending on the configuration of [Tuning Error Resp]  , may switch to [Autotuning]  detected error mode.

Autotuning may last for several seconds. Do not interrupt the process. Wait for the Display Terminal to change to [No action] .

NOTE: The motor thermal state has a significant influence on the tuning result. Always perform a motor tuning with the motor stopped and cold. Verify that the application does not have the motor operate during a tuning operation.

To redo a motor tuning, wait that it is stopped and cold. Set first [Autotuning]  to [Erase Autotuning]  , then redo the motor tuning.

The use of the motor tuning without doing a [Erase Autotuning]  first is used to get the thermal state estimation of the motor.

The cable length has an influence on the tune result. If the wiring is modified, it is necessary to redo the tune operation.

Setting 	Code / Value	Description
[No action]		Autotuning not in progress Factory setting
[Apply Autotuning]	 	Autotuning is performed immediately if possible, then the parameter automatically changes to [No action]   . If the drive state does not allow the tune operation immediately, the parameter changes to [No]   and the operation must be done again.
[Erase Autotuning]	 	The motor parameters measured by the autotuning function are reset. The default motor parameter values are used to control the motor. [Autotuning Status]   is set to [Not done]  .

[Autotuning Status] *E u S*

Autotuning status.

(for information only, cannot be modified)

This parameter is not saved at drive power off. It shows the autotuning status since last power-on.

Setting (i)	Code / Value	Description
[Not done]	<i>E R b</i>	Autotune is not done Factory setting
[Pending]	<i>P E n d</i>	Autotune has been requested but not yet performed
[In Progress]	<i>P r o G</i>	Autotune is in progress
[Error]	<i>F R r L</i>	Autotune has detected error
[Autotuning Done]	<i>d o n E</i>	The motor parameters measured by the autotuning function are used to control the motor

[Tune Selection] *S E u n* ★

Tune selection.

Setting (i)	Code / Value	Description
[Default]	<i>E R b</i>	The default motor parameter values are used to control the motor Factory setting
[Measure]	<i>P E R S</i>	The values measured by the autotuning function are used to control the motor
[Custom]	<i>C u S</i>	The values manually set are used to control the motor

[Motor Th Current] *i E H*

Motor thermal monitoring current to be set to the rated current indicated on the nameplate.

Setting (i)	Description
0.2...1.8 In ⁽¹⁾	Setting range Factory setting: According to drive rating
(1) Corresponding to the rated drive current indicated in the installation manual and on the drive nameplate.	

[Acceleration] *A C C*

Time to accelerate from 0 to the [Nominal Motor Freq] *F r S*. To have a repeatability in the ramps, the value of this parameter must be set according to the possibility of the application.

Setting (i)	Description
0.0...6,000.0 s ⁽¹⁾	Setting range Factory setting: 3.0 s
(1) Range 0.01 to 99.99 s or 0.1 to 999.9 s or 1...6,000 s according to [Ramp increment] <i>r o n c</i> .	

[Deceleration] *d E C*

Time to decelerate from the [Nominal Motor Freq] *F r S* to 0. To have a repeatability in the ramps, the value of this parameter must be set according to the possibility of the application.

Setting (i)	Description
0.0...6,000.0 s ⁽¹⁾	Setting range Factory setting: 3.0 s
(1) Range 0.01 to 99.99 s or 0.1 to 999.9 s or 1...6,000 s according to [Ramp increment] <i>r o n c</i> .	

[Low Speed] L S P

Low speed.

Motor frequency at minimum reference, can be set between 0 and [High Speed] H S P.

Setting (S)	Description
0.0... [High Speed] H S P Hz	Setting range Factory setting: 0.0 Hz

[High Speed] H S P

High speed.

Motor frequency at maximum reference, can be set between [Low Speed] L S P and [Max Frequency] E F r. The factory setting changes to 60 Hz if [Motor Standard] b F r is set to [60 Hz NEMA] 6 D.

Setting (S)	Description
0.0...[Max Frequency] E F r Hz	Setting range Factory setting: 50.0 Hz

[My menu] П У П н - Menu

Access

[Simply start] → [My menu]

About This Menu

This menu contains the parameters selected in the [My menu config.] П У С - Menu.

NOTE: This menu is empty by default.

[Modified parameters] L П d - Menu

Access

[Simply start] → [Modified parameters]

About This Menu

This menu gives a quick access to the 10 last modified parameters (or the full list in the DTM)

Chapter 5

[Dashboard] d 5 H -

Introduction



[Dashboard] d 5 H - menu contains tabs for quick access to system and display features:

- System tab to configure the main system parameters.
- Energy tab which provides a complete access for instantaneous power counters and energy reports by means of graphics on the Display Terminal.

What Is in This Chapter?

This chapter contains the following topics:

Topic	Page
[System] d 5 E - Menu	58
[Dashboard] d 5 H - Menu	59
[kWh Counters] K W L - menu	60
[Dashboard] d 5 H - Menu	62

[System] *d S E* - Menu

Access

[Dashboard] → [System]

[Pre-Ramp Ref Freq] *F r H*

Frequency reference before ramp (signed value).

Actual frequency reference lied to the motor regardless of which reference channel has been selected.
This parameter is in read-only mode.

Setting	Description
-[High Speed] <i>H S P</i> ...[High Speed] <i>H S P</i> Hz	Setting range Factory setting: –

[Drive State] *H P , S*

Drive state.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Autotuning]	<i>t u n</i>	Autotuning
[In DC inject.]	<i>d C b</i>	DC Injection
[Ready]	<i>r d y</i>	Drive ready
[Freewheel]	<i>n S t</i>	Freewheel stop control
[Running]	<i>r u n</i>	Motor in steady state or run command present and zero reference
[Accelerating]	<i>A C C</i>	Acceleration
[Decelerating]	<i>d E C</i>	Deceleration
[Current limitation]	<i>C L ,</i>	In current limitation
[Fast stop]	<i>F S t</i>	Fast stop
[Mot. fluxing]	<i>F L u</i>	Fluxing function is activated
[No Mains Voltage]	<i>n L P</i>	Control is powered on but the DC bus is not loaded
[control.stop]	<i>C t L</i>	Controlled stop
[Dec. adapt.]	<i>o b r</i>	Adapted deceleration
[Output cut]	<i>S o C</i>	Stand by output cut
[Undervoltage Warning]	<i>u S R</i>	Undervoltage warning
[Operating State "Fault"]	<i>F L E</i>	Product has detected an error
[DCP Flashing Mode]	<i>d C P</i>	DCP flashing mode
[STO Active]	<i>S t o</i>	Safe Torque Off active
[Firmware Update]	<i>F W u P</i>	Firmware update
[Angle test]	<i>A S R</i>	Angle setting

[Motor Current] *L C r*

Motor current.

Setting	Description
According to drive rating	Setting range Factory setting: –

[Motor speed] 5 P d

Motor speed in rpm.

This parameter displays the estimated rotor speed without motor slip.

Setting	Description
0...65,535 rppm	Setting range Factory setting: –

[Motor Therm state] E H r

Motor thermal state.

The nominal motor thermal state is 100%, the **[Motor Overload]** □ L F threshold is set to 118%.

Setting	Description
0...200%	Setting range Factory setting: –

[Dashboard] d 5 H - Menu**Access**

[\[Dashboard\]](#)

[Trq/Spd] L E 5

Displays the torque versus speed curve.

[kWh Counters] *K W L* - menu

Access

[Dashboard] → [kWh Counters]

About This Menu

This menu presents many energy objects available for instantaneous data and kW consumption reports.

It offers the possibility to display logged data with graphics by pressing the F4 function key.

[Elc energy cons] *o L 4* ★

Electrical energy consumed by the motor in TWh.

This parameter can be accessed if [Elc energy cons(TWh)] *o L 4* is not set to 0.

Setting	Description
0...999 TWh	Setting range Factory setting: –

[Elc energy cons] *o L 3* ★

Electrical energy consumed by the motor in GWh.

Setting	Description
0...999 GWh	Setting range Factory setting: –

[Elc energy cons] *o L 2* ★

Electrical energy consumed by the motor in MWh.

Setting	Description
0...999 MWh	Setting range Factory setting: –

[Elc energy cons] *o L 1* ★

Electrical energy consumed by the motor in kWh.

Setting	Description
0...999 kWh	Setting range Factory setting: –

[Elc energy cons] *o L 0* ★

Electrical energy consumed by the motor in Wh.

Setting	Description
0...999 Wh	Setting range Factory setting: –

[Acv Elc out pwr estm] *E P r W*

Active electrical output power estimation.

Setting	Description
-32,767...32,767	Setting range Value in kW or HP according to [Motor Standard] <i>b F r</i> setting Factory setting: –

[Elc Egy Today] 

Electrical energy consumed today by the motor in kWh.

Setting	Description
0...4,294,967,295 kWh	Setting range Factory setting: –

[Elc Egy Yesterday] 

Electrical energy consumed yesterday by the motor in kWh.

Setting	Description
0...4,294,967,295 kWh	Setting range Factory setting: –

[Dashboard] S H - Menu

Access

[Dashboard]

About This Menu

Using F4 function key on the Display Terminal, it is possible to select one of the following view for the [Energy] tab.

[Instant kW Trend] V /

Displays the instantaneous electrical energy curve at the drive output.

[Daily kWh Report] H S d

Displays the daily energy histogram.

[Weekly kWh Report] H S w

Displays the weekly energy histogram.

[Monthly kWh Report] H S n

Displays the monthly energy histogram.

[Yearly kWh Report] H S y

Displays the yearly energy histogram.

Chapter 6

[Diagnostics] *d* , *R* -

Introduction



[Diagnostics] *d* , *R* - menu presents drive and application data useful when diagnostics is required.

What Is in This Chapter?

This chapter contains the following sections:

Section	Topic	Page
6.1	[Diag. data]	64
6.2	[Error history] <i>P F H</i> - Menu	73
6.3	[Warnings] <i>R L r</i> - Menu	76

Section 6.1

[Diag. data]

What Is in This Section?

This section contains the following topics:

Topic	Page
[Diag. data] <i>d d t</i> - Menu	65
[Service message] <i>S E r</i> - Menu	71
[Other State] <i>S S t</i> - Menu	71
[Diagnostics] <i>d R u</i> - Menu	72
[Identification] <i>a i d</i> - Menu	72

[Diag. data] *d d E* - Menu

Access

[Diagnostics] → [Diag. data]

About This Menu

This menu presents the actual warning and detected error in addition to drive data.

[Last Warning] *L R L r*

Last warning which occurred.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[No Warning Stored]	<i>n o R</i>	No warning stored
[Fallback speed]	<i>F r F</i>	Reaction on event / fallback speed
[Speed Maintained]	<i>r L S</i>	Reaction on event / maintain speed
[Type of Stop]	<i>S t E</i>	Reaction on event / stop on [Type of stop] <i>S t E</i> without tripping in error
[Ref Frequency Warning]	<i>S r R</i>	Frequency reference reached
[PID Error Warning]	<i>P E E</i>	Warning on PID error
[PID Feedback Warning]	<i>P F R</i>	Warning on PID feedback
[PID High Fdbck Warning]	<i>P F R H</i>	PID feedback high threshold reached
[PID Low Fdbck Warning]	<i>P F R L</i>	PID feedback low threshold reached
[Regulation Warning]	<i>P , S H</i>	PI feedback monitoring warning is raised
[Limit Switch Reached]	<i>L S R</i>	Limit switch reached
[Slack Rope Warning]	<i>r S d R</i>	Slack rope warning
[Dynamic Load Warning]	<i>d L d R</i>	Dynamic load warning
[AI1 Th Warning]	<i>t P 1 R</i>	Temperature monitoring AI1 warning
[AI3 Th Warning]	<i>t P 3 R</i>	Temperature monitoring AI3 warning
[AI4 Th Warning]	<i>t P 4 R</i>	Temperature monitoring AI4 warning
[AI5 Th Warning]	<i>t P 5 R</i>	Temperature monitoring AI5 warning
[AI1 4-20 Loss Warning]	<i>R P 1</i>	AI1 4-20 loss warning on AI1
[AI3 4-20 Loss Warning]	<i>R P 3</i>	AI3 4-20 loss warning on AI3
[AI4 4-20 Loss Warning]	<i>R P 4</i>	AI4 4-20 loss warning on AI4
[AI5 4-20 Loss Warning]	<i>R P 5</i>	AI5 4-20 loss warning on AI5
[IGBT Thermal Warning]	<i>t J R</i>	Warning on IGBT thermal state
[Fan Counter Warning]	<i>F C E R</i>	Fan counter speed warning
[Fan Feedback Warning]	<i>F F d R</i>	Fan feedback warning is raised
[BR Temp Warning]	<i>b o R</i>	Braking resistor temperature warning
[Ext. Error Warning]	<i>E F R</i>	External error warning
[Undervoltage Warning]	<i>u S R</i>	Undervoltage warning is raised
[Preventive UnderV Active]	<i>u P R</i>	Controlled stop on power loss threshold id reached
[Motor Freq High Thd]	<i>F t R</i>	Motor frequency high threshold 1 reached
[Motor Freq Low Thd]	<i>F t R L</i>	Motor frequency low threshold 1 reached
[Motor Freq High Thd 2]	<i>F q L R</i>	Motor frequency high threshold 2 reached
[Motor Freq Low Thd 2]	<i>F p R L</i>	Motor frequency low threshold 2 reached
[High Speed Reached]	<i>F L R</i>	High speed reached function result
[Ref Freq High Thd Reached]	<i>r t R H</i>	Reference frequency high threshold reached
[Ref Freq High Thd Reached]	<i>r t R L</i>	Reference frequency low threshold reached
[2nd Freq Thd Reached]	<i>F z R</i>	Frequency level reached (frequency meter)
[Current Thd Reached]	<i>C t R</i>	Motor current high threshold reached
[Low I Thd Reached]	<i>C t R L</i>	Motor current low threshold reached
[High Torque Warning]	<i>t t h R</i>	High torque warning

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Low Torque Warning]	<i>L</i> <i>E</i> <i>L</i> <i>R</i>	Low torque warning
[Process Undl Warning]	<i>u</i> <i>L</i> <i>R</i>	Underload is detected
[Process Overload Warning]	<i>o</i> <i>L</i> <i>R</i>	Overload is detected
[Torque Limit Reached]	<i>S</i> <i>S</i> <i>R</i>	Timeout on current or torque limitation is reached
[Torque Control Warning]	<i>r</i> <i>E</i> <i>R</i>	Torque control warning
[Drv Therm Thd Reached]	<i>E</i> <i>R</i> <i>d</i>	Drive thermal threshold reached function result
[Motor Therm Thd Reached]	<i>E</i> <i>S</i> <i>R</i>	Motor 1 thermal threshold reached
[Mot2 Therm Thd reached]	<i>E</i> <i>S</i> <i>2</i>	Motor 2 thermal threshold reached
[Mot3 Therm Thd reached]	<i>E</i> <i>S</i> <i>3</i>	Motor 3 thermal threshold reached
[Mot4 Therm Thd reached]	<i>E</i> <i>S</i> <i>4</i>	Motor 4 thermal threshold reached
[Power High Threshold]	<i>P</i> <i>E</i> <i>H</i> <i>R</i>	Power high threshold reached
[Power Low Threshold]	<i>P</i> <i>E</i> <i>H</i> <i>L</i>	Power low threshold reached
[Cust Warning 1]	<i>C</i> <i>R</i> <i>S</i> <i>1</i>	Customer warning 1 active
[Cust Warning 2]	<i>C</i> <i>R</i> <i>S</i> <i>2</i>	Customer warning 2 active
[Cust Warning 3]	<i>C</i> <i>R</i> <i>S</i> <i>3</i>	Customer warning 3 active
[Cust Warning 4]	<i>C</i> <i>R</i> <i>S</i> <i>4</i>	Customer warning 4 active
[Cust Warning 5]	<i>C</i> <i>R</i> <i>S</i> <i>5</i>	Customer warning 5 active
[Auto Backup Not Plugged]	<i>d</i> <i>r</i> <i>R</i> <i>P</i>	Automatic backup with Display Terminal not plugged
[Auto Backup Warning]	<i>d</i> <i>r</i> <i>E</i> <i>F</i>	Automatic backup transfer warning
[Slipping Warn]	<i>R</i> <i>n</i> <i>R</i>	Slipping warning
[Load Mvt Warn]	<i>b</i> <i>S</i> <i>R</i>	Load movement warning
[Brake Cont Warn]	<i>b</i> <i>c</i> <i>R</i>	Brake contact warning
[M/S Device Warn]	<i>P</i> <i>S</i> <i>d</i> <i>R</i>	Master/Slave device warning
[Current Reduc Warn]	<i>E</i> <i>L</i> <i>o</i> <i>W</i>	Current reduction warning
[Encoder Thermal Warn]	<i>E</i> <i>P</i> <i>E</i> <i>R</i>	Encoder Thermal warning
[Backlash Warn]	<i>b</i> <i>S</i> <i>9</i> <i>R</i>	Backlash warning

[Last Error] *L* *F* *E*

Last error which occurred.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[No Error]	<i>n</i> <i>o</i> <i>F</i>	No error detected
[EEPROM Control]	<i>E</i> <i>E</i> <i>F</i> <i>I</i>	EEPROM control
[Incorrect Configuration]	<i>C</i> <i>F</i> <i>F</i>	Invalid configuration at power-on
[Invalid Configuration]	<i>C</i> <i>F</i> <i>,</i>	Incorrect parameter configuration
[Modbus Com Interruption]	<i>S</i> <i>L</i> <i>F</i> <i>I</i>	Modbus local serial communication error
[Internal Link Error]	<i>,L</i> <i>F</i>	Option internal link error
[Fieldbus Com Interrupt]	<i>C</i> <i>n</i> <i>F</i>	Communication interruption on fieldbus module
[External Error]	<i>E</i> <i>P</i> <i>F</i> <i>I</i>	External error from LI or local link
[Overcurrent]	<i>o</i> <i>C</i> <i>F</i>	Over current error
[Precharge Capacitor]	<i>C</i> <i>r</i> <i>F</i>	Load relay error
[Encoder Feedback Loss]	<i>S</i> <i>P</i> <i>F</i>	Encoder Feedback Loss
[Load Sleeping]	<i>R</i> <i>n</i> <i>F</i>	Load sleeping
[Input Overheating]	<i>,H</i> <i>F</i>	Input Overheating error
[Drive Overheating]	<i>o</i> <i>H</i> <i>F</i>	Drive over heating error
[Motor Overload]	<i>o</i> <i>L</i> <i>F</i>	Motor overload error
[DC Bus Overvoltage]	<i>o</i> <i>b</i> <i>F</i>	DC bus overvoltage
[Supply Mains Overvoltage]	<i>o</i> <i>S</i> <i>F</i>	Over supply error
[Single Output Phase Loss]	<i>o</i> <i>P</i> <i>F</i> <i>I</i>	Motor 1-phase loss
[Input Phase Loss]	<i>P</i> <i>H</i> <i>F</i>	Main input 1-phase loss

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Supply Mains UnderV]	<i>u</i> S F	Under voltage error
[Motor Short Circuit]	S C F I	Motor short circuit error (hardware detection)
[Motor Overspeed]	S o F	Instability or driving load too high
[Autotuning Error]	t n F	Tune error
[Internal Error 1]	<i>i n F I</i>	Unknown drive rating
[Internal Error 2]	<i>i n F 2</i>	Unknown or incompatible power board
[Internal Error 3]	<i>i n F 3</i>	Internal communication error
[Internal Error 4]	<i>i n F 4</i>	Internal data inconsistent
[EEPROM Power]	E E F 2	Internal memory error
[Ground Short Circuit]	S C F 3	Direct ground short-circuit error (hardware detection)
[Output Phase Loss]	o P F 2	Motor 3-phases loss
[CANopen Com Interrupt]	C o F	CANopen communication error
[Brake Control]	b L F	Brake Control
[Internal Error 7]	<i>i n F 7</i>	CPLD communication error
[Fieldbus Error]	E P F 2	External error from fieldbus module
[Internal Error 8]	<i>i n F 8</i>	Power switching supply error
[Brake Feedback Loss]	b r F	Brake Feedback
[PC Com Interruption]	S L F 2	PC software communication interruption
[Encoder Coupling]	E c F	Encoder coupling
[Torque Limitation Error]	S S F	Torque limitation error
[HMI Com Interruption]	S L F 3	Display Terminal communication error
[Internal Error 9]	<i>i n F 9</i>	Current measurement circuit failure
[Internal Error 10]	<i>i n F R</i>	Customer supply error
[Internal Error 11]	<i>i n F b</i>	Thermal sensor error (OC or SC)
[IGBT Overheating]	t J F	IGBT over heating error
[IGBT Short Circuit]	S C F 4	IGBT short-circuit error (hardware detection)
[Motor Short Circuit]	S C F 5	Load short-circuit error during ION test sequence (hardware detection)
[Torque Timeout]	S r F	Torque timeout
[Internal Error 12]	<i>i n F c</i>	Internal error 12 (internal current supply)
[Encoder]	E n F	Encoder
[Input Contactor]	L C F	Line contactor failure
[Internal Error 6]	<i>i n F 6</i>	Unknown or incompatible option module
[Internal Error 14]	<i>i n F E</i>	CPU error (ram, flash, task ...)
[Braking Resistor ovd]	b o F	Braking resistor overload
[AI3 4-20 mA Loss]	L F F 3	AI3 4-20 mA loss
[AI4 4-20 mA Loss]	L F F 4	AI4 4-20 mA loss
[Boards Compatibility]	H C F	Hardware configuration error
[Dynamic Load Error]	d L F	Dynamic load detected error
[Conf Transfer Error]	C F , 2	Configuration transfer error
[AI5 4-20 mA Loss]	L F F 5	AI5 4-20 mA loss
[Channel Switch Error]	C S F	Channel switching error
[Process Underload]	u L F	Torque underload error
[Process Overload]	o L C	Torque overload error
[Angle Error]	R S F	Angle Setting error
[AI1 4-20 mA loss]	L F F I	AI1 4-20 mA loss
[Safety Function Error]	S R F F	Safety function error
[AI3 Th Detected Error]	t H 3 F	AI3 thermal sensor detected error
[AI3 Thermal Sensor Error]	t 3 C F	Thermal sensor error on AI3
[AI4 Th Detected Error]	t H 4 F	AI4 thermal sensor detected error

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[AI4 Thermal Sensor Error]	<i>E 4 C F</i>	Thermal sensor error on AI4
[AI5 Th Detected Error]	<i>E H 5 F</i>	AI5 thermal sensor detected error
[AI5 Thermal Sensor Error]	<i>E 5 C F</i>	Thermal sensor error on AI5
[Program Loading Error]	<i>P G L F</i>	Program loading detected error
[Program Running Error]	<i>P G r F</i>	Program running detected error
[Internal Error 16]	<i>i n F G</i>	Internal error 16
[Internal Error 17]	<i>i n F H</i>	Internal error 17
[Internal Error 0]	<i>i n F D</i>	Internal error 0 (IPC)
[Internal Error 13]	<i>i n F d</i>	Internal error 13 (different current)
[Motor Stall Error]	<i>S t F</i>	Motor stall detected error
[Internal Error 21]	<i>i n F L</i>	Internal error 21 (RTC)
[Embd Eth Com Interrupt]	<i>E E H F</i>	Embedded Ethernet communication interruption
[Internal Error 15]	<i>i n F F</i>	Internal error 15 (flash)
[Firmware Update Error]	<i>F W E r</i>	Firmware Update Error
[Internal Error 22]	<i>i n F P</i>	Internal error 22 (embedded Ethernet)
[Internal Error 25]	<i>i n F P</i>	Internal error 25
[Internal Error 20]	<i>i n F K</i>	Internal error 20
[Internal Error 19]	<i>i n F J</i>	Internal error 19 (encoder module)
[Internal Error 27]	<i>i n F r</i>	Internal error 27
[DB unit op. circuit]	<i>b u F o</i>	DB unit open circuit
[Drive Overload]	<i>E L o F</i>	Drive overload
[Multidrive Link Error]	<i>P d L F</i>	Multidrive link error
[AI1 Th Detected Error]	<i>E H 1 F</i>	AI1 thermal sensor detected error
[AI1 Thermal Sensor Error]	<i>E 1 C F</i>	Thermal sensor error on AI1
[Backlash Error]	<i>b S 9 F</i>	Backlash error
[M/S Device Error]	<i>P S d F</i>	Master/Slave device error
[Encoder Th Detected Error]	<i>E H E F</i>	Encoder thermal sensor detected error
[Encoder Th Sensor Error]	<i>E E C F</i>	Encoder thermal sensor error on Encoder
[Empty Configuration Error]	<i>c F , 4</i>	Empty configuration error
[FDR 1 Error]	<i>F d r I</i>	Embedded Ethernet FDR error

[Identification Error] ↴ n F 6 ★

Identification Error (inF6).

This parameter can be accessed if [Last Error] L F E is [Identification Error] ↴ n F 6.

Setting	Description
0...12 (value in Hex.)	Value = 0x00 : No error detected Value = 0x01 : No response of the option module Value = 0x02 : Signature reception timeout Value = 0x03 : ACK reception timeout Value = 0x04 : Signature length Value = 0x05 : CheckSum Value = 0x06 : Unknown state Value = 0x07 : UART receive Value = 0x08 : Unknown protocol version Value = 0x09 : Unknown module type Value = 0x0A : More than 5 unsuccessful tries Value = 0x0B : Unknown module type Value = 0x0C : Option module not supported by the slot Value = 0x0D : Same option module in more than one slot Value = 0x0E : O1SV not received Value = 0x0F : O1SV option module software version not compatible Value = 0x10 : reserved Value = 0x11 : reserved Value = 0x12 : Control terminal module not present or not recognized Factory setting: –

[Internal Error 19] ↴ n F J ★

Encoder module error code.

This parameter can be accessed if [Last Error] L F E is [Internal Error 19] ↴ n F J.

Setting	Description
0...65,535	Setting Range Factory setting: –

[Encoder Fdbck Error] E n C E ★

Encoder feedback error code.

This parameter can be accessed if **[Last Error] L F E** is **[Encoder Feedback Loss] S P F**.

Setting	Description
0...65,535	Setting range Encoder error Id 1: Encoder power supply overcurrent 10: AB encoder: A-line disconnected 11: AB encoder: B-line disconnected 12: AB encoder: tracking error 13: AB encoder: spike error 20: Resolver: LOS error 21: Resolver: DOS error 22: Resolver: LOT error 30: SinCos: loss of signal 31: SinCos: loss of signal 32: SinCos: tracking error 33: SinCos: spike error 40: Hiperface: timeout while waiting for response and retry exceeded 41: Hiperface: encoder type is not known and can not be read from encoder EEPROM 42: Hiperface: Hiperface command GetAbsolutePosition error 43: Hiperface: checksum error detected and retry exceeded 50: Endat: communication error 51: Endat: encoder not connected 52...56: Endat: error reading EnDat21 parameter 57: Endat: encoder does not support EnDat22 58: Endat: runtime compensation procedure 59: Endat: runtime compensation procedure 60: Endat: error in cyclic communication Factory setting: –

[Nb Of Start] n 5 n

Number of motor starts (resettable).

Setting	Description
0...4,294,967,295	Setting range Factory setting: 0

[Motor Run Time] r t H

Motor run time.

Run elapsed time display (resettable) in seconds (length of time the motor has been switched on).

Setting	Description
0...4,294,967,295 s	Setting range Factory setting: –

[Service message] 5 E r - Menu

Access

[Diagnostics] → [Diag. data] → [Service message]

About This Menu

This menu presents the service messages.

This is a user-defined service message configured in [My preferences] Π Y P → [Customization] C u S → [Service messages] 5 E r .

[Other State] 5 5 E - Menu

Access

[Diagnostics] → [Diag. data] → [Other State]

About This Menu

List of secondary states.

List

- [Set 1 active] C F P 1
- [Set 2 active] C F P 2
- [Set 3 active] C F P 3
- [PID Active] R u E o
- [DC Bus Charged] d b L
- [Fast stop Active] F S E
- [Fallback Frequency] F r F
- [Speed Maintained] r L S
- [Type of stop] S E E
- [Encoder Config] , C C
- [In braking] b r S
- [Frequency ref. att.] S r A
- [Forward] Π F r d
- [Reverse] Π r r S
- [In motor fluxing] F L X
- [Autotuning] E u n

[Diagnostics] - Menu

Access

[Diagnostics] → [Diag. data] → [Diagnostics]

About This Menu

This menu allows to make simple test sequences for diagnostics.

[FAN Diagnostics]

Diagnostics of internal fan(s).

This will start a test sequence.

[HMI LED Diagnostics]

Diagnostics of product LED(s).

This will start a test sequence.

[IGBT Diag w motor]

Diagnostics of product IGBT(s).

This will start a test sequence with the connected motor (open circuit/short-circuit).

[IGBT Diag w/o motor]

Diagnostics of product IGBT(s).

This will start a test sequence without the motor (short-circuit).

[Identification] - Menu

Access

[Diagnostics] → [Diag. data] → [Identification]

About This Menu

This is a read-only menu that cannot be configured. It enables the following information to be displayed:

- Drive reference, power rating, and voltage
- Drive software version
- Drive serial number
- Type of option modules present, with their software version
- Display Terminal type and version

Section 6.2

[Error history] $P F H$ - Menu

[Error history] $P F H$ - Menu

Access

[Diagnostics] → [Error history]

About This Menu

This menu shows the 15 last detected errors ($d P I$ to $d P F$).

Pressing OK key on the selected error code in the Error history list displays the drive data recorded when the error has been detected.

NOTE: Same content for [Last Error 1] $d P I$ to [Last Error F] $d P F$.

[Last Error 1] $d P I$

Last error 1.

Identical to [Last Error] $L F E$ (see page 66).

[Drive State] $H S I$

HMI status.

Identical to [Drive State] $H \Pi , S$ (see page 58).

[Last Error 1 Status] $E P I$

Status of last error 1.

DRIVECOM status register (same as [ETA state word] $E E R$).

[ETI state word] $\Pi P I$

ETI state word.

ETI status register (see the communication parameter file).

[Cmd word] $C \Pi P I$

Cmd word.

Command register (same as [Cmd word] $C \Pi d$).

[Motor current] $L C P I$

Motor current (same as [Motor Current] $L C r$).

Setting	Description
0...2*In	Setting range Factory setting: _

[Output frequency] $r F P I$

Output frequency (same as [Output frequency] $r F r$).

Setting	Description
-3,276.7...3,276.7 Hz	Setting range Factory setting: _

[Elapsed Time] $r E P$ /

Elapsed time.

Setting	Description
0...65,535 h	Setting range Factory setting: –

[DC bus voltage] $u L P$ /

DC bus voltage (same as [DC bus voltage] $u L P$ /).

Setting	Description
1.0...860.0 Vac	Setting range: [No meas.] – – – is displayed if no value is measured. Factory setting: –

[Motor therm state] $E H P$ /

Motor thermal state (same as [Motor Therm state] $E H r$).

Setting	Description
0...200%	Setting range Factory setting: –

[Command Channel] $d C C$ /

Command channel (same as [Command channel] $C P d C$).

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Terminals]	$E E r \Pi$	Terminal block
[HMI]	$H \Pi$	Display Terminal
[Modbus]	$\Pi d b$	Modbus serial
[CANopen]	$C R n$	CANopen
[Com. Module]	$n E t$	Fieldbus module
[Ethernet Module]	$E t h$	Embedded Ethernet
		NOTE: This selection can be accessed on ATV340...N4E drives.
[PC TOOL]	$P W 5$	DTM based commissioning software

[Ref Freq Channel] $d r C$ /

Channel for reference frequency (same as [Ref Freq Channel] $r F C C$).

Identical to [Command channel] $d C C$ / (see page 74).

[Motor Torque] $a E P$ /

Estimated motor torque value (same as [Motor Torque] $a E r$).

NOTE: The displayed value is always positive in motor mode and negative in generator mode whatever the direction.

Setting	Description
-300...300%	Setting range Factory setting: –

[Drive Thermal State] $E d P$ /

Measured drive thermal state (same as [Drive Therm State] $E H d$).

Setting	Description
0...200%	Setting range Factory setting: –

[IGBT Junction Temp] *E JP /*

Estimated junction temperature value.

Setting	Description
0...255 °C	Setting range Factory setting: _

[Switching Frequency] *S FP /*

Switching frequency applied (related to [Switching Frequency] *S Fr*).

Setting	Description
0...65,535 Hz	Setting range Factory setting: _

[Last Error 2] *d P 2* to [Last Error F] *d PF*

Last error 2... Last error F

Identical to [Last Error1] *d P 1* (*see page 73*).

Section 6.3

[Warnings] F1 - Menu

What Is in This Section?

This section contains the following topics:

Topic	Page
[Actual warnings] F1 - Menu	77
[Warning group 1 definition] F2 - Menu	77
[Warning group 2 definition] F3 - Menu	77
[Warning group 3 definition] F4 - Menu	77
[Warning group 4 definition] F5 - Menu	78
[Warning group 5 definition] F6 - Menu	78
[Warnings] F1 - Menu	78

[Actual warnings] $R L r d$ - Menu

Access

[Diagnostics] → [Warnings] → [Actual warnings]

About This Menu

List of current warnings.

If a warning is active, ✓ and ■ appears on the Display Terminal.

List of Available Warnings

Identical to [Last warning] $L R L r$ (*see page 65*).

[Warning group 1 definition] $R 1 C$ - Menu

Access

[Diagnostics] → [Warnings] → [Warning group 1 definition]

About This Menu

The following submenus group the warnings into 1 to 5 groups, each of which can be assigned to a relay or a digital output for remote signaling.

When one or a number of warnings selected in a group occurs, this warning group is activated.

List of Warnings

Identical to [Last warning] $L R L r$ (*see page 65*).

[Warning group 2 definition] $R 2 C$ - Menu

Access

[Diagnostics] → [Warnings] → [Warning group 2 definition]

About This Menu

Identical to [Warning group 1 definition] $R 1 C$ (*see page 77*)

[Warning group 3 definition] $R 3 C$ - Menu

Access

[Diagnostics] → [Warnings] → [Warning group 3 definition]

About This Menu

Identical to [Warning group 1 definition] $R 1 C$ (*see page 77*)

[Warning group 4 definition] $R\ 4\ L$ - Menu

Access

[Diagnostics] → [Warnings] → [Warning group 4 definition]

About This Menu

Identical to [Warning group 1 definition] $R\ 1\ L$ (*see page 77*)

[Warning group 5 definition] $R\ 5\ L$ - Menu

Access

[Diagnostics] → [Warnings] → [Warning group 5 definition]

About This Menu

Identical to [Warning group 1 definition] $R\ 1\ L$ (*see page 77*)

[Warnings] $R\ L\ r$ - Menu

Access

[Diagnostics] → [Warnings]

About This Menu

This menu presents the warning history (30 past warnings).

[Warning History] $R\ L\ H$

Identical to [Last warning] $L\ R\ L\ r$ (*see page 65*).

Chapter 7

[Display] *Display*

Introduction



[Display] *Display* - menu shows monitoring data related to the drive and the application.

It offers an application-oriented display in terms of energy, cost, cycle, efficiency, ...

This is available with customized units and graphics view.

What Is in This Chapter?

This chapter contains the following sections:

Section	Topic	Page
7.1	[Energy parameters]	80
7.2	[Application parameters]	87
7.3	[M/S parameters]	88
7.4	[Motor parameters]	93
7.5	[Drive parameters]	95
7.6	[Thermal monitoring]	99
7.7	[PID display]	100
7.8	[Counter management]	101
7.9	[Other state]	103
7.10	[I/O map]	104
7.11	[Communication map]	126
7.12	[Data logging]	149

Section 7.1

[Energy parameters]

What Is in This Section?

This section contains the following topics:

Topic	Page
[Elec Ener Input Counter] $E L \downarrow$ - Menu	81
[Elec Ener Output Counter] $E L \uparrow$ - Menu	83
[Mechanical energy] $\Pi E C$ - Menu	85
[Energy saving] $E S R$ - Menu	86

[Elec Ener Input Counter] *E L* , - Menu

Access

[Display] → [Energy parameters] → [Elec Ener Input Counter]

About This Menu

This menu presents the input electrical energy data.

[Active Input Power] *P r W*

Active electrical input power estimation.

Setting	Description
According to the drive rating	Setting range in kW if [Motor Standard] <i>b Fr</i> is set to [50 Hz IEC] 5 Ø or in HP if [Motor Standard] <i>b Fr</i> is set to [60 Hz NEMA] 6 Ø Factory setting: _

[Input Reactive Power] *q r W*

Reactive electrical input power.

Setting	Description
According to the drive rating	Setting range in kW if [Motor Standard] <i>b Fr</i> is set to [50 Hz IEC] 5 Ø or in HP if [Motor Standard] <i>b Fr</i> is set to [60 Hz NEMA] 6 Ø Factory setting: _

[Real Input Energy(TWh)] *E 4* ★

Input electrical power consumed (TWh).

This parameter can be accessed if [Real Input Energy(TWh)] *E 4* is not set to 0.

Setting	Description
-999...999 TWh	Setting range Factory setting: _

[Real Input Energy(GWh)] *E 3* ★

Input electrical power consumed (GWh).

Setting	Description
-999...999 GWh	Setting range Factory setting: _

[Real Input Energy(MWh)] *E 2* ★

Input electrical power consumed (MWh).

Setting	Description
-999...999 MWh	Setting range Factory setting: _

[Real Input Energy(kWh)] *E 1* ★

Input electrical power consumed (kWh).

Setting	Description
-999...999 kWh	Setting range Factory setting: _

[Real Input Energy(Wh)] , E D ★

Input electrical power consumed (Wh).

Setting	Description
-999...999 Wh	Setting range Factory setting: -

[Elec Ener Output Counter] *E L* - Menu

Access

[Display] → [Energy parameters] → [Elec Ener Output Counter]

About This Menu

This menu presents the output electrical energy data.

[Acv Elc out pwr estm] *E P r W*

Active electrical output power estimation.

Setting	Description
According to the drive rating	Setting range in kW if [Motor Standard] <i>b F r</i> is set to [50 Hz IEC] <i>5 D</i> or in HP if [Motor Standard] <i>b F r</i> is set to [60 Hz NEMA] <i>6 D</i> Factory setting: _

[Real Consumption(TWh)] *o E 4* ★

Electrical energy consumed (TWh).

This parameter can be accessed if [Real Consumption(TWh)] *o E 4* is not set to 0.

Setting	Description
-999...999 TWh	Setting range Factory setting: _

[Real Consumption(GWh)] *o E 3*

Electrical energy consumed (GWh).

Setting	Description
-999...999 GWh	Setting range Factory setting: _

[Real Consumption(MWh)] *o E 2*

Electrical energy consumed (MWh).

Setting	Description
-999...999 MWh	Setting range Factory setting: _

[Real Consumption(kWh)] *o E 1*

Electrical energy consumed (kWh).

Setting	Description
-999...999 kWh	Setting range Factory setting: _

[Real Consumption(Wh)] *o E 0*

Electrical energy consumed (Wh).

Setting	Description
-999...999 Wh	Setting range Factory setting: _

[Elc Egy Today] $\text{P} \text{C} \text{E}$

Electrical energy consumed today by the motor (kWh).

Setting	Description
0...4,294,967,295 kWh	Setting range Factory setting: _

[Elc Egy Yesterday] $\text{P} \text{C} \text{E}$

Electrical energy consumed yesterday by the motor (kWh).

Setting	Description
0...4,294,967,295 kWh	Setting range Factory setting: _

[Over-Consumption Thd] $\text{P} \text{C} \text{R} \text{H}$

Power level for over-consumption.

Setting	Description
[Under-Consumption Thd] $\text{P} \text{C} \text{R} \text{L}$...200.0%	Setting range Factory setting: 0.0%

[Under-Consumption Thd] $\text{P} \text{C} \text{R} \text{L}$

Power level for under-consumption.

Maximum value = $\text{P} \text{C} \text{R} \text{H}$ if $\text{P} \text{C} \text{R} \text{H} \leq 100\%$.

Setting	Description
0.0...100.0% or [Over-Consumption Thd] $\text{P} \text{C} \text{R} \text{H}$ if $\text{P} \text{C} \text{R} \text{H} \leq 100\%$	Setting range Factory setting: 0.0%

[Over/Under-Cons Delay] $\text{P} \text{C} \text{R} \text{E}$

Over/under-consumption detection time.

Setting	Description
0...60 min	Setting range Factory setting: 1 min

[Peak Output Power] $\text{P} \text{o} \text{E} \text{P}$

Peak output power.

Setting	Description
According to the drive rating	Setting range Factory setting: _

[Mechanical energy] - Menu

Access

[Display] → [Energy parameters] → [Mechanical energy]

About This Menu

This menu presents the output mechanical energy data.

[Power Estim Value] P r W

Motor mechanical power estimation.

Setting	Description
According to the drive rating	Setting range in kW if [Motor Standard] b F r is set to [50 Hz IEC] 5 D or in HP if [Motor Standard] b F r is set to [60 Hz NEMA] 6 D Factory setting: _

[Motor Consumption(TWh)] P E 4

Energy consumption (TWh).

This parameter can be accessed if [Motor Consumption(TWh)]  P E 4 is not set to 0.

Setting	Description
0...999 TWh	Setting range Factory setting: _

[Motor Consumption(GWh)] P E 3

Energy consumption (GWh).

Setting	Description
0...999 GWh	Setting range Factory setting: _

[Motor Consumption(MWh)] P E 2

Energy consumption (MWh).

Setting	Description
0...999 MWh	Setting range Factory setting: _

[Motor Consumption(kWh)] P E 1

Energy consumption (kWh).

Setting	Description
0...999 kWh	Setting range Factory setting: _

[Motor Consumption (Wh)] P E 0

Energy consumption (Wh).

Setting	Description
0...999 Wh	Setting range Factory setting: _

[Energy saving] E 5 R - Menu

Access

[Display] → [Energy parameters] → [Energy saving]

About This Menu

This menu presents the comparison in term of cost, energy, CO² between solutions with and without drive.

[Reference Power] P r E F

Reference Power without drive

Setting	Description
0.00...655.35 kW	Setting range in kW if [Motor Standard] b F r is set to [50 Hz IEC] 5 D or in HP if [Motor Standard] b F r is set to [60 Hz NEMA] 6 D. Factory setting: 0.00 kW

[kWh Cost] E C S E

Cost of the kWh.

Setting	Description
0.00...655.35 \$	Setting range in € if [Motor Standard] b F r is set to [50 Hz IEC] (50) or in \$ if [Motor Standard] b F r is set to [60 Hz NEMA] 6 D. Factory setting: _

[CO2 Ratio] E C o E

Quantity of CO² by kWh.

Setting	Description
0.000...65.535 kg/kWh	Setting range Factory setting: 0.000 kg/kWh

[Energy Saved] E 5 R V

Energy saved with the drive solution.

Setting	Description
0...4,294,967,295 kWh	Setting range Factory setting: _

[Money Saved] E R S H

Cost saved with the drive solution.

Setting	Description
0.00...42,949,672 \$	Setting range in € if [Motor Standard] b F r is set to [50 Hz IEC] 5 D or in \$ if [Motor Standard] b F r is set to [60 Hz NEMA] 6 D. Factory setting: _

[Co2 Saved] E o P S

CO² saved with the drive solution.

Setting	Description
0.0...429,496,729.5 t	Setting range Factory setting: _

Section 7.2

[Application parameters]

[Application parameters] *R P r* - Menu

Access

[Display] → [Application parameters]

About This Menu

This menu displays information related to the application.

[Application State] *R P P 5*

Application state.

This parameter indicates the drive application state.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Running]	<i>r u n</i>	No application function in progress; the drive is running
[Stop]	<i>S t o P</i>	No application function in progress; the drive is not running
[Local Mode Active]	<i>L o C R L</i>	Forced local mode activated
[Channel 2 Active]	<i>o V E r</i>	Override speed control mode activated
[Manual Mode Active]	<i>M a n u</i>	Motor running; manual PID mode is active
[PID Active]	<i>A u t o</i>	Motor running; auto PID mode is active
[Boost In progress]	<i>b o o S t</i>	The boost is in progress
[Sleep Active]	<i>S l e e p</i>	The sleep is active
[BL In Progress]	<i>b l s</i>	Backlash sequence is in progress

Section 7.3

[M/S parameters]

About this Menu

This menu can be accessed if **[M/S Comm Mode] $\text{P } 5 \text{ C } 1$** is not set to **[No] n o** .

What Is in This Section?

This section contains the following topics:

Topic	Page
[M/S Local Display] $\text{P } 5 \text{ o}$ - Menu	89
[M/S System Display] $\text{P } 5 \text{ r}$ - Menu	91

[M/S Local Display] $\pi 5 \sigma$ - Menu

Access

[Display] → [M/S parameters] → [M/S Local Display]

About This Menu

This menu present the master slave local display related parameters.

[M/S Status] $\pi 5 5$

M/S function status.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[None]	$\pi \sigma \pi E$	Not configured
[M/S Local Control]	$\pi R L E$	M/S local control
[M/S Not Ready]	$\pi r d Y$	M/S not ready
[M/S Ready]	$r E R d Y$	M/S ready
[M/S Running]	$r u n$	M/S running
[M/S Warning]	$R L R r \pi$	M/S warning

[M/S Master Speed Ref] $\pi 5 \pi 5$ ★

M/S Master speed reference.

This parameter can be accessed if [M/S Comm Mode] $\pi 5 \pi \pi$ is set to [[No]] $\pi \sigma$.

Setting	Description
-599.0...599.0 Hz	Setting range Factory setting: _

[M/S Master Torque Ref] $\pi 5 \pi E$ ★

M/S Master torque reference.

This parameter can be accessed if [M/S Comm Mode] $\pi 5 \pi \pi$ is set to [[No]] $\pi \sigma$.

Setting	Description
-32,767...32,767 Nm	Setting range Factory setting: _

[M/S Local Speed Ref] $\pi 5 5 r$ ★

M/S Local speed reference.

This parameter can be accessed if:

- [M/S Comm Mode] $\pi 5 \pi \pi$ is not set to [[No]] $\pi \sigma$, and
- [M/S Device Role] $\pi 5 d E$ is set to [[Slave]] $5 L R V E$.

Setting	Description
-599.0...599 Hz	Setting range Factory setting: _

[M/S Local Torque Ref]

M/S Local torque reference.

This parameter can be accessed if:

- [M/S Comm Mode] **15C1** is not set to [[No]] **n o**, and
- [M/S Device Role] **15d1** is set to [[Slave]] **SLAVE**.

Setting	Description
-32,767...32,767 Nm	Setting range Factory setting: _

[Motor Frequency]

Motor frequency.

Setting	Description
-3,276.7...3,276.7 Hz	Setting range Factory setting: 0.0 Hz

[Motor Torque (Nm)]

Motor torque.

Output torque value.

NOTE: The displayed value is always positive in motor and negative in generator mode whatever the direction.

Setting	Description
-32,767...32,767 Nm	Setting range: according to drive ratings Factory setting: _

[M/S System Display] $\pi 5 r$ - Menu

Access

[Display] → [M/S parameters] → [M/S System Display]

About This Menu

This menu present the master slave system related parameters.

This menu can be accessed if [M/S Comm Mode] $\pi 5 c \pi$ is set to [MultiDrive Link] $\pi d L$.

[M/S Local Speed Ref] $\pi 5 s r$ ★

M/S output speed reference.

This parameter can be accessed if:

- [M/S Comm Mode] $\pi 5 c \pi$ is not set to [[No]] $\pi n o$, and
- [M/S Device ID] $\pi 5 i d$ is set to [[Slave]] $\pi L R V E$.

Setting	Description
-599.0...599 Hz	Setting range Factory setting: _

[M/S Local Torque Ref] $\pi 5 t r$ ★

M/S output torque reference.

This parameter can be accessed if:

- [M/S Comm Mode] $\pi 5 c \pi$ is not set to [[No]] $\pi n o$, and
- [M/S Device ID] $\pi 5 i d$ is set to [[Slave]] $\pi L R V E$.

Setting	Description
-32,767...32,767 Nm	Setting range Factory setting: _

[M/S Device Selection] $\pi 5 d n$

M/S device selection.

This parameter allows to select the device parameters to be displayed.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Master]	$\pi 5 t E r$	Master Factory setting
[Slave 1]	$\pi L V 1$	Slave 1
[Slave 2]	$\pi L V 2$	Slave 2
[Slave 3]	$\pi L V 3$	Slave 3
[Slave 4]	$\pi L V 4$	Slave 4
[Slave 5]	$\pi L V 5$	Slave 5
[Slave 6]	$\pi L V 6$	Slave 6
[Slave 7]	$\pi L V 7$	Slave 7
[Slave 8]	$\pi L V 8$	Slave 8
[Slave 9]	$\pi L V 9$	Slave 9
[Slave 10]	$\pi L V 10$	Slave 10

[M/S Device Status] *P 5 d 5*

M/S device status.

Status of the device selected using **[M/S Device Selection] *P 5 d n***.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[None]	<i>n o n E</i>	Not configured
[M/S Not Ready]	<i>n r d Y</i>	M/S not ready
[M/S Ready]	<i>r E R d Y</i>	M/S ready
[M/S Running]	<i>r u n</i>	M/S running
[M/S Warning]	<i>R L R r P</i>	M/S warning

[M/S Device Speed Ref] *P 5 X 5*

M/S device speed reference.

Displays the local speed reference value of the device selected using **[M/S Device Selection] *P 5 d n***.

Setting	Description
-599.0...599 Hz	Setting range Factory setting: <u>_</u>

[M/S Device Torque Ref] *P 5 X 5*

M/S device torque reference.

Displays the local torque reference value of the device selected using **[M/S Device Selection] *P 5 d n***.

Setting	Description
-32,767...32,767 Nm	Setting range Factory setting: <u>_</u>

Section 7.4

[Motor parameters]

[Motor parameters] *M P d* - Menu

Access

[Display] → [Motor parameters]

About This Menu

This menu shows the motor-related parameters.

[Motor Speed] *S P d*

Motor speed.

This parameter displays the estimated rotor speed without motor slip.

Setting	Description
0...65,535 rpm	Setting range Factory setting:-

[Motor Mechanical speed] *S P d N*

Motor mechanical speed.

This parameter displays the estimated rotor speed with motor slip.

Setting	Description
[Undefined] <i>u n d</i> ...32,765 rpm	Setting range Factory setting:-

[Signed Mech Speed] *S P d I*

Signed motor mechanical speed.

Setting	Description
-100,000...100,000 rpm	Setting range Factory setting:-

[Motor Voltage] *u o P*

Motor voltage.

Setting	Description
0...65,535 V	Setting range Factory setting:-

[Motor Power] *o P r*

Motor power.

Output power in % (100% = nominal motor power).

Setting	Description
-300...300%	Setting range Factory setting: -

[Nom Motor Torque] $E \text{ } \textcolor{green}{T} \text{ } n$

Computed nominal motor torque in Nm (+/- 2%).

Setting (S)	Description
0.01...655.35 Nm Depend of the drive rating	Setting range Factory setting: –

[Motor Torque] $\text{a } E \text{ } r$

Motor torque.

Output torque value (100% = [Nom Motor Torque] $E \text{ } \textcolor{green}{T} \text{ } n$).

NOTE: The displayed value is always positive in motor mode and negative in generator mode whatever the direction.

Setting	Description
-300.0... 300.0%	Setting range Factory setting: –

[Motor Torque (Nm)] $\text{a } E \text{ } \textcolor{green}{T} \text{ } n$

Motor torque (Nm).

Output torque value.

NOTE: The displayed value is always positive in motor mode and negative in generator mode whatever the direction.

Setting	Description
-32,767 Nm...32,767 Nm	Setting range: according to drive ratings Factory setting: –

[Motor Current] $L \text{ } \textcolor{green}{C} \text{ } r$

Motor current.

Setting	Description
0.00...655.35 A	Setting range Factory setting: –

[Motor Therm state] $E \text{ } H \text{ } r$

Motor thermal state.

The normal motor thermal state is 100%, the [Motor Overload] $\text{a } L \text{ } F$ is set to 118%.

Setting	Description
0...200%	Setting range Factory setting: –

Section 7.5

[Drive parameters]

[Drive parameters] *P* - Menu

Access

[Display] → [Drive parameters]

About This Menu

This menu shows the drive-related parameters.

[AIV1 Image input] *R* , *V* , *I*

AIV1 Image input.

This parameter is read-only. It enables to display the speed reference applied to the motor via the fieldbus channel.

Setting (i)	Description
-8,192...8,192	Setting range Factory setting: –

[Pre-Ramp Ref Freq] *F* *r* *H*

Frequency reference before ramp.

This parameter is read-only. It enables to display the speed reference applied to the motor, regardless of which reference channel has been selected.

Setting	Description
-599.0...599.0 Hz	Setting range Factory setting: 0 Hz

[Ref Frequency] *L* *F* *r*

Reference frequency.

This parameter only appears if the function has been enabled. It is used to change the speed reference from the remote control. OK does not have to be pressed to enable a change of reference.

Setting (i)	Description
-599.0...599.0 Hz	Setting range Factory setting: –

[Torque ref.] *L* *E* *r* ★

Torque reference.

This parameter only appears if the function has been enabled. It is used to change the torque reference value from the remote control. OK does not have to be pressed to enable a change of reference value.

This parameter can be accessed if:

- [Trq/spd switching] *E* *S* *S* is not set to [Not Assigned] *n* *o*, and
- [Torque ref. channel] *E* *r* *I* is set to [Ref. Freq-Rmt.Term] *L* *E* *L*.

Setting (i)	Description
-300.0...300.0%	Setting range Factory setting: –

[Torque reference] T_{ref} ★

Torque reference.

This parameter can be accessed if:

- [M/S Device Role] NSR is set to [Slave] $SLAVE$, and
- [M/S Control Type] NSC is set to:
 - [Torque Direct] $T_{ref\,dir}$, or
 - [Torque Reverse] $T_{ref\,rev}$, or
 - [Torque Custom] $T_{ref\,custom}$.

Setting (S)	Description
-32,767...32,767	Setting range Factory setting: –

[Motor Frequency] f_M

Motor frequency.

This parameter displays the estimated rotor frequency without motor slip.

Setting	Description
-3,276.7...3,276.7 Hz	Setting range Factory setting: 0.0 Hz

[Stator Frequency] f_S ★

Stator frequency.

This parameter can be accessed if [Access Level] REL is set to [Expert] EXP

Setting (S)	Description
[No Freq Applied] NO_FREQ ...599.0 Hz	Setting range Factory setting: –

[Rotor Frequency] f_R ★

Rotor frequency.

This parameter displays the estimated rotor frequency with motor slip.

This parameter can be accessed if [Access Level] REL is set to [Expert] EXP

Setting (S)	Description
[No Freq Applied] NO_FREQ ...599.0 Hz	Setting range Factory setting: –

[Measured output fr.] f_{out} ★

Measured output frequency.

This parameter can be accessed only if an encoder module has been inserted or embedded encoder is used, and the available selections will depend on the type of encoder module used.

Setting (S)	Description
-3,276.7...3,276.7	Setting range Factory setting: –

[Multiplying Coeff.] PF_r ★

Multiplying coefficient.

This parameter can be accessed if [Ref Freq - Multiply] PAZ, PAZ has been assigned.

Setting ()	Description
0...100%	Setting range Factory setting: –

[Measured Freq] F_{q5} ★

Pulse input measured frequency.

This parameter can be accessed if [Frequency meter] F_{qF} is not set to [Not Configured] no .

Setting ()	Description
0...30 KHz	Setting range Factory setting: –

[Mains Voltage] u_L u

Mains voltage based on AC bus measurement, motor running or stopped.

Setting	Description
1.0...860.0 Vac	Setting range: [no meas.] – – – is displayed if no value is measured. Factory setting: –

[Mains Voltage phase 1-2] u_{L1}

Mains voltage phase measurement.

Setting	Description
-3,276.7...3,276.7 Vac	Setting range Factory setting: –

[Mains Voltage phase 2-3] u_{L2}

Mains voltage phase measurement.

Setting	Description
-3,276.7...3,276.7 Vac	Setting range Factory setting: –

[Mains Voltage phase 3-1] u_{L3}

Mains voltage phase measurement

Setting	Description
-3,276.7...3,276.7 Vac	Setting range Factory setting: –

[Mains Frequency] F_{FLC}

Mains frequency monitoring

Setting	Description
-3276.7 Hz...3276.7 Hz	Setting range Factory setting: –

[DC Bus Voltage] V b u 5

DC bus voltage.

Setting	Description
0...65,535 Vdc	Setting range Factory setting: –

[Drive Therm State] E H d

Drive thermal state.

The normal drive thermal state is 100%, the **[Motor Overload]** □ L F is set to 118%.

Setting	Description
0...200%	Setting range Factory setting: –

[Used Param. Set] L F P 5 ★

Used parameter set.

Configuration parameter status (can be accessed if parameter switching function has been enabled).

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[None]	□ □	Not assigned
[Set N°1]	L F P 1	Parameter set 1 active
[Set N°2]	L F P 2	Parameter set 2 active
[Set N°3]	L F P 3	Parameter set 3 active

[Config. active] L n F 5

Active configuration.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[In progress]	□ □	Transitory state
[Config. No.0]	L n F 0	Configuration 0 active
[Config. No.1]	L n F 1	Configuration 1 active
[Config. No.2]	L n F 2	Configuration 2 active
[Config 3 active]	L n F 3	Configuration 3 active

Section 7.6

[Thermal monitoring]

[Thermal Monitoring] *E P Π* - Menu

Access

[Display] → [Thermal Monitoring]

About This Menu

The content of this menu can be accessed if the thermal monitoring function has been activated.

Wiring

Refer to the wiring (*see page 179*) of the [Thermal monitoring] *E P P* - menu.

[AI1 Th Value] *E H 1 V* ★

AI1 thermal value.

Setting	Description
-15...200°C	Setting range Factory setting: –

[AI3 Th Value] *E H 3 V* ★

AI3 thermal value.

Identical to [AI1 Th Value] *E H 1 V*.

[AI4 Th Value] *E H 4 V* ★

AI4 thermal value.

Identical to [AI1 Th Value] *E H 1 V*.

This parameter can be accessed if VW3A3203 I/O extension module has been inserted.

[AI5 Th Value] *E H 5 V* ★

AI5 thermal value.

Identical to [AI1 Th Value] *E H 1 V*.

This parameter can be accessed if VW3A3203 I/O extension module has been inserted.

[Enc Th Value] *E h E V*

Encoder thermal sensor value

Setting	Description
-15...200°C	Setting range Factory setting: –

Section 7.7

[PID display]

[PID display] P_C - Menu

Access

[Display] → [PID display]

About This Menu

NOTE: This function cannot be used with some other functions.

Following parameters can be accessed if [PID feedback] P_F is not set to [Not Configured] \square .

[Internal PID ref] P_C ★

Internal PID reference.

Setting	Description
0...32,767	Setting range Factory setting: 150

[PID Reference] P_C ★

PID setpoint value.

Setting	Description
0...65,535	Setting range Factory setting: 0

[PID feedback] P_F ★

PID feedback value.

Setting	Description
0...65,535	Setting range Factory setting: 0

[PID Error] P_E ★

PID error value.

Setting	Description
-32,767...32,767	Setting range Factory setting: –

[PID Output] P_O ★

PID output value.

Setting	Description
[PID Min Output] $P_O L$... [PID Max Output] $P_O h$	Setting range Factory setting: –

Section 7.8

[Counter management]

[Counter Management] *E L E* - Menu

Access

[Display] → [Counter Management]

About This Menu

This menu shows the drive and motor-related counters.

[Motor Run Time] *r E H*

Motor run time.

Run elapsed time display (resettable) in seconds (length of time the motor has been switched on).

Setting	Description
0...4,294,967,295 s	Setting range Factory setting: _

[Power-on Time] *P E H*

Power-on time (resettable) or counter can be set to 0 by using the [Time Counter Reset] *r P r* parameter.

Setting	Description
0...4,294,967,295 s	Setting range Factory setting: _

[Fan Operation Time] *F P b E*

Fan operation time.

As soon as [Fan Operation Time] *F P b E* reach the predefined value of 45,000 hours, a warning [Fan Counter Warning] *F C E A* is triggered.

[Fan Operation Time] *F P b E* counter can be set to 0 by using the [Time Counter Reset] *r P r* parameter.

Setting	Description
0...500,000 h	Setting range Factory setting: _

[Nb Of Start] *n S N*

Number of motor starts (resettable) or counter can be set to 0 by using the [Time Counter Reset] *r P r* parameter.

Setting	Description
0...4,294,967,295	Setting range Factory setting: _

[Time Counter Reset] *r P r*

Time counter reset.

Setting (S)	Code / Value	Description
[No]	<i>r o</i>	No Factory setting
[Run Time Reset]	<i>r t H</i>	Run time reset
[Power ON Time Reset]	<i>P t H</i>	Power ON time reset
[Reset Fan Counter]	<i>F t H</i>	Reset fan counter
[Clear NSM]	<i>r S n</i>	Clear number of motor starts

Section 7.9

[Other state]

[Other state] 5 5 E - Menu

Access

[Display] → [Other state]

About This Menu

List of secondary states.

List

- [Set 1 active] L F P 1
- [Set 2 active] L F P 2
- [Set 3 active] L F P 3
- [Automatic restart] R u E o
- [DC Bus Charged] d b L
- [Fast stop Active] F S E
- [Fallback Frequency] F r F
- [Speed Maintained] r L S
- [Type of stop] S E t
- [Encoder Config] , L C
- [In braking] b r S
- [Ref Freq Warning] S r R
- [Forward] F F r d
- [Reverse] F r r S
- [In motor fluxing] F L X
- [Autotuning] E u o

Section 7.10

[I/O map]

What Is in This Section?

This section contains the following topics:

Topic	Page
[Digital Input Map] $L \rightarrow R$ - Menu	105
[AI1] $R \rightarrow I C$ - Menu	106
[AI2] $R \rightarrow 2 C$ - Menu	108
[AI3] $R \rightarrow 3 C$ - Menu	109
[AI4] $R \rightarrow 4 C$ - Menu	110
[AI5] $R \rightarrow 5 C$ - Menu	111
[Analog inputs image] $R \rightarrow R$ - Menu	112
[Digital output map] $L \rightarrow R$ - Menu	112
[AQ1] $R \rightarrow I C$ - Menu	113
[AQ2] $R \rightarrow 2 C$ - Menu	117
[PTO Frequency] $P E \rightarrow C$ - Menu	119
[DI7 frequency measured] $P F C 7$ - Menu	121
[DI8 frequency measured] $P F C 8$ - Menu	123
[PTI Freq Measured] $P E \rightarrow F$ - Menu	124

[Digital Input Map] *L* , *R* - Menu

Access

[Display] → [I/O map] → [Digital Input Map]

About This Menu

This menu presents the state and assignment of digital inputs.

Read-only parameters, cannot be configured.

It is used to visualize the state of the digital inputs and Safe Torque Off inputs.

It displays all the functions that are assigned to the digital input in order to verify for multiple assignments.

If no functions have been assigned, [No] *n o* is displayed. Use the touch wheel to scroll through the functions.

[AI1] R , IC - Menu**Access**

[Display] → [I/O map] → [Analog inputs image] → [AI1]

[AI1] R , IC

Physical value AI1.

AI1 customer image: value of analog input 1.

Setting	Description
-32,767...32,767	Setting range Factory setting: –

NOTE: The parameters **[AI1 Assignment] R , IR**, **[AI1 min value] u , L I**, **[AI1 max value] u , H I** and **[AI1 filter] R , IF** can be accessed on the Display Terminal by pressing the OK key on the **[AI1] R , IC** parameter.

[AI1 Assignment] R , IR

Analog input AI1 functions assignment.

Read-only parameter, cannot be configured. It displays all the functions associated with input AI1 in order to verify, for example, for compatibility problems.

If no functions have been assigned, **[No] n o** is displayed.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[No]	n o	Not assigned
[Torque Ref Offset]	t 9 o	Torque offset source
[Torque Ref Ratio]	t 9 r	Torque ratio source
[Ref Freq Channel 1]	F r 1	Reference frequency channel 1 Factory Setting
[Ref Freq Channel 2]	F r 2	Reference frequency channel 2
[Ref Frequency 2 Summing]	S R 2	Reference frequency 2 summing
[Torque limitation]	t R R	Torque limitation: activation by an analog value
[Torque limitation 2]	t R R 2	Torque limitation: activation by an analog value
[Subtract Ref Freq 2]	d R 2	Subtract reference frequency 2
[Manual PID Ref.]	P , n	Manual speed reference of the PID controller (auto-man)
[PID Ref Frequency]	F P ,	PID reference frequency
[Ref Frequency 3 Summing]	S R 3	Reference frequency 3 summing
[Ref Frequency 1B]	F r 1b	Reference frequency 1B
[Subtract Ref Freq 3]	d R 3	Subtract reference frequency 3
[Forced local]	F L o C	Forced local reference source1
[Ref Frequency 2 multiplier]	P R 2	Reference frequency 2 multiplier
[Ref Frequency 3 multiplier]	P R 3	Reference frequency 3 multiplier
[Torque reference]	t r 1	Torque regulation: torque set point 1
[Torque reference 2]	t r 2	Torque regulation: torque set point 2
[External Feed Forward]	t E F F	External feed-forward
[M/S Speed Ref In]	P S S ,	Master Slave: speed input
[M/S Trq Ref In]	P S t ,	Master Slave: torque input

[AI1 min value] U_{L} / \star

AI1 minimum value.

AI1 voltage scaling parameter of 0%.

This parameter can be accessed if [AI1 Type] R_{L} / I_E is set to [Voltage] ID_{U} .

Setting	Description
0.0...10.0 Vdc	Setting range Factory setting: 0.0 Vdc

[AI1 max value] U_{H} / \star

AI1 maximum value.

AI1 voltage scaling parameter of 100%.

This parameter can be accessed if [AI1 Type] R_{L} / I_E is set to [Voltage] ID_{U} .

Setting	Description
0.0...10.0 Vdc	Setting range Factory setting: 10.0 Vdc

[AI1 min. value] C_{rL} / \star

AI1 minimum value.

AI1 current scaling parameter of 0%.

This parameter can be accessed if [AI1 Type] R_{L} / I_E is set to [Current] ID_{R} .

Setting	Description
0.0...20.0 mA	Setting range Factory setting: 0.0 mA

[AI1 max. value] C_{rH} / \star

AI1 maximum value.

AI1 current scaling parameter of 100%.

This parameter can be accessed if [AI1 Type] R_{L} / I_E is set to [Current] ID_{R} .

Setting	Description
0.0...20.0 mA	Setting range Factory setting: 20.0 mA

[AI1 filter] R_{F} / IF

AI1 filter.

Interference filtering.

Setting	Description
0.00...10.00 s	Setting range Factory setting: 0.00 s

[AI2] R , 2 C - Menu**Access**

[Display] → [I/O map] → [Analog inputs image] → [AI2]

[AI2] R , 2 C

Physical value AI2.

AI2 customer image: value of analog input 2.

Identical to [AI1] R , 1 C (*see page 106*).

[AI2 Assignment] R , 2 R

Configuration of AI2.

Identical to [AI1 Assignment] R , 1 R (*see page 106*).

[AI2 min value] u , L 2 ★

AI2 minimum value.

AI2 voltage scaling parameter of 0%.

This parameter can be accessed if [AI2 Type] R , 2 E is set to [Voltage] 10 u.

Identical to [AI1 min value] u , L 1 (*see page 107*).

[AI2 max value] u , H 2 ★

AI2 maximum value.

AI2 voltage scaling parameter of 100%.

This parameter can be accessed if [AI2 Type] R , 2 E is set to [Voltage] 10 u.

Identical to [AI1 max value] u , H 1 (*see page 107*).

[AI2 filter] R , 2 F

AI2 filter.

Interference filtering.

Identical to [AI1 filter] R , 1 F (*see page 107*).

[AI3] - Menu

Access

[Display] → [I/O map] → [Analog inputs image] → [AI3]

This menu can be accessed on drives with a power **greater than 22 kW**.

[AI3]

Physical value AI3.

AI3 customer image: value of analog input 3.

Identical to [AI1] (see page 106).

[AI3 Assignment]

Configuration of AI3.

Identical to [AI1 Assignment] (see page 106).

[AI3 min value]

AI3 voltage scaling parameter of 0%.

This parameter can be accessed if [AI3 Type] is set to [Voltage] .

Identical to [AI1 min value] (see page 107).

[AI3 max value]

AI3 voltage scaling parameter of 100%.

This parameter can be accessed if [AI3 Type] is set to [Voltage] .

Identical to [AI1 max value] (see page 107).

[AI3 min. value]

Value for low speed AI3.

AI3 current scaling parameter of 0%.

This parameter can be accessed if [AI3 Type] is set to [Current] .

Identical to [AI1 min. value] (see page 107).

[AI3 max. value]

Value for high-speed AI3.

AI3 current scaling parameter of 100%.

This parameter can be accessed if [AI3 Type] is set to [Current] .

Identical to [AI1 max. value] (see page 107).

[AI3 Filter]

AI3 filter.

Interference filtering.

Identical to [AI1 filter] (see page 107).

[AI4] R , 4 C - Menu**Access**

[Display] → [I/O map] → [Analog inputs image] → [AI4]

[AI4] R , 4 C

Physical value AI4.

AI4 customer image: value of analog input 4.

Identical to [AI1] R , 1 C (see page 106).

[AI4 Assignment] R , 4 R

AI4 functions assignment. If no functions have been assigned, [No] n o is displayed.

Identical to [AI1 Assignment] R , 1 R (see page 106).

[AI4 min value] u , L 4 ★

AI4 minimum value.

AI4 voltage scaling parameter of 0%.

This parameter can be accessed if [AI4 Type] R , 4 E is set to [Voltage] 1 0 u .

Identical to [AI1 min value] u , L 1 (see page 107).

[AI4 max value] u , H 4 ★

AI4 maximum value.

AI4 voltage scaling parameter of 100%.

This parameter can be accessed if [AI4 Type] R , 4 E is set to [Voltage] 1 0 u .

Identical to [AI1 max value] u , H 1 (see page 107).

[AI4 min. value] L r L 4 ★

AI4 minimum value.

AI4 current scaling parameter of 0%.

This parameter can be accessed if [AI4 Type] R , 4 E is set to [Current] D R .

Identical to [AI1 min. value] L r L 1 (see page 107).

[AI4 max. value] L r H 4 ★

AI4 maximum value.

AI4 current scaling parameter of 100%.

This parameter can be accessed if [AI4 Type] R , 4 E is set to [Current] D R .

Identical to [AI1 max. value] L r H 1 (see page 107).

[AI4 filter] R , 4 F

Interference filtering cut-off time of the low-filter.

Identical to [AI1 filter] R , 1 F (see page 107).

[AI5] R , S L - Menu**Access**

[Display] → [I/O map] → [Analog inputs image] → [AI5]

[AI5] R , S C

AI5 customer image: value of analog input 5.

Identical to [AI1] R , IC (see page 106).

[AI5 Assignment] R , S R

AI5 functions assignment. If no functions have been assigned, [No] n □ is displayed.

Identical to [AI1 Assignment] R , IR (see page 106).

[AI5 min value] u , L 5 ★

AI5 voltage scaling parameter of 0%.

This parameter can be accessed if [AI5 Type] R , SE is set to [Voltage] 10 u.

Identical to [AI1 min value] u , L I (see page 107).

[AI5 max value] u , H 5 ★

AI5 voltage scaling parameter of 100%.

This parameter can be accessed if [AI5 Type] R , SE is set to [Voltage] 10 u.

Identical to [AI1 max value] u , H I (see page 107).

[AI5 min. value] L r L 5 ★

AI5 current scaling parameter of 0%.

This parameter can be accessed if [AI5 Type] R , SE is set to [Current] 0 A.

Identical to [AI1 min. value] L r L I (see page 107).

[AI5 max. value] L r H 5 ★

AI5 current scaling parameter of 100%.

This parameter can be accessed if [AI5 Type] R , SE is set to [Current] 0 A.

Identical to [AI1 max. value] L r H I (see page 107).

[AI5 filter] R , S F

Interference filtering cut-off time of the low filter.

Identical to [AI1 filter] R , IF (see page 107).

[Analog inputs image] - Menu

Access

[Display] → [I/O map] → [Analog inputs image]

[Enc Resistor Value]

Encoder thermal resistor value.

This parameter can be accessed if:

- An encoder module has been inserted or embedded encoder is used, and
- [Enc Therm Sensor Type] is not set to [None] .

Setting	Description
-32,767...32,767	Setting range Factory setting: _

[Digital output map] - Menu

Access

[Display] → [I/O map] → [Digital output map]

About This Menu

DQ assignment.

R1, R2 assignment.

R3 assignment for drives with a power greater than 22 kW.

R4, R5, R6 assignment if VW3A3204 relay output option module has been inserted.

DQ11, DQ12 assignment if VW3A3203 I/O extension module has been inserted.

On the Display Terminal, click the digital output to see the assignment.

Read-only parameters, cannot be configured.

It displays the function which is assigned to a digital output. If no function has been assigned, [Not assigned] is displayed.

It allows to verify the delay, active state, and holding time set for the digital output. Possible values are identical as those in the configuration menu.

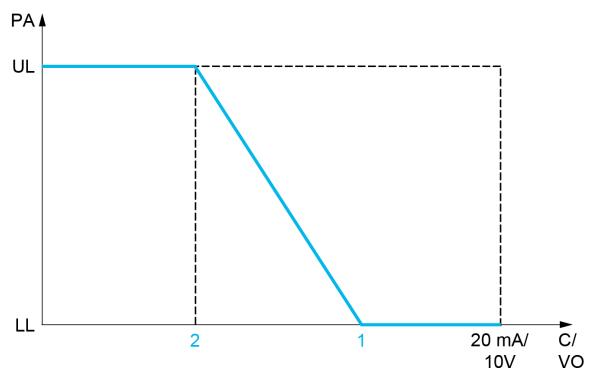
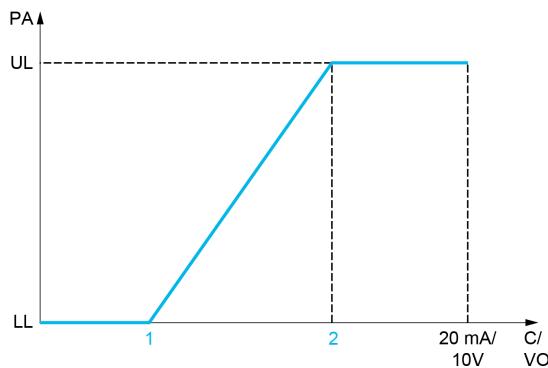
[AQ1] - Menu

Access

[Display] → [I/O map] → [Analog outputs image] → [AQ1]

Minimum and Maximum Output Values

The minimum output value, in volts, corresponds to the lower limit of the assigned parameter and the maximum value corresponds to its upper limit. The minimum value may be greater than the maximum value.



PA Parameter assigned

C / VO Current or voltage output

UL Upper limit

LL Low limit

1 **[Min Output]** L X or L X

2 **[Max Output]** H X or H X

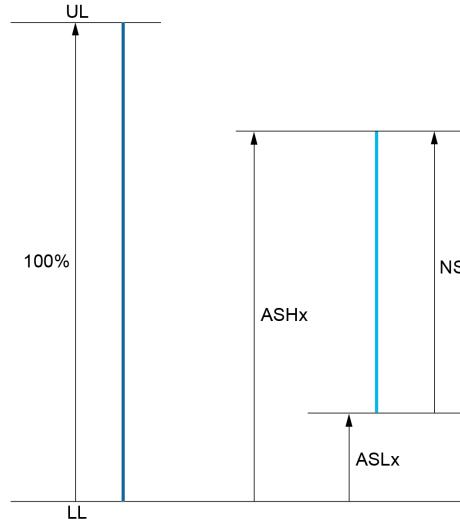
Scaling of the Assigned Parameter

The scale of the assigned parameter can be adapted in accordance with requirements by modifying the values of the lower and upper limits with two parameters for each analogic output.

These parameters are given in %. 100% corresponds to the total variation range of the configured parameter, so: 100% = upper limit - lower limit.

For example, **[Sign. torque] 5 E 9** which varies between -3 and +3 times the rated torque, 100% corresponds to 6 times the rated torque.

- The **[Scaling AQx min] R 5 L X** parameter modifies the lower limit: new value = lower limit + (range x **R 5 L X**). The value 0% (factory setting) does not modify the lower limit.
- The **[Scaling AQx max] R 5 H X** parameter modifies the upper limit: new value = lower limit + (range x **R 5 L X**). The value 100% (factory setting) does not modify the upper limit.
- **[Scaling AQx min] R 5 L X** must always be lower than **[Scaling AQx max] R 5 H X**.



UL Upper limit of the assigned parameter

LL Lower limit of the assigned parameter

NS New scale

R 5 H X Scaling max

R 5 L X Scaling min

Application Example

The value of the motor current at the AQ1 output is to be transferred with 0...20 mA, range 2 in motor, in motor being the equivalent of a 0.8 A drive.

- The **[Motor Current] o C r** parameter varies from 0 to 2 times the rated drive current.
- **[Scaling AQ1 min] R 5 L I** must not modify the lower limit, which therefore remains at its factory setting of 0%.
- **[Scaling AQ1 max] R 5 H I** must modify the upper limit by 0.5x the rated motor torque, or $100 - 100/5 = 80\%$ (new value = lower limit + (range x ASH1)).

[AQ1] R o IC

AQ1 customer image: value of analogic output 1.

Setting ()	Description
-32,767...32,767	Setting range Factory setting: _

[AQ1 assignment] R o I

AQ1 assignment.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Not Configured]	n o	Not assigned
[Motor Current]	o L r	Current in the motor, from 0 to 2 In (In = rated drive current indicated in the Installation manual and on the drive nameplate)
[Motor Frequency]	o F r	Output frequency, from 0 to [Max Frequency] E F r Factory Setting
[Ramp out.]	o r P	From 0 to [Max Frequency] E F r
[Motor torq.]	E r q	Motor torque, from 0 to 3 times the rated motor torque
[Sign. torque]	S E q	Signed motor torque, between -3 and +3 times the rated motor torque. The + sign corresponds to the motor mode and the - sign to the generator mode (braking).
[sign ramp]	o r S	Signed ramp output, between -[Max Frequency] E F r and +[Max Frequency] E F r
[PID ref.]	o P S	PID controller reference between [Min PID reference] P , P / and [Max PID reference] P , P 2
[PID feedbk]	o P F	PID controller feedback between [Min PID feedback] P , F / and [Max PID feedback] P , F 2
[PID error]	o P E	PID controller detected error between -5% and +5% of [Max PID feedback] P , F 2 - [Min PID feedback] P , F /
[PID output]	o P ,	PID controller output between [Low speed] L S P and [High speed] H S P
[Drive power]	o P r	Motor power, between 0 and 2.5 times [Nominal Motor Power] n P r
[Mot thermal]	E H r	Motor thermal state, from 0 to 200% of the rated thermal state
[Drv thermal]	E H d	Drive thermal state, from 0 to 200% of the rated thermal state
[Torque 4Q]	E r 4 q	Signed motor torque, between -3 and +3 times the rated motor torque. The + and - signs correspond to the physical direction of the torque, regardless of mode (motor or generator)
[Measured Motor Freq]	o F r r	Measured motor frequency
[Sig. o/p freq.]	o F S	Signed output frequency, between -[Max Frequency] E F r and +[Max Frequency] E F r
[Mot therm2]	E H r 2	Motor thermal 2 state
[Mot therm3]	E H r 3	Motor thermal 3 state
[Mot therm4]	E H r 4	Motor thermal 4 state
[Unsigned Trq Ref]	u t r	Unsigned torque reference
[Signed Trq Ref]	S E r	Signed torque reference
[Torque lim.]	E q L	Torque limit
[Motor volt.]	u o P	Voltage applied to the motor, between 0 and [Nom Motor Voltage] u n 5
[M/S Out Speed Reference]	P S S o	Master / slave output speed reference
[M/S Out Torque Reference]	P S E o	Master / slave output torque reference

[AQ1 Min Output] u o L / ★

AQ1 minimum output.

This parameter can be accessed if [AQ1 Type] R o / E is set to [Voltage] / D u.

Setting	Description
0.0...10.0 Vdc	Setting range Factory setting: 0.0 Vdc

[AQ1 max Output] $\text{u} \square \text{H}$ /★

AQ1 maximum output.

This parameter can be accessed if [AQ1 Type] $\text{R} \square \text{IE}$ is set to [Voltage] $\text{I} \square \text{u}$.

Setting	Description
0.0...10.0 Vdc	Setting range Factory setting: 10.0 Vdc

[AQ1 min output] $\text{R} \square \text{L}$ /★

AQ1 minimum output.

This parameter can be accessed if [AQ1 Type] $\text{R} \square \text{IE}$ is set to [Current] $\text{D} \text{A}$.

Setting	Description
0.0...20.0 mA	Setting range Factory setting: 0.0 mA

[AQ1 max output] $\text{R} \square \text{H}$ /★

AQ1 maximum output.

This parameter can be accessed if [AQ1 Type] $\text{R} \square \text{IE}$ is set to [Current] $\text{D} \text{A}$.

Setting	Description
0.0...20.0 mA	Setting range Factory setting: 20.0 mA

[Scaling AQ1 min] $\text{R} \text{5} \text{L}$ /

Scaling of the lower limit of the assigned parameter, as a percentage of the maximum possible variation.

Setting	Description
0.0...100.0%	Setting range Factory setting: 0.0%

[Scaling AQ1 max] $\text{R} \text{5} \text{H}$ /

Scaling of the upper limit of the assigned parameter, as a percentage of the maximum possible variation.

Setting	Description
0.0...100.0%	Setting range Factory setting: 100.0%

[AQ1 Filter] $\text{R} \square \text{IF}$

Interference filtering.

Setting	Description
0.00...10.00 s	Setting range Factory setting: 0.00 s

[AQ2] $\text{A} \circ \text{2} \text{C}$ - Menu

Access

[Display] → [I/O Map] → [Analog outputs image] → [AQ2]

This menu can be accessed on drives with a power greater than 22 kW.

[AQ2] $\text{A} \circ \text{2} \text{C}$

AQ2 customer image: value of analog output 2.

Identical to [AQ1] $\text{A} \circ \text{1} \text{C}$ (*see page 114*).

[AQ2 Assignment] $\text{A} \circ \text{2}$

AQ2 assignment.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Not Configured]	$\text{n} \circ$	Not assigned
[Motor Current]	$\text{o} \text{C} \text{r}$	Current in the motor, from 0 to 2 In (In = rated drive current indicated in the Installation manual and on the drive nameplate) Factory Setting
[Motor Frequency]	$\text{o} \text{F} \text{r}$	Output frequency, from 0 to [Max Frequency] $\text{E} \text{F} \text{r}$
[Ramp out.]	$\text{o} \text{r} \text{P}$	From 0 to [Max Frequency] $\text{E} \text{F} \text{r}$
[Motor torq.]	$\text{E} \text{r} \text{q}$	Motor torque, from 0 to 3 times the rated motor torque
[Sign. torque]	$\text{S} \text{E} \text{q}$	Signed motor torque, between -3 and +3 times the rated motor torque. The + sign corresponds to the motor mode and the - sign to the generator mode (braking).
[sign ramp]	$\text{o} \text{r} \text{s}$	Signed ramp output, between -[Max Frequency] $\text{E} \text{F} \text{r}$ and +[Max Frequency] $\text{E} \text{F} \text{r}$
[PID ref.]	$\text{o} \text{P} \text{s}$	PID controller reference between [Min PID reference] $\text{P} \text{, P} \text{1}$ and [Max PID reference] $\text{P} \text{, P} \text{2}$
[PID feedbk]	$\text{o} \text{P} \text{f}$	PID controller feedback between [Min PID feedback] $\text{P} \text{, F} \text{1}$ and [Max PID feedback] $\text{P} \text{, F} \text{2}$
[PID error]	$\text{o} \text{P} \text{e}$	PID controller detected error between -5% and +5% of [Max PID feedback] $\text{P} \text{, F} \text{2}$ - [Min PID feedback] $\text{P} \text{, F} \text{1}$
[PID output]	$\text{o} \text{P} \text{,}$	PID controller output between [Low speed] $\text{L} \text{ S} \text{P}$ and [High speed] $\text{H} \text{ S} \text{P}$
[Drive power]	$\text{o} \text{P} \text{r}$	Motor power, between 0 and 2.5 times [Nominal Motor Power] $\text{n} \text{P} \text{r}$
[Mot thermal]	$\text{E} \text{H} \text{r}$	Motor thermal state, from 0 to 200% of the rated thermal state
[Drv thermal]	$\text{E} \text{H} \text{d}$	Drive thermal state, from 0 to 200% of the rated thermal state
[Torque 4Q]	$\text{E} \text{r} \text{4} \text{q}$	Signed motor torque, between -3 and +3 times the rated motor torque. The + and - signs correspond to the physical direction of the torque, regardless of mode (motor or generator)
[Measured Motor Freq]	$\text{o} \text{F} \text{r} \text{r}$	Measured motor frequency
[Sig. o/p freq.]	$\text{o} \text{F} \text{s}$	Signed output frequency, between -[Max Frequency] $\text{E} \text{F} \text{r}$ and +[Max Frequency] $\text{E} \text{F} \text{r}$
[Mot therm2]	$\text{E} \text{H} \text{r} \text{2}$	Motor thermal 2 state
[Mot therm3]	$\text{E} \text{H} \text{r} \text{3}$	Motor thermal 3 state
[Mot therm4]	$\text{E} \text{H} \text{r} \text{4}$	Motor thermal 4 state
[Unsigned Trq Ref]	$\text{u} \text{E} \text{r}$	Unsigned torque reference
[Signed Trq Ref]	$\text{S} \text{E} \text{r}$	Signed torque reference
[Torque lim.]	$\text{E} \text{q} \text{L}$	Torque limit
[Motor volt.]	$\text{u} \text{o} \text{P}$	Voltage applied to the motor, between 0 and [Nom Motor Voltage] $\text{u} \text{n} \text{5}$
[M/S Out Speed Reference]	$\text{P} \text{S} \text{S} \text{o}$	Master / slave output speed reference
[M/S Out Torque Reference]	$\text{P} \text{S} \text{E} \text{o}$	Master / slave output torque reference

[AQ2 Min Output] $\text{u} \text{o} L 2$ 

AQ2 minimum output.

This parameter can be accessed if [AQ2 Type] $R \text{o} 2E$ is set to [Voltage] $I \text{o} u$.

Identical to [AQ1 min Output] $\text{u} \text{o} L 1$ (*see page 115*).

[AQ2 Max Output] $\text{u} \text{o} H 2$ 

AQ2 maximum output.

This parameter can be accessed if [AQ2 Type] $R \text{o} 2E$ is set to [Voltage] $I \text{o} u$.

Identical to [AQ1 max Output] $\text{u} \text{o} H 1$ (*see page 116*).

[AQ2 Min Output] $R \text{o} L 2$ 

AQ2 minimum output.

This parameter can be accessed if [AQ2 Type] $R \text{o} 2E$ is set to [Current] $\text{D} R$.

Identical to [AQ1 min Output] $\text{u} \text{o} L 1$ (*see page 116*).

[AQ2 Max Output] $R \text{o} H 2$ 

AQ2 maximum output.

This parameter can be accessed if [AQ2 Type] $R \text{o} 2E$ is set to [Current] $\text{D} R$.

Identical to [AQ1 max Output] $\text{u} \text{o} H 1$ (*see page 116*).

[Scaling AQ2 min] $R 5 L 2$

Scaling of the lower limit of the assigned parameter, as a % of the maximum possible variation.

Identical to [Scaling AQ2 min] $R 5 L 1$ (*see page 116*).

[Scaling AQ2 max] $R 5 H 2$

Scaling of the upper limit of the assigned parameter, as a % of the maximum possible variation.

Identical to [Scaling AQ1 max] $R 5 H 1$ (*see page 116*).

[AQ2 Filter] $R \text{o} 2F$

Interference filtering.

Identical to [AQ1 Filter] $R \text{o} 1F$ (*see page 116*).

[PTO Frequency] $P E \square C$ - Menu

Access

[Display] → [I/O Map] → [Analog outputs image] → [PTO Frequency]

This menu can be accessed on drives with a power greater than 22 kW.

[PTO Frequency] $P E \square C$

Pulse train output frequency value.

Setting	Description
0.00...655.35 kHz	Setting range Factory setting: 0.00 kHz

[PTO Assign] $P E \square$

Pulse train output assignment.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Not Configured]	$n \square$	Not assigned
[Motor Current]	$\square C r$	Current in the motor, from 0 to 2 In (In = rated drive current indicated in the Installation manual and on the drive nameplate)
[Motor Frequency]	$\square F r$	Output frequency, from 0 to [Max Frequency] $E F r$ Factory Setting
[Ramp out.]	$\square r P$	From 0 to [Max Frequency] $E F r$
[Motor torq.]	$E r \square$	Motor torque, from 0 to 3 times the rated motor torque
[Sign. torque]	$S E \square$	Signed motor torque, between -3 and +3 times the rated motor torque. The + sign corresponds to the motor mode and the - sign to the generator mode (braking).
[sign ramp]	$\square r S$	Signed ramp output, between -[Max Frequency] $E F r$ and +[Max Frequency] $E F r$
[PID ref.]	$\square P S$	PID controller reference between [Min PID reference] $P , P I$ and [Max PID reference] $P , P Z$
[PID feedbk]	$\square P F$	PID controller feedback between [Min PID feedback] $P , F I$ and [Max PID feedback] $P , F Z$
[PID error]	$\square P E$	PID controller detected error between -5% and +5% of [Max PID feedback] $P , F Z$ - [Min PID feedback] $P , F I$
[PID output]	$\square P ,$	PID controller output between [Low speed] $L S P$ and [High speed] $H S P$
[Drive power]	$\square P r$	Motor power, between 0 and 2.5 times [Nominal Motor Power] $n P r$
[Mot thermal]	$E H r$	Motor thermal state, from 0 to 200% of the rated thermal state
[Drv thermal]	$E H d$	Drive thermal state, from 0 to 200% of the rated thermal state
[Torque 4Q]	$E r 4 \square$	Signed motor torque, between -3 and +3 times the rated motor torque. The + and - signs correspond to the physical direction of the torque, regardless of mode (motor or generator)
[Measured Motor Freq]	$\square F r r$	Measured motor frequency
[Sig. o/p freq.]	$\square F S$	Signed output frequency, between -[Max Frequency] $E F r$ and +[Max Frequency] $E F r$
[Mot therm2]	$E H r 2$	Motor thermal 2 state
[Mot therm3]	$E H r 3$	Motor thermal 3 state
[Mot therm4]	$E H r 4$	Motor thermal 4 state
[Unsigned Trq Ref]	$u E r$	Unsigned torque reference
[Signed Trq Ref]	$S E r$	Signed torque reference
[Torque lim.]	$E \square L$	Torque limit
[Motor volt.]	$u o P$	Voltage applied to the motor, between 0 and [Nom Motor Voltage] $u n S$
[M/S Out Speed Reference]	$\square S S o$	Master / slave output speed reference
[M/S Out Torque Reference]	$\square S E o$	Master / slave output torque reference

[PTO Max Output Freq] *P E o H* ★

Pulse train output maximum output frequency.

This parameter can be accessed if [PTO Assign] *P E o* is not set to [Not configured] *n o*.

Setting	Description
1.00...30.00 kHz	Setting range Factory setting: 4.00 kHz

[DI7 frequency measured] $P F C 7$ - Menu

Access

[Display] → [I/O map] → [Freq. signal image] → [DI7 frequency measured]

About This Menu

Following parameters can be accessed on the Display Terminal by pressing the OK key on the [DI7 Frequency Measured] $P F C 7$ parameter.

This menu can be accessed on drives with a power **greater than 22 kW**.

[DI7 Frequency Measured] $P F C 7$

Filtered customer pulse input frequency reference.

Setting	Description
0...4,294,967,295	Setting range Factory setting: _

[DI7 Pulse Input Assign] $P , 7 A$

DI7 pulse input assignment.

It displays all the functions associated with the pulse input in order to verify, for example, for compatibility problems.

If no functions have been assigned, [No] $n \square$ is displayed.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[No]	$n \square$	Not assigned
[Torque Ref Offset]	$t \square o$	Torque offset source
[Torque Ref Ratio]	$t \square r$	Torque ratio source
[Ref Frequency 1]	$F r 1$	Reference frequency 1
[Ref Frequency 2]	$F r 2$	Reference frequency 2
[Ref Frequency 2 Summing]	$S R 2$	Reference frequency 2 summing
[PID Feedback]	P , F	PI controller feedback
[Torque limitation]	$t R R$	Torque limitation: activation by an analog value
[Torque limitation 2]	$t R R 2$	Torque limitation: activation by an analog value
[Subtract Ref Freq 2]	$d R 2$	Subtract reference frequency 2
[Manual PID Ref.]	P , n	Manual speed reference of the PID controller (auto-man)
[PID Ref Frequency]	$F P ,$	PID reference frequency
[Ref Frequency 3 Summing]	$S R 3$	Reference frequency 3 summing
[Ref Frequency 1B]	$F r 1 b$	Reference frequency 1B
[Subtract Ref Freq 3]	$d R 3$	Subtract reference frequency 3
[Forced local]	$F L o C$	Forced local reference source1
[Ref Frequency 2 multiplier]	$\Pi R 2$	Reference frequency 2 multiplier
[Ref Frequency 3 multiplier]	$\Pi R 3$	Reference frequency 3 multiplier
[Torque reference]	$t r 1$	Torque regulation: torque set point 1
[Torque reference 2]	$t r 2$	Torque regulation: torque set point 2
[Frequency Meter]	$F \square F$	Frequency meter function activation
[External Feed Forward]	$E F F$	External feed-forward
[M/S Speed Ref In]	$\Pi S S ,$	M/S Master speed reference input
[M/S Trq Ref In]	$\Pi S t ,$	M/S Master torque reference input

[DI7 PulseInput Low Freq] *P* , *L* 7

Di7 pulse input low frequency.

Pulse input scaling parameter of 0% in Hz x 10 unit.

Setting	Description
0.00...30,000.00 Hz	Setting range Factory setting: 0 Hz

[DI7 PulseInput High Freq] *P* , *H* 7

Di7 pulse input high frequency.

Pulse input scaling parameter of 100% in Hz x 10 unit.

Setting	Description
0.00...30.00 kHz	Setting range Factory setting: 30.00 kHz

[DI7 Frequency Filter] *PF* , 7

Interference filtering pulse input cut-off time of the low-filter.

Setting	Description
0...1,000 ms	Setting range Factory setting: 0 ms

[DI8 frequency measured] $P F \square B$ - Menu

Access

[Display] → [I/O map] → [Freq. signal image] → [DI8 frequency measured]

About This Menu

Following parameters can be accessed on the Display Terminal by pressing the OK key on the [DI8 Frequency Measured] $P F \square B$ parameter.

This menu can be accessed on drives with a power **greater than 22 kW**.

[DI8 Frequency Measured] $P F \square B$

Filtered customer pulse input frequency reference.

Identical to [DI7 frequency measured] $P F \square T$ (*see page 121*).

[DI8 Pulse Input Assign] $P \square B R$

DI8 pulse input assignment.

Identical to [DI7 Pulse Input Assign] $P \square T R$ (*see page 121*).

[DI8 PulseInput Low Freq] $P \square L B$

DI8 pulse input low frequency.

Identical to [DI7 PulseInput Low Freq] $P \square L T$ (*see page 122*).

[DI8 PulseInput High Freq] $P \square H B$

DI8 pulse input high frequency.

Identical to [DI7 PulseInput High Freq] $P \square H T$ (*see page 122*).

[DI8 Frequency Filter] $P F \square B$

Interference filtering pulse input cut-off time of the low-filter.

Identical to [DI7 Frequency Filter] $P F \square T$ (*see page 122*).

[PTI Freq Measured] P_E, F - Menu

Access

[Display] → [I/O map] → [Freq. signal image] → [PTI Freq Measured]

About This Menu

Following parameters can be accessed on the Display Terminal by pressing the OK key on the [PTI Freq Measured] P_E, F parameter.

This menu can be accessed on drives with a power greater than 30 kW.

[PTI Freq Measured] P_E, F

PTI frequency measured

Setting	Description
-21,474,836.47...21,474,836.47 Hz	Setting range Factory setting: _

[RP assignment] $P, R \star$

Pulse input assignment

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[No]	$n\ o$	Not assigned
[Torque Ref Offset]	$t\ q\ o$	Torque offset source
[Torque Ref Ratio]	$t\ q\ r$	Torque ratio source
[Ref Frequency 1]	$F\ r\ 1$	Reference frequency 1
[Ref Frequency 2]	$F\ r\ 2$	Reference frequency 2
[Ref Frequency 2 Summing]	$S\ R\ 2$	Reference frequency 2 summing
[PID Feedback]	P, F	PI controller feedback
[Torque limitation]	$t\ R\ R$	Torque limitation: activation by an analog value
[Torque limitation 2]	$t\ R\ R\ 2$	Torque limitation: activation by an analog value
[Subtract Ref Freq 2]	$d\ R\ 2$	Subtract reference frequency 2
[Manual PID Ref.]	P, n	Manual speed reference of the PID controller (auto-man)
[PID Ref Frequency]	$F\ P\ ,$	PID reference frequency
[Ref Frequency 3 Summing]	$S\ R\ 3$	Reference frequency 3 summing
[Ref Frequency 1B]	$F\ r\ 1\ b$	Reference frequency 1B
[Subtract Ref Freq 3]	$d\ R\ 3$	Subtract reference frequency 3
[Forced local]	$F\ L\ o\ C$	Forced local reference source1
[Ref Frequency 2 multiplier]	$\pi\ R\ 2$	Reference frequency 2 multiplier
[Ref Frequency 3 multiplier]	$\pi\ R\ 3$	Reference frequency 3 multiplier
[Torque reference]	$t\ r\ 1$	Torque regulation: torque set point 1
[Torque reference 2]	$t\ r\ 2$	Torque regulation: torque set point 2
[Frequency Meter]	$F\ q\ F$	Frequency meter function activation
[External Feed Forward]	$t\ E\ F\ F$	External feed-forward
[M/S Speed Ref In]	$\pi\ S\ S\ ,$	M/S Master speed reference input
[M/S Trq Ref In]	$\pi\ S\ t\ ,$	M/S Master torque reference input

[PTI Low Freq] *P E , L* ★

Pulse Train Input low frequency.

Setting	Description
-1000000.00...1000000.00 Hz	Setting range Factory setting: 0 Hz

[PTI High Freq] *P E , H* ★

Pulse Train Input high frequency.

Setting	Description
-1000000.00...1000000.00 Hz	Setting range Factory setting: 0 Hz

[PTI Filter Time Analog] *P E , E* ★

PTI filter time analog

Setting	Description
0...1000 ms	Setting range Factory setting: 0 ms

[PTI Mode] *P E , N* ★

PTI mode

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[A/B]	<i>R b</i>	A/B input signals Factory Setting
[Pulse/Dir]	<i>P d</i>	Pulse direction input signals
[CW/CCW]	<i>C W C C W</i>	Clockwise/Counterclockwise input signals

[PTI Filter Time Inp] *P E , S* ★

PTI Filter Time Input

Setting	Description
0.00...13.00 µs	Setting range Factory setting: 0.25 µs

[PTI Counting Dir Inv] *P E , ,* ★

PTI direction inversion

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[OFF]	<i>o F F</i>	No inversion of counting direction Factory Setting
[ON]	<i>o n</i>	Inversion of counting direction

Section 7.11

[Communication map]

What Is in This Section?

This section contains the following topics:

Topic	Page
[Communication map] <i>C П П</i> - Menu	127
[Modbus network diag] <i>П н д</i> - Menu	131
[Com. scanner input map] <i>и С Р</i> - Menu	132
[Com scan output map] <i>о С Р</i> - Menu	133
[Modbus HMI Diag] <i>П д Н</i> - Menu	134
[Ethernet Emb Diag] <i>П Р Е</i> - Menu	135
[DeviceNet Diag] <i>д В н</i> - Menu	136
[Profibus Diag] <i>Р р б</i> - Menu	137
[PROFINET Diag] <i>Р р н</i> - Menu	139
[EtherCAT Module Diag] <i>Е Е д</i> - Menu	141
[Command word image] <i>С В и</i> - Menu	141
[Freq. ref. word map] <i>р В и</i> - Menu	142
[CANopen map] <i>С н П</i> - Menu	143
[PDO1 image] <i>Р о 1</i> - Menu	144
[PDO2 image] <i>Р о 2</i> - Menu	146
[PDO3 image] <i>Р о 3</i> - Menu	147
[CANopen map] <i>С н П</i> - Menu	148

[Communication map] - Menu

Access

[Display] → [Communication map]

[Command Channel]

Command channel.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Terminals]	E r	Terminal block source Factory Setting
[HMI]	L C C	Reference Frequency via remote terminal
[Modbus]	M d b	Reference frequency via Modbus
[CANopen]	C R n	Reference frequency via CANopen if a CANopen module has been inserted
[Com. Module]	n E t	Reference frequency via fieldbus module if a fieldbus module has been inserted
[Embedded Ethernet]	E E H	Embedded Ethernet NOTE: This selection can be accessed on ATV340...N4E drives.

[Cmd Register] C N d

Command register.

[Control Mode] C H C F is not set to **[I/O profile]** ↳ □

Possible values in CiA402 profile, separate, or not separate mode:

Bit	Description, Value
0	Set to 1: "Switch on"/Contactor command
1	Set to 0: "Disable voltage"/Authorization to supply AC power
2	Set to 0: "Quick stop"
3	Set to 1: "Enable operation"/Run command
4 to 6	Reserved (= 0)
7	"Fault reset" acknowledgment active on 0 to 1 rising edge
8	Set to 1: Halt stop according to the [Type Of Stop] S L E parameter without leaving the operation enabled state
9 and 10	Reserved (= 0)
11 to 15	Can be assigned to commands

Possible values in the I/O profile. On state command **[2-Wire Control]** Z C :

Bit	Description, Value
0	Forward (on state) command: 0: No forward command 1: Forward command NOTE: The assignment of bit 0 cannot be modified. It corresponds to the assignment of the terminals. It can be switched. Bit 0 C d D D is only active if the channel of this control word is active.
1 to 15	Can be assigned to commands

Possible values in the I/O profile. On edge command **[3-Wire Control]** Z C :

Bit	Description, Value
0	Stop (run authorization): 0: Stop 1: Run is authorized on a forward or reverse command
1	Forward (on 0 to 1 rising edge) command
2 to 15	Can be assigned to commands

NOTE: The assignment of bits 0 and 1 cannot be modified. It corresponds to the assignment of the terminals. It can be switched. Bits 0 C d D D and 1 C d D I are only active if the channel of this control word is active.

[Ref Freq Channel] r F C C

Channel of reference frequency.

Identical to **[Command Channel]** C N d C (see page 127)

[Pre-Ramp Ref Freq] F r H

Frequency reference before ramp.

Setting	Description
-599.0...599.0 Hz	Setting range Factory setting: _

[CIA402 State Reg] E L R

CIA402 State Register.

Possible values in CiA402 profile, separate, or not separate mode:

Bit	Description, Value
0	"Ready to switch on", awaiting power section line supply
1	"Switched on", ready
2	"Operation enabled", running
3	Operating detected error state: 0: Inactive 1: Active
4	"Voltage enabled", power section line supply present: 0: Power section line supply absent 1: Power section line supply present NOTE: When the drive is powered by the power section only, this bit is always at 1.
5	Quick stop
6	"Switched on disabled", power section line supply locked
7	Warning: 0: No warning 1: Warning
8	Reserved (= 0)
9	Remote: command or reference via the network 0: Command or reference via the Display Terminal 1: Command or reference via the network
10	Targets reference reached: 0: The reference is not reached 1: The reference has been reached NOTE: When the drive is in speed mode, this is the speed reference.
11	"Internal limit active", reference outside limits: 0: The reference is within the limits 1: The reference is not within the limits NOTE: When the drive is in speed mode, the limits are defined by the [Low speed] L S P and [High speed] H S P parameters.
12	Reserved
13	Reserved
14	"Stop key", STOP via stop key: 0: STOP key not pressed 1: Stop triggered by the STOP key on the Display Terminal
15	"Direction", direction of rotation: 0: Forward rotation at output 1: Reverse rotation at output
NOTE: The combination of bits 0, 1, 2, 4, 5 and 6 defines the state in the DSP 402 state chart (see the communication manuals).	

Possible values in the I/O profile:

Bit	Description, Value
0	Reserved (= 0 or 1)
1	Ready: 0: Not ready 1: Ready
2	Running: 0: The drive does not start if a reference other than zero is applied 1: Running, if a reference other than zero is applied, the drive can start
3	Operating detected error state: 0: Inactive 1: Active
NOTE: The value is identical in the CiA402 profile and the I/O profile. In the I/O profile, the description of the values is simplified and does not refer to the CiA402 (Drivecom) state chart.	

Bit	Description, Value
4	Power section line supply present: 0: Power section line supply absent 1: Power section line supply present
5	Reserved (= 1)
6	Reserved (= 0 or 1)
7	Warning 0: No warning 1: Warning
8	Reserved (= 0)
9	Command via a network: 0: Command via the terminals or the Display Terminal 1: Command via a network
10	Reference reached: 0: The reference is not reached 1: The reference has been reached
11	Reference outside limits: 0: The reference is within the limits 1: The reference is not within the limits NOTE: When the drive is in speed mode, the limits are defined by LSP and HSP parameters.
12	Reserved (= 0)
13	Reserved (= 0)
14	Stop via STOP key: 0: STOP key not pressed 1: Stop triggered by the STOP key on the Display Terminal
15	Direction of rotation: 0: Forward rotation at output 1: Reverse rotation at output
NOTE: The value is identical in the CiA402 profile and the I/O profile. In the I/O profile, the description of the values is simplified and does not refer to the CiA402 (Drivecom) state chart.	

[Modbus network diag] *M* *n* *d* - Menu

Access

[Display] → [Communication map] → [Modbus network diag]

About This Menu

Used for the Modbus serial communication port at the bottom of the control block. Refer to the Modbus serial embedded communication manual for a complete description.

[COM LED] *M* *d* *b* /

View of the Modbus communication LED.

[Mdb Frame Nb] *M* *I* *C* *t*

Modbus network frames counter: number of processed frames.

Setting	Description
0...65,535	Setting range Factory setting: _

[Mb NET CRC errors] *M* *I* *E* *c*

Modbus network CRC error countered: number of CRC errors

Setting	Description
0...65,535	Setting range Factory setting: _

[Com. scanner input map] , 5 A - Menu

Access

[Display] → [Communication map] → [Modbus network diag] → [Com. scanner input map]

About This Menu

Used for CANopen® and Modbus network.

[Com Scan In1 val.] $\text{n } \Pi \text{ 1}$

Com scanner input 1 value. Value of the first input word.

Setting	Description
0...65,535	Setting range Factory setting: _

[Com Scan In2 val.] $\text{n } \Pi \text{ 2}$

Com scanner input 2 value. Value of the second input word.

Identical to [Com Scan In1 val.] $\text{n } \Pi \text{ 1}$ (*see page 132*).

[Com Scan In3 val.] $\text{n } \Pi \text{ 3}$

Com scanner input 3 value. Value of the third input word.

Identical to [Com Scan In1 val.] $\text{n } \Pi \text{ 1}$ (*see page 132*).

[Com Scan In4 val.] $\text{n } \Pi \text{ 4}$

Com scanner input 4 value. Value of the fourth input word.

Identical to [Com Scan In1 val.] $\text{n } \Pi \text{ 1}$ (*see page 132*).

[Com Scan In5 val.] $\text{n } \Pi \text{ 5}$

Com scanner input 5 value. Value of the fifth input word.

Identical to [Com Scan In1 val.] $\text{n } \Pi \text{ 1}$ (*see page 132*).

[Com Scan In6 val.] $\text{n } \Pi \text{ 6}$

Com scanner input 6 value. Value of the sixth input word.

Identical to [Com Scan In1 val.] $\text{n } \Pi \text{ 1}$ (*see page 132*).

[Com Scan In7 val.] $\text{n } \Pi \text{ 7}$

Com scanner input 7 value. Value of the seventh input word.

Identical to [Com Scan In1 val.] $\text{n } \Pi \text{ 1}$ (*see page 132*).

[Com Scan In8 val.] $\text{n } \Pi \text{ 8}$

Com scanner input 8 value. Value of the eighth input word.

Identical to [Com Scan In1 val.] $\text{n } \Pi \text{ 1}$ (*see page 132*).

[Com scan output map] 5 R - Menu

Access

[Display] → [Communication map] → [Com scan output map]

About This Menu

Used for CANopen® and Modbus networks.

[Com Scan Out1 val.] 1

Com scanner output 1 value. Value of the first output word.

Setting (1)	Description
0...65,535	Setting range Factory setting: _

[Com Scan Out2 val.] 2

Com scanner output 2 value. Value of the second output word.

Identical to [Com Scan Out1 val.] 1 (see page 133).

[Com Scan Out3 val.] 3

Com scanner output 3 value. Value of the third output word.

Identical to [Com Scan Out1 val.] 1 (see page 133).

[Com Scan Out4 val.] 4

Com scanner output 4 value. Value of the fourth output word.

Identical to [Com Scan Out1 val.] 1 (see page 133).

[Com Scan Out5 val.] 5

Com scanner output 5 value. Value of the fifth output word.

Identical to [Com Scan Out1 val.] 1 (see page 133).

[Com Scan Out6 val.] 6

Com scanner output 6 value. Value of the sixth output word.

Identical to [Com Scan Out1 val.] 1 (see page 133).

[Com Scan Out7 val.] 7

Com scanner output 7 value. Value of the seventh output word.

Identical to [Com Scan Out1 val.] 1 (see page 133).

[Com Scan Out8 val.] 8

Com scanner output 8 value. Value of the eighth output word.

Identical to [Com Scan Out1 val.] 1 (see page 133).

[Modbus HMI Diag] *M d H* - Menu

Access

[Display] → [Communication map] → [Modbus HMI Diag]

About This Menu

Used for the Modbus serial communication port at the front of the control block (used by the Display Terminal)

[COM LED] *M d b 2*

View of the Modbus HMI communication LED.

[Mdb NET frames] *M 2 C 2*

Terminal Modbus 2: number of processed frames.

Setting (i)	Description
0...65,535	Setting range

[Mdb NET CRC errors] *M 2 E 2*

Terminal Modbus 2: number of CRC errors.

Setting (i)	Description
0...65,535	Setting range

[Ethernet Emb Diag] *N P E* - Menu

Access

[Display] → [Communication map] → [Ethernet Emb Diag]

About This Menu

Refer to the Modbus TCP Ethernet-IP communication manual.

[MAC @] *N R C E*

MAC address of the embedded Ethernet adapter.

Read-only parameter.

The address format is XX-XX-XX-XX-XX-XX.

[ETH emb Rx frames] *E r X E*

Ethernet embedded Rx frames counter.

Setting ()	Description
0...4,294,967,295	Setting range Factory setting: _

[ETH emb Tx frames] *E E X E*

Ethernet embedded Tx frames counter.

Setting ()	Description
0...4,294,967,295	Setting range Factory setting: _

[ETH emb error frames] *E E r E*

Ethernet embedded error frames counter.

Setting ()	Description
0...4,294,967,295	Setting range Factory setting: _

[Ethernet Rate Data] *R r d E* ★

Actual data rate.

Setting ()	Code / Value	Description
[Auto]	<i>R u t o</i>	Automatic
[10M. full]	<i>I O F</i>	10 F
[10M. half]	<i>I O H</i>	10 H
[100M. full]	<i>I O O F</i>	100 F
[100M. half]	<i>I O O H</i>	100 H

[DeviceNet Diag] *d V n* - Menu

Access

[Display] → [Communication map] → [DeviceNet Diag]

About This Menu

Following parameters can be accessed if DeviceNet module (VW3A3609) has been inserted.

[Data rate used] *b d r u* ★

Data rate used by the fieldbus module.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Automatic]	<i>R u t o</i>	Automatic detection Factory setting
[125 Kbps]	<i>1 2 5 K</i>	125,000 Bauds
[250 Kbps]	<i>2 5 0 K</i>	250,000 Bauds
[500 Kbps]	<i>5 0 0 K</i>	500,000 Bauds

[Fieldbus Error] *E P F 2*

External detected error from fieldbus module.

[Fieldbus Com Interrupt] *C n F*

Fieldbus module communication interruption. Refer to the related fieldbus manual.

Setting	Description
0...65,535	Setting range Factory setting: _

[Profibus Diag] Pr b - Menu

Access

[Display] → [Communication] → [Profibus Diag]

About This Menu

Following parameters can be accessible if Profibus DP module VW3A3607 has been inserted.

[Data rate used] b d r u ★

Data rate used by the fieldbus module.

Setting()	Code / Value	Description
[Automatic]	R u E o	Automatic detection Factory setting
[9.6 Kbps]	9 K 6	9,600 Bauds
[19.2 Kbps]	19 K 2	19,200 Bauds
[93.75 Kbps]	9 3 K 7	93,750 Bauds
[187.5 Kbps]	18 7 K	187,500 Bauds
[500 Kbps]	5 0 0 K	500,000 Bauds
[1.5 Mbps]	1 P 5	1.5 MBauds
[3 Mbps]	3 P	3 MBauds
[6 Mbps]	6 P	6 MBauds
[12 Mbps]	12 P	12 MBauds

[PPO profile used] Pr F L ★

PPO profile in use.

Setting()	Code / Value	Description
[Not configured]	u n G G	Not configured
[1]	1	PROFIdrive
[100]	1 0 0	Device specific
[101]	1 0 1	Device specific
[102]	1 0 2	Device specific
[106]	1 0 6	Device specific
[107]	1 0 7	Device specific

[DP Master Active] d P N R ★

Active master: 1 or 2.

Setting()	Code / Value	Description
[MCL1]	1	Master 1 Factory setting
[MCL2]	2	Master 2

[Fieldbus Error] E P F 2

External detected error from fieldbus module.

[Fieldbus Com Interrupt] *L n F*

Fieldbus module communication interruption. Refer to the related fieldbus manual.

Setting ()	Description
0...65,535	Setting range Factory setting: _

[InternCom Error1] *L F /*

Option module communication interruption. Refer to the related fieldbus manual.

Setting ()	Description
0...65,535	Setting range Factory setting: _

[PROFINET Diag] *P r n* - Menu

Access

[Display] → [Communication map] → [PROFINET Diag]

About This Menu

Following parameters are accessible if PROFINET® module (VW3A3627) has been inserted.

[MAC @] *M A C*

MAC address of the PROFINET module.
read-only parameter.
The address format is XX-XX-XX-XX-XX-XX.

[PPO profile used] *P r F L* ★

PPO profile in use.

Setting()	Code / Value	Description
[Not configured]	<i>u n G G</i>	Not configured
[1]	<i>I</i>	PROFIdrive
[100]	<i>I D D</i>	Device specific
[101]	<i>I D I</i>	Device specific
[102]	<i>I D 2</i>	Device specific
[106]	<i>I D 6</i>	Device specific
[107]	<i>I D 7</i>	Device specific

[Ethernet Error Code] *E r r* ★

Ethernet specific error code.

Setting()	Description
0...65,535	Setting range Factory setting: 0

[IPar Status] *i P R E* ★

PROFINET: IPAR service status.

Setting()	Code / Value	Description
[Idle State]	<i>i d L E</i>	Idle state
[Init]	<i>i n i t</i>	Initialization
[Configuration]	<i>C o n F</i>	Configuration
[Ready]	<i>r d Y</i>	Ready
[Operational]	<i>o P E</i>	Operational
[Not Configured]	<i>u C F G</i>	Not configured
[Unrecoverable Error]	<i>u r E C</i>	Unrecoverable detected error

[IPar Error Code] *i P R d* ★

IPar detected error code.

Setting()	Description
0...5	Setting range Factory setting: 0

[DP Master Active] *d P n R* ★

Active master: 1 or 2.

Setting()	Code / Value	Description
[MCL1]	1	Master 1 Factory setting
[MCL2]	2	Master 2

[Fieldbus Error] *E P F 2*

External detected error from fieldbus module.

[Fieldbus Com Interrupt] *C n F*

Fieldbus module communication interruption.

Setting()	Description
0...65,535	Setting range Factory setting: _

[InternCom Error1] *, L F 1*

Option module communication interruption.

Setting()	Description
0...65,535	Setting range Factory setting: _

[EtherCAT Module Diag] $E \text{ } E \text{ } d$ - Menu

Access

[Display] → [Communication map] → [EtherCAT Module Diag]

About This Menu

Following parameters can be accessed if EtherCAT module (VW3A3601) has been inserted.

[External Error] $E \text{ } P \text{ } F \text{ } 2$

External detected error from fieldbus module.

[Fieldbus Com Interrupt] $E \text{ } n \text{ } F$

Fieldbus module communication interruption.

Setting ()	Description
0...65,535	Setting range Factory setting: _

[InternCom Error1] $E \text{ } L \text{ } F \text{ } 1$

Internal communication interruption 1.

Setting ()	Description
0...65,535	Setting range Factory setting: _

[Command word image] $E \text{ } W \text{ } ,$ - Menu

Access

[Display] → [Communication map] → [Command word image]

About This Menu

Command word image.

[Modbus Cmd] $E \text{ } \Pi \text{ } d \text{ } 1$

Command word image built with Modbus port source.

Identical to [CMD Value] $E \text{ } \Pi \text{ } d$ (*see page 128*).

[CANopen Cmd] $E \text{ } \Pi \text{ } d \text{ } 2$

Command word image built with CANopen® port source.

Identical to [CMD Value] $E \text{ } \Pi \text{ } d$ (*see page 128*).

[COM. Module Cmd.] $E \text{ } \Pi \text{ } d \text{ } 3$

Command word image built with fieldbus module source.

Identical to [CMD Value] $E \text{ } \Pi \text{ } d$ (*see page 128*).

[Ethernet Embd cmd.] $E \text{ } \Pi \text{ } d \text{ } 5$

Command word image built with Ethernet embedded source).

Identical to [CMD Value] $E \text{ } \Pi \text{ } d$ (*see page 128*).

[Freq. ref. word map] ↵ W , - Menu

Access

[Display] → [Communication map] → [Freq. ref. word map]

About This Menu

Frequency reference image.

[Modbus Ref Freq] L F r 1

Frequency reference image built with Modbus port source (LFR_MDB).

Setting (⌚)	Description
-32,767...32,767 Hz	Setting range Factory setting: 0.0 Hz

[CAN Ref Freq] L F r 2

Frequency reference image built with CANopen® port source (LFR_CAN).

Setting (⌚)	Description
-32,767...32,767 Hz	Setting range Factory setting: 0.0 Hz

[Com Module Ref Freq] L F r 3

Frequency reference image built with fieldbus module source (LFR_COM).

Setting (⌚)	Description
-32,767...32,767 Hz	Setting range Factory setting: 0.0 Hz

[Ethernet Embd Ref Freq] L F r 5

Embedded Ethernet reference frequency.

Setting (⌚)	Description
-32,767...32,767 Hz	Setting range Factory setting: 0.0 Hz

[CANopen map] - Menu

Access

[Display] → [Communication map] → [CANopen map]

About This Menu

This menu is visible if a CANopen fieldbus module is present. Refer to the CANopen communication module manual.

[RUN LED]

Bitfield: view of the CANopen® Run LED status.

[ERR LED]

Bitfield: view of the CANopen® error LED status.

[PDO1 image] P □ / - Menu**Access**

[Display] → [Communication map] → [CANopen map] → [PDO1 image]

About This Menu

View of the Receive PDO1 and Transmit PDO1.

[Receive PDO1-1] r P / 1 ★

First frame of the receive PDO1.

Setting	Description
0...65,535	Setting range Factory setting: _

[Receive PDO1-2] r P / 2 ★

Second frame of the receive PDO1.

Setting	Description
0...65,535	Setting range Factory setting: _

[Receive PDO1-3] r P / 3 ★

Third frame of the receive PDO1.

Setting	Description
0...65,535	Setting range Factory setting: _

[Receive PDO1-4] r P / 4 ★

Fourth frame of the receive PDO1.

Setting	Description
0...65,535	Setting range Factory setting: _

[Transmit PDO1-1] t P / 1 ★

First frame of the transmit PDO1.

Setting	Description
0...65,535	Setting range Factory setting: _

[Transmit PDO1-2] t P / 2 ★

Second frame of the transmit PDO1.

Setting	Description
0...65,535	Setting range Factory setting: _

[Transmit PDO1-3] E P / 3 ★

Third frame of the transmit PDO1.

Setting	Description
0...65,535	Setting range Factory setting: _

[Transmit PDO1-4] E P / 4 ★

Fourth frame of the transmit PDO1.

Setting	Description
0...65,535	Setting range Factory setting: _

[PDO2 image] P □ 2 - Menu

Access

[Display] → [Communication map] → [CANopen map] → [PDO2 image]

About This Menu

View of the RPDO2 and TPDO2: same structure as [PDO1 image] P □ 1 - (*see page 144*).

[Receive PDO2-1] r P 2 1★

First frame of the receive PDO2.

[Receive PDO2-2] r P 2 2★

Second frame of the receive PDO2.

[Receive PDO2-3] r P 2 3★

Third frame of the receive PDO2.

[Receive PDO2-4] r P 2 4★

Fourth frame of the receive PDO2.

[Transmit PDO2-1] t P 2 1★

First frame of the transmit PDO2.

[Transmit PDO2-2] t P 2 2★

Second frame of the transmit PDO2.

[Transmit PDO2-3] t P 2 3★

Third frame of the transmit PDO2.

[Transmit PDO2-4] t P 2 4★

Fourth frame of the transmit PDO2.

[PDO3 image] P o 3 - Menu

Access

[Display] → [Communication map] → [CANopen map] → [PDO3 image]

About This Menu

View of the RPDO3 and TPDO3.

[Receive PDO3-1] r P 3 1★

First frame of the receive PDO3.

Setting ()	Description
0...65,535	Setting range Factory setting: _

[Receive PDO3-2] r P 3 2★

Second frame of the receive PDO3.

Identical settings as in [Receive PDO3-1] r P 3 1.

[Receive PDO3-3] r P 3 3★

Third frame of the receive PDO3.

Identical settings as in [Receive PDO3-1] r P 3 1.

[Receive PDO3-4] r P 3 4★

Fourth frame of the receive PDO3.

Identical settings as in [Receive PDO3-1] r P 3 1.

[Transmit PDO3-1] t P 3 1★

First frame of the transmit PDO3.

Setting ()	Description
0...65,535	Setting range Factory setting: _

[Transmit PDO3-2] t P 3 2★

Second frame of the transmit PDO3.

Identical settings as in [Transmit PDO3-1] t P 3 1.

[Transmit PDO3-3] t P 3 3★

Third frame of the transmit PDO3.

Identical settings as in [Transmit PDO3-1] t P 3 1.

[Transmit PDO3-4] t P 3 4★

Fourth frame of the transmit PDO3.

Identical settings as in [Transmit PDO3-1] t P 3 1.

[CANopen map] - Menu

Access

[Display] → [Communication map] → [CANopen map]

About This Menu

CANopen® image.

[Canopen NMT state] 5

Drive NMT state of the CANopen® slave.

Settings	Code / Value	Description
[Boot]	  	Bootup
[Stopped]	  	Stopped
[Operation]	 	Operational
[Pre-op]	 	Pre-Operational

[Number of TX PDO] P

Number of transmit PDO.

Setting 	Description
0...65,535	Setting range Factory setting: _

[Number of RX PDO] P

Number of receive PDO.

Setting 	Description
0...65,535	Setting range Factory setting: _

[CANopen Error] o

Error registry CANopen®.

Setting	Description
0...5	Setting range Factory setting: _

[RX Error Counter] i

Number of receive error counter (not saved at power off).

Setting	Description
0...65,535	Setting range Factory setting: _

[TX Error Counter] i

Number of transmit errors countered (not saved at power off).

Setting	Description
0...65,535	Setting range Factory setting: _

Section 7.12

[Data logging]

What Is in This Section?

This section contains the following topics:

Topic	Page
[Distributed logging] $d L o$ - Menu	150
[Log dstrb prm select] $L d P$ - Menu	151
[Distributed logging] $d L o$ - Menu	152

[Distributed logging] $d L o$ - Menu

Access

[Display] → [Data logging] → [Distributed logging]

About This Menu

This menu is used to store data following specific parameters.

The distributed logging function allows to log up to four parameter distributions at the same time. Each parameter storage is synchronized with the same sample time.

The result of this function gives the possibility to extract a bar graph with 10 bars (every 10% of the defined maximum value) to visualize the distribution for each of the four selected parameters.

NOTE: Any modification of the data logging function configuration will clear the data previously stored.

This function aims at extracting samples of data to store them. When available, these samples can be uploaded by other tools (SoMove and/or Webserver). Data logging meets the need to record and store data over time.

The drive can store the following data:

Type of [Data logging]	Description	[Data logging] storage: Automatic/Manual	Access
Drive identification	Drive identification data	Automatic, in [Dashboard] $d S H$ - menu	SoMove Webserver
Even warning logging	Warning logging	Automatic, in [Dashboard] $d S H$ - menu	SoMove Webserver
Even error logging	Error logging	Automatic, in [Dashboard] $d S H$ - menu	SoMove Webserver
Distribution logging	4 Distribution data	Manual	Webserver
Energy logging	1 Energy logging data	Automatic, in [Dashboard] $d S H$ - menu	SoMove Webserver

Activation

To activate [Distributed logging] $d L o$ - :

- Select 1 to 4 data to store with [Log dstrb prm select] $L d P$ -
- Set [Log Distrib State] $L d E n$ to [Start] $S t A r t$

The logging starts as soon as the motor is running.

To stop logging, set [Log Distrib State] $L d E n$ to [Stop] $S t o P$.

[Log Distrib State] $L d E n$

Logging distribution state.

Setting (C)	Code / Value	Description
[Stop]	$S t o P$	Distribution logging disabled Factory setting
[Start]	$S t A r t$	Distribution logs only when the motor is started
[Always]	$A l w a y s$	Distribution logs all the time
[Reset]	$R e s e t$	Distribution logging reset (configuration, data)
[Clear]	$C l e a r$	Clear distribution data
[Error]	$E r r o r$	An error has been detected during distribution logging

[Log dstrb prm select] L d P - Menu

Access

[Display] → [Data logging] → [Distributed logging] → [Log dstrb prm select]

About This Menu

This menu allows you to select up to 4 parameters for data logging. The peak value for each parameter is also stored.

[Log Distrib. Data 1] L d d 1

Logging distribution data 1.

Setting ()	Code / Value	Description
[Distrib. Log. Disable]	n o	Distribution logging disable Factory setting
[Motor Frequency]	r F r	Motor frequency
[Motor Current]	L C r	Motor current
[Motor Speed]	S P d	Motor speed
[Motor Voltage]	u o P	Motor voltage
[Motor Mech. Power]	o P r W	Motor mechanical power
[Input Elec. Power]	i P r W	Input electrical power
[Output Elec. Power]	E P r W	Output electrical power
[Motor Torque]	o t r	Motor torque
[Mains Voltage]	u L n	Mains voltage
[DC BUS Voltage]	V b u S	DC BUS voltage
[PID Feedback]	r P F	PID feedback
[AI1 Th Value]	t H 1 V	Thermal sensor AI1
[AI3 Th Value]	t H 3 V	Thermal sensor AI3
[AI4 Th Value]	t H 4 V	Thermal sensor AI4
[AI5 Th Value]	t H 5 V	Thermal sensor AI5
[Drive Thermal State]	t H d	Drive thermal state
[Motor Therm State]	t H r	Motor thermal state
[DBR Thermal State]	t H b	DBR thermal state

[Log Distrib. Data 2] L d d 2

Logging distribution data 2.

Identical to [Log Distrib. Data 1] L d d 1 (see page 151).

[Log Distrib. Data 3] L d d 3

Logging distribution data 3.

Identical to [Log Distrib. Data 1] L d d 1 (see page 151).

[Log Distrib. Data 4] L d d 4

Logging distribution data 4.

Identical to [Log Distrib. Data 1] L d d 1 (see page 151).

[Distributed logging] - Menu

Access

[Display] → [Data logging] → [Distributed logging]

About This Menu

NOTE: If a log data exceeds the user defined maximum values for log distribution data, this value will not be stored in the log distribution.

[Log Distrib Slp Time]

Logging distribution sample time.

Setting 	Code / Value	Description
[200 ms]	200MS	200 ms
[1 second]	1S	1 s Factory setting
[2 second]	2S	2 s
[5 second]	5S	5 s

[Dist Max Val 1]

Maximum value of the log distribution data 1.

Setting 	Description
10...65,535	Setting range Factory setting: _

[Dist Max Val 2]

Maximum value of the log distribution data 2.

Setting 	Description
10...65,535	Setting range Factory setting: _

[Dist Max Val 3]

Maximum value of the log distribution data 3.

Setting 	Description
10...65,535	Setting range Factory setting: _

[Dist Max Val 4]

Maximum value of the log distribution data 4.

Setting 	Description
10...65,535	Setting range Factory setting: _

Chapter 8

[Complete settings] *C S E -*

Introduction



[Complete settings] *C S E -* menu presents all the settings related to drive functions for:

- Motor and drive configuration
- Application functions
- Monitoring functions

What Is in This Chapter?

This chapter contains the following sections:

Section	Topic	Page
8.1	[Motor parameters] <i>M P R -</i> Menu	155
8.2	[Define system units]	213
8.3	[Command and Reference] <i>C r P -</i> Menu	215
8.4	[Master/Slave]	229
8.5	[Hoisting Functions]	271
8.6	[Hoisting monitoring]	295
8.7	[Machine Functions]	297
8.8	[Generic functions] - [Speed limits]	309
8.9	[Generic functions] - [Ramp]	312
8.10	[Generic functions] - [Ramp switching]	315
8.11	[Generic functions] - [Stop configuration]	317
8.12	[Generic functions] - [Auto DC injection]	323
8.13	[Generic functions] - [Ref. operations]	326
8.14	[Generic functions] - [Preset speeds]	328
8.15	[Generic functions] - [+/- speed]	332
8.16	[Generic functions] - [+/- speed around ref]	335
8.17	[Generic functions] - [Jump frequency]	338
8.18	[Generic functions] - [PID controller]	339
8.19	[Generic functions] - [Threshold reached]	357
8.20	[Generic functions] - [Mains contactor command]	360
8.21	[Generic functions] - [Reverse disable]	362
8.22	[Generic functions] - [Torque limitation]	363
8.23	[Generic functions] - [2nd current limit.]	367
8.24	[Generic functions] - [Jog]	369
8.25	[Generic functions] - [High Speed Switching]	371
8.26	[Generic functions] - [Memo reference frequency]	373
8.27	[Generic functions] - [Brake logic control]	374
8.28	[Generic functions] - [Limit switches]	375
8.29	[Generic functions] - [Positioning by sensors]	377
8.30	[Generic functions] - [Torque control]	385
8.31	[Generic functions] - [Parameters switching]	392
8.32	[Generic functions] - [Stop after speed timeout]	398
8.33	[Generic functions] - [DC bus supply]	400
8.34	[Generic functions] - [Multimotors config]	402
8.35	[Generic functions] - [24 V Supply Output]	406
8.36	[Generic monitoring]	407

Section	Topic	Page
8.37	[Input/Output] - [I/O assignment]	417
8.38	[Input/Output] - [DI/DQ]	430
8.39	[Input/Output] - [Analog I/O]	453
8.40	[Input/Output] - [Relay]	470
8.41	[Encoder configuration]	479
8.42	[Embedded Encoder]	485
8.43	[Error/Warning handling]	488
8.44	[Maintenance]	520

Section 8.1

[Motor parameters] πpr - Menu

What Is in This Section?

This section contains the following topics:

Topic	Page
[Motor parameters] πpr - Menu	156
[Data] πed - Menu	158
[Angle test setting] πsr - Menu	168
[Motor tune] πeu - Menu	171
[Motor monitoring] πop - Menu	178
[Thermal monitoring] πpp - Menu	179
[Motor monitoring] πop - Menu	188
[Motor control] πrc - Menu	191
[Fluxing by DI] πfl - Menu	196
[Spd Loop Optimization] πcl - Menu	199
[Motor control] πrc - Menu	209
[Switching frequency] πwf - Menu	211

[Motor parameters] $\pi P H$ - Menu**Access**

[Complete settings] → [Motor parameters]

About This Menu

If high rating is selected, drive current limitation is extended to 1.8 In and maximum values of motor parameters linked to current and/or power are reduced. When switching from one to another selection, all the related parameters are set to their factory setting values.

In any case, the maximum current of the drive does not change. Setting the drive in high rating mode decrease the nominal values for the motor parameters. It means that for the same motor name plate, an oversized drive is required in high rating mode.

[Dual Rating] $d r t$

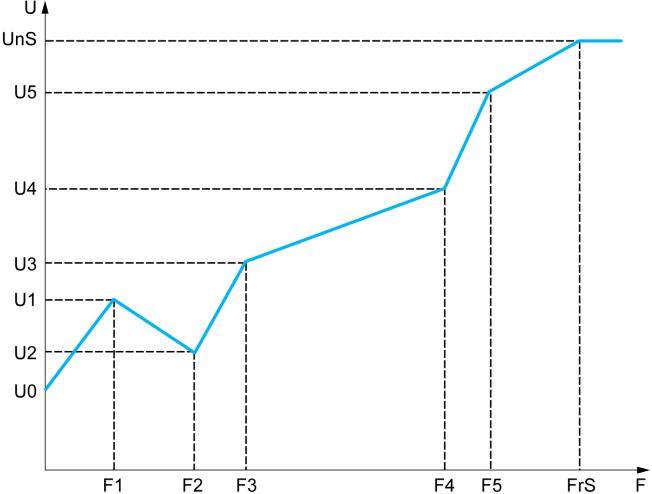
Dual rating state.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Normal rating]	$n o r \pi R L$	Normal rating, drive current limitation is 1.5 In
[High rating]	$H i G H$	High rating, drive current limitation is 1.8 In Factory setting

[Motor Control Type] **C E E**

Motor control type.

NOTE: Select the motor control type before entering parameter values.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[SVC V]	V V E	Voltage vector control: Open-loop voltage flux vector control with automatic slip compensation according to the load. It supports operation with a number of motors connected in parallel on the same drive (if motors are identical). Factory setting
[FVC]	F V E	Current vector control closed loop: Closed-loop current flux vector control for motors with encoder sensor; this option can be selected if an encoder module has been inserted or embedded encoder is used. NOTE: Verify the encoder before selecting [FVC] F V E.
[U/F VC 5pts]	u F S	5-segment V/F profile: As [U/F VC Standard] 5 E d profile but also supports the avoidance of resonance (saturation).  The profile is defined by the values of parameters u n S, F r S, u I to u S and F I to F S. $F r S > F S > F 4 > F 3 > F 2 > F 1$ NOTE: U0 is the result of an internal calculation based on motor parameters and multiplied by u F r (%). U0 can be adjusted by modifying u F r value.
[Sync. mot.]	S Y n	Open-loop synchronous motors: Motor control type specific for permanent magnet synchronous motors.
[Energy Sav.]	n L d	Specific motor control type optimized for energy saving. This motor control type automatically reduces the drive output current according to the motor load. This automatic current level adaptation allows energy saving for periods when load is kept to a minimum and preserves the drive performance up to full load.
[Sync.CL]	F S Y	Closed-loop synchronous motor: For permanent magnet synchronous motors, with encoder. This selection is only possible if an encoder module has been inserted or embedded encoder is used. NOTE: Verify the encoder before selecting [Sync.CL] F S Y.
[SYN_U VC]	S Y n u	Open-loop synchronous motor: Motor control type specific for permanent magnet synchronous motors. This motor control type is used for variable torque applications.
[Rel. Mot.]	S r V c	Synchronous Reluctant Motor: Motor control type for reluctance motors. This motor control type is used for variable torque applications. If the maximum output current of the drive is not equal or greater than the motor current, this will lead to a lack of torque performances. [Stall Monitoring] S E P C function helps to prevent a motor overload by monitoring the motor current and the speed rise time.

[Data] - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Motor parameters] → [Motor data] → [Data]

About This Menu

For synchronous motor parameters. Dedicated parameters can be accessed if [Motor control type]  is set to:

- [Sync. mot.] , or
- [Sync.CL.] , or
- [SYN_U VC] , or
- [Rel. Mot.] .

WARNING

LOSS OF CONTROL

- Fully read and understand the manual of the connected motor.
- Verify that all motor parameters are correctly set by referring to the nameplate and the manual of the connected motor.

Failure to follow these instructions can result in death, serious injury, or equipment damage.

This table presents the steps to follow to set and optimize the motor data:

Step	Action
1	Enter the motor nameplate
2	Perform the [Autotuning]  operation
3	Adjust [Syn. EMF constant]  to optimize the behavior: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Start the motor at minimal stable frequency available on the machine (at minimum load). • Check and note the [% error EMF sync]  value: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ If the [% error EMF sync]  value is lower than 0%, then [Syn. EMF constant]  may be increased. ○ If the [% error EMF sync]  value is upper than 0%, then [Syn. EMF constant]  may be reduced. ○ [% error EMF sync]  value should be closed to 0%. • Stop the motor for modify [Syn. EMF constant]  in accordance with the value of the [% error EMF sync]  (previously noted).

[Motor Standard]

Motor standard.

This parameter modifies the presets of the following parameters:

- [High Speed] 
- [Motor Freq Thd] 
- [Nom Motor Voltage] 
- [Nominal Motor Freq] 
- [Max Frequency] 

This parameter can be accessed if [Motor control type]  is not set to:

- [Sync. mot.] , or
- [Sync.CL.] , or
- [SYN_U VC] , or
- [Rel. Mot.] .

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[50 Hz IEC]		IEC Factory setting
[60 Hz NEMA]		NEMA

[Nominal Motor Power] n_{Pr} ★

Nominal motor power.

This parameter can be accessed if [Motor control type] C_E is not set to:

- [Sync. mot.] Syn , or
- [Sync.CL.] $F5Y$, or
- [SYN_U VC] $Synu$, or
- [Rel. Mot.] $ScrVc$.

Rated motor power given on the nameplate, in kW if [Motor Standard] bFr is set to [50 Hz IEC] $5D$, in HP if [Motor Standard] bFr is set to [60 Hz NEMA] $6D$.

Setting	Description
According to drive rating	– Factory setting: according to the drive rating

[Nom Motor Voltage] u_n ★

Nominal motor voltage.

This parameter can be accessed if [Motor control type] C_E is not set to:

- [Sync. mot.] Syn , or
- [Sync.CL.] $F5Y$, or
- [SYN_U VC] $Synu$, or
- [Rel. Mot.] $ScrVc$.

Rated motor voltage given on the nameplate.

Setting	Description
100...690 Vac	Setting range Factory setting: according to drive rating and [Motor Standard] bFr

[Nom Motor Current] n_{Cr} ★

Rated motor current given on the nameplate.

This parameter can be accessed if [Motor control type] C_E is not set to:

- [Sync. mot.] Syn , or
- [Sync.CL.] $F5Y$, or
- [SYN_U VC] $Synu$, or
- [Rel. Mot.] $ScrVc$.

Setting	Description
0.25...1.8 In ⁽¹⁾	Setting range Factory setting: according to drive rating and [Motor Standard] bFr
⁽¹⁾ Corresponding to the rated drive current indicated in the installation manual and on the drive nameplate.	

[Nominal Motor Freq] F_{Pr} ★

Nominal motor frequency.

This parameter can be accessed if [Motor control type] C_E is not set to:

- [Sync. mot.] Syn , or
- [Sync.CL.] $F5Y$, or
- [SYN_U VC] $Synu$, or
- [Rel. Mot.] $ScrVc$.

The factory setting is 50 Hz, or preset to 60 Hz if [Motor Standard] bFr is set to 60 Hz.

Setting	Description
10.0...599.0 Hz	Setting range Factory setting: 50 Hz

[Nominal Motor Speed] n_{SP} ★

Nominal motor speed.

This parameter can be accessed if [Motor control type] C_EE is not set to:

- [Sync. mot.] Syn_n , or
- [Sync.CL.] $F5Y$, or
- [SYN_U VC] Syn_u , or
- [Rel. Mot.] Srv_Vc .

If the nameplate indicates the synchronous speed and the slip in Hz or as a %, use any 1 of the formulas to calculate the rated speed:

- Nominal speed = Synchronous speed $\times \frac{100 - \text{slip as a \%}}{100}$
- Nominal speed = Synchronous speed $\times \frac{60 - \text{slip in Hz}}{60}$ (60 Hz motors)
- Nominal speed = Synchronous speed $\times \frac{50 - \text{slip in Hz}}{50}$ (50 Hz motors).

Setting	Description
0...65,535 rpm	Setting range Factory setting: according to drive rating

[Motor Param Choice] PPC ★

Motor parameter choice.

This parameter can be accessed if [Motor control type] C_EE is not set to:

- [Sync. mot.] Syn_n , or
- [Sync.CL.] $F5Y$, or
- [SYN_U VC] Syn_u , or
- [Rel. Mot.] Srv_Vc .

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Mot Power]	nPr	Motor power Factory setting
[Mot Cosinus]	$Cos5$	Motor cosinus

[Motor 1 Cosinus Phi] $Cos5$ ★

Nominal motor cosinus Phi.

This parameter can be accessed if:

- [Motor param choice] PPC is set to [Mot Cosinus] $Cos5$, and if
- [Motor control type] C_EE is not set to:
 - [Sync. mot.] Syn_n , or
 - [Sync.CL.] $F5Y$, or
 - [SYN_U VC] Syn_u , or
 - [Rel. Mot.] Srv_Vc .

Setting	Description
0.50...1.00	Setting range Factory setting: according to the drive rating

[Nominal motor slip] $n \text{ } S \text{ } L$ ★

Motor nominal slip, calculated by the drive.

This is a read-only parameter.

To modify the nominal motor slip, modify the [Rated motor speed] $n \text{ } S \text{ } P$.

This parameter can be accessed if:

- [Access Level] $L \text{ } R \text{ } L$ is set to [Expert] $E \text{ } P \text{ } r$, and if
- [Motor control type] $L \text{ } E \text{ } E$ is not set to:
 - [Sync. mot.] $S \text{ } Y \text{ } n$, or
 - [Sync.CL.] $F \text{ } S \text{ } Y$, or
 - [SYN_U VC] $S \text{ } Y \text{ } n \text{ } u$, or
 - [Rel. Mot.] $S \text{ } r \text{ } V \text{ } c$.

Setting	Description
0...6553.5 Hz	Setting range Factory setting: _

[AsyncMotor R Stator] $r \text{ } S \text{ } R$ ★

Asynchronous motor stator resistance.

This parameter can be accessed if:

- [Access Level] $L \text{ } R \text{ } L$ is set to [Expert] $E \text{ } P \text{ } r$, and if
- [Motor control type] $L \text{ } E \text{ } E$ is not set to:
 - [Sync. mot.] $S \text{ } Y \text{ } n$, or
 - [Sync.CL.] $F \text{ } S \text{ } Y$, or
 - [SYN_U VC] $S \text{ } Y \text{ } n \text{ } u$, or
 - [Rel. Mot.] $S \text{ } r \text{ } V \text{ } c$.

The factory setting is replaced by the result of the autotuning operation if it has been performed.

Setting	Description
0...65,535 mOhm	Setting range Factory setting: 0 mOhm

[Magnetizing Current] $i \text{ } d \text{ } R$ ★

Magnetizing current.

This parameter can be accessed if:

- [Access Level] $L \text{ } R \text{ } L$ is set to [Expert] $E \text{ } P \text{ } r$, and if
- [Motor control type] $L \text{ } E \text{ } E$ is not set to:
 - [Sync. mot.] $S \text{ } Y \text{ } n$, or
 - [Sync.CL.] $F \text{ } S \text{ } Y$, or
 - [SYN_U VC] $S \text{ } Y \text{ } n \text{ } u$, or
 - [Rel. Mot.] $S \text{ } r \text{ } V \text{ } c$.

Setting	Description
0...6,553.5 A	Setting range Factory setting: 0 A

[AsyncMotor L Induct] L_F R ★

Asynchronous motor leakage inductance.

This parameter can be accessed if:

- [Access Level] L_F R C is set to [Expert] $E_P r$, and if
- [Motor control type] C_E E is not set to:
 - [Sync. mot.] $S_Y n$, or
 - [Sync.CL.] $F_S Y$, or
 - [SYN_U VC] $S_Y n u$, or
 - [Rel. Mot.] $S_r V c$.

The factory setting is replaced by the result of the autotuning operation if it has been performed.

Setting	Description
0...655.35 mH	Setting range Factory setting: 0 mH

[Rotor Time Const] E_r R ★

Rotor time constant.

This parameter can be accessed if:

- [Access Level] L_F R C is set to [Expert] $E_P r$, and if
- [Motor control type] C_E E is not set to:
 - [Sync. mot.] $S_Y n$, or
 - [Sync.CL.] $F_S Y$, or
 - [SYN_U VC] $S_Y n u$, or
 - [Rel. Mot.] $S_r V c$.

Setting	Description
0...65,535 ms	Setting range Factory setting: 0 ms

[Sync Nominal I] n_C r S ★

Sync motor nominal current.

This parameter can be accessed if [Motor control type] C_E E is set to:

- [Sync. mot.] $S_Y n$, or
- [Sync.CL.] $F_S Y$, or
- [SYN_U VC] $S_Y n u$, or
- [Rel. Mot.] $S_r V c$.

Setting	Description
0.25...1.8 I_n ⁽¹⁾	Setting range Factory setting: according to the drive rating.

(1) Corresponding to the rated drive current indicated in the installation manual and on the drive nameplate.

[Nom SyncMotor Speed] $n_S P$ S ★

Nominal synchronous motor speed.

This parameter can be accessed if [Motor control type] C_E E is set to:

- [Sync. mot.] $S_Y n$, or
- [Sync.CL.] $F_S Y$, or
- [SYN_U VC] $S_Y n u$, or
- [Rel. Mot.] $S_r V c$.

Setting	Description
0...48,000 rpm	Setting range Factory setting: according to the drive rating.

[Nom Motor torque] E_{M} 5★

Nominal motor torque

This parameter can be accessed if [Motor control type] E_{M} is set to:

- [Sync. mot.] 5 Y n, or
- [Sync.CL.] F 5 Y, or
- [SYN_U VC] 5 Y n u, or
- [Rel. Mot.] 5 r V c.

Setting	Description
0.1...6,553.5 Nm	Setting range Factory setting: according to the drive rating.

[Pole pairs] P_Pn 5★

Pole pairs.

This parameter can be accessed if [Motor control type] E_{M} is set to:

- [Sync. mot.] 5 Y n, or
- [Sync.CL.] F 5 Y, or
- [SYN_U VC] 5 Y n u, or
- [Rel. Mot.] 5 r V c.

Setting	Description
1...50	Setting range Factory setting: according to the drive rating.

[Angle setting type] **P 5 E** ★

Automatic angle setting type.

This parameter can be accessed if [Motor control type] **E E E** is set to:

- [Sync. mot.] **S Y n**, or
- [Sync.CL.] **F S Y**, or
- [SYN_U VC] **S Y n u**, or
- [Rel. Mot.] **S r V c**.

[PSI align] **P 5 ,** and [PSIO align] **P 5 ,o** are working for all types of synchronous motors. [SPM align] **S P P R** and [IPM align] **,P P R** increase performances depending on the type of synchronous motor.

[Rotational Current Injection] **r L ,** may be used where [PSI align] **P 5 ,** and [PSIO align] **P 5 ,o** do not give expected performances.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[IPM align]	,P P R	Alignment for IPM motor. Alignment mode for Interior-buried Permanent Magnet motor (usually, this kind of motor has a high saliency level). It uses high frequency injection, which is less noisy than standard alignment mode.
[SPM align]	S P P R	Alignment for SPM motor. Mode for Surface-mounted Permanent Magnet motor (usually, this kind of motor has a medium or low saliency level). It uses high frequency injection, which is less noisy than standard alignment mode.
[PSI align]	P 5 ,	Pulse signal injection. Standard alignment mode, without rotor motion The angle measurement is realized by monitoring the stator current response to a pulse signal injection over a wide range of frequencies
[PSIO align]	P 5 ,o	Pulse signal injection - optimized. Optimized alignment mode, without rotor motion Same operation as [PSI align] P 5 , is performed over an optimized range of frequencies The measurement time is reduced after the first run order or tune operation, even if the drive has been turned off Factory setting
[Rotational Current Injection]	r L ,	Rotational current injection. Alignment mode with rotor motion. This alignment mode realizes the mechanical alignment of the rotor and the stator; it requires up to 4 s. The motor needs to be stopped and without resistive torque. NOTE: This setting is recommended when a sinus filter is used on the application. NOTE: For synchronous reluctance motor, it is recommended to use this setting.
[No align]	n o	No alignment

[Syn. EMF constant] **P H 5** ★

Synchronous motor EMF constant

This parameter can be accessed if [Motor control type] **E E E** is set to:

- [Sync. mot.] **S Y n**, or
- [Sync.CL.] **F S Y**, or
- [SYN_U VC] **S Y n u**.

P H 5 adjustment allows you to reduce the current in operation without load.

Setting	Description
0...6,553.5 mV/rpm	Setting range Factory setting: 0 mV/rpm

[SyncMotor Stator R]

Calculated synchronous motor stator R.

Cold state stator resistance (per winding). The factory setting is replaced by the result of the tuning operation if it has been performed.

This parameter can be accessed if:

- [Access Level] **L R L** is set to [Expert] **E P r**, and if
- [Motor control type] **L E E** is set to:
 - [Sync. mot.] **S Y n**, or
 - [Sync.CL.] **F S Y**, or
 - [SYN_U VC] **S Y n u**, or
 - [Rel. Mot.] **S r V c**.

You can enter the value if you know it.

Setting	Description
0...65,535 mOhm	Setting range Factory setting: 0 mOhm

[Autotune L d-axis]

Autotune L d-axis.

Axis "d" stator inductance in mH (per phase).

This parameter can be accessed if:

- [Access Level] **L R L** is set to [Expert] **E P r**, and if
- [Motor control type] **L E E** is set to:
 - [Sync. mot.] **S Y n**, or
 - [Sync.CL.] **F S Y**, or
 - [SYN_U VC] **S Y n u**, or
 - [Rel. Mot.] **S r V c**.

On motors with smooth poles **[Autotune L d-axis] L d 5 = [Autotune L q-axis] L q 5** = Stator inductance L.

The factory setting is replaced by the result of the autotuning operation if it has been performed.

Setting	Description
0...655.35 mH	Setting range Factory setting: 0

[Autotune L q-axis]

Autotune L q-axis.

Axis "q" stator inductance in mH (per phase).

This parameter can be accessed if:

- [Access Level] **L R L** is set to [Expert] **E P r**, and if
- [Motor control type] **L E E** is set to:
 - [Sync. mot.] **S Y n**, or
 - [Sync.CL.] **F S Y**, or
 - [SYN_U VC] **S Y n u**, or
 - [Rel. Mot.] **S r V c**.

On motors with smooth poles **[Autotune L d-axis] L d 5 = [Autotune L q-axis] L q 5** = Stator inductance L.

The factory setting is replaced by the result of the autotuning operation if it has been performed.

Setting	Description
0...655.35 mH	Setting range Factory setting: 0

[Sync Nominal Freq] $F_{r\ 5\ 5}$ ★

Synchronous motor nominal frequency.

Nominal motor frequency for synchronous motor in Hz unit. Automatically updated according to [Nom SyncMotor Speed] $n\ S\ P\ S$ and [Pole pairs] $P\ P\ n\ S$ data.

This parameter can be accessed if:

- [Access Level] $L\ A\ L$ is set to [Expert] $E\ P\ r$, and if
- [Motor control type] $C\ t\ t$ is set to:
 - [Sync. mot.] $S\ Y\ n$, or
 - [Sync.CL.] $F\ S\ Y$, or
 - [SYN_U VC] $S\ Y\ n\ u$, or
 - [Rel. Mot.] $S\ r\ V\ c$.

Setting (1)	Description
10.0...500.0 Hz	Setting range Factory setting: $n\ S\ P\ S \times P\ P\ n\ S / 60$

[PSI Align Curr Max] $\Pi\ C\ r$ ★

Maximum current of PSI alignment.

Current level in % of [Sync Nominal I] $n\ C\ r\ S$ for [PSI align] $P\ S\ r$, and [PSI Oalign] $P\ S\ r\ o$ angle shift measurement modes. This parameter has an impact on the inductor measurement.

This parameter can be accessed if:

- [Access Level] $L\ A\ L$ is set to [Expert] $E\ P\ r$, and if
- [Motor control type] $C\ t\ t$ is set to:
 - [Sync. mot.] $S\ Y\ n$, or
 - [Sync.CL.] $F\ S\ Y$, or
 - [SYN_U VC] $S\ Y\ n\ u$, or
 - [Rel. Mot.] $S\ r\ V\ c$.

This current must be equal to or higher than the maximum current level of the application; otherwise an instability may occur.

If [PSI Align Curr Max] $\Pi\ C\ r$ is set to [AUTO] $R\ u\ t\ o$, [PSI Align Curr Max] $\Pi\ C\ r$ is adapted by the drive according to the motor data settings.

Setting	Description
[AUTO] $R\ u\ t\ o$...300%	Setting range Factory setting: [AUTO] $R\ u\ t\ o$

NOTE: In case of instability, [PSI Align Curr Max] $\Pi\ C\ r$ should be increased by steps up to obtain the requested performances.

[Current Filter Time] $C\ r\ t\ F$ ★

Filter time of the current.

This parameter can be accessed if [Access Level] $L\ A\ L$ is set to [Expert] $E\ P\ r$.

Setting	Description
[AUTO] $R\ u\ t\ o$...100.0 ms	Setting range Factory setting: [AUTO] $R\ u\ t\ o$

[Currents Filter] *C r F R* ★

Internal currents filter time.

This parameter can be accessed if [Access Level] *L A L* is set to [Expert] *E P r*.

Setting (i)	Description
0.0...100.0 ms	Setting range Factory setting: <i>n S P S * P P n S / 60</i>

[% error EMF sync] *r d R E* ★

Ratio D-axis current.

This parameter can be accessed if [Motor control type] *L E E* is set to:

- [Sync. mot.] *S Y n*, or
- [Sync.CL.] *F S Y*, or
- [SYN_U VC] *S Y n u*.

Use [% error EMF sync] *r d R E* to adjust [Syn. EMF constant] *P H S*, [% error EMF sync] *r d R E* should be closed to 0%.

If the [% error EMF sync] *r d R E* value is:

- Lower than 0%: [Syn. EMF constant] *P H S* may be increased.
- Upper than 0%: [Syn. EMF constant] *P H S* may be reduced.

For the all steps to follow to optimize the synchronous motor settings ([see page 158](#)).

Setting (i)	Description
0.0...6,553.5%	Setting range Factory setting: <i>_</i>

[Angle test setting] - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Motor parameters] → [Motor data] → [Angle test setting]

About This Menu

For synchronous motor parameters.

This menu can be accessed if [Motor control type]  is set to:

- [Sync.CL.] .

And if an encoder module has been inserted or embedded encoder is used.

[Angle setting type]

Auto angle setting type.

This parameter can be accessed if [Motor Control Type]  is set to:

- [Sync. mot.] , or
- [Sync.CL] , or
- [SYN_U VC] , or
- [Rel. Mot.] .

[PSI align]  and [PSIO align]  are working for all types of synchronous motors. [SPM align]  and [IPM align]  increase performances depending on the type of synchronous motor.

[Rotational Current Injection]  may be used where [PSI align]  and [PSIO align]  do not give expected performances.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[IPM align]	 	Alignment for IPM motor. Alignment mode for Interior-buried Permanent Magnet motor (usually, this kind of motor has a high saliency level). It uses high frequency injection, which is less noisy than standard alignment mode.
[SPM align]	 	Alignment for SPM motor. Mode for Surface-mounted Permanent Magnet motor (usually, this kind of motor has a medium or low saliency level). It uses high frequency injection, which is less noisy than standard alignment mode.
[PSI align]	 	Pulse signal injection. Standard alignment mode, without rotor motion The angle measurement is realized by monitoring the stator current response to a pulse signal injection over a wide range of frequencies
[PSIO align]	 	Pulse signal injection - optimized. Optimized alignment mode, without rotor motion Same operation as [PSI align]  is performed over an optimized range of frequencies The measurement time is reduced after the first run order or tune operation, even if the drive has been turned off Factory setting
[Rotational Current Injection]	 	Rotational current injection. Alignment mode with rotor motion. This alignment mode realizes the mechanical alignment of the rotor and the stator; it requires up to 4 s. The motor needs to be stopped and without resistive torque. NOTE: This setting is recommended when a sinus filter is used on the application. NOTE: For synchronous reluctance motor, it is recommended to use this setting.
[No align]	 	No alignment

[Angle auto-test] R 5 A

Angle setting.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[No]	n o	Auto angle setting is not done Factory setting
[Yes]	y E S	Auto angle setting is requested.
[Done]	d o n E	Auto angle setting is done.

[Angle Test Assign] R 5 L

Auto angle setting activation by logic signal.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Not Assigned]	n o	Not assigned Factory setting
[DI1]...[DI8]	L , I...L , B	Digital input DI1...DI8 NOTE: DI8 selection can be accessed on drives with a power greater than 22 kW.
[DI11]...[DI16]	L , I I...L , I B	Digital input DI11...DI16 if VW3A3203 I/O extension module has been inserted
[CD00]...[CD10]	C d D D...C d I D	Virtual digital input CMD.0...CMD.10 in [I/O profile] , o configuration
[CD11]...[CD15]	C d I I...C d I S	Virtual digital input CMD.11...CMD.15 regardless of configuration
[C101]...[C110]	C I D I...C I I D	Virtual digital input CMD1.01...CMD1.10 with integrated Modbus Serial in [I/O profile] , o configuration
[C111]...[C115]	C I I I...C I I S	Virtual digital input CMD1.11...CMD1.15 with integrated Modbus Serial regardless of configuration
[C201]...[C210]	C 2 D I...C 2 I D	Virtual digital input CMD2.01...CMD2.10 with CANopen® fieldbus module in [I/O profile] , o configuration
[C211]...[C215]	C 2 I I...C 2 I S	Virtual digital input CMD2.11...CMD2.15 with CANopen® fieldbus module regardless of configuration
[C301]...[C310]	C 3 D I...C 3 I D	Virtual digital input CMD3.01...CMD3.10 with a fieldbus module in [I/O profile] , o configuration
[C311]...[C315]	C 3 I I...C 3 I S	Virtual digital input CMD3.11...CMD3.15 with a fieldbus module regardless of configuration
[C501]...[C510]	C 5 D I...C 5 I D	Virtual digital input CMD5.01...CMD5.10 with integrated Ethernet in [I/O profile] , o configuration NOTE: This selection can be accessed on ATV340...N4E drives.
[C511]...[C515]	C 5 I I...C 5 I S	Virtual digital input CMD5.11...CMD5.15 with integrated Ethernet regardless of configuration NOTE: This selection can be accessed on ATV340...N4E drives.

NOTE: If a **line contactor** or **output contactor** function has been configured, the contactor closes during measurement.

[Angle setting Mode] R 5 E A

Automatic auto angle setting activation.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[No]	n o	Automatic auto angle setting is not activated Factory setting
[Run Command]	R u E o	Auto angle setting launched at run command if the drive is not aligned state. [Angle setting Mode] R 5 E S is not equal to [Done] d o n E

[Angle offset value] R 5 V

Auto angle setting value.

Phase-shift angle between the motor and the encoder. 8192 corresponds to 360°.

Setting	Description
[No]...8192	Automatic auto angle setting value Factory setting: [No] <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

[Angle setting status] R 5 E 5

Auto angle setting status.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Not done]	E R b	Angle setting value is not defined Factory setting
[Pending]	P E n d	Angle setting is in waiting state
[In progress]	P r o G	Angle setting function is in progress
[Error]	F R i L	Angle Setting function failed
[Done]	d o n E	Angle function is OK
[Custom Value]	C u S	The phase-shift angle value has been entered by the user via the display terminal or serial Link

[Motor tune] - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Motor parameters] → [Motor data] → [Motor tune]

[Autotuning]

WARNING

UNEXPECTED MOVEMENT

Autotuning moves the motor in order to tune the control loops.

- Only start the system if there are no persons or obstructions in the zone of operation.

Failure to follow these instructions can result in death, serious injury, or equipment damage.

During autotuning, noise development and oscillations of the system are normal.

If [Autotuning Type]  is set to [Standard] , during autotuning, the motor makes small movements.

If [Autotuning Type]  is set to [Rotation] , during autotuning, the motor runs at half of its nominal frequency.

During autotuning, the motor makes small movement. Noise development and oscillations of the system are normal.

In any case, the motor has to be stopped before performing a tune operation. Verify that the application does not make the motor turn during the tune operation.

If [Motor control type]  is set to [Rel. Mot.] , the drive operates the mechanical alignment of the motor ([Angle setting type]  set to [Rotational Current Injection] ) prior to start the autotuning.

The tune operation optimizes:

- The motor performances at low speed.
- The estimation of the motor torque.
- The accuracy of the estimation of the process values in sensorless operation and monitoring.

Autotuning is only performed if no stop command has been activated. If a "freewheel stop" or "fast stop" function has been assigned to a digital input, this input must be set to 1 (active at 0).

Autotuning takes priority over any run or prefluxing commands, which will be taken into account after the autotuning sequence.

If autotuning has detected an error, the drive always displays [No action]  and, depending on the configuration of [Tuning Error Resp] , may switch to [Autotuning]  detected error mode.

Autotuning may last for several seconds. Do not interrupt the process. Wait for the Display Terminal to change to [No action] .

NOTE: The motor thermal state has a significant influence on the tuning result. Always perform a motor tuning with the motor stopped and cold. Verify that the application does not have the motor operate during a tuning operation.

To redo a motor tuning, wait that it is stopped and cold. Set first [Autotuning]  to [Erase Autotuning] , then redo the motor tuning.

The use of the motor autotuning without doing a [Erase Autotuning]  first is used to get the thermal state estimation of the motor.

The cable length has an influence on the tune result. If the wiring is modified, it is necessary to redo the tune operation.

Setting ()	Code / Value	Description
[No action]	<i>n o</i>	Autotuning not in progress Factory setting
[Apply Autotuning]	<i>y E 5</i>	Autotuning is performed immediately if possible, then the parameter automatically changes to [No action] <i>n o</i> . If the drive state does not allow the tune operation immediately, the parameter changes to [No] <i>n o</i> and the operation must be done again.
[Erase Autotuning]	<i>L L r</i>	The motor parameters measured by the autotuning function are reset. The default motor parameter values are used to control the motor. [Autotuning Status] <i>E u 5</i> is set to [Not done] <i>E R b</i> .

[Autotuning Status] *E u 5*

Autotuning status.

This parameter is not saved at drive power-off. It shows the autotuning status since the last power-on (for information only, cannot be modified).

Setting ()	Code / Value	Description
[Not done]	<i>E R b</i>	The autotuning is not done Factory setting
[Pending]	<i>P E n d</i>	The autotuning has been requested but not yet performed
[In Progress]	<i>P r o G</i>	The autotuning is in progress
[Error]	<i>F R i L</i>	The autotuning has detected an error
[Done]	<i>d o n E</i>	The motor parameters measured by the autotuning function are used to control the motor

[Auto tuning usage] *E u n u* ★

Auto tune usage.

This parameter shows the way used to modify the motor parameters according to its estimated thermal state.

This parameter can be accessed if [Access Level] *L R L* is set to [Expert] *E P r*.

Setting ()	Code / Value	Description
[No]	<i>n o</i>	No thermal state estimation Factory setting
[Therm Mot]	<i>E P</i>	Statoric thermal state estimation based on nominal current and current consumed by the motor.

[Tuning Error Resp] *E n L* ★

Response to autotune error.

This parameter can be accessed if [Access Level] *L R L* is set to [Expert] *E P r*.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Ignore]	<i>n o</i>	Detected error ignored
[Freewheel Stop]	<i>y E 5</i>	Freewheel stop Factory setting

[Autotuning Assign]

Autotuning input assignment.

The autotuning is performed when the assigned input or bit changes to 1.

This parameter can be accessed if [Access Level]  is set to [Expert] .

NOTE: The autotuning causes the motor to start up.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Not Assigned]		Not assigned Factory setting
[DI1]...[DI8]	  ...  	Digital input DI1...DI8 NOTE: DI8 selection can be accessed on drives with a power greater than 22 kW.
[DI11]...[DI16]	  ...   	Digital input DI11...DI16 if VW3A3203 I/O extension module has been inserted
[CD00]...[CD10]	  ...   	Virtual digital input CMD.0...CMD.10 in [I/O profile] 
[CD11]...[CD15]	  ...   	Virtual digital input CMD.11...CMD.15 regardless of configuration
[C101]...[C110]	  ...   	Virtual digital input CMD1.01...CMD1.10 with integrated Modbus Serial in [I/O profile] 
[C111]...[C115]	  ...   	Virtual digital input CMD1.11...CMD1.15 with integrated Modbus Serial regardless of configuration
[C201]...[C210]	  ...   	Virtual digital input CMD2.01...CMD2.10 with CANopen® fieldbus module in [I/O profile] 
[C211]...[C215]	  ...   	Virtual digital input CMD2.11...CMD2.15 with CANopen® fieldbus module regardless of configuration
[C301]...[C310]	  ...   	Virtual digital input CMD3.01...CMD3.10 with a fieldbus module in [I/O profile] 
[C311]...[C315]	  ...   	Virtual digital input CMD3.11...CMD3.15 with a fieldbus module regardless of configuration
[C501]...[C510]	  ...   	Virtual digital input CMD5.01...CMD5.10 with integrated Ethernet in [I/O profile] 
[C511]...[C515]	  ...   	NOTE: This selection can be accessed on ATV340...N4E drives. NOTE: This selection can be accessed on ATV340...N4E drives.

[Autotuning Type]

Autotuning type.

This parameter can be accessed if:

- [Access Level]  is set to [Expert]  is set to [Rel. Mot.] 

Setting ()	Code / Value	Description
[Standard]	 	Standard autotune Factory setting
[Rotation]		Autotune in rotation. This selection can be used for: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Optimization of energy saving • Application with low inertia • Application that requires high motor control performances. With this selection, less than 30% of resistive load must be present on the application to optimize the autotuning result. During the autotune sequence, the motor will be started to half of its nominal frequency during maximum 45 seconds.

[Automatic autotune] *A u t* 

Automatic autotune.

WARNING

UNEXPECTED MOVEMENT

If this function is activated, autotuning is performed each time the drive is switched on.

- Verify that activating this function does not result in unsafe conditions.

Failure to follow these instructions can result in death, serious injury, or equipment damage.

The motor must be stopped when switching on the drive.

This parameter can be accessed if [Access Level] *L A L* is set to [Expert] *E P r*.

Setting ()	Code / Value	Description
[No]	<i>n o</i>	Function deactivated Factory setting
[Yes]	<i>Y E S</i>	A tuning is automatically done at each power-up

[Tune Selection] *S E u n* 

Tune selection.

Setting ()	Code / Value	Description
[Default]	<i>E R b</i>	The default motor parameter values are used to control the motor Factory setting
[Measure]	<i>P E R S</i>	The values measured by the autotuning function are used to control the motor
[Custom]	<i>C u S</i>	The values manually set are used to control the motor

[Saliency mot. state] *S P o E* 

Information on synchronous motor saliency.

This parameter can be accessed if [Access Level] *L A L* is set to [Expert] *E P r* and, [Tune Selection] *S E u n* is set to [Measure] *P E R S*.

This parameter helps to optimization of motor control performances for synchronous motors.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[No]	<i>n o</i>	Tune not done
[Low salient]	<i>L L S</i>	[Low saliency level. Recommended configuration: [Angle setting type] <i>R S E</i> = [PSI align] <i>P S</i> , or [PSIO align] <i>P S</i> <i>o</i> and [HF inj. activation] <i>H F</i> <i>o</i> = [No] <i>n o</i>
[Med salient]	<i>M L S</i>	Medium saliency level. [Angle setting type] <i>R S E</i> = [SPM align] <i>S P M R</i> and [HF inj. activation] <i>H F</i> <i>o</i> = [Yes] <i>Y E S</i> can be used to improve performances
[Hgh salient]	<i>H L S</i>	High saliency level. [Angle setting type] <i>R S E</i> = [IPM align] <i>I P M R</i> and [HF inj. activation] <i>H F</i> <i>o</i> = [Yes] <i>Y E S</i> can be used to improve performances.

[Autotuning Lvl Of Current] $E_C r$ ★

Tune current ratio.

This parameter can be accessed if [Access Level] L_{AC} is set to [Expert] $E_P r$.

This parameter shows the level of current applied to the motor during auto tuning, in percent of the drive nominal current.

This parameter has an impact on the inductor measurement.

Setting	Description
[Auto] $R_u E_o \dots 300\%$	Factory setting: [Auto] $R_u E_o$

[Angle setting type] $A_S E$ ★

Automatic angle setting type.

This parameter can be accessed if [Motor control type] $C_E E$ is set to:

- [Sync. mot.] $S_H n$, or
- [Sync.CL.] $F_S Y$, or
- [SYN_U VC] $S_Y n_u$, or
- [Rel. Mot.] $S_r V_C$.

[PSI align] P_S , and [PSIO align] $P_S o$ are working for all types of synchronous motors. [SPM align] $S_P N R$ and [IPM align] $P_N R$ increase performances depending on the type of synchronous motor.

[Rotational Current Injection] r_C , may be used where [PSI align] P_S , and [PSIO align] $P_S o$ do not give expected performances.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[IPM align]	$P_N R$	Alignment for IPM motor. Alignment mode for Interior-buried Permanent Magnet motor (usually, this kind of motor has a high saliency level). It uses high frequency injection, which is less noisy than standard alignment mode.
[SPM align]	$S_P N R$	Alignment for SPM motor. Mode for Surface-mounted Permanent Magnet motor (usually, this kind of motor has a medium or low saliency level). It uses high frequency injection, which is less noisy than standard alignment mode.
[PSI align]	P_S	Pulse signal injection. Standard alignment mode, without rotor motion The angle measurement is realized by monitoring the stator current response to a pulse signal injection over a wide range of frequencies
[PSIO align]	$P_S o$	Pulse signal injection - optimized. Optimized alignment mode, without rotor motion Same operation as [PSI align] P_S , is performed over an optimized range of frequencies The measurement time is reduced after the first run order or tune operation, even if the drive has been turned off Factory setting
[Rotational Current Injection]	r_C	Rotational current injection. Alignment mode with rotor motion. This alignment mode realizes the mechanical alignment of the rotor and the stator; it requires up to 4 s. The motor needs to be stopped and without resistive torque. NOTE: This setting is recommended when a sinus filter is used on the application. NOTE: For synchronous reluctance motor, it is recommended to use this setting.
[No align]	n_o	No alignment

[PSI Align Curr Max] $\pi \text{ } L \text{ } r$ ★

Maximum current of PSI alignment.

Current level in % of [Sync Nominal I] $\pi \text{ } L \text{ } r$ 5 for [PSI align] $P \text{ } S$, and [PSI Oalign] $P \text{ } S$, angle shift measurement modes. This parameter has an impact on the inductor measurement.

This parameter can be accessed if:

- [Access Level] $L \text{ } R \text{ } L$ is set to [Expert] $E \text{ } P \text{ } r$, and if
- [Motor control type] $L \text{ } E \text{ } E$ is set to:
 - [Sync. mot.] $S \text{ } Y \text{ } n$, or
 - [Sync.CL.] $F \text{ } S \text{ } Y$, or
 - [SYN_U VC] $S \text{ } Y \text{ } n \text{ } u$, or
 - [Rel. Mot.] $S \text{ } r \text{ } V \text{ } c$.

This current must be equal to or higher than the maximum current level of the application; otherwise an instability may occur.

If [PSI Align Curr Max] $\pi \text{ } L \text{ } r$ is set to [AUTO] $R \text{ } u \text{ } t \text{ } o$, [PSI Align Curr Max] $\pi \text{ } L \text{ } r$ is adapted by the drive according to the motor data settings.

Setting	Description
[AUTO] $R \text{ } u \text{ } t \text{ } o$...300%	Setting range Factory setting: [AUTO] $R \text{ } u \text{ } t \text{ } o$

[Rotational Current Level] $r \text{ } L \text{ } L$ ★

Rotational current level.

This parameter can be accessed if [Angle setting type] $R \text{ } S \text{ } E$ is set to [Rotational Current Injection] $r \text{ } L \text{ } i$.

The current level should be set according to the torque required during the alignment operation.

Setting	Description
10...300%	Setting range, as a percentage of the nominal motor current Factory setting: 75%

[Rotational Torque Current] $r \text{ } E \text{ } L$ ★

Rotational torque current.

This parameter can be accessed if:

- [Access Level] $L \text{ } R \text{ } L$ is set to [Expert] $E \text{ } P \text{ } r$, and if
- [Motor control type] $L \text{ } E \text{ } E$ is not set to:
 - [Sync. mot.] $S \text{ } Y \text{ } n$, or
 - [Sync.CL.] $F \text{ } S \text{ } Y$, or
 - [SYN_U VC] $S \text{ } Y \text{ } n \text{ } u$.

Setting	Description
0...300%	Setting range Factory setting: 0%

[RCI Max Freq] $r \text{ } L \text{ } S \text{ } P$ ★

RCI maximum output frequency.

This parameter can be accessed if:

- [Access Level] $L \text{ } R \text{ } L$ is set to [Expert] $E \text{ } P \text{ } r$, and if
- [Motor control type] $L \text{ } E \text{ } E$ is not set to:
 - [Sync. mot.] $S \text{ } Y \text{ } n$, or
 - [Sync.CL.] $F \text{ } S \text{ } Y$, or
 - [SYN_U VC] $S \text{ } Y \text{ } n \text{ } u$.

Setting	Description
[AUTO] $R \text{ } u \text{ } t \text{ } o$...599.0 Hz	Setting range Factory setting: [AUTO] $R \text{ } u \text{ } t \text{ } o$

[RCI Round Nb] $r \text{ } L \text{ } r \text{ } P$

RCI round number.

This parameter can be accessed if:

- [Access Level] $L \text{ } R \text{ } L$ is set to [Expert] $E \text{ } P \text{ } r$, and if
- [Motor control type] $L \text{ } E \text{ } E$ is not set to:
 - [Sync. mot.] $S \text{ } Y \text{ } n$, or
 - [SYN_U VC] $S \text{ } Y \text{ } n \text{ } u$.

Setting	Description
[AUTO] $R \text{ } u \text{ } t \text{ } o \dots 32767$	Setting range Factory setting: [AUTO] $R \text{ } u \text{ } t \text{ } o$

[RCI With Transformer] $r \text{ } L \text{ } , \text{ } r \text{ } \star$

RCI alignment with transformer.

This parameter can be accessed if:

- [Access Level] $L \text{ } R \text{ } L$ is set to [Expert] $E \text{ } P \text{ } r$, and if
 - [Angle setting type] $A \text{ } S \text{ } E$ is set to [Rotational Current Injection] $r \text{ } L \text{ } ,$
- [Motor control type] $L \text{ } E \text{ } E$ is set to:
 - [Sync. mot.] $S \text{ } Y \text{ } n$, or
 - [SYN_U VC] $S \text{ } Y \text{ } n \text{ } u$, or
 - [Sync.CL] $F \text{ } S \text{ } Y$, or
 - [Rel. Mot.] $S \text{ } r \text{ } V \text{ } L$.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[No]	$n \text{ } o$	Function inactive Factory setting
[Yes]	$y \text{ } e \text{ } s$	Function active

[Motor monitoring] $\text{P} \circ \text{P}$ - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Motor parameters] → [Motor monitoring]

[Motor Th Current] $\text{E} \text{H}$

Motor thermal monitoring current to be set to the rated current indicated on the nameplate.

Setting C	Description
0.2...1.8 In ⁽¹⁾	Setting range Factory setting: According to drive rating
(1) Corresponding to the rated drive current indicated in the installation manual and on the drive nameplate.	

[Motor Thermal Mode] $\text{E} \text{H}$

Motor thermal monitoring mode.

NOTE: An error is detected when the thermal state reaches 118% of the rated state and reactivation occurs when the state falls back below 100%.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[No]	$\text{n} \text{o}$	No thermal monitoring
[Self cooled]	$\text{F} \text{C} \text{L}$	Self ventilated motor Factory setting
[Force-cool]	$\text{F} \text{C} \text{L}$	Fan-cooled motor

[MotorTemp ErrorResp] $\text{o} \text{L}$

Overload error response.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Ignore]	$\text{n} \text{o}$	Detected error ignored
[Freewheel Stop]	$\text{Y} \text{E} \text{S}$	Free wheel Factory setting

[Thermal monitoring] E P P - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Motor parameters] → [Motor monitoring] → [Thermal monitoring]

About This Menu

The thermal monitoring function helps to prevent against high temperature by monitoring the real temperature by the drive.

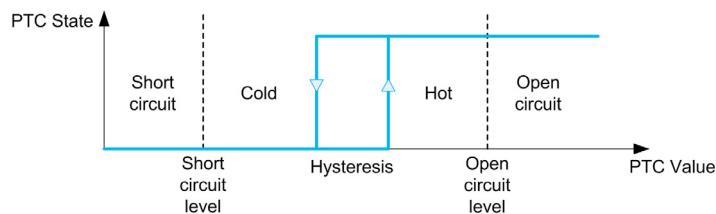
PTC, PT100, PT1000, and KTY84 thermal probes are supported by this function.

The function gives the possibility to manage 2 levels of monitoring:

- A Warning level: the drive triggers an event without stopping the application.
- An Error level: the drive triggers an event and stops the application.

The thermal probe is monitored for the following detected error:

- Overheating
- Probe break (loss of signal)
- Probe short-circuit



Activation

[Alx Th Monitoring] E H X S allows you to activate the thermal monitoring on the related analog input:

- [No] n o: the function is disabled
- [Yes] y E S: the thermal monitoring is enabled on the related Alx.

Type of Thermal Probe Selection

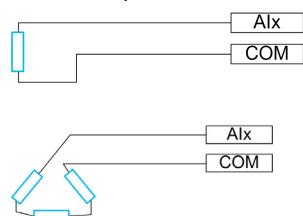
[Alx Type] R , X E allows you to select the type of thermal sensor(s) connected on the related analog input:

- [No] n o: no sensor
- [PTC Management] P E c: one to six PTC (in serial) is used
- [KTY] K E Y: 1 KTY84 is used
- [PT100] I P E Z: 1 PT100 connected with two wires is used
- [PT1000] I P E Z: 1 PT1000 connected with two wires is used
- [PT100 in 3 wires] I P E Z Z: 1 PT100 connected with three wires is used (AI4 & AI5 only)
- [PT1000 in 3 wires] I P E Z Z: 1 PT1000 connected with three wires is used (AI4 & AI5 only)
- [3PT100 in 3 wires] Z P E Z Z: 3 PT100 connected with three wires is used (AI4 & AI5 only)
- [3PT1000 in 3 wires] Z P E Z Z: 3 PT1000 connected with three wires is used (AI4 & AI5 only)

2-wire thermal probes are supported on analog input 2 to analog input 5.

Wiring for PT100 and PT1000 Probes

For 2-wire probes, the following wirings are possible:



[AI1 Th Monitoring] E H 15

Activation of the thermal monitoring on AI1.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[No]	n o	No Factory setting
[Yes]	Y E S	Yes

[AI1 Type] R , I E ★

AI1 assignment.

This parameter can be accessed if [AI1 Th Monitoring] E H 15 is not set to [No] n o.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Voltage]	I D u	0-10 Vdc Factory setting
[Current]	D R	0-20 mA

[AI1 Th Error Resp] E H 1b ★

Thermal monitoring response to a detected error for AI1.

This parameter can be accessed if [AI1 Type] R , I E is not set to

- [Voltage] I D u, or
- [Current] D R.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Ignore]	n o	Detected error ignored
[Freewheel Stop]	Y E S	Freewheel stop
[Per STT]	S E E	Stop according to [Type of stop] S E E parameter but without an error triggered after stop
[Fallback Speed]	L F F	Change to fallback speed, maintained as long as the detected error persists and the command has not been removed ⁽¹⁾
[Ramp stop]	r N P	Stop on ramp Factory setting

1 Because, in this case, the detected error does not trigger a stop, it is recommended to assign a relay or logic output to its indication.

[AI1 Th Error Level] E H 1F ★

Error detection level for AI1.

This parameter can be accessed if [AI1 Type] R , I E is not set to:

- [Voltage] I D u, or
- [Current] D R, or
- [PTC Management] P E L.

Setting ()	Description
-15.0...200.0°C	Setting range Factory setting: 110.0 °C

[AI1 Th Warn Level] E H 1 R ★

Warning level for AI1.

This parameter can be accessed if [AI1 Type] R , IE is not set to:

- [Voltage] IDU, or
- [Current] DRA, or
- [PTC Management] PETC.

Setting ()	Description
-15.0...200.0°C	Setting range Factory setting: 90.0 °C

[AI1 Th Value] E H 1 V ★

AI1 thermal value.

This parameter can be accessed if [AI1 Type] R , IE is not set to:

- [Voltage] IDU, or
- [Current] DRA, or
- [PTC Management] PETC.

Setting	Description
-15.0...200.0°C	Setting range Factory setting: _

[AI3 Th Monitoring] E H 3 S

Activation of the thermal monitoring on AI3.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[No]	n o	No Factory setting
[YES]	YES	Yes

[AI3 Type] R , 3 E ★

AI3 assignment.

This parameter can be accessed if [AI3 Th Monitoring] E H 3 S is not set to [No] n o.

Identical to [AI1 Type] R , IE ([see page 180](#)) with factory setting: [Current] DRA.

[AI3 Th Error Resp] E H 3 b ★

Thermal monitoring response to a detected error for AI3.

This parameter can be accessed if [AI3 Type] R , 3 E is not set to:

- [Voltage] IDU, or
- [Current] DRA, or

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Ignore]	n o	Detected error ignored
[Freewheel Stop]	YES	Freewheel stop
[Per STT]	SET	Stop according to [Type of stop] SET parameter but without an error triggered after stop
[Fallback Speed]	LFF	Change to fallback speed, maintained as long as the detected error persists and the command has not been removed ⁽¹⁾
[Ramp stop]	rNP	Stop on ramp Factory setting

¹ Because, in this case, the detected error does not trigger a stop, it is recommended to assign a relay or logic output to its indication.

[AI3 Th Error Level] E H 3 F

Error detection level for AI3.

This parameter can be accessed if [AI3 Type] R , 3 E is not set to:

- [Voltage] I D u, or
- [Current] D R, or
- [PTC Management] P E L.

Setting ()	Description
-15.0...200.0°C	Setting range Factory setting: 110.0 °C

[AI3 Th Warn Level] E H 3 R

Warning level for AI3.

This parameter can be accessed if [AI3 Type] R , 3 E is not set to:

- [Voltage] I D u, or
- [Current] D R, or
- [PTC Management] P E L.

Setting ()	Description
-15.0...200.0°C	Setting range Factory setting: 90.0 °C

[AI3 Th Value] E H 3 V

AI3 thermal value.

This parameter can be accessed if [AI3 Type] R , 3 E is not set to:

- [Voltage] I D u, or
- [Current] D R, or
- [PTC Management] P E L.

Setting	Description
-15.0...200.0°C	Setting range Factory setting: _

[AI4 Th Monitoring] E H 4 S

Activation of the thermal monitoring on AI4.

This parameter can be accessed if VW3A3203 I/O extension module has been inserted.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[No]	n o	No Factory setting
[YES]	y E S	Yes

[AI4 Type] R , 4 E

AI4 assignment.

This parameter can be accessed if [AI4 Th Monitoring] E H 4 S is not set to [No] n o.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Voltage]	I D u	0-10 Vdc
[Current]	D R	0-20 mA Factory setting
[Voltage +/-]	n I D u	-10/+10 Vdc

[AI4 Th Error Resp] E H 4 b ★

Thermal monitoring response to a detected error for AI4.

This parameter can be accessed if [AI4 Type] R , 4 E is not set to:

- [Voltage] I D u, or
- [Current] D A, .

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Ignore]	r o	Detected error ignored
[Freewheel Stop]	Y E S	Freewheel stop
[Per STT]	S E E	Stop according to [Type of stop] S E E parameter but without an error triggered after stop
[Fallback Speed]	L F F	Change to fallback speed, maintained as long as the detected error persists and the command has not been removed ⁽¹⁾
[Ramp stop]	r P P	Stop on ramp Factory setting
1 Because, in this case, the detected error does not trigger a stop, it is recommended to assign a relay or logic output to its indication.		

[AI4 Th Error Level] E H 4 F ★

Error detection level for AI4.

This parameter can be accessed if [AI4 Type] R , 4 E is not set to:

- [Voltage] I D u, or
- [Current] D A, or
- [PTC Management] P E L.

Setting (°)	Description
-15.0...200.0°C	Setting range Factory setting: 110.0 °C

[AI4 Th Warn Level] E H 4 R ★

Warning level for AI4.

This parameter can be accessed if [AI4 Type] R , 4 E is not set to:

- [Voltage] I D u, or
- [Current] D A, or
- [PTC Management] P E L.

Setting (°)	Description
-15.0...200.0°C	Setting range Factory setting: 90.0 °C

[AI4 Th Value] E H 4 V ★

AI4 thermal value.

This parameter can be accessed if [AI4 Type] R , 4 E is not set to:

- [Voltage] I D u, or
- [Current] D A, or
- [PTC Management] P E L.

Setting	Description
-15.0...200.0°C	Setting range Factory setting: _

[AI5 Th Monitoring] E H 5 S

Activation of the thermal monitoring on AI5.

This parameter can be accessed if VW3A3203 I/O extension module has been inserted.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[No]	n o	No Factory setting
[YES]	Y E S	Yes

[AI5 Type] R , S E

AI5 assignment.

This parameter can be accessed if [AI5 Th Monitoring] E H 5 S is not set to [No] n o.

Identical to [AI4 Type] R , 4 E (see page 182).

[AI5 Th Error Resp] E H 5 b

Thermal monitoring response to a detected error for AI5.

This parameter can be accessed if [AI5 Type] R , S E is not set to

- [Voltage] 1 D u, or
- [Current] 0 A.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Ignore]	n o	Detected error ignored
[Freewheel Stop]	Y E S	Freewheel stop
[Per STT]	S E E	Stop according to [Type of stop] S E E parameter but without an error triggered after stop
[Fallback Speed]	L F F	Change to fallback speed, maintained as long as the detected error persists and the command has not been removed ⁽¹⁾
[Ramp stop]	r P P	Stop on ramp Factory setting

¹ Because, in this case, the detected error does not trigger a stop, it is recommended to assign a relay or logic output to its indication.

[AI5 Th Error Level] E H 5 F

Error detection level for AI5.

This parameter can be accessed if [AI5 Type] R , S E is not set to:

- [Voltage] 1 D u, or
- [Current] 0 A, or
- [PTC Management] P E C.

Setting (°)	Description
-15.0...200.0°C	Setting range Factory setting: 110.0 °C

[AI5 Th Warn Level] E H 5 R ★

Warning level for AI5.

This parameter can be accessed if [AI5 Type] R , 5 E is not set to:

- [Voltage] I D u, or
- [Current] D R, or
- [PTC Management] P E C.

Setting ()	Description
-15.0...200.0°C	Setting range Factory setting: 90.0 °C

[AI5 Th Value] E H 5 V ★

AI5 thermal value.

This parameter can be accessed if [AI5 Type] R , 5 E is not set to:

- [Voltage] I D u, or
- [Current] D R, or
- [PTC Management] P E C.

Setting	Description
-15.0...200.0°C	Setting range Factory setting: _

[Enc Therm Sensor Type] E H E E ★

Encoder thermal sensor type.

This parameter can be accessed if an encoder module has been inserted or embedded encoder is used.

Settings	Code/Value	Description
[None]	n o n E	None Factory settings
[PTC]	P E C	PTC
[PT100]	I P E 2	PT100
[PT1000]	I P E 3	PT1000
[KTY]	K E Y	KTY
[Klixon]	K L , X	Klixon

[Enc Th ErrorResp] E HE b ★

Thermal monitoring response to a detected error for the encoder input.

This parameter can be accessed if:

- An encoder module has been inserted or embedded encoder is used, and
- [Enc Therm Sensor Type] E HE E is not set to [None] n o n E .

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Ignore]	n o	External detected error ignored
[Freewheel Stop]	Y E S	Freewheel stop
[Per STT]	S E E	Stop according to configuration of [Type of stop] S E E (<i>see page 317</i>), without tripping. In this case, the detected error relay does not open and the drive is ready to restart as soon as the detected error disappears, according to the restart conditions of the active command channel (for example, according to [2/3-wire control] E L L and [2-wire type] E L L (<i>see page 227</i>) if control is via the terminals). Configuring a warning for this detected error is recommended (assigned to a digital output, for example) in order to indicate the cause of the stop.
[Fallback speed]	L F F	Change to fallback speed, maintained as long as the detected error persists and the run command has not been removed ⁽¹⁾
[Speed maintained]	r L S	The drive maintains the speed being applied when the detected error occurred, as long as the detected error is active and the run command has not been removed ⁽¹⁾
[Ramp stop]	r P P	Stop on ramp Factory setting
[Fast stop]	F S E	Fast stop
[DC Injection]	d E ,	DC injection stop. This type of stop cannot be used with some other functions

(1) Because, in this case, the detected error does not trigger a stop, it is recommended to assign a relay or digital output to its indication.

[Enc Th Error Level] E HE F ★

Thermal error level for encoder.

This parameter can be accessed if:

- An encoder module has been inserted or embedded encoder is used, and
- [Enc Therm Sensor Type] E HE E is not set to:
 - [None] n o n E , or
 - [PTC] P E L .

Setting	Description
-15.0...200.0°C	Setting range Factory setting: 110.0 °C

[Enc Th Warn Level] E HE R ★

Thermal warning level for encoder.

This parameter can be accessed if:

- An encoder module has been inserted or embedded encoder is used, and
- [Enc Therm Sensor Type] E HE E is not set to:
 - [None] n o n E , or
 - [PTC] P E L .

Setting	Description
-15.0...200.0°C	Setting range Factory setting: 90.0 °C

[Enc Th Value] E H E V 

Encoder thermal value.

This parameter can be accessed if:

- An encoder module has been inserted or embedded encoder is used, and
- [Enc Therm Sensor Type] E H E L is not set to:
 - [None] n o n E , or
 - [PTC] P E L .

Setting	Description
-15.0...200.0°C	Setting range Factory setting: -

[Fallback Speed] L F F

Fallback speed.

Setting	Description
0.0...599.0 Hz	Setting range Factory setting: 0.0 Hz

[Motor monitoring] *M o P* - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Motor parameters] → [Motor monitoring]

About This Menu

The thermal monitoring function helps to prevent the motor from overheating by an estimation of the thermal state of the motor.

[Current Limitation] *C L* ,★

Internal current limit.

NOTICE

OVERHEATING AND DAMAGE TO THE MOTOR

- Verify that the motor is properly rated for the maximum current to be applied to the motor.
- Consider the duty cycle of the motor and all factors of your application including derating requirements in determining the current limit.

Failure to follow these instructions can result in equipment damage.

NOTE: If the setting is less than 0.25. In, the drive may lock in [OutPhaseLoss Assign] *o PL* if this has been enabled. If it is less than the no-load motor current, the motor cannot run.

Setting ()	Description
0...1.8 In ⁽¹⁾	Setting range Factory setting: 1.8 In ⁽¹⁾
(1) Corresponding to the rated drive current indicated in the installation manual and on the drive nameplate.	

[Attenuation Time] *S o P* ★

Attenuation time.

This parameter can be accessed if [Motor surge limit.] *S VL* is not set to [No] *n o*.

The value of the [Volt surge limit. opt] *S o P* parameter corresponds to the attenuation time of the cable used. It is defined to help to prevent the superimposition of voltage wave reflections resulting from long cable lengths. It limits over-voltages to twice the DC bus rated voltage.

As surge voltage depends on many parameters such as types of cable, different motor powers in parallel, different cable lengths in parallel, and so on, it is recommend the use of an oscilloscope to check the over-voltage values obtained at the motor terminals.

For long cable lengths, an output of the filter or a dV/dt filter must be used.

To retain the overall drive performance, do not increase the SOP value unnecessarily.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[6 µs]	<i>B</i>	6 µs
[8 µs]	<i>B</i>	8 µs Factory setting
[10 µs]	<i>I D</i>	10 µs

[Sinus Filter Activation]

Sinus filter activation.

This parameter can be accessed if [Motor control type]  is not set to:

- [Sync. mot.] , or
- [Sync.CL.] , or
- [SYN_U VC] , or
- [Rel. Mot.] .

NOTICE

RISK OF DAMAGE TO THE SINUS FILTER

On systems using a sinus filter, the maximum output frequency [Max frequency]  must not exceed 100 Hz.

Failure to follow these instructions can result in equipment damage.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[No]		No sinus filter Factory setting
[Yes]		Use of a sinus filter to limit over-voltages on the motor and reduce the ground detected error leakage current.

[Output Short Circuit Test]

Output short circuit test configuration.

The drive outputs are tested on power-up and every time a run command is applied. These tests cause a slight delay (a few ms). In the event of an error, the drive locks.

The *drive output short-circuit (terminals U-V-W)*: SCF error can be detected.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[No]		No test
[Yes]		Output short circuit test enabled Factory setting

[Motor Therm Thd]

Motor thermal threshold.

Setting ()	Description
0...118%	Setting range Factory setting: 100%

[Motor2 therm. level]

Motor 2 thermal level.

Setting ()	Description
0...118%	Setting range Factory setting: 100%

[Motor3 therm. level] **E E d 3**

Motor 3 thermal level.

Setting ()	Description
0...118%	Setting range Factory setting: 100%

[Motor4 therm. level] **E E d 4**

Motor 4 thermal level.

Setting ()	Description
0...118%	Setting range Factory setting: 100%

[Motor control] dr C - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Motor parameters] → [Motor control]

About This Menu

This menu shows the motor control related parameters.

[IR compensation] $\cup F \cap$

This parameter is used to optimize torque at low speed, or to adapt to special cases (for example: for motors connected in parallel, decrease **[IR compensation] ↴ F r**). If there is insufficient torque at low speed, increase **[IR compensation] ↴ F r**. A too high value can avoid the motor to start (locking) or change the current limiting mode.

Setting	Description
0...200%	Setting range Factory setting: 100%

[Slip compensation] *S L P* ★

Slip compensation.

This parameter can be accessed if [Motor control type] \sqsubseteq E is not set to:

- [Sync. mot.] 5 4 n, or
 - [Sync.CL.] F 5 4, or
 - [SYN_U VC] 5 4 n u, or
 - [Rel. Mot.] 5 r V E.

The speeds given on motor nameplates are not necessarily exact.

If the slip setting is lower than the actual slip, the motor is not rotating at the correct speed in steady state, but at a lower speed than the reference.

If the slip setting is higher than the actual slip, the motor is overcompensated and the speed is unstable.

Setting	Description
0...300%	Setting range Factory setting: 100%

[U1] ↗ / ★

Voltage point 1 on 5 points V/F.

This parameter can be accessed if [Motor Control Type] is set to [V/F 5pts] or F5.

Setting ()	Description
0...800 Vac	Setting range according to rating Factory setting: 0 Vac

[U2] ↴ 2 ★

Voltage point 2 on 5 points V/F.

V/F profile setting.

This parameter can be accessed if [Motor Control Type] *E E E* is set to [V/F 5pts] *v F 5*.

Setting (1)	Description
0...800 Vac	Setting range according to rating Factory setting: 0 Vac

[U3] ↴ 3★

Voltage point 3 on 5 points V/F.

V/F profile setting.

This parameter can be accessed if [Motor Control Type] E E E is set to [V/F 5pts] F F F .

Setting ()	Description
0...800 Vac	Setting range according to rating Factory setting: 0 Vac

[U4] ↴ 4★

Voltage point on 4 points V/F.

V/F profile setting.

This parameter can be accessed if [Motor Control Type] E E E is set to [V/F 5pts] F F F .

Setting ()	Description
0...800 Vac	Setting range according to rating Factory setting: 0 Vac

[U5] ↴ 5★

Voltage point 5 on 5 points V/F.

V/F profile setting.

This parameter can be accessed if [Motor Control Type] E E E is set to [V/F 5pts] F F F .

Setting ()	Description
0...800 Vac	Setting range according to rating Factory setting: 0 Vac

[F1] F 1★

Frequency point 1 on 5 points V/F.

V/F profile setting.

This parameter can be accessed if [Motor Control Type] E E E is set to [V/F 5pts] F F F .

Setting ()	Description
0.0...599.0 Hz	Setting range Factory setting: 0.0 Hz

[F2] F 2★

Frequency point 2 on 5 points V/F.

V/F profile setting.

This parameter can be accessed if [Motor Control Type] E E E is set to [V/F 5pts] F F F .

Setting ()	Description
0.0...599.0 Hz	Setting range Factory setting: 0.0 Hz

[F3] F 3

Frequency point 3 on 5 points V/F.

V/F profile setting.

This parameter can be accessed if [Motor Control Type] **L E E** is set to [V/F 5pts] **u F 5**.

Setting ()	Description
0.0...599.0 Hz	Setting range Factory setting: 0.0 Hz

[F4] F 4

Frequency point 4 on 5 points V/F.

V/F profile setting.

This parameter can be accessed if [Motor Control Type] **L E E** is set to [V/F 5pts] **u F 5**.

Setting ()	Description
0.0...599.0 Hz	Setting range Factory setting: 0.0 Hz

[F5] F 5

Frequency point 5 on 5 points V/F.

V/F profile setting.

This parameter can be accessed if [Motor Control Type] **L E E** is set to [V/F 5pts] **u F 5**.

Setting ()	Description
0.0...599.0 Hz	Setting range Factory setting: 0.0 Hz

[Output Ph Rotation] P H r

Output phase rotation.

Modifying this parameter operates as an inversion of 2 of the three motor phases. This results in changing the direction of rotation of the motor.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[ABC]	R b L	Standard rotation Factory setting
[ACB]	R L b	Opposite rotation

[Inertia Factor] S P G u

Inertia factor

This parameter can be accessed if:

- [Access Level] **L R L** is set to [Expert] **E P r**, and
- [Motor Control Type] **L E E** is set to:
 - [U/F VC 5pts] **u F 5**, or
 - [SYN_U VC] **S Y n u**.

Setting ()	Description
0...1,000%	Setting range Factory setting: 40%

[Boost Activation] $b \square R$ ★

Boost activation.

This parameter can be accessed if [Access Level] $L \square C$ is set to [Expert] $E \square r$.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Inactive]	$n \square$	No boost Factory setting
[Dynamic]	$d \square n R$	Dynamic boost, the magnetizing current value is modified according to the motor load. NOTE: Drive manages itself the value [Magnetizing Current] $\square d R$ to optimize the performances.
[Static]	$s \square R \square$	Static boost, the magnetizing current value follows the profile whatever the motor load NOTE: With this selection the [Boost] $b \square \square$ and [Freq Boost] $F \square b$ are taken into account. NOTE: This selection can be used for conical motor with [Boost] $b \square \square$ sets to a negative value.
[Constant]	$C \square E$	Constant boost, the magnetizing current is maintained in case of change of direction of the motor. An additional parameter is available to handle the deceleration and stop phase. $C \square E$ can be accessed if [Motor Control Type] $C \square E$ is set to [SYN_U VC] $S \square n u$. NOTE: With this selection only [Boost] $b \square \square$ is taken into account.
[Conical Motor]	$C \square \square E$	Conical boost, can be accessed if [Motor Control Type] $C \square E$ is not set to [SYN_U VC] $S \square n u$. NOTE: With this selection, it is possible to adjust the [Boost] $b \square \square$ for acceleration and [Boost On Deceleration] $b \square \square Z$ for deceleration.

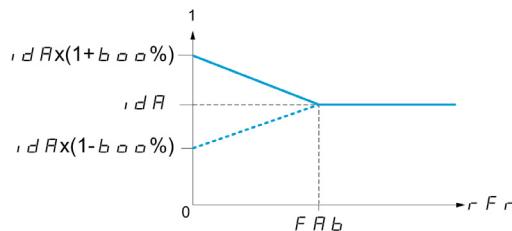
[Boost] $b \square \square$ ★

Value at 0 Hz: % of nominal magnetizing current (taken into account if different from 0).

A too high value of [Boost] $b \square \square$ can result in a magnetic saturation of the motor, which leads to a torque reduction.

This parameter can be accessed if:

- [Access Level] $L \square C$ is set to [Expert] $E \square r$, and
- [Boost Activation] $b \square R$ is not set to [Inactive] $n \square$.



NOTE: For synchronous motors, it is recommended to set this value to optimize control at low speed.

Setting	Description
-100...100%	Setting range If [Boost Activation] $b \square R$ is set to [Dynamic] $d \square n R$, [Boost] $b \square \square$ is set to 25%. Factory setting: 0%

[Boost On Deceleration] *b o o 2* ★

Value in % of nominal magnetizing current (taken into account if different from 0).

This parameter is used during deceleration phase to quickly reduce the magnetizing current at stop phase.

This parameter can be accessed if:

- [Access Level] *L R L* is set to [Expert] *E P r*, and
- [Boost Activation] *b o R* is set to [Conical Motor] *C n o E*.

Setting	Description
-100...0%	Setting range Factory setting: -25%

[Freq Boost] *F R b* ★

Value at 0 Hz: speed threshold to reach nominal magnetizing current.

This parameter can be accessed if:

- [Access Level] *L R L* is set to [Expert] *E P r*, and
- [Boost Activation] *b o R* is not set to [NO] *n o*, and
- [Boost Activation] *b o R* is not set to [Constant] *C S E E*.

Setting	Description
0.0...599.0 Hz	Setting range If [Boost Activation] <i>b o R</i> is set to [Dynamic] <i>d Y n R</i> , [Freq Boost] <i>F R b</i> is set to 30.0 Hz. Factory setting: 0.0 Hz

NOTE: For synchronous motors, it is recommended to set this value to optimize control at low speed.

[Braking level] *V b r*

Braking transistor command level.

Setting ()	Description
335...1127 V	Setting range Factory setting: According to drive rating voltage

[Fluxing by DI] $F L \downarrow$ - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Motor parameters] → [Motor control] → [Fluxing by DI]

About This Menu

Configure the fluxing by digital input.

[Motor fluxing] $F L \downarrow$ ★

Motor fluxing configure

DANGER

HAZARD OF ELECTRIC SHOCK, EXPLOSION, OR ARC FLASH

If the parameter [Motor fluxing] $F L \downarrow$ is set to [Continuous] $F \downarrow E$, fluxing is always active, even if the motor does not run.

- Verify that using this setting does not result in unsafe conditions.

Failure to follow these instructions will result in death or serious injury.

NOTICE

OVERHEATING AND DAMAGE TO THE MOTOR

Verify that the connected motor is properly rated for the flux current to be applied in order to avoid overheating and damage to the motor.

Failure to follow these instructions can result in equipment damage.

In order to obtain rapid high torque on startup, magnetic flux needs to already have been established in the motor.

In [Continuous] $F \downarrow E$ mode, the drive automatically builds up flux when it is powered up.

In [Not continuous] $F \downarrow C$ mode, fluxing occurs when the motor starts up.

The flux current is greater than [Nom Motor Current] $n \downarrow C r$ (configured rated motor current) when the flux is established and is the adjusted to the motor magnetizing current.

If [Motor control type] $C \downarrow E$ is set to [Sync. mot.] $S \downarrow n$, the [Motor fluxing] $F L \downarrow$ parameter causes the alignment of the motor and not the fluxing.

If [Brake assignment] $b \downarrow L$ is not [No] $n \downarrow o$, the [Motor fluxing] $F L \downarrow$ parameter has no effect.

Setting ()	Code / Value	Description
[Not continuous]	$F \downarrow C$	Non-continuous mode
[Continuous]	$F \downarrow E$	Continuous mode This option is not possible if [Auto DC Injection] $A \downarrow C$ (see page 323) is [Yes] $Y \downarrow S$ or if [Type of stop] $S \downarrow E$ (see page 317) is [Freewheel] $n \downarrow S$
[No]	$F \downarrow o$	Function inactive Factory setting

[Fluxing assignment] *F L* ★

Fluxing input assignment

NOTICE**OVERHEATING AND DAMAGE TO THE MOTOR**

Verify that the connected motor is properly rated for the flux current to be applied in order to avoid overheating and damage to the motor.

Failure to follow these instructions can result in equipment damage.

Assignment is only possible if **[Motor fluxing] *F L*** is set to **[Not continuous] *F n L***.

If a DI or a bit is assigned to the motor fluxing command, flux is built up when the assigned input or bit is at 1.

If a DI or a bit has not been assigned, or if the assigned DI or bit is at 0 when a run command is sent, fluxing occurs when the motor starts.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Not Assigned]	<i>n o</i>	Not assigned Factory setting
[DI1]...[DI8]	<i>L o I...L o B</i>	Digital input DI1...DI8 NOTE: DI8 selection can be accessed on drives with a power greater than 22 kW.
[DI11]...[DI16]	<i>L o I I...L o I B</i>	Digital input DI11...DI16 if VW3A3203 I/O extension module has been inserted
[CD00]...[CD10]	<i>C d 0 0...C d 1 0</i>	Virtual digital input CMD.0...CMD.10 in [I/O profile] <i>o</i> configuration
[CD11]...[CD15]	<i>C d 1 1...C d 1 5</i>	Virtual digital input CMD.11...CMD.15 regardless of configuration
[C101]...[C110]	<i>C 1 0 1...C 1 1 0</i>	Virtual digital input CMD1.01...CMD1.10 with integrated Modbus Serial in [I/O profile] <i>o</i> configuration
[C111]...[C115]	<i>C 1 1 1...C 1 1 5</i>	Virtual digital input CMD1.11...CMD1.15 with integrated Modbus Serial regardless of configuration
[C201]...[C210]	<i>C 2 0 1...C 2 1 0</i>	Virtual digital input CMD2.01...CMD2.10 with CANopen® fieldbus module in [I/O profile] <i>o</i> configuration
[C211]...[C215]	<i>C 2 1 1...C 2 1 5</i>	Virtual digital input CMD2.11...CMD2.15 with CANopen® fieldbus module regardless of configuration
[C301]...[C310]	<i>C 3 0 1...C 3 1 0</i>	Virtual digital input CMD3.01...CMD3.10 with a fieldbus module in [I/O profile] <i>o</i> configuration
[C311]...[C315]	<i>C 3 1 1...C 3 1 5</i>	Virtual digital input CMD3.11...CMD3.15 with a fieldbus module regardless of configuration
[C501]...[C510]	<i>C 5 0 1...C 5 1 0</i>	Virtual digital input CMD5.01...CMD5.10 with integrated Ethernet in [I/O profile] <i>o</i> configuration NOTE: This selection can be accessed on ATV340...N4E drives.
[C511]...[C515]	<i>C 5 1 1...C 5 1 5</i>	Virtual digital input CMD5.11...CMD5.15 with integrated Ethernet regardless of configuration NOTE: This selection can be accessed on ATV340...N4E drives.

[Angle setting type]

Automatic angle setting type.

This parameter can be accessed if [Motor Control Type]  is set to:

- [Sync. mot.] , or
- [Sync.CL] , or
- [SYN_U VC] , or
- [Rel. Mot.] .

[PSI align]  and [PSIO align]  are working for all types of synchronous motors. [SPM align]  and [IPM align]  increase performances depending on the type of synchronous motor.

[Rotational Current Injection]  may be used where [PSI align]  and [PSIO align]  do not give expected performances.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[IPM align]	 	Alignment for IPM motor. Alignment mode for Interior-buried Permanent Magnet motor (usually, this kind of motor has a high saliency level). It uses high frequency injection, which is less noisy than standard alignment mode.
[SPM align]	 	Alignment for SPM motor. Mode for Surface-mounted Permanent Magnet motor (usually, this kind of motor has a medium or low saliency level). It uses high frequency injection, which is less noisy than standard alignment mode.
[PSI align]	 	Pulse signal injection. Standard alignment mode, without rotor motion The angle measurement is realized by monitoring the stator current response to a pulse signal injection over a wide range of frequencies
[PSIO align]	 	Pulse signal injection - optimized. Optimized alignment mode, without rotor motion Same operation as [PSI align]  is performed over an optimized range of frequencies The measurement time is reduced after the first run order or tune operation, even if the drive has been turned off Factory setting
[Rotational Current Injection]	 	Rotational current injection. Alignment mode with rotor motion. This alignment mode realizes the mechanical alignment of the rotor and the stator; it requires up to 4 s. The motor needs to be stopped and without resistive torque. NOTE: This setting is recommended when a sinus filter is used on the application. NOTE: For synchronous reluctance motor, it is recommended to use this setting.
[No align]	 	No alignment

[Spd Loop Optimization] $\pi \mathcal{E} L$ - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Motor parameters] → [Motor control] → [Spd Loop Optimization]

About This Menu

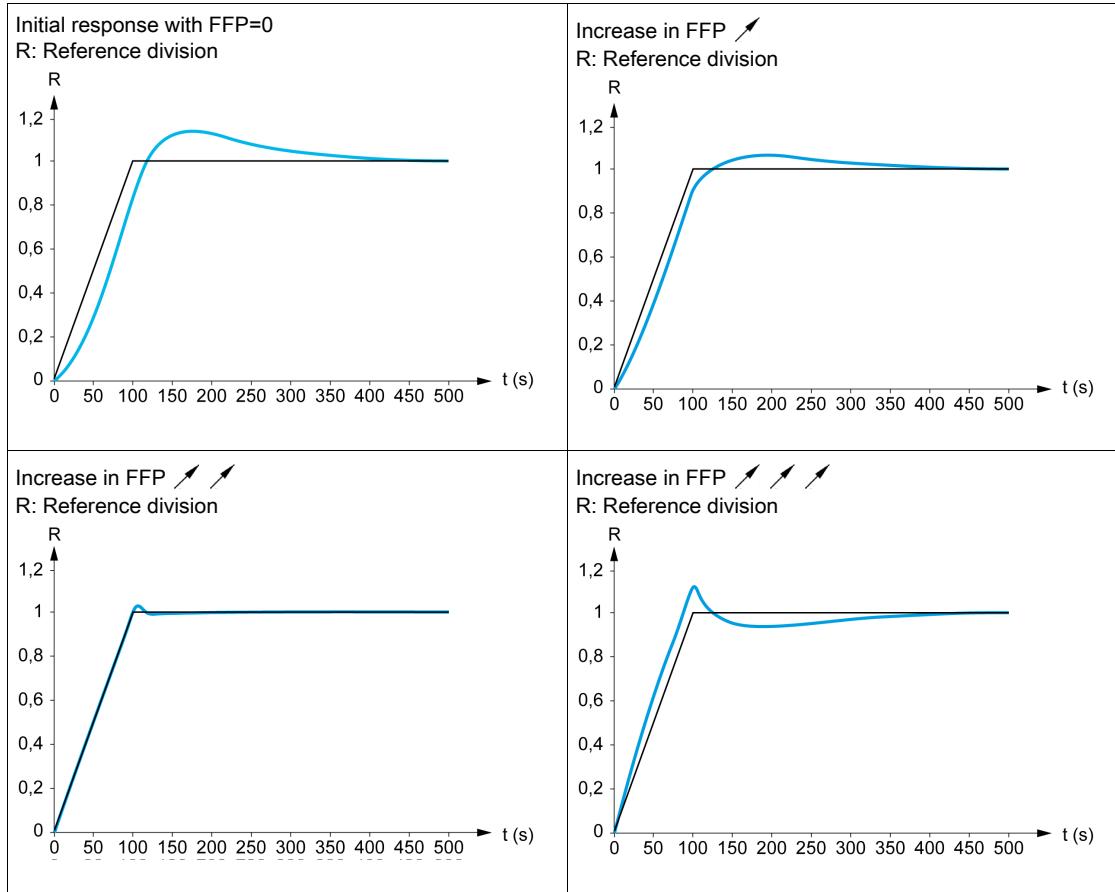
Recommended Procedure for Setting the High-Performance Speed Loop

Step	Action
1	Enter the motor parameters. If you subsequently modify one of these, you have to perform this whole procedure again.
2	The value of the inertia being driven must be entered in the [Application Inertia] J_{RPL} parameter. (<i>see page 205</i>) NOTE: If a motor parameter is modified, the estimated inertia is recalculated and updated (parameters [Estim. app. inertia] J_{ESE} and [Inertia Mult. Coef.] J_{IUL} . [Application Inertia] J_{RPL} returns to its default value according to the new value of [Estim. app. inertia] J_{ESE} .
3	Check the speed loop response time by first setting [Feed forward] FFP to 0 (see graphs on next page).
4	If necessary, adjust the bandwidth and stability using parameters [FreqLoop Stab] SER and [FreqLoopGain] F_LG (<i>see page 202</i>).
5	To optimize ramp following, increase the feedforward parameter [[Feed forward] FFP as indicated on the next page until the best result is obtained.
6	The feedforward term bandwidth can be adjusted if necessary (as shown on the next page) to further improve the ramp following or to filter the noise on the speed reference.

High-Performance speed Loop - Setting the [Feed forward] FFP Parameter

This is used to adjust the level of dynamic torque feedforward required for accelerating and decelerating the inertia. The effect of this parameter on ramp following is illustrated below. Increasing the value of **FFP** allows the ramp to be followed more closely. However, if the value is too high, overspeed occurs. The optimum setting is obtained when the speed follows the ramp precisely; this depends on the accuracy of the **[Application Inertia] JRL** parameter, ([see page 205](#)) and the **[Encoder filter value] FFr** parameter setting ([see page 205](#))

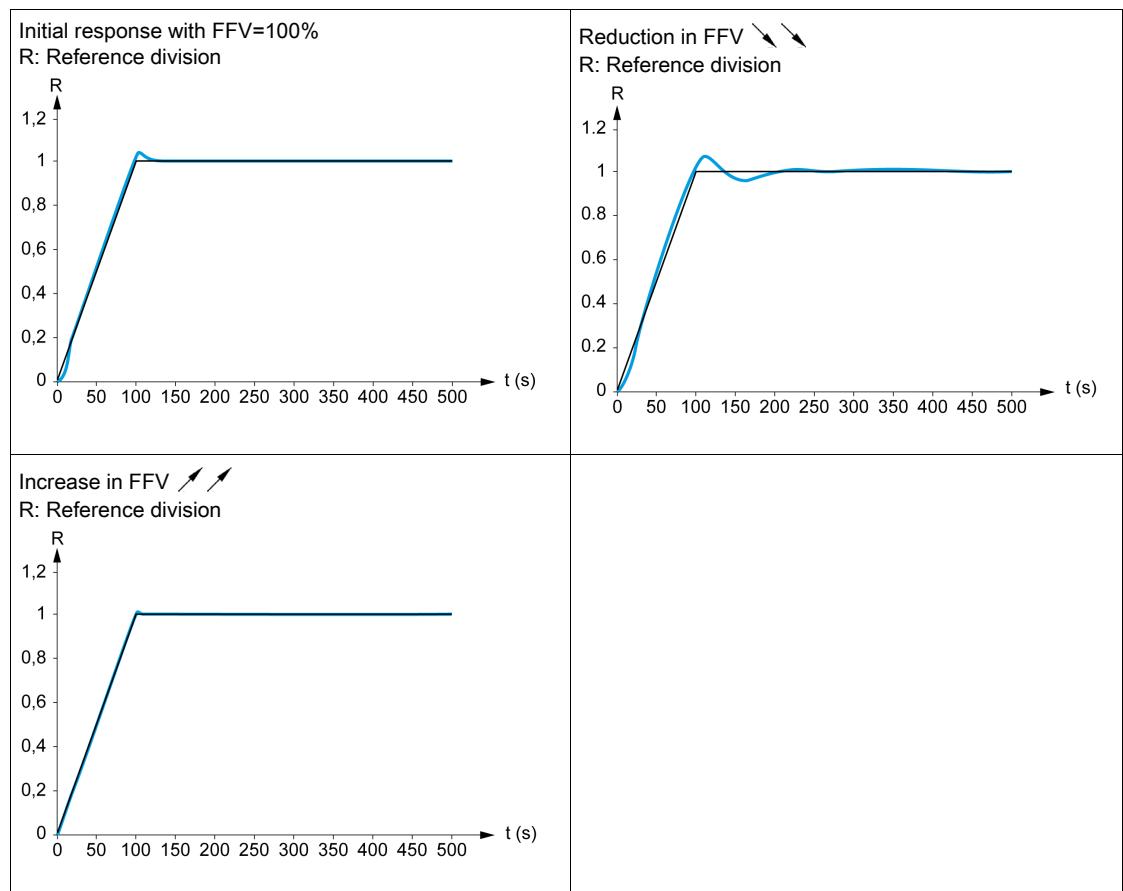
FFP settings



High-Performance Speed Loop - Setting the [FeedFwd Bandwidth] ***FFV*** Parameter

This is used to adjust the bandwidth of the dynamic torque feedforward term. The effect of this parameter on ramp following is illustrated below. Decreasing the value of ***FFV*** reduces the effect of noise on the speed reference (torque ripple). However, too great a decrease in relation to the ramp settings (on short ramps) causes a delay, and ramp following is adversely affected. Increasing the value of ***FFV*** allows the ramp to be followed more closely, but also heightens noise sensitivity. The optimum setting is obtained by reaching the best compromise between ramp following and the existing noise sensitivity.

FFV settings



[Speed loop type] ***S5L*** ★

Speed loop type.

This parameter can be accessed if [Motor control type] ***C_EE*** is not set to:

- [U/F VC 5pts] ***UF5***, or
- [SYN_U VC] ***Synu***.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Standard]	<i>S5L</i>	Standard speed loop Factory setting
[High Perf]	<i>HPF</i>	High-performance speed loop. It is advised to deactivate [Dec.Ramp Adapt] <i>b_rA=[No]</i> <i>n_o</i>

[Speed prop. gain] S P G

Speed loop proportional gain.

This parameter can be accessed if:

- [Speed loop type] S S L is set to [Standard] S E d, and
- [Motor control type] C E E is not set to:
 - [U/F VC 5pts] U F S, or
 - [SYN_U VC] S Y n u.

Setting (S)	Description
0...1,000%	Setting range Factory setting: 40%

[Speed time integral] S , E

Speed loop integral time constant.

This parameter can be accessed if:

- [Speed loop type] S S L is set to [Standard] S E d, and
- [Motor control type] C E E is not set to:
 - [U/F VC 5pts] U F S, or
 - [SYN_U VC] S Y n u.

Setting (S)	Description
1...65,535 ms	Setting range Factory setting: According to the drive rating.

[K speed loop filter] S F C

Speed filter coefficient (0(IP) to 1(PI)).

Setting (S)	Description
0...100	Setting range Factory setting: 65

[Spd est. filter time] F F H

Filter time of the estimated speed.

This parameter can be accessed if [Access Level] L A L is set to [Expert] E P r .

Setting (S)	Description
0.0...100.0 ms	Setting range Factory setting: According to the drive rating

[FreqLoop Stab] S E R

Frequency loop stability (Speed loop damping factor).

This parameter can be accessed if:

- [Speed loop type] S S L is set to [High Perf] H P F, and
- [Motor control type] C E E is not set to:
 - [U/F VC 5pts] U F S, or
 - [SYN_U VC] S Y n u.

Stability: Used to adapt the return to steady state after a speed transient, according to the dynamics of the machine. Gradually increase the stability to increase control loop attenuation and thus reduce any overspeed.

Setting (S)	Description
0...100%	Setting range Factory setting: 20%

[FreqLoopGain] *F L G* ★

Frequency loop gain (Speed loop bandwidth).

This parameter can be accessed if:

- [Speed loop type] *S S L* is set to [High Perf] *H P F*, and
- [Motor control type] *C E E* is not set to:
 - [U/F VC 5pts] *u F S*, or
 - [SYN_U VC] *S Y n u*.

Used to adapt the response of the machine speed transients according to the dynamics. For machines with high resistive torque, high inertia of fast cycles, increase the gain gradually.

Setting ()	Description
0...100%	Setting range Factory setting: 20%

[Feed forward] *F F P* ★

Feed-Forward term activation and setting.

This parameter can be accessed if:

- [Speed loop type] *S S L* is set to [High Perf] *H P F*, and
- [Motor control type] *C E E* is not set to:
 - [U/F VC 5pts] *u F S*, or
 - [SYN_U VC] *S Y n u*.

Percentages of the high-performance regulator feedforward term. 100% corresponds to the term calculated using the value of [Application Inertia] *J A P L*.

Setting ()	Description
0...200%	Setting range Factory setting: 0%

[FeedFwd Bandwidth] *F F V* ★

Bandwidth of the filter of feed-forward term.

This parameter can be accessed if:

- [Speed loop type] *S S L* is set to [High Perf] *H P F*, and
- [Motor control type] *C E E* is not set to:
 - [U/F VC 5pts] *u F S*, or
 - [SYN_U VC] *S Y n u*.

Bandwidths of the high-performance speed loop feedforward term, as a percentage of the predefined value.

Setting ()	Description
20...500%	Setting range Factory setting: 100%

[External FeedFwd Assign] E F F ★

External feed-forward mode

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[No]	n o	Analog input is not assigned Factory setting
[AI1]...[AI3]	R , I...R , 3	Analog input AI1...AI3 NOTE: AI3 selection can be accessed on drives with a power greater than 22 kW.
[AI4]...[AI5]	R , 4...R , 5	Analog input AI4...AI5 if VW3A3203 I/O extension module has been inserted
[HMI]	L C C	Reference Frequency via remote terminal
[Modbus]	M d b	Reference frequency via Modbus
[CANopen]	C R n	Reference frequency via CANopen if a CANopen module has been inserted
[Com. Module]	n E E	Reference frequency via fieldbus module if a fieldbus module has been inserted
[Embedded Ethernet]	E E H	Embedded Ethernet NOTE: This selection can be accessed on ATV340...N4E drives.
[DI7 PulseInput]...[DI8 PulseInput]	P , 7...P , 8	Digital input DI7...DI8 used as pulse input NOTE: This selection can be accessed on drives with a power greater than 22 kW.
[RP]	P ,	Pulse input NOTE: This selection can be accessed on drives with a power below than 30 kW.

[Inertia Mult. Coef.] J P u L ★

Scaling factor for inertia displays.

This parameter can be accessed if:

- [Speed loop type] S S L is set to [High Perf] H P F, and
- [Motor control type] C E E is not set to:
 - [U/F VC 5pts] u F 5, or
 - [SYN_U VC] 5 Y n u.

Increment for [Application Inertia] J R P L and [Estim. app. inertia] J E S E parameters, calculated by the drive, in read-only mode: 0.1 gm², 1 gm², 10 gm², 100 gm², 1000 gm².

Setting	Description
0.0...6553.5 gm ²	Setting range Factory setting: 0.0 gm ²

[Estim. app. inertia] J E S E ★

Estimated application inertia.

This parameter can be accessed if:

- [Speed loop type] S S L is set to [High Perf] H P F, and
- [Motor control type] C E E is not set to:
 - [U/F VC 5pts] u F 5, or
 - [SYN_U VC] 5 Y n u.

The inertia being driven is estimated by the drive according to the motor parameters, in read-only mode. Speed loop default settings are determined by the drive from this inertia.

Increment given by [Inertia Mult. Coef.] J P u L : - 0.1 gm², 1 gm², 10 gm², 100 gm² or 1000 gm².

Setting	Description
1...9,999 kg.m ²	Setting range Factory setting: –

[App. Inertia Coef.] **J R C o** ★

Adjustable application inertia ratio.

This parameter can be accessed if:

- [Speed loop type] **S S L** is set to [High Perf] **H P F**, and
- [Motor control type] **C E E** is not set to:
 - [U/F VC 5pts] **u F S**, or
 - [SYN_U VC] **S Y n u**.

Coefficient which fixes the ratio between [Estim. app. inertia] **J E S E** and [Application Inertia] **J R P L** parameters.

[Application Inertia] **J R P L** = [Estim. app. inertia] **J E S E** × [App. Inertia Coef.] **J R C o**.

Setting	Description
0.10...100.00	Setting range Factory setting: 1

[Application Inertia] **J R P L** ★

Adjustable application inertia.

This parameter can be accessed if:

- [Speed loop type] **S S L** is set to [High Perf] **H P F**, and
- [Motor control type] **C E E** is not set to:
 - [U/F VC 5pts] **u F S**, or
 - [SYN_U VC] **S Y n u**.

Adjustable application inertia used by the drive to optimize speed loop settings).

Increment given by [Inertia Mult. Coef.] **J P u L**: 0.1 gm², 1 gm², 10 gm², 100 gm² or 1000 gm².

NOTE: If a motor parameter is modified, the estimated inertia is recalculated and updated (parameters [Estim. app. inertia] **J E S E** and [Inertia Mult. Coef.] **J P u L**). [Application Inertia] **J R P L** is also returned to its default value according to the new value of [Estim. app. inertia] **J E S E**.

Setting	Description
0.00...655.35 kgm ²	Setting range Factory setting: -

[Encoder filter activ.] **F F R** ★

Encoder feedback filter activation.

This parameter can be accessed if an encoder module has been inserted or embedded encoder is used.

This parameter can be accessed if:

- [Encoder usage] **E n u** is not set to [No] **n o**, or
- [Emb Enc Usage] **E E n u** is not set to [No] **n o**.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[No]	n o	Filter deactivated Factory setting
[Yes]	y E S	Filter activated

[Encoder filter value] **F F r** ★

Encoder feedback filter value.

This parameter can be accessed if:

- [Access Level] **L R L** is set to [Expert] **E P r**, and
- [Encoder filter activ.] **F F R** is set to [Yes] **y E S**.

Setting	Description
0.0...40.0 ms	Setting range Factory setting: according to encoder rating

[Notch Filter Activation]

Notch filter activation.

This parameter activates the notch filter function. Two independent notch filters can be configured.

The notch filter central frequency should be set at or slightly higher than the mechanical resonance frequency. The main task is to identify as precise as possible the resonance frequency.

NOTE: Vibrations may occurs at frequencies higher than the mechanical resonance frequency, depending on the settings of the speed loop and motor parameters. It is important to identify the real mechanical resonance frequency.

Perform the following actions for the commissioning:

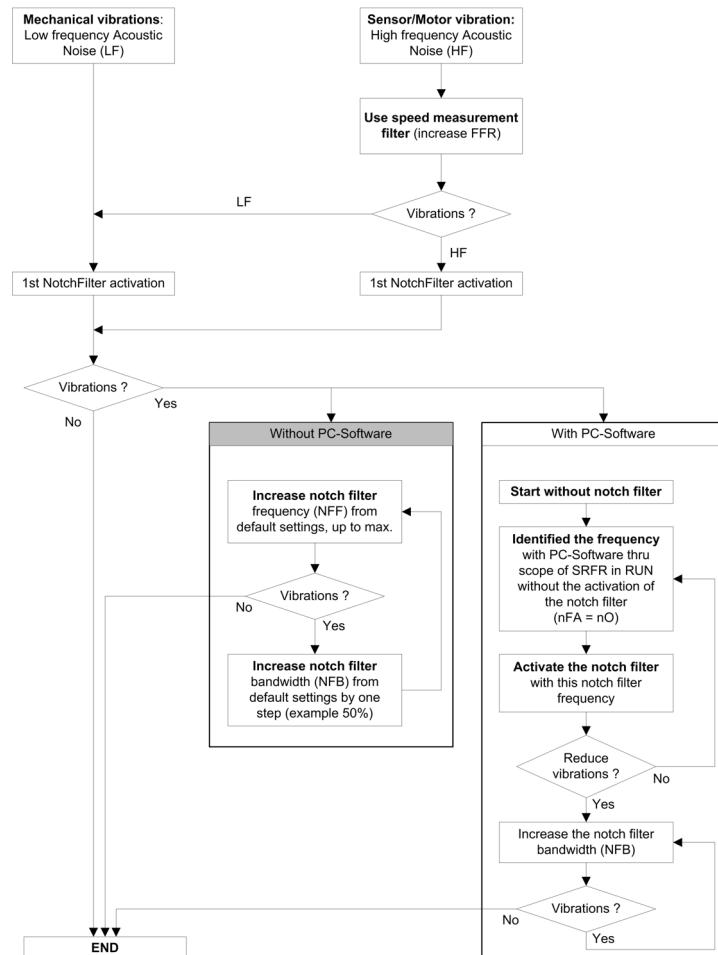
1. Set the motor data
2. Set the application data
3. Set the speed loop settings
4. In case of vibrations, set the Notch filter settings as described bellow
5. If the performances are not OK, restart from step 3

This parameter can be accessed if:

- An encoder module has been inserted or embedded encoder is used.
- [Access Level] **L A L** is set to [Expert] **E P r**, and
- [Speed loop type] **S S L** is set to [High Perf] **H P F**.

Setting (S)	Code / Value	Description
[First]	I S E	Notch filter 1 enabled
[2nd]	Z n d	Notch filter 2 enabled
[All]	A L L	Notch filters 1 and 2 enabled
[No]	n o	No notch filter enabled Factory setting

Notch filter settings



[Notch Filter Freq 1] $n\text{F}\text{F}$ /★

Notch filter 1 central frequency.

This parameter can be accessed if:

- [Access Level] $L\text{R}L$ is set to [Expert] $E\text{P}r$, and
- [Speed loop type] $S\text{S}L$ is set to [High Perf] $H\text{P}F$, and
- [Notch Filter Activation] $n\text{F}R$ is set to:
 - [First] $I\text{S}E$, or
 - [All] $R\text{L}L$.

Setting	Description
10.0...150.0 Hz	Setting range Factory setting: 15.0 Hz

[Notch Filter Bdw 1] $n\text{F}b$ /★

Notch filter 1 bandwidth.

This parameter can be accessed if:

- [Access Level] $L\text{R}L$ is set to [Expert] $E\text{P}r$, and
- [Speed loop type] $S\text{S}L$ is set to [High Perf] $H\text{P}F$, and
- [Notch Filter Activation] $n\text{F}R$ is set to:
 - [First] $I\text{S}E$, or
 - [All] $R\text{L}L$.

This parameter defines the bandwidth of the notch filter 1. Filter with higher bandwidth provides better stability margin when the load resonant frequency changes (with trolley position or load).

NOTE: Rising the bandwidth can interfere with the expect drive dynamic (reducing the dynamic of the speed loop).

Setting	Description
10...400%	Setting range Factory setting: 100%

[Notch Filter Depth 1] $n\text{F}d$ /★

Notch filter 1 depth.

This parameter can be accessed if:

- [Access Level] $L\text{R}L$ is set to [Expert] $E\text{P}r$, and
- [Speed loop type] $S\text{S}L$ is set to [High Perf] $H\text{P}F$, and
- [Notch Filter Activation] $n\text{F}R$ is set to:
 - [First] $I\text{S}E$, or
 - [All] $R\text{L}L$.

This parameter defines the gain of the notch filter 1 at the central frequency. When NFD1=100%, no filter is applied.

Setting	Description
0...99%	Setting range Factory setting: 10%

[Notch Filter Freq 2] $n\text{ F F 2}$

Notch filter 2 central frequency.

This parameter can be accessed if:

- [Access Level] $L\text{ R L}$ is set to [Expert] $E\text{ P r}$, and
- [Speed loop type] $S\text{ S L}$ is set to [High Perf] $H\text{ P F}$, and
- [Notch Filter Activation] $n\text{ F R}$ is set to:
 - [First] $I\text{ S E}$, or
 - [All] $R\text{ L L}$.

Setting	Description
10.0...150.0 Hz	Setting range Factory setting: 85.0 Hz

[Notch Filter Bdw 2] $n\text{ F b 2}$

Notch filter 2 bandwidth.

This parameter can be accessed if:

- [Access Level] $L\text{ R L}$ is set to [Expert] $E\text{ P r}$, and
- [Speed loop type] $S\text{ S L}$ is set to [High Perf] $H\text{ P F}$, and
- [Notch Filter Activation] $n\text{ F R}$ is set to:
 - [First] $I\text{ S E}$, or
 - [All] $R\text{ L L}$.

This parameter defines the bandwidth of the notch filter 2. Filter with higher bandwidth provides better stability margin when the load resonant frequency changes (with trolley position or load).

NOTE: Rising the bandwidth can interfere with the expect drive dynamic (reducing the dynamic of the speed loop).

Setting	Description
10..400%	Setting range Factory setting: 100%

[Notch Filter Depth 2] $n\text{ F d 2}$

Notch filter 2 depth.

This parameter can be accessed if:

- [Access Level] $L\text{ R L}$ is set to [Expert] $E\text{ P r}$, and
- [Speed loop type] $S\text{ S L}$ is set to [High Perf] $H\text{ P F}$, and
- [Notch Filter Activation] $n\text{ F R}$ is set to:
 - [First] $I\text{ S E}$, or
 - [All] $R\text{ L L}$.

This parameter defines the gain of the notch filter 2 at the central frequency. When $n\text{ F d 2} = 100\%$, no filter is applied.

Setting	Description
0...99%	Setting range Factory setting: 25%

[Motor control] *M* - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Motor parameters] → [Motor control]

About This Menu

This menu shows the motor control related parameters.

[HF inj. activation] *HFI*

Activation of HF injection.

This parameter can be accessed if:

- [Access Level] *LAL* is set to [Expert] *EP*, and
- [Motor control type] *MCT* is not set to:
 - [Sync. mot.] *Syn*, or
 - [Sync.CL.] *F5Y*, or
 - [SYN_U VC] *Synu*, or
 - [Rel. Mot.] *RelMot*.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[No]	<i>No</i>	HF injection inactive Factory setting
[Yes]	<i>YE5</i>	HF injection active

[HF injection freq.] *Frf*

Frequency of the HF injection signal.

This parameter can be accessed if [Access Level] *LAL* is set to [Expert] *EP*.

Setting	Description
250...1000 Hz	Setting range Factory setting: 500 Hz

[HF pll bandwidth] *SPB*

Bandwidth of the HF PLL.

This parameter can be accessed if [Access Level] *LAL* is set to [Expert] *EP*.

Setting	Description
0...400%	Setting range Factory setting: 100%

[Current Level Align] *CLA*

Current level of the HF alignment.

This parameter can be accessed if [Access Level] *LAL* is set to [Expert] *EP*.

Setting	Description
0...200%	Setting range Factory setting: 50%

[Boost level align.] S , r

Boost level for IPMA alignment.

This parameter can be accessed if **[Access Level]** L A L is set to **[Expert]** E P r .

Setting	Description
0...200%	Setting range Factory setting: 100%

[Angle error Comp.] P E L

Angle position error compensation.

This parameter can be accessed if **[Access Level]** L A L is set to **[Expert]** E P r .

Setting	Description
0...500%	Setting range Factory setting: 0%

[Switching frequency] 5WF - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Motor parameters] → [Switching frequency]

[Switching frequency] 5Fr

Drive switching frequency.

Adjustment range: The maximum value is limited to 4 kHz if [Motor surge limit.] 5VL parameter is configured.

If [Sinus Filter Activation] □F is set to [Yes] YE5, the minimum value is 2 kHz and the maximum value is limited to 6 kHz or 8 kHz according to drive rating.

NOTE: In the event of excessive temperature rise, the drive automatically reduces the switching frequency and reset it once the temperature returns to normal.

In case of high-speed motor, it is advised to increase the PWM frequency [Switching frequency] 5Fr at 8, 12 kHz or 16 kHz

Setting ()	Description
2...8 or 16 kHz according to drive rating	Setting range Factory setting: 4.0 kHz or 2.5 kHz according to the drive rating

[Noise Reduction] nrd

Motor noise reduction.

Random frequency modulation helps to prevent any resonance, which may occur at a fixed frequency.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[No]	□□	Fixed frequency Factory setting
[Yes]	YE5	Frequency with random modulation

[Switch Freq Type] 5FT★

Switching frequency type.

This parameter can be accessed if [Access Level] LFL is set to [Expert] EPr.

The motor switching frequency is modified (reduced) when the internal temperature of the drive is too high.

Setting ()	Code / Value	Description
[SFR type 1]	HFI	Heating loss optimization Allows the system to adapt the switching frequency according to the motor frequency. This setting optimizes the heating loss of the drive in order to improve the drive efficiency. Factory setting
[SFR type 2]	HF2	Allows the system to keep a constant chosen switching frequency [Switching frequency] 5Fr whatever the motor frequency [Output frequency] rFr. With this setting, the motor noise is kept as low as possible by a high switching frequency. In the event of overheating, the drive automatically decreases the switching frequency. It is restored to its original value when the temperature returns to normal.

[Motor Surge Limit.] 5 V L

Surge voltage limitation.

This function limits motor over-voltages and is useful in the following applications:

- NEMA motors
- Old or poor quality motors
- Spindle motors
- Rewound motors

This parameter can remain set to [No] *n o* for 230/400 Vac motors used at 230 Vac, or if the length of cable between the drive and the motor does not exceed:

- 4 m with unshielded cables
- 10 m with shielded cables

NOTE: When [Motor Surge Limit.] 5 V L is set to [Yes] *y E 5*, the maximum switching frequency [Switching freq.] 5 F r is modified.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[No]	<i>n o</i>	Function inactive Factory setting
[Yes]	<i>y E 5</i>	Function active

[Attenuation Time] 5 o P ★

Attenuation time.

This parameter can be accessed if [Motor surge limit.] 5 V L is not set to [No] *n o*. The value of the [Attenuation Time] 5 o P parameter corresponds to the attenuation time of the cable used. It is defined to help to prevent the superimposition of voltage wave reflections resulting from long cable lengths. It limits over-voltages to twice the DC bus rated voltage. As surge voltage depends on many parameters such as types of cable, different motor powers in parallel, different cable lengths in parallel, and so on, It is recommended to use an oscilloscope to check the over-voltage values obtained at the motor terminals. If the higher value of [Attenuation Time] 5 o P is not enough according to the cable lengths, an output filter or a dV/dt filter must be used.

To retain the overall drive performance, do not increase the 5 o P value unnecessarily.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[6 µs]	<i>E</i>	6 µs
[8 µs]	<i>B</i>	8 µs Factory setting
[10 µs]	<i>I D</i>	10 µs

Section 8.2

[Define system units]

[Define system units] 5 u E - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Define system units]

About This Menu

In order to be easy to configure, commission, operate, and maintain, the drive uses the application units.

The physicals that are concerned by application units are:

- Temperature values
- Currency values

NOTE: Some other default system units are automatically deduced from configurable system units or from other parameters.

System unit applies by default to all communication parameters and HMI (Display Terminal, Web server, DTM-based software).

When a system unit is changed, there is no rescaling of values. Numerical values are kept, but the meaning of these values is not the same:

- After a change, the behavior of the product will not change (the system stays numerically the same).
- If new values are written through communication or through HMI in new unit, then the behavior is impacted. In that case, all parameters should be reconfigured according to the new selected unit.
- In order to avoid issues due to a modification of system unit parameters, system units should be modified only during the installation of the product and before the commissioning of the functions.

The precision of the physical values is selected at the same time as the unit.

By default, values are signed.

Default range of values are:

16 bits values	32 bits values
-32,768...32,767	-2,147,483,648...2,147,483,648

[Temperature unit] 5 u E P

Default system application unit used for temperature.

Available temperature units:

Unit	Symbol	Conversion
Celsius Degree	°C	–
Fahrenheit Degree	°F	TF = 9/5*Tc+32

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[0.1 °C]	D. IC	0.1 °C Factory setting
[0.1 °F]	D. IF	0.1 °F

[Currency unit list] 5 u C u

Default system application unit used for currency.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[EURO]	E u r o	Euro Factory setting
[\\$]	d o L L R r	Dollar
[£]	P o u n d	Pound
[Krone]	K r	Krone
[Renminbi]	r N b	Renminbi
[Other]	o t H E r	Other

Section 8.3

[Command and Reference] *C r P* - Menu

[Command and Reference] *C r P* - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Command and Reference]

Command and Reference Channels Parameter Can Be Accessed

Run commands (forward, reverse, stop, and so on) and references can be sent using the following channels:

Command	Reference
Terminals: Digital inputs DI	Terminals: Analog inputs AI, pulse input
Display Terminal	Display Terminal
Integrated Modbus	Integrated Modbus
CANopen®	CANopen
Fieldbus module	Fieldbus module
–	+/- speed via the Display Terminal
Integrated Ethernet	Integrated Ethernet NOTE: This selection can be accessed on ATV340...N4E drives.

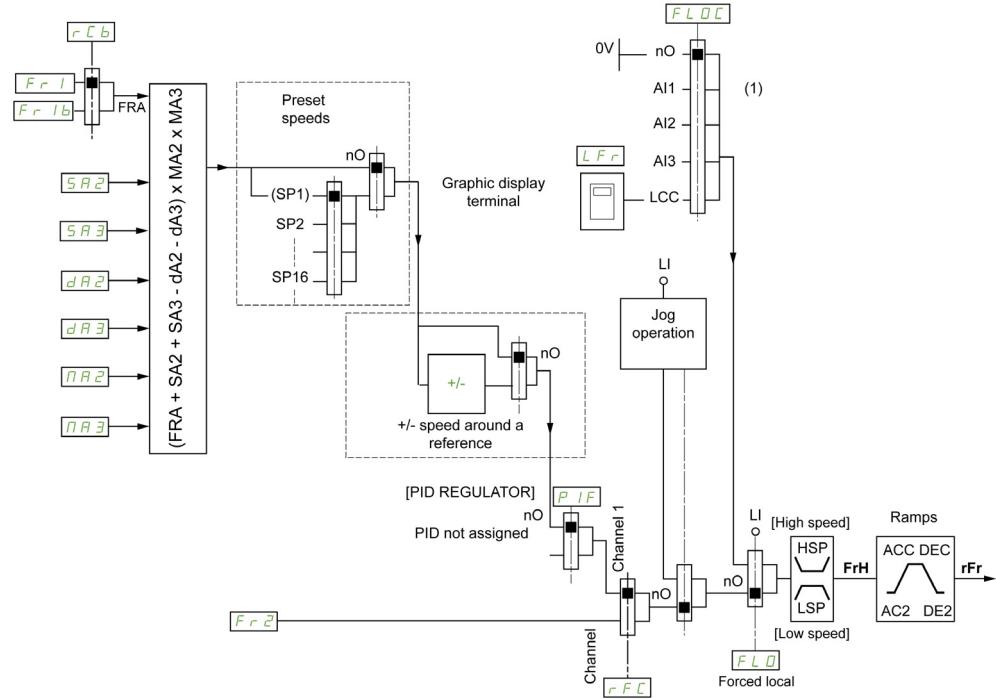
NOTE: The stop keys on the Display Terminal can be programmed as non-priority keys. A stop key can only have priority if the **[Stop Key Enable]** *P 5 E* parameter menu is set to **[Yes]** *Y E S*.

The behavior of the drive can be adapted according to requirements:

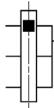
- **[Not separ.]** *S , P*: Command and reference are sent via the same channel.
- **[Separate]** *S E P*: Command and reference may be sent via different channels. In these configurations, control via the communication bus is performed in accordance with the DRIVECOM standard with only 5 freely assignable bits (see communication parameter manual). The application functions cannot be accessed via the communication interface.
- **[I/O profile]** *, □*: The command and the reference can come from different channels. This configuration both simplifies and extends use via the communication interface. Commands may be sent via the digital inputs on the terminals or via the communication bus. When commands are sent via a bus, they are available on a word, which acts as virtual terminals containing only digital inputs. Application functions can be assigned to the bits in this word. More than one function can be assigned to the same bit.

NOTE: Stop commands from the Display Terminal remain active even if the terminals are not the active command channel.

Reference Channel for [Not separ.] S , P, [Separate] S E P and [I/O profile] , □ Configurations, PID Not Configured



(1) Note: Forced local is not active in [I/O].



The black square represents the factory setting assignment.

Fr I: terminals (including I/O extension module), Display Terminal, integrated Modbus, CANopen®, communication card, embedded Ethernet, DI7 PulseInput, DI8 PulseInput.

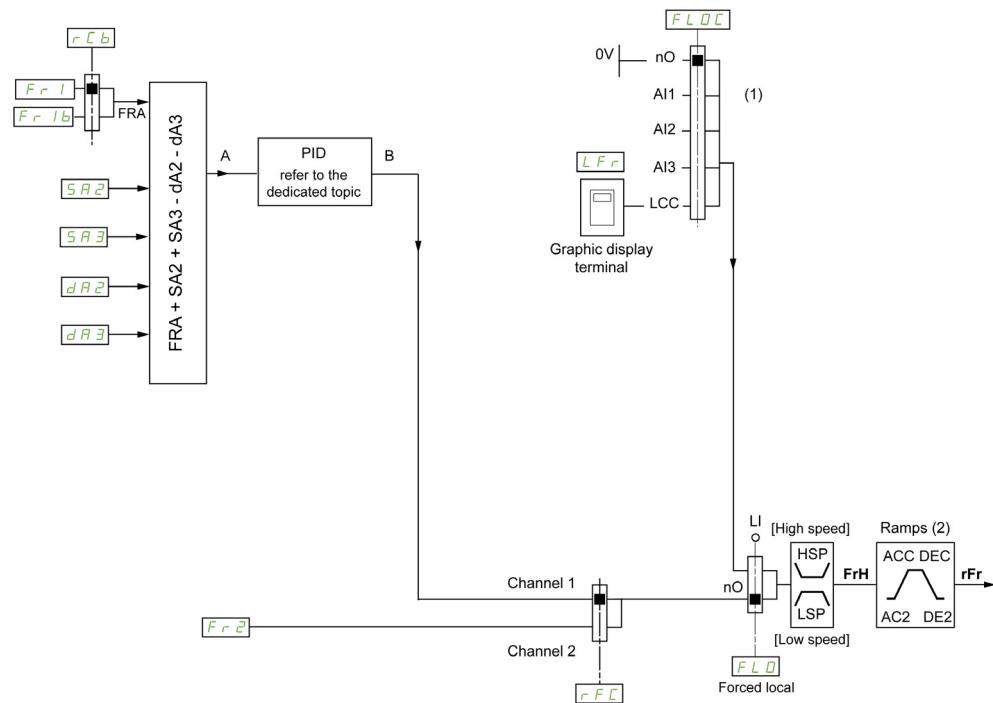
Fr Ib, for S E P and □: terminals (including I/O extension module), Display Terminal, integrated Modbus, CANopen®, embedded Ethernet, DI7 PulseInput, DI8 PulseInput.

Fr Ib, for S , P: terminals (including I/O extension module), DI7 PulseInput, DI8 PulseInput.

SA2, SA3, dA2, dA3, PA2, PA3: terminals (including I/O extension module), Display Terminal, integrated Modbus, CANopen®, communication card, embedded Ethernet, DI7 PulseInput, DI8 PulseInput, and AI Virtual 1.

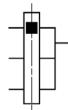
Fr Z: terminals (including I/O extension module), Display Terminal, integrated Modbus, CANopen®, embedded Ethernet communication card, and Ref Freq via DI..

Reference Channel for [Not separ.] S , P, [Separate] S E P and [I/O profile] , □ Configurations, PID Configured with PID References at the Terminals



(1) Note: Forced local is not active in [I/O profile].

(2) Ramps not active if the PID function is active in automatic mode.



The black square represents the factory setting assignment.

Fr 1: terminals (including I/O extension module), Display Terminal, integrated Modbus, CANopen®, communication card, embedded Ethernet, DI7 PulseInput, DI8 PulseInput.

Fr 1b, for S E P and , □: terminals (including I/O extension module), Display Terminal, integrated Modbus, CANopen®, embedded Ethernet, DI7 PulseInput, DI8 PulseInput.

Fr 1b, for S , P: terminals (including I/O extension module), DI7 PulseInput, DI8 PulseInput.

SR 2, SR 3, dR 2, dR 3: terminals (including I/O extension module), Display Terminal, integrated Modbus, CANopen®, communication card, embedded Ethernet, DI7 PulseInput, DI8 PulseInput.

Fr 2: terminals (including I/O extension module), Display Terminal, integrated Modbus, CANopen®, embedded Ethernet communication card, and Ref Freq via DI..

[Ref Freq 1 Config] Fr_1

Configuration reference frequency 1.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Not Configured]	n o	Not assigned
[AI1]	R , I	Analog input AI1 Factory Setting
[AI2]...[AI3]	R , 2...R , 3	Analog input AI2...AI3 NOTE: AI3 selection can be accessed on drives with a power greater than 22 kW.
[AI4]...[AI5]	R , 4...R , 5	Analog input AI4...AI5 if VW3A3203 I/O extension module has been inserted
[Ref Frequency via DI]	u P d L	Up/Down function is assigned by DIx
[HMI]	L C C	Reference Frequency via remote terminal
[Modbus]	M d b	Reference frequency via Modbus
[Com. Module]	n E L	Reference frequency via fieldbus module if a fieldbus module has been inserted
[Embedded Ethernet]	E L H	Embedded Ethernet NOTE: This selection can be accessed on ATV340...N4E drives.
[RP]	P ,	Pulse input NOTE: This selection can be accessed on drives with a power below than 30 kW.

[Ref.1B channel] Fr_1b

Configuration reference frequency 1B.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Not Configured]	n o	Not assigned Factory setting
[AI1]...[AI3]	R , I...R , 3	Analog input AI1...AI3 NOTE: AI3 selection can be accessed on drives with a power greater than 22 kW.
[AI4]...[AI5]	R , 4...R , 5	Analog input AI4...AI5 if VW3A3203 I/O extension module has been inserted
[DI7 PulseInput]...[DI8 PulseInput]	P , 7...P , 8	Digital input DI7...DI8 used as pulse input NOTE: This selection can be accessed on drives with a power greater than 22 kW.
[RP]	P ,	Pulse input NOTE: This selection can be accessed on drives with a power below than 30 kW.

[Ref 1B switching] $r \sqcup b$

WARNING	
UNANTICIPATED EQUIPMENT OPERATION	
This parameter can cause unintended movements, for example an inversion of the direction of the rotation of the motor, a sudden acceleration or a stop.	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Verify that the setting of this parameter does not cause unintended movements. • Verify that the setting of this parameter does not result in unsafe conditions. 	
Failure to follow these instructions can result in death, serious injury, or equipment damage.	

Select switching (1 to 1B).

- If the assigned input or bit is at D , [Ref Freq 1 Config] $F r \sqcup I$ is active.
- If the assigned input or bit is at I , [Ref.1B channel] $F r \sqcup I b$ is active.

[Ref 1B switching] $r \sqcup b$ is forced to [Ref Freq Channel 1] $F r \sqcup I$ if [Control Mode] $C H C F$ is set to [Not separ.] $S \sqcup P$ with [Ref Freq 1 Config] $F r \sqcup I$ assigned via the terminals (analog inputs, pulse input).

NOTE: Activating this function from an other active command channel will also activate the monitoring of this new channel.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Ref Freq Channel 1]	$F r \sqcup I$	Reference channel = channel 1 (for RFC)
[Ref.1B channel]	$F r \sqcup I b$	Reference channel = channel 2 (for RFC)
[DI1]...[DI8]	$L \sqcup I \dots L \sqcup B$	Digital input DI1...DI8 NOTE: DI8 selection can be accessed on drives with a power greater than 22 kW.
[DI11]...[DI16]	$L \sqcup I I \dots L \sqcup I B$	Digital input DI11...DI16 if VW3A3203 I/O extension module has been inserted
[CD00]...[CD10]	$C d 0 0 \dots C d 1 0$	Virtual digital input CMD.0...CMD.10 in [I/O profile] $\sqcup \square$ configuration
[CD11]...[CD15]	$C d 1 1 \dots C d 1 5$	Virtual digital input CMD.11...CMD.15 regardless of configuration
[C101]...[C110]	$C 1 0 \sqcup I \dots C 1 1 \sqcup I O$	Virtual digital input CMD1.01...CMD1.10 with integrated Modbus Serial in [I/O profile] $\sqcup \square$ configuration
[C111]...[C115]	$C 1 1 \sqcup I \dots C 1 1 \sqcup S$	Virtual digital input CMD1.11...CMD1.15 with integrated Modbus Serial regardless of configuration
[C201]...[C210]	$C 2 0 \sqcup I \dots C 2 1 \sqcup O$	Virtual digital input CMD2.01...CMD2.10 with CANopen® fieldbus module in [I/O profile] $\sqcup \square$ configuration
[C211]...[C215]	$C 2 1 \sqcup I \dots C 2 1 \sqcup S$	Virtual digital input CMD2.11...CMD2.15 with CANopen® fieldbus module regardless of configuration
[C301]...[C310]	$C 3 0 \sqcup I \dots C 3 1 \sqcup O$	Virtual digital input CMD3.01...CMD3.10 with a fieldbus module in [I/O profile] $\sqcup \square$ configuration
[C311]...[C315]	$C 3 1 \sqcup I \dots C 3 1 \sqcup S$	Virtual digital input CMD3.11...CMD3.15 with a fieldbus module regardless of configuration
[C501]...[C510]	$C 5 0 \sqcup I \dots C 5 1 \sqcup O$	Virtual digital input CMD5.01...CMD5.10 with integrated Ethernet in [I/O profile] $\sqcup \square$ configuration NOTE: This selection can be accessed on ATV340...N4E drives.
[C511]...[C515]	$C 5 1 \sqcup I \dots C 5 1 \sqcup S$	Virtual digital input CMD5.11...CMD5.15 with integrated Ethernet regardless of configuration NOTE: This selection can be accessed on ATV340...N4E drives.

[Reverse Disable]  

Reverse directions disable.

Lock of movement in reverse direction does not apply to direction requests sent by digital inputs.

Reverse direction requests sent by digital inputs are taken into account.

Reverse direction requests sent by the Display Terminal or sent by the line are not taken into account.

Any reverse speed reference originating from the PID, summing input, and so on, is interpreted as a zero reference (0 Hz).

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[No]	 	No
[Yes]	 	Yes Factory Setting

[Control Mode]   

Mixed mode configuration.

 **WARNING**
UNANTICIPATED EQUIPMENT OPERATION

Disabling [I/O profile]   resets the drive to the factory settings.

- Verify that restoring the factory settings is compatible with the type of wiring used.

Failure to follow these instructions can result in death, serious injury, or equipment damage.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Not separ.]	 	Reference and command, not separate Factory Setting
[Separate]	 	Separate reference and command. This assignment cannot be accessed in [I/O profile]  
[I/O profile]	 	I/O profile

[Command Switching] **C C 5** ★

⚠ WARNING

UNANTICIPATED EQUIPMENT OPERATION

This parameter can cause unintended movements, for example an inversion of the direction of the rotation of the motor, a sudden acceleration or a stop.

- Verify that the setting of this parameter does not cause unintended movements.
- Verify that the setting of this parameter does not result in unsafe conditions.

Failure to follow these instructions can result in death, serious injury, or equipment damage.

Control channel switch.

This parameter can be accessed if [Control Mode] **C H C F** is set to [**Separate**] **S E P** or to [**I/O profile**] **, □**.

If the assigned input or bit is at 0, channel [**Cmd channel 1**] **C d 1** is active. If the assigned input or bit is at 1, channel [**Cmd channel 2**] **C d 2** is active.

NOTE: Activating this function from an other active command channel will also activate the monitoring of this new channel.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Command channel 1]	C d 1	Command channel = channel 1 (for CCS) Factory setting
[Command channel 2]	C d 2	Command channel = channel 2 (for CCS)
[DI1]...[DI8]	L 1 I...L 8 B	Digital input DI1...DI8 NOTE: DI8 selection can be accessed on drives with a power greater than 22 kW.
[DI11]...[DI16]	L 11 I...L 16 B	Digital input DI11...DI16 if VW3A3203 I/O extension module has been inserted
[C101]...[C110]	C 10 I...C 110	Virtual digital input CMD1.01...CMD1.10 with integrated Modbus Serial in [I/O profile] , □ configuration
[C111]...[C115]	C 11 I...C 115	Virtual digital input CMD1.11...CMD1.15 with integrated Modbus Serial regardless of configuration
[C201]...[C210]	C 20 I...C 210	Virtual digital input CMD2.01...CMD2.10 with CANopen® fieldbus module in [I/O profile] , □ configuration
[C211]...[C215]	C 21 I...C 215	Virtual digital input CMD2.11...CMD2.15 with CANopen® fieldbus module regardless of configuration
[C301]...[C310]	C 30 I...C 310	Virtual digital input CMD3.01...CMD3.10 with a fieldbus module in [I/O profile] , □ configuration
[C311]...[C315]	C 31 I...C 315	Virtual digital input CMD3.11...CMD3.15 with a fieldbus module regardless of configuration
[C501]...[C510]	C 50 I...C 510	Virtual digital input CMD5.01...CMD5.10 with integrated Ethernet in [I/O profile] , □ configuration NOTE: This selection can be accessed on ATV340...N4E drives.
[C511]...[C515]	C 51 I...C 515	Virtual digital input CMD5.11...CMD5.15 with integrated Ethernet regardless of configuration NOTE: This selection can be accessed on ATV340...N4E drives.

[Cmd channel 1] $C_d\ 1$ 

Command channel 1 assignment.

This parameter can be accessed if [Control Mode] $C_H\ C_F$ is set to [Separate] $S_E\ P$ or [I/O profile] I_O .

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Terminals]	$E_E\ r$	Terminal block source Factory Setting
[HMI]	$L_C\ C$	Reference Frequency via remote terminal
[Modbus]	$N_d\ b$	Reference frequency via Modbus
[CANopen]	$C_R\ n$	Reference frequency via CANopen if a CANopen module has been inserted
[Com. Module]	$n_E\ t$	Reference frequency via fieldbus module if a fieldbus module has been inserted
[Embedded Ethernet]	$E_E\ H$	Embedded Ethernet NOTE: This selection can be accessed on ATV340...N4E drives.

[Cmd channel 2] $C_d\ 2$ 

Command channel 2 assignment.

This parameter can be accessed if [Control Mode] $C_H\ C_F$ is set to [Separate] $S_E\ P$ or [I/O profile] I_O .

Identical to [Cmd channel 1] $C_d\ 1$ with factory setting [Modbus] $N_d\ b$.

[Freq Switch Assign] $r_F\ C$  **WARNING****UNANTICIPATED EQUIPMENT OPERATION**

This parameter can cause unintended movements, for example an inversion of the direction of the rotation of the motor, a sudden acceleration or a stop.

- Verify that the setting of this parameter does not cause unintended movements.
- Verify that the setting of this parameter does not result in unsafe conditions.

Failure to follow these instructions can result in death, serious injury, or equipment damage.

frequency switching assignment.

If the assigned input or bit is at 0, channel [Ref Freq Channel 1] $F_r\ 1$ is active.

If the assigned input or bit is at 1, channel [Ref Freq Channel 2] $F_r\ 2$ is active.

NOTE: Activating this function from an other active command channel will also activate the monitoring of this new channel.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Ref Freq Channel 1]	$F_r\ 1$	Reference channel = channel 1 (for RFC)
[Ref.1B channel]	$F_r\ 1b$	Reference channel = channel 2 (for RFC)
[DI1]...[DI8]	$L_1\ ...L_8$	Digital input DI1...DI8 NOTE: DI8 selection can be accessed on drives with a power greater than 22 kW.
[DI11]...[DI16]	$L_{11}\ ...L_{16}$	Digital input DI11...DI16 if VW3A3203 I/O extension module has been inserted
[CD00]...[CD10]	$C_d\ 0\ 0\ ...C_d\ 1\ 0$	Virtual digital input CMD.0...CMD.10 in [I/O profile] I_O configuration
[CD11]...[CD15]	$C_d\ 1\ 1\ ...C_d\ 1\ 5$	Virtual digital input CMD.11...CMD.15 regardless of configuration
[C101]...[C110]	$C\ 1\ 0\ 1\ ...C\ 1\ 1\ 0$	Virtual digital input CMD1.01...CMD1.10 with integrated Modbus Serial in [I/O profile] I_O configuration
[C111]...[C115]	$C\ 1\ 1\ 1\ ...C\ 1\ 1\ 5$	Virtual digital input CMD1.11...CMD1.15 with integrated Modbus Serial regardless of configuration

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[C201]...[C210]	C 2 0 I...C 2 10	Virtual digital input CMD2.01...CMD2.10 with CANopen® fieldbus module in [I/O profile] , □ configuration
[C211]...[C215]	C 2 1 I...C 2 15	Virtual digital input CMD2.11...CMD2.15 with CANopen® fieldbus module regardless of configuration
[C301]...[C310]	C 3 0 I...C 3 10	Virtual digital input CMD3.01...CMD3.10 with a fieldbus module in [I/O profile] , □ configuration
[C311]...[C315]	C 3 1 I...C 3 15	Virtual digital input CMD3.11...CMD3.15 with a fieldbus module regardless of configuration
[C501]...[C510]	C 5 0 I...C 5 10	Virtual digital input CMD5.01...CMD5.10 with integrated Ethernet in [I/O profile] , □ configuration NOTE: This selection can be accessed on ATV340...N4E drives.
[C511]...[C515]	C 5 1 I...C 5 15	Virtual digital input CMD5.11...CMD5.15 with integrated Ethernet regardless of configuration NOTE: This selection can be accessed on ATV340...N4E drives.

[Ref Freq 2 Config] Fr 2

Configuration reference frequency 2.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Not Configured]	□ □	Not assigned. If [Control Mode] C H C F is set to [Not separ.] S , □, the command is at the terminals with a zero reference. If [Control Mode] C H C F is set to [Separate] S E P or [I/O profile] , □, the reference is zero. Factory Setting
[AI1]...[AI3]	R , I...R , 3	Analog input AI1...AI3 NOTE: AI3 selection can be accessed on drives with a power greater than 22 kW.
[AI4]...[AI5]	R , 4...R , 5	Analog input AI4...AI5 if VW3A3203 I/O extension module has been inserted
[Ref Frequency via DI]	u P d t	+/- speed command assigned to Dlx
[Ref.Freq-Rmt.Term]	L C C	Display terminal source
[Ref. Freq-Modbus]	I d b	Reference frequency via Modbus
[Ref. Freq-CANopen]	C R n	Reference frequency via CANopen if a CANopen module has been inserted
[Ref. Freq-Com. Module]	□ E t	Reference frequency via fieldbus module if a fieldbus module has been inserted
[Embedded Ethernet]	E t h	Integrated Ethernet NOTE: This selection can be accessed on ATV340...N4E drives.
[DI7 PulseInput]...[DI8 PulseInput]	P , 7...P , 8	Digital input DI7...DI8 used as pulse input NOTE: This selection can be accessed on drives with a power greater than 22 kW.
[RP]	P ,	Pulse input NOTE: This selection can be accessed on drives with a power below than 30 kW.

[Copy Ch1-Ch2] 

Copy channel 1 reference frequency to channel 2.

 WARNING

UNANTICIPATED EQUIPMENT OPERATION

This parameter can cause unintended movements, for example an inversion of the direction of the rotation of the motor, a sudden acceleration or a stop.

- Verify that the setting of this parameter does not cause unintended movements.
- Verify that the setting of this parameter does not result in unsafe conditions.

Failure to follow these instructions can result in death, serious injury, or equipment damage.

Can be used to copy the current reference and/or the command with switching in order to avoid speed surges, for example.

If **[Control Mode]** *C H C F* (see page 220) is set to **[Not separ.] S , N** or **[Separate] S E P**, copying is possible only from channel 1 to channel 2.

If **[Control Mode]** *C H C F* is set to **[I/O profile] , D**, copying is possible in both directions. A reference or a command cannot be copied to a channel on the terminals. The reference copied is **[Pre-Ramp Ref Freq] F r H** (before ramp) unless the destination channel reference is set via +/- speed. In this case, the reference copied is **[Output frequency] r F r** (after ramp).

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[No]	<i>n o</i>	No copy Factory Setting
[Reference Frequency]	<i>S P</i>	Copy reference
[Command]	<i>C d</i>	Copy command
[Cmd + Ref Frequency]	<i>R L L</i>	Copy reference and command

As the Display Terminal may be selected as the command and/or reference channel, its action modes can be configured.

Comments:

- The Display Terminal command/reference is only active if the command and/or reference channels from the terminal are active except for BMP with Local/ Remote key (command via the Display Terminal), which takes priority over these channels. Press Local/ Remote key again to revert control to the selected channel.
- Command and reference via the Display Terminal are impossible if the latter is connected to more than one drive.
- The preset PID reference functions can only be accessed if **[Control Mode]** *C H C F* is set to **[Not separ.] S , N** or **[Separate] S E P**.
- The command via the Display Terminal can be accessed regardless of the **[Control Mode]** *C H C F*.

[Forced Local Freq] $F_L \square C$

Forced local reference source assignment.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Not Configured]	$\square \square$	Not assigned (control via the terminals with zero reference) Factory Setting
[AI1]...[AI3]	$R \square I \dots R \square 3$	Analog input AI1...AI3 NOTE: AI3 selection can be accessed on drives with a power greater than 22 kW.
[AI4]...[AI5]	$R \square 4 \dots R \square 5$	Analog input AI4...AI5 if VW3A3203 I/O extension module has been inserted
[Ref.Freq-Rmt.Term]	$L \square C$	Display terminal source
[DI7 PulseInput]...[DI8 PulseInput]	$P \square 7 \dots P \square 8$	Digital input DI7...DI8 used as pulse input NOTE: This selection can be accessed on drives with a power greater than 22 kW.
[RP]	$P \square$	Pulse input NOTE: This selection can be accessed on drives with a power below than 30 kW.

[Time-out Forc. Local] $F_L \square t$ *

Time for channel confirmation after forced local.

This parameter can be accessed if [Forced Local Assign] $F_L \square$ is not set to [No] $\square \square$.

Setting ()	Description
0.1...30.0 s	Setting range Factory setting: 10.0 s

[Forced Local Assign] $F_L \square$

Forced local assignment.

Forced local mode is active when the input is at state 1.

[Forced Local Assign] $F_L \square$ is forced to [No] $\square \square$ if [Control Mode] $C \square H \square F$ is set to [I/O profile] $\square \square$.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Not Assigned]	$\square \square$	Not assigned Factory setting
[DI1]...[DI8]	$L \square I \dots L \square 8$	Digital input DI1...DI8 NOTE: DI8 selection can be accessed on drives with a power greater than 22 kW.
[DI11]...[DI16]	$L \square I \square I \dots L \square I \square 6$	Digital input DI11...DI16 if VW3A3203 I/O extension module has been inserted

[Reverse Assign] ↵ ↵ 5

Reverse assignment.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Not Assigned]	▫▫	Not assigned Factory setting
[DI1]...[DI8]	L 1...L 8	Digital input DI1...DI8 NOTE: DI8 selection can be accessed on drives with a power greater than 22 kW.
[DI11]...[DI16]	L 11...L 16	Digital input DI11...DI16 if VW3A3203 I/O extension module has been inserted
[CD00]...[CD10]	C d 0 0...C d 1 0	Virtual digital input CMD.0...CMD.10 in [I/O profile] ↵▫ configuration
[CD11]...[CD15]	C d 1 1...C d 1 5	Virtual digital input CMD.11...CMD.15 regardless of configuration
[C101]...[C110]	C 1 0 1...C 1 1 0	Virtual digital input CMD1.01...CMD1.10 with integrated Modbus Serial in [I/O profile] ↵▫ configuration
[C111]...[C115]	C 1 1 1...C 1 1 5	Virtual digital input CMD1.11...CMD1.15 with integrated Modbus Serial regardless of configuration
[C201]...[C210]	C 2 0 1...C 2 1 0	Virtual digital input CMD2.01...CMD2.10 with CANopen® fieldbus module in [I/O profile] ↵▫ configuration
[C211]...[C215]	C 2 1 1...C 2 1 5	Virtual digital input CMD2.11...CMD2.15 with CANopen® fieldbus module regardless of configuration
[C301]...[C310]	C 3 0 1...C 3 1 0	Virtual digital input CMD3.01...CMD3.10 with a fieldbus module in [I/O profile] ↵▫ configuration
[C311]...[C315]	C 3 1 1...C 3 1 5	Virtual digital input CMD3.11...CMD3.15 with a fieldbus module regardless of configuration
[C501]...[C510]	C 5 0 1...C 5 1 0	Virtual digital input CMD5.01...CMD5.10 with integrated Ethernet in [I/O profile] ↵▫ configuration NOTE: This selection can be accessed on ATV340...N4E drives.
[C511]...[C515]	C 5 1 1...C 5 1 5	Virtual digital input CMD5.11...CMD5.15 with integrated Ethernet regardless of configuration NOTE: This selection can be accessed on ATV340...N4E drives.

[2/3-wire control] 

2-wire or 3-wire control.

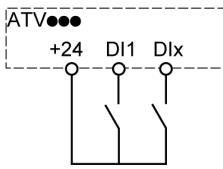
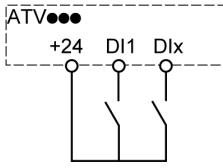
WARNING

UNANTICIPATED EQUIPMENT OPERATION

If this parameter is changed, the parameters [Reverse Assign]  5 and [2-wire type]  and the assignments of the digital inputs are reset to the factory setting.

Verify that this change is compatible with the type of wiring used.

Failure to follow these instructions can result in death, serious injury, or equipment damage.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[2-Wire Control]		<p>2-wire control (level commands): This is the input state (0 or 1) or edge (0 to 1 or 1 to 0), which controls running or stopping.</p> <p>Example of source wiring:</p>  <p>DI1 Forward DLx Reverse</p> <p>Factory setting</p>
[3-Wire Control]		<p>3-wire control (pulse commands) [3 wire]: A forward or reverse pulse is sufficient to command starting, a stop pulse is sufficient to command stopping.</p> <p>Example of source wiring:</p>  <p>DI1 Stop DI2 Forward DLx Reverse</p>

[2-wire type] 

Type of 2-wire control.

This parameter can be accessed if [2/3-wire control]  is set to [2-Wire Control] .

WARNING

UNANTICIPATED EQUIPMENT OPERATION

Verify that the parameter setting is compatible with the type of wiring used.

Failure to follow these instructions can result in death, serious injury, or equipment damage.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Level]		State 0 or 1 is taken into account for run (1) or stop (0)
[Transition]		A change of state (transition or edge) is necessary to initiate operation in order to avoid accidental restarts after a break in the supply mains
[Level With Fwd Priority]		State 0 or 1 is taken into account for run or stop, but the "forward" input takes priority over the "reverse" input

[Stop Key Enable] P 5 E 

Stop key enable.

WARNING

LOSS OF CONTROL

This function disables the Stop key of the Display Terminal if the setting of the parameter **[Command Channel]** *C П д С* is not *Н П 1*.

Only set this parameter to *н о* if you have implemented appropriate alternative stop functions.

Failure to follow these instructions can result in death, serious injury, or equipment damage.

This is a freewheel stop. If the active command channel is the Display Terminal, the stop is performed according to the **[Type of stop]** *S E E* irrespective of the configuration of **[Stop Key Enable]** *P 5 E*.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[No]	<i>н о</i>	–
[Yes]	<i>Y E S</i>	Gives priority to the STOP key on the Display Terminal when the Display Terminal is not enabled as the command channel Factory Setting

[HMI cmd.] б П Р

HMI command.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Stop]	<i>S E o P</i>	Stops the drive (although the controlled direction of operation and reference of the previous channel are copied (to be taken into account on the next RUN command))
[Bumpless]	<i>б у П Р</i>	Does not stop the drive (the controlled direction of operation and the reference of the previous channel are copied)
[Disabled]	<i>d , S</i>	Disabled Factory Setting

Section 8.4

[Master/Slave]

What Is in This Section?

This section contains the following topics:

Topic	Page
MultiDrive Link Mechanism	230
[M/S System Architecture] $\pi 5 R$ - Menu	232
[Speed Ref AI1 Config.] $\pi 5 r 1$ - Menu	235
[Speed Ref AI2 Config.] $\pi 5 r 2$ - Menu	236
[Speed Ref AI3 Config.] $\pi 5 r 3$ - Menu	237
[Speed Ref AI4 Config.] $\pi 5 r 4$ - Menu	238
[Speed Ref AI5 Config.] $\pi 5 r 5$ - Menu	239
[M/S System Architecture] $\pi 5 R$ - Menu	240
[Torque Ref AI1 Config.] $\pi E r 1$ - Menu	241
[Torque Ref AI2 Config.] $\pi E r 2$ - Menu	242
[Torque Ref AI3 Config.] $\pi E r 3$ - Menu	243
[Torque Ref AI4 Config.] $\pi E r 4$ - Menu	244
[Torque Ref AI5 Config.] $\pi E r 5$ - Menu	245
[M/S System Architecture] $\pi 5 R$ - Menu	246
[Speed Ref AQ1 Config.] $\pi 5 \pi 1$ - Menu	247
[Speed Ref AQ2 Config.] $\pi 5 \pi 2$ - Menu	248
[M/S System Architecture] $\pi 5 R$ - Menu	249
[Torque Ref AQ1 Config.] $\pi E \pi 1$ - Menu	250
[Torque Ref AQ2 Config.] $\pi E \pi 2$ - Menu	251
[M/S System Architecture] $\pi 5 R$ - Menu	252
[M/S Control] $\pi 5 E$ - Menu	254
[M/S Torque Control] $\pi 5 \pi$ - Menu	257
[M/S Control] $\pi 5 E$ - Menu	261
[M/S Filters] $\pi 5 F$ - Menu	262
[Load Sharing M/S] $\pi 5 b$ - Menu	266
[M/S Control] $\pi 5 E$ - Menu	269

MultiDrive Link Mechanism

Introduction

MultiDrive Link function allows direct communication between a drives group.

This communication is done through an Ethernet link between each drives.

Some drive functions can be configured with the MultiDrive Link.

Topology

MultiDrive Link function is an Ethernet based protocol.

It can be used in following topologies:

- Daisy chain
- Star
- Redundant ring with RSTP

More information about topologies is available in ATV340 Embedded Ethernet Manual.

MultiDrive Link Properties

MultiDrive Link Group:

A MultiDrive Link group can be composed of:

- Master, which is mandatory.
- Up to 10 Slaves.

Only 1 master must be present in a MultiDrive Link group.

Each drive, acting as slave, must have its own slave identification.

Data Exchange Principle:

Each drive of the MultiDrive Link group sends data to all the drives of its group.

These data are sorted in data groups which are specifics for each application used in combination.

These data are sent using UDP frames with multicast IP addressing.

Network Configuration

The MultiDrive Link function uses the following network resources:

- IP address: 239.192.152.143
- UDP ports: 6700 and 6732
- Non routed networks

If the MultiDrive Link function is used over an Ethernet network, it is mandatory to take into account theses resources for its configuration.

Only one MultiDrive Link group can be used on a same Ethernet network.

Drive Configuration

Each drive used on a MultiDrive Link group must have an IP address.

This IP address can be set manually or assigned by a DHCP server.

Multidrive Link Communication Monitoring

A permanent monitoring of the communication is performed by each drive of the Multidrive Link Group to avoid:

- Execution of the same command
- Corruption of data on the Multidrive Link group

Duplicate Slave ID:

The following table shows how the function reacts in case of duplicate slave ID detection:

If a Duplicate Slave ID is...	Then...
Detected at the same time in the Multidrive Link group	<p>It is not possible to identify the valid drive. In this case, both drives:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● are considered invalid ● are unavailable on the Multidrive Link group ● don't send data on the Multidrive Link group
Detected and already one drive with this Slave ID is running	<p>The existing drive is considered valid. The duplicate drive:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● is considered invalid ● is not available on the Multidrive Link group ● don't send data on the Multidrive Link group <p>NOTE: There is no effect on the application in this case.</p>

Intruder:

A drive is considered as intruder of a Multidrive Link group if its Slave ID is not consistent with the number of slaves declared on Master configuration.

If the drive Slave ID is not consistent with the configuration then it:

- Considers itself as invalid
- Don't send data on the Multidrive Link group
- Don't accept data from the Multidrive Link group

[M/S System Architecture] *P 5 A* - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Master/Slave] → [M/S System Architecture]

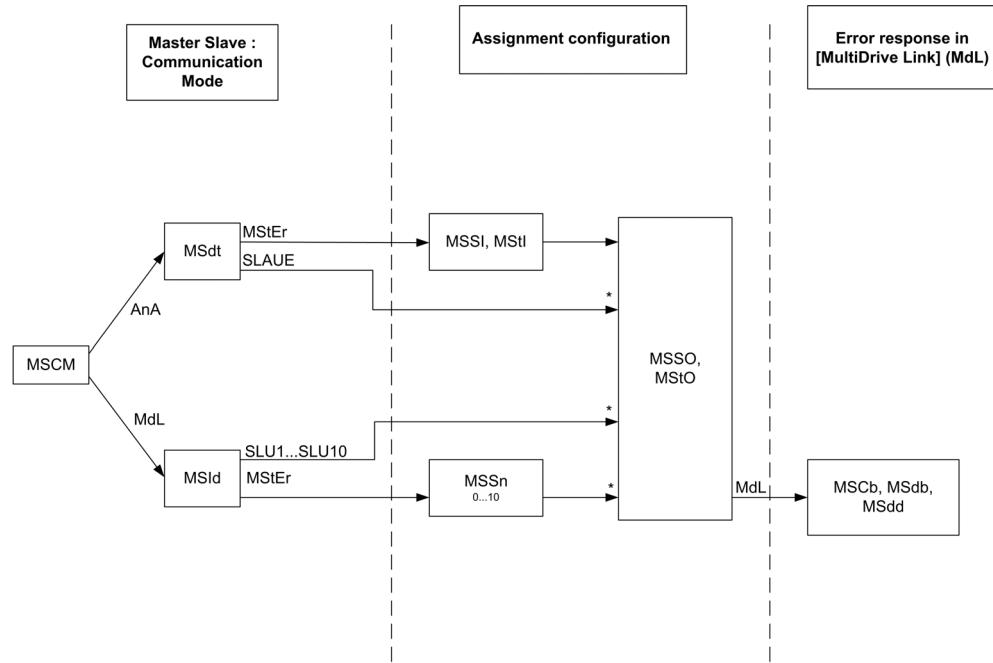
About This Menu

This menu allows the user to configure its Master/Slave architecture.

Master/Slave architecture configuration: allows configuring the communication mode between the Master and Slaves. Which drive is the Master and which ones are the Slaves. It also allows to assign speed and torque reference values.

Master/Slave error response: allows configuring how the Master or Slaves react if an error is detected (Master not present, Slave not ready or communication link error).

The following diagram shows the Master/Slave related parameters depending on their configuration:



* [Access Level] *L A C* is set to [Expert] *E P r*

The following table shows the visibility of the parameters in [Analog] *A n R* or in [MultiDrive Link] *M d L* mode:

[M/S Comm Mode] <i>P 5 C P</i> M/S communication mode	Analog		MultiDrive Link	
[M/S Device ID] <i>P 5 C d</i> : Master or Slave ID selection	-	-	Master	Slave 1 to Slave 10
[M/S Device Role] <i>P 5 d E</i> : Master or Slave selection	Master	Slave	-	-
[M/S Number of Slaves] <i>P 5 S n</i> : M/S number of slaves	-	-	0 to 10	-
[M/S Speed Ref In Assign] <i>P 5 S r</i> : M/S Master speed reference input assignment	-	Analog Input	-	-
[M/S Trq Ref In Assign] <i>P 5 E r</i> : M/S Master torque reference input assignment	-	Analog Input	-	-
[M/S Speed Ref Out Assign] <i>P 5 S o</i> : M/S speed reference output assignment	Analog Output	Analog Output*	Analog Output*	Analog Output*
[M/S Trq Ref Out Assign] <i>P 5 E o</i> : M/S torque reference output assignment	Analog Output	Analog Output*	Analog Output*	Analog Output*
[M/S Local Mode Assign] <i>P 5 d r</i> : M/S local mode input assignment	Digital Input	Digital Input	Digital Input	Digital Input
* Parameters that can be accessed if [Access Level] <i>L A C</i> is set to [Expert] <i>E P r</i>				

[M/S Comm Mode] <i>P5C1</i>	Analog		MultiDrive Link	
M/S communication mode				
[M/S Comm ErrorResp] <i>P5C2</i> : M/S Response to communication error	-	-	Error Response	Error Response
[M/S Device ErrorResp] <i>P5C3</i> : M/S Response to device error	-	-	Error Response	Error Response
[M/S Device Error Delay] <i>P5C4</i> : M/S device error delay	-	-	Error Delay	Error Delay
* Parameters that can be accessed if [Access Level] <i>L1C1</i> is set to [Expert] <i>EPr</i>				

NOTE: Master/Slave function can be configured only if [Motor Control Type] *C1E1* is set to [SVC V] *V1C1* or [FVC] *F1V1C1* or [Sync. mot.] *S4Yn* or [Sync.CL] *F5Y1*.

NOTE: When a drive acts as a slave, [Low Speed] *L5P* and [High Speed] *H5P* must be configured same as master.

NOTE: The drive must be restart to apply the Master/Slave configuration.

[M/S Comm Mode] *P5C1* ★

Master / Slave communication mode.

Activate Master Slave and select communication mode to exchange data between drives involved in the Master Slave architecture.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[No]	<i>nD</i>	Master/Slave is not configured. Factory setting
[MultiDrive Link]	<i>PdL</i>	Master/Slave is configured using MultiDrive Link
[Analog]	<i>RnR</i>	Master/Slave is configured using Analog I/Os. It is recommended to wire a digital output of the slave assigned to [Operating State Fault] <i>F1L1C1</i> to a digital input of the master set to [Ext Error assign] <i>E1E1F</i> , with this setting, an error on the slave drive generates a stop to the master. NOTE: If it is required, a digital output of the slaves assigned to [Operating State Fault] <i>F1L1C1</i> can be wired to a digital input of the master sets to [Ext Error assign] <i>E1E1F</i> in order to stop the master if an error is detected on a slave drive.

[M/S Device ID] *P5C2* ★

Master / Slave ID selection.

This parameter selects the Drive identification number for the Master Slave application.

This parameter can be accessed if [M/S Comm Mode] *P5C1* is set to [MultiDrive Link] *PdL*

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Master]	<i>P5E1r</i>	Master Factory setting NOTE: Be sure that autotune has been done before selecting a drive as master. Otherwise, use the [M/S Local Mode Assign] <i>P5d1</i> input to disable temporary the Master/Slave function and perform autotune.
[Slave1]...[Slave10]	<i>S1V1I...S10V1I</i>	Slave ID

[M/S Device Role] $\text{P } 5 \text{ d } E$ ★

Master / Slave selection.

Select if the drive is the master or a slave.

This parameter can be accessed if [M/S Comm Mode] $\text{P } 5 \text{ C } \Pi$ is set to [Analog] $\text{A } n \text{ A}$

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Master]	$\text{P } 5 \text{ E } E \text{ r}$	The Drive is configured as the Master Drive. (it provides the speed and torque reference value to Slaves). Factory setting
[Slave]	$\text{S } L \text{ R } V \text{ E}$	The Drive is configured as a Slave Drive. (it uses the speed and torque reference value from the Master).

[M/S Number of Slaves] $\text{P } 5 \text{ S } n$ ★

Master / Slave number of slaves.

Total number of slaves in the Master Slave architecture. The maximum number of slaves is 10 in multi-drive link architecture. In Analog architecture the maximum number of slaves depends on Analog I/O capabilities.

This parameter can be accessed if:

- [M/S Comm Mode] $\text{P } 5 \text{ C } \Pi$ is set to [MultiDrive Link] $\text{P } d \text{ L}$, and
- [M/S Device ID] $\text{P } 5 \text{ ,d}$ is set to [Master] $\text{P } 5 \text{ E } E \text{ r}$.

Setting	Description
0...10	Setting range Factory setting: 1

[M/S Speed Ref In Assign] $\text{P } 5 \text{ S } ,$ ★

Master / Slave speed reference input assignment.

This parameter can be accessed if:

- [M/S Comm Mode] $\text{P } 5 \text{ C } \Pi$ is set to [Analog] $\text{A } n \text{ A}$, and
- [M/S Device Role] $\text{P } 5 \text{ d } E$ is set to [Slave] $\text{S } L \text{ R } V \text{ E}$.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[No]	$n \text{ o}$	Analog input is not configured Factory setting
[AI1]...[AI3]	$R \text{ , } 1 \dots R \text{ , } 3$	Analog input AI1...AI3
[AI4]...[AI5]	$R \text{ , } 4 \dots R \text{ , } 5$	Analog input AI4...AI5 if VW3A3203 I/O extension module has been inserted

[Speed Ref AI1 Config.] - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Master/Slave] → [M/S System Architecture] → [Speed Ref AI1 Config.]

About This Menu

This menu can be accessed if:

- [M/S Device Role]  is set to [Slave]  , and
- [M/S Speed Ref In Assign]  is set to [AI1]  .

[AI1 Type]

Configuration of analog input AI1.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Voltage]	 	0-10 Vdc Factory setting
[Current]	 	0-20 mA

[AI1 min value]

AI1 voltage scaling parameter of 0%.

This parameter can be accessed if [AI1 Type]   is set to [Voltage]  .

Setting	Description
0.0...10.0 Vdc	Setting range Factory setting : 0.0 Vdc

[AI1 max value]

AI1 voltage scaling parameter of 100%.

This parameter can be accessed if [AI1 Type]   is set to [Voltage]  .

Setting	Description
0.0...10.0 Vdc	Setting range Factory setting : 10.0 Vdc

[AI1 min. value]

AI1 current scaling parameter of 0%.

This parameter can be accessed if [AI1 Type]   is set to [Current]  .

Setting	Description
0.0...20.0 mA	Setting range Factory setting : 0.0 mA

[AI1 max. value]

AI1 current scaling parameter of 100%.

This parameter can be accessed if [AI1 Type]   is set to [Current]  .

Setting	Description
0.0...20.0 mA	Setting range Factory setting : 20.0 mA

[Speed Ref AI2 Config.] - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Master/Slave] → [M/S System Architecture] → [Speed Ref AI2 Config.]

About This Menu

This menu can be accessed if:

- [M/S Device Role]  is set to [Slave] , and
- [M/S Speed Ref In Assign]  is set to [AI2] .

[AI2 Type]

Configuration of analog input AI2.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Voltage]	 	0-10 Vdc
[Voltage +/-]	 	-10/+10 Vdc Factory setting

[AI2 min value]

AI2 voltage scaling parameter of 0%.

This parameter can be accessed if [AI2 Type]   is set to:

- [Voltage]  , or
- [Voltage +/-]  .

Identical to [AI1 min value]    (see page 235).

[AI2 max value]

AI2 voltage scaling parameter of 100%.

This parameter can be accessed if [AI2 Type]   is set to:

- [Voltage]  , or
- [Voltage +/-]  .

Identical to [AI1 max value]    (see page 235).

[Speed Ref AI3 Config.] - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Master/Slave] → [M/S System Architecture] → [Speed Ref AI3 Config.]

About This Menu

This menu can be accessed if:

- [M/S Device Role]  is set to [Slave]                   <img alt="

[Speed Ref AI4 Config.] $\text{P} \text{S} \text{r} \text{4}$ - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Master/Slave] → [M/S System Architecture] → [Speed Ref AI4 Config.]

About This Menu

This menu can be accessed if:

- [M/S Device Role] $\text{P} \text{S} \text{d} \text{E}$ is set to [Slave] $\text{S} \text{L} \text{R} \text{V} \text{E}$, and
- [M/S Speed Ref In Assign] $\text{P} \text{S} \text{S} \text{r}$ is set to [AI4] $\text{A} \text{i} \text{4}$.

[AI4 Type] $\text{A} \text{i} \text{4} \text{E}$ ★

Configuration of analog input AI4.

This parameter can be accessed if VW3A3203 I/O extension module has been inserted.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Voltage]	$1 \text{D} \text{u}$	0-10 Vdc
[Current]	0R	0-20 mA Factory setting
[Voltage +/-]	$\text{n} 1 \text{D} \text{u}$	-10/+10 Vdc

[AI4 min value] $\text{u} \text{,L} \text{4}$ ★

AI4 voltage scaling parameter of 0%.

This parameter can be accessed if [AI4 Type] $\text{A} \text{i} \text{4} \text{E}$ is set to:

- [Voltage] $1 \text{D} \text{u}$, or
- [Voltage+/-] $\text{n} 1 \text{D} \text{u}$.

Identical to [AI1 min value] $\text{u} \text{,L} \text{1}$ (*see page 235*).

[AI4 max value] $\text{u} \text{,H} \text{4}$ ★

AI4 voltage scaling parameter of 100%.

This parameter can be accessed if [AI4 Type] $\text{A} \text{i} \text{4} \text{E}$ is set to:

- [Voltage] $1 \text{D} \text{u}$, or
- [Voltage+/-] $\text{n} 1 \text{D} \text{u}$.

Identical to [AI1 max value] $\text{u} \text{,H} \text{1}$ (*see page 235*).

[AI4 min. value] $\text{C} \text{r} \text{L} \text{4}$ ★

AI4 current scaling parameter of 0%.

This parameter can be accessed if [AI4 Type] $\text{A} \text{i} \text{4} \text{E}$ is set to [Current] 0R .

Identical to [AI1 min. value] $\text{C} \text{r} \text{L} \text{1}$ (*see page 235*).

[AI4 max. value] $\text{C} \text{r} \text{H} \text{4}$ ★

AI4 current scaling parameter of 100%.

This parameter can be accessed if [AI4 Type] $\text{A} \text{i} \text{4} \text{E}$ is set to [Current] 0R .

Identical to [AI1 max. value] $\text{C} \text{r} \text{H} \text{1}$ (*see page 235*).

[Speed Ref AI5 Config.] - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Master/Slave] → [M/S System Architecture] → [Speed Ref AI5 Config.]

About This Menu

This menu can be accessed if:

- [M/S Device Role]  is set to [Slave]              <img alt="star icon" data-bbox="15108 178

[M/S System Architecture] π S A - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Master/Slave] → [M/S System Architecture]

[M/S Trq Ref In Assign] π S E , ★

Master / Slave torque reference input assignment.

This parameter can be accessed if:

- [M/S Comm Mode] π S C π is set to [Analog] R n R
- [M/S Device Role] π S d E is set to [Slave] S L R V E
- [M/S Control Type] π S C E is set to [Torque Direct] E r q d , [Torque Reverse] E r q r or [Torque Custom] E r q C .

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[No]	n \square	Analog input is not configured Factory setting
[AI1]...[AI3]	R $,$ I ... R $,$ 3	Analog input AI1...AI3
[AI4]...[AI5]	R $,$ 4 ... R $,$ 5	Analog input AI4...AI5 if VW3A3203 I/O extension module has been inserted

[Torque Ref AI1 Config.] - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Master/Slave] → [M/S System Architecture] → [Torque Ref AI1 Config.]

About This Menu

This menu can be accessed if:

- [M/S Device Role]  is set to [Slave]  , and
- [M/S Trq Ref In Assign]  is set to [AI1]  .

[AI1 Type]

Configuration of analog input AI1.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Voltage]	 	0-10 Vdc Factory setting
[Current]	 	0-20 mA

[AI1 min value]

AI1 voltage scaling parameter of 0%.

This parameter can be accessed if [AI1 Type]   is set to [Voltage]  .

Setting	Description
0.0...10.0 Vdc	Setting range Factory setting : 0.0 Vdc

[AI1 max value]

AI1 voltage scaling parameter of 100%.

This parameter can be accessed if [AI1 Type]   is set to [Voltage]  .

Setting	Description
0.0...10.0 Vdc	Setting range Factory setting : 10.0 Vdc

[AI1 min. value]

AI1 current scaling parameter of 0%.

This parameter can be accessed if [AI1 Type]   is set to [Current]  .

Setting	Description
0.0...20.0 mA	Setting range Factory setting : 0.0 mA

[AI1 max. value]

AI1 current scaling parameter of 100%.

This parameter can be accessed if [AI1 Type]   is set to [Current]  .

Setting	Description
0.0...20.0 mA	Setting range Factory setting : 20.0 mA

[Torque Ref AI2 Config.] - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Master/Slave] → [M/S System Architecture] → [Torque Ref AI2 Config.]

About This Menu

This menu can be accessed if:

- [M/S Device Role]  is set to [Slave] , and
- [M/S Trq Ref In Assign]  is set to [AI2] .

[AI2 Type]

Configuration of analog input AI2.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Voltage]	 	0-10 Vdc
[Voltage +/-]	 	-10/+10 Vdc Factory setting

[AI2 min value]

AI2 voltage scaling parameter of 0%.

This parameter can be accessed if [AI2 Type]   is set to:

- [Voltage]  , or
- [Voltage +/-]  .

Identical to [AI1 min value]   (see page 241).

[AI2 max value]

AI2 voltage scaling parameter of 100%.

This parameter can be accessed if [AI2 Type]   is set to:

- [Voltage]  , or
- [Voltage +/-]  .

Identical to [AI1 max value]   (see page 241).

[Torque Ref AI3 Config.] - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Master/Slave] → [M/S System Architecture] → [Torque Ref AI3 Config.]

About This Menu

This menu can be accessed if:

- [M/S Device Role]  is set to [Slave]                   <img alt="key icon" data-bbox="14

[Torque Ref AI4 Config.] $\pi E r 4$ - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Master/Slave] → [M/S System Architecture] → [Torque Ref AI4 Config.]

About This Menu

This menu can be accessed if:

- [M/S Device Role] $\pi S d E$ is set to [Slave] $S L A V E$, and
- [M/S Trq Ref In Assign] $\pi S E$ is set to [AI4] $A 4$.

[AI4 Type] $A 4 E$ ★

Configuration of analog input AI4.

This parameter can be accessed if VW3A3203 I/O extension module has been inserted.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Voltage]	$I D u$	0-10 Vdc
[Current]	$D R$	0-20 mA Factory setting
[Voltage +/-]	$n I D u$	-10/+10 Vdc

[AI4 min value] $u 1 L 4$ ★

AI4 voltage scaling parameter of 0%.

This parameter can be accessed if [AI2 Type] $A 2 E$ is set to:

- [Voltage] $I D u$, or
- [Voltage+/-] $n I D u$.

Identical to [AI1 min value] $u 1 L 1$ (*see page 241*).

[AI4 max value] $u 1 H 4$ ★

AI4 voltage scaling parameter of 100%.

This parameter can be accessed if [AI2 Type] $A 2 E$ is set to:

- [Voltage] $I D u$, or
- [Voltage+/-] $n I D u$.

Identical to [AI1 max value] $u 1 H 1$ (*see page 241*).

[AI4 min. value] $E r L 4$ ★

AI4 current scaling parameter of 0%.

This parameter can be accessed if [AI4 Type] $A 4 E$ is set to [Current] $D R$.

Identical to [AI1 min. value] $E r L 1$ (*see page 241*).

[AI4 max. value] $E r H 4$ ★

AI4 current scaling parameter of 100%.

This parameter can be accessed if [AI4 Type] $A 4 E$ is set to [Current] $D R$.

Identical to [AI1 max. value] $E r H 1$ (*see page 241*).

[Torque Ref AI5 Config.] - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Master/Slave] → [M/S System Architecture] → [Torque Ref AI5 Config.]

About This Menu

This menu can be accessed if:

- [M/S Device Role]  is set to [Slave]              <img alt="star icon" data-bbox="8

[M/S System Architecture] *N 5 A* - Menu**Access**

[Complete settings] → [Master/Slave] → [M/S System Architecture]

[M/S Speed Ref Out Assign] *N 5 5 o* ★

Master / Slave output speed reference.

Analog output selected for speed reference for the Master Drive.

This parameter can be accessed if [M/S Comm Mode] *N 5 C P* is not set to [No] *n o*.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[No]	<i>n o</i>	Analog output for speed reference is not configured. Factory setting
[AQ1 assignment]	<i>R o 1</i>	Analog Output for speed reference is configured to <i>R o 1</i> .
[AQ2 assignment]	<i>R o 2</i>	Analog Output for speed reference is configured to <i>R o 2</i> .

In order to monitor the loss of signal, it is recommended to use a 4-20mA link between the master and the slave and to configure the monitoring function in the [4-20 mA loss] *L F L* - menu.

NOTE: To allow configuration, outputs default configuration must be unconfigured.

[Speed Ref AQ1 Config.] *N 5 N 1* - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Master/Slave] → [M/S System Architecture] → [Speed Ref AQ1 Config.]

About This Menu

This menu can be accessed if [M/S Speed Ref Out Assign] *N 5 S 0* is set to [AQ1 assignment] *R 0 1*.

[AQ1 Type] *R 0 1 E*

AO1 type.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Voltage]	<i>I D u</i>	0-10 Vdc
[Current]	<i>D R</i>	0-20 mA Factory setting

[AQ1 min output] *R 0 L 1* ★

AO1 current scaling parameter of 0%.

This parameter can be accessed if [AQ1 Type] *R 0 1 E* is set to [Current] *D R*.

Setting	Description
0.0...20.0 mA	Setting range Factory setting: 0.0 mA

[AQ1 max output] *R 0 H 1* ★

AO1 current scaling parameter of 100%.

This parameter can be accessed if [AQ1 Type] *R 0 1 E* is set to [Current] *D R*.

Setting	Description
0.0...20.0 mA	Setting range Factory setting: 20.0 mA

[AQ1 min Output] *u 0 L 1* ★

AO1 voltage scaling parameter of 0%.

This parameter can be accessed if [AQ1 Type] *R 0 1 E* is set to [Voltage] *I D u*.

Setting	Description
0.0...10.0 Vdc	Setting range Factory setting: 0.0 Vdc

[AQ1 max Output] *u 0 H 1* ★

AO1 voltage scaling parameter of 100%.

This parameter can be accessed if [AQ1 Type] *R 0 1 E* is set to [Voltage] *I D u*.

Setting	Description
0.0...10.0 Vdc	Setting range Factory setting: 10.0 Vdc

[Speed Ref AQ2 Config.] π 5 π 2 - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Master/Slave] → [M/S System Architecture] → [Speed Ref AQ2 Config.]

About This Menu

This menu can be accessed if [M/S Speed Ref Out Assign] π 5 π is set to [AQ2 assignment] $R \alpha 2$.

[AQ2 Type] $R \alpha 2 E$

AO2 type.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Voltage]	$I \square u$	0-10 Vdc
[Current]	$D R$	0-20 mA Factory setting

[AQ2 min output] $R \alpha L 2 \star$

AO2 current scaling parameter of 0%.

This parameter can be accessed if [AQ2 Type] $R \alpha 2 E$ is set to [Current] $D R$.

Identical to [AQ1 min output] $R \alpha L 1$ (*see page 247*).

[AQ2 max output] $R \alpha H 2 \star$

AO2 current scaling parameter of 100%.

This parameter can be accessed if [AQ2 Type] $R \alpha 2 E$ is set to [Current] $D R$.

Identical to [AQ1 max output] $R \alpha H 1$ (*see page 247*).

[AQ2 min Output] $u \alpha L 2 \star$

AO2 voltage scaling parameter of 0%.

This parameter can be accessed if [AQ2 Type] $R \alpha 2 E$ is set to [Voltage] $I \square u$.

Identical to [AQ1 min Output] $u \alpha L 1$ (*see page 247*).

[AQ2 max Output] $u \alpha H 2 \star$

AO2 voltage scaling parameter of 100%.

This parameter can be accessed if [AQ2 Type] $R \alpha 2 E$ is set to [Voltage] $I \square u$.

Identical to [AQ1 max Output] $u \alpha H 1$ (*see page 247*).

[M/S System Architecture] *M S A* - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Master/Slave] → [M/S System Architecture]

[M/S Trq Ref Out Assign] *M S T o* ★

Master / Slave output torque reference.

Analog output selected for torque reference for the Master Drive.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[No]	<i>n o</i>	Analog output for torque reference is not configured. Factory setting
[AQ1 assignment]	<i>R o 1</i>	Analog Output for speed reference is configured to <i>R o 1</i> .
[AQ2 assignment]	<i>R o 2</i>	Analog Output for speed reference is configured to <i>R o 2</i> .
In order to monitor the loss of signal, it is recommended to use a 4-20mA link between the master and the slave and to configure the monitoring function in the [4-20 mA loss] <i>L F L</i> - menu.		

NOTE: To allow configuration, outputs default configuration must be unconfigured.

[Torque Ref AQ1 Config.] $\pi E \pi$ / - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Master/Slave] → [M/S System Architecture] → [Torque Ref AQ1 Config.]

About This Menu

This menu can be accessed if [M/S Trq Ref Out Assign] $\pi S 5 \square$ is set to [AQ1 assignment] $R \square 1$.

[AQ1 Type] $R \square 1E$

AO1 type.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Voltage]	$I D u$	0-10 Vdc
[Current]	$D R$	0-20 mA Factory setting

[AQ1 min output] $R \square L$ / \star

AO1 current scaling parameter of 0%.

This parameter can be accessed if [AQ1 Type] $R \square 1E$ is set to [Current] $D R$.

Setting	Description
0.0...20.0 mA	Setting range Factory setting: 0.0 mA

[AQ1 max output] $R \square H$ / \star

AO1 current scaling parameter of 100%.

This parameter can be accessed if [AQ1 Type] $R \square 1E$ is set to [Current] $D R$.

Setting	Description
0.0...20.0 mA	Setting range Factory setting: 20.0 mA

[AQ1 min Output] $u \square L$ / \star

AO1 voltage scaling parameter of 0%.

This parameter can be accessed if [AQ1 Type] $R \square 1E$ is set to [Voltage] $I D u$.

Setting	Description
0.0...10.0 Vdc	Setting range Factory setting: 0.0 Vdc

[AQ1 max Output] $u \square H$ / \star

AO1 voltage scaling parameter of 100%.

This parameter can be accessed if [AQ1 Type] $R \square 1E$ is set to [Voltage] $I D u$.

Setting	Description
0.0...10.0 Vdc	Setting range Factory setting: 10.0 Vdc

[Torque Ref AQ2 Config.] - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Master/Slave] → [M/S System Architecture] → [Torque Ref AQ2 Config.]

About This Menu

This menu can be accessed if [M/S Trq Ref Out Assign]  is set to [AQ2 assignment] .

[AQ2 Type]

AO2 type.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Voltage]	 I D u	0-10 Vdc
[Current]	 D R	0-20 mA Factory setting

[AQ2 min output]

AO2 current scaling parameter of 0%.

This parameter can be accessed if [AQ2 Type]  is set to [Current] .

Identical to [AQ1 min output]  (see page 250).

[AQ2 max output]

AO2 current scaling parameter of 100%.

This parameter can be accessed if [AQ2 Type]  is set to [Current] .

Identical to [AQ1 max output]  (see page 250).

[AQ2 min Output]

AO2 voltage scaling parameter of 0%.

This parameter can be accessed if [AQ2 Type]  is set to [Voltage] .

Identical to [AQ1 min Output]  (see page 250).

[AQ2 max Output]

AO2 voltage scaling parameter of 100%.

This parameter can be accessed if [AQ2 Type]  is set to [Voltage] .

Identical to [AQ1 max Output]  (see page 250).

[M/S System Architecture] $\pi 5 A$ - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Master/Slave] → [M/S System Architecture]

[M/S Local Mode Assign] $\pi 5 d$ ★

Master / Slave local mode assignment.

Digital input used to switch between Master/Slave automatic operation and local control mode (for example in maintenance mode).

This parameter can be accessed if [M/S Comm Mode] $\pi 5 C \pi$ is not set to [No] $n o$.

NOTE: It is recommended to use this mode when system is stopped and, if possible, motor mechanically disconnected.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Not Assigned]	$n o$	Not assigned Factory setting
[DI1]...[DI8]	$L_1 I_1 ... L_8 I_8$	Digital input DI1...DI8 NOTE: DI8 selection can be accessed on drives with a power greater than 22 kW.
[DI11]...[DI16]	$L_1 I_1 ... L_{16} I_{16}$	Digital input DI11...DI16 if VW3A3203 I/O extension module has been inserted

[MDL Comm Timeout] $\pi L E o$ ★

MultiDrive Link communication timeout.

This parameter can be accessed if [M/S Comm Mode] $\pi 5 C \pi$ is set to [MultiDrive Link] $\pi d L$.

Setting	Description
0.01...10.00 s	Setting range Factory setting: 0.05 s

[M/S Comm ErrorResp] $\pi 5 C b$ ★

Master / Slave response to a communication error.

Define how will react the drive when a multi-drive link communication error is detected.

This parameter can be accessed if [M/S Comm Mode] $\pi 5 C \pi$ is set to [MultiDrive Link] $\pi d L$.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Freewheel Stop]	$y E 5$	Freewheel stop Factory setting
[Per STT]	$S E t$	Stop according to [Type of stop] $S E E$ parameter but without an error triggered after stop
[Ramp stop]	$r \pi P$	Stop on ramp

NOTE: If the master is in [Ramp stop] $r \pi P$ the slave has to be set to [Freewheel Stop] $y E 5$.

[M/S Device ErrorResp] $\text{P } 5 \text{ d } b$ ★

Master / Slave response to device error.

Define how will react the Drive when a device is lost

This parameter can be accessed if [M/S Comm Mode] $\text{P } 5 \text{ L } \text{ P}$ set to [MultiDrive Link] $\text{P } d \text{ L}$.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Freewheel Stop]	$\text{Y } E \text{ S}$	Freewheel stop Factory setting
[Per STT]	$\text{S } E \text{ E}$	Stop according to [Type of stop] $\text{S } E \text{ E}$ parameter but without an error triggered after stop
[Fallback Speed]	$\text{L } F \text{ F}$	Change to fallback speed, maintained as long as the detected error persists and the run command has not been removed ⁽¹⁾
[Ramp stop]	$r \text{ P } P$	Stop on ramp

⁽¹⁾ Because, in this case, the detected error does not trigger a stop, it is recommended to assign a relay or logic output to its indication.

NOTE: If the master is in [Ramp stop] $r \text{ P } P$ the slave has to be set to [Freewheel Stop] $\text{Y } E \text{ S}$, [Speed maintained] $r \text{ L } S$ and [Fallback Speed] $L \text{ F } F$ are not available for slave drives.

[M/S Device Error Delay] $\text{P } 5 \text{ d } d$ ★

Master / Slave device error delay.

Monitoring delay before the system is ready. If one of the drives in the system is not ready after this delay, a [M/S Device Error] $\text{P } 5 \text{ d } F$ is triggered.

This parameter can be accessed if [M/S Comm Mode] $\text{P } 5 \text{ L } \text{ P}$ is set to [MultiDrive Link] $\text{P } d \text{ L}$.

Setting	Description
0...60 s	Setting range Factory setting: ∞ wait infinite time

[Fallback Speed] $L \text{ F } F$ ★

Fallback speed.

This parameter can be accessed if the error response parameter is set to [Fallback Speed] $L \text{ F } F$.

Setting	Description
0.0...599.0 Hz	Setting range Factory setting: 0.0 Hz

[M/S Control] π 5 E - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Master/Slave] → [M/S Control]

About This Menu

This menu is used to configure the type of control used in Master/Slave.

This function can be accessed if [M/S Comm Mode] π 5 E π is not set to [No] n o.

Master/Slave Mechanical Coupling

The Master / Slave mechanical coupling type allow selecting two types of coupling:

- [Rigid] r , G , d coupling means that the rotor speed of each motor is forced to be the same by the application. This choice is typically used for coupling such as gearbox, toothed belt and when the elasticity is closed to '0'.
- In the [Elastic] $E L A S E$ coupling, the motors rotors are not the same, due to elasticity or slip in the coupling. This type of coupling is use for example for overhead conveyor (using a tension system), long belt.

Selecting the [Elastic] $E L A S E$ coupling give access to same parameters a [Rigid] r , G , d coupling plus:

- [M/S Filters] π 5 F -
- [Load Sharing M/S] π 5 b -
- [M/S Out Torque Ref Select] π 5 o E -

Configuring parameters in the [Elastic] $E L A S E$ coupling and then selecting [Rigid] r , G , d coupling will disable the [Elastic] $E L A S E$ configured parameters. Conversely, switching from [Rigid] r , G , d coupling to [Elastic] $E L A S E$ coupling has not effect on the [Rigid] r , G , d coupling parameters.

Master/Slave Control Type

The Master / Slave mechanical coupling type allow selecting two types of coupling:

- [Rigid] r , G , d coupling means that the rotor speed of each motor is forced to be the same by the application. This choice is typically used for coupling such as gearbox, toothed belt and when the elasticity is negligible.
- In the [Elastic] $E L A S E$ coupling, the motors rotors are not the same, due to elasticity or slip in the coupling. This type of coupling is use for example for overhead conveyor (using a tension system), long belt.

Selecting the [Elastic] $E L A S E$ coupling give access to same parameters a [Rigid] r , G , d coupling plus:

- [M/S Filters] π 5 F -
- [Load Sharing M/S] π 5 b -
- [M/S Out Torque Ref Select] π 5 o E -

Configuring parameters in the [Elastic] $E L A S E$ coupling and then selecting [Rigid] r , G , d coupling will disable the [Elastic] $E L A S E$ configured parameters. Conversely, switching from [Rigid] r , G , d coupling to [Elastic] $E L A S E$ coupling has not effect on the [Rigid] r , G , d coupling parameters.

The Master / Slave control type allow selecting which type of control will be applied on slave and direction of slave related to direction of Master:

- [Speed Direct] $S P d d$: Slave follows speed reference of Master in same direction.
- [Speed Reverse] $S P d r$: Slave follows speed reference of Master in reverse direction. Typically for face to face motors.
- [Torque Direct] $E r \varphi d$: Slave follows torque reference of Master in same direction.
- [Torque Reverse] $E r \varphi r$: Slave follows torque reference of Master in reverse direction. Typically for face to face motors.
- [Torque Custom] $E r \varphi L$: Slave follows torque reference of Master around speed reference. Direction of speed can be adjusted with [Speed Ref Direction] $S S d$ and direction of torque with [Torque ref. sign] $E S d$.

Allows to apply a torque ratio or a torque ramp in case of application needs.

The following table shows the possible cases between [Speed Ref Direction] **S S d** and [Torque ref. sign] **E S d** when [M/S Control Type] **N S L E** is set to [Torque Custom] **E r 9 L**:

[Speed Ref Direction] S S d	[Torque ref. sign] E S d	[M/S Control Type] N S L E
Inactive	Inactive	Slave runs in same direction as Master (speed and torque)
Inactive	Active	Slave runs in same direction as Master but apply opposite torque
Active	Inactive	Slave runs in reverse direction of Master and applies opposite torque
Active	Active	Slave runs in reverse direction of Master for speed and torque.

Stop Configuration

The slaves have different stop behavior depending of their configuration and master stop type.

When the master stops in freewheel:

- If [M/S Control Type] **N S L E** is set to [Speed Direct] **S P d d** or [Speed Reverse] **S P d r**, the slaves stop following its [Type of stop] **S E E** configuration.
- If [M/S Control Type] **N S L E** is set to [Torque Direct] **E r 9 d** or [Torque Reverse] **E r 9 r** or [Torque Custom] **E r 9 c**, the slaves stop following [Torque control stop] **E S E** or [Type of stop] **S E E**, depending of the priority between them.

Example: If [Torque control stop] **E S E** is set to [Freewheel Stop] **n S E** and [Type of stop] **S E E** is set to [On Ramp] **r N P**, the slaves will stop in freewheel.

When the master stops on ramp:

- If [M/S Control Type] **N S L E** is set to [Speed Direct] **S P d d** or [Speed Reverse] **S P d r**, the slaves stop following the master ramp in speed control.
- If [M/S Control Type] **N S L E** is set to [Torque Direct] **E r 9 d** or [Torque Reverse] **E r 9 r** or [Torque Custom] **E r 9 c**, the slaves stop following the master ramp in torque control.

Brake management

Brake sequence is managed only by the Master.

The Master manages its brake according to its brake sequence, in [MultiDrive Link] **N d L** or [Analog] **A n A**. Optionally, the Master can manage the brakes of the slaves by the same brake command. The release and engage times of brakes in the application have to be the same.

Brake sequence is managed by the Master and Slaves.

In [MultiDrive Link] **N d L** brakes can be managed on each Drive. The synchronization of the release and engage times are managed by the Master through the [MultiDrive Link] **N d L**.

[M/S Coupling Type] **N S N L**

Master / Slave mechanical coupling type.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Rigid]	r i G i d	Rigid coupling Factory setting
[Elastic]	E L A S E	Elastic coupling

[M/S Control Type] πSCE ★

Master / Slave control type.

This parameter can be accessed if [M/S Device Role] πSdE is set to [Slave] SLAVE or [M/S Device ID] πSdI is set to [Slave 1]to[Slave 10].

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Torque Direct]	Erd	Torque direct control Factory setting
[Torque Reverse]	Erar	Torque reverse control
[Torque Custom]	ErarC	Torque custom control Allow to apply a torque ratio a torque ramp in case of different motors
[Speed Direct]	SPdd	Speed direct control Is not available if [M/S Coupling Type] πSNL is set to [Rigid] rGid
[Speed Reverse]	SPdr	Speed reverse control Is not available if [M/S Coupling Type] πSNL is set to [Rigid] rGid

[M/S Torque Control] - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Master/Slave] → [M/S Control] → [M/S Torque Control]

About This Menu

This menu can be accessed if:

- [M/S Device Role]  is set to [Slave]  or [M/S Device ID]  is set to [Slave1] to [Slave10], and
- [M/S Control Type]  is set to:
 - [Torque Direct] , or
 - [Torque Reverse] , or
 - [Torque Custom] .

[Speed Ref Direction]

Speed reference direction.

Assignment for sign inversion of reference speed value coming from the master.

This parameter can be accessed if:

- [M/S Comm Mode]  is not set to [No] , and
- [M/S Control Type]  is set to [Torque Custom] .

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Not Assigned]		Not assigned Factory setting
[Yes]		Yes
[DI1]...[DI8]		Digital input DI1...DI8 NOTE: DI8 selection can be accessed on drives with a power greater than 22 kW.
[DI11]...[DI16]		Digital input DI11...DI16 if VW3A3203 I/O extension module has been inserted
[CD00]...[CD10]		Virtual digital input CMD.0...CMD.10 in [I/O profile]  configuration
[CD11]...[CD15]		Virtual digital input CMD.11...CMD.15 regardless of configuration
[C101]...[C110]		Virtual digital input CMD1.01...CMD1.10 with integrated Modbus Serial in [I/O profile]  configuration
[C111]...[C115]		Virtual digital input CMD1.11...CMD1.15 with integrated Modbus Serial regardless of configuration
[C201]...[C210]		Virtual digital input CMD2.01...CMD2.10 with CANopen® fieldbus module in [I/O profile]  configuration
[C211]...[C215]		Virtual digital input CMD2.11...CMD2.15 with CANopen® fieldbus module regardless of configuration
[C301]...[C310]		Virtual digital input CMD3.01...CMD3.10 with a fieldbus module in [I/O profile]  configuration
[C311]...[C315]		Virtual digital input CMD3.11...CMD3.15 with a fieldbus module regardless of configuration
[C501]...[C510]		Virtual digital input CMD5.01...CMD5.10 with integrated Ethernet in [I/O profile]  configuration NOTE: This selection can be accessed on ATV340...N4E drives.
[C511]...[C515]		Virtual digital input CMD5.11...CMD5.15 with integrated Ethernet regardless of configuration NOTE: This selection can be accessed on ATV340...N4E drives.

[Torque ref. sign] $E\ 5\ d$ ★

Assignment for the inversion of the sign of the reference for the torque regulation function.

This parameter can be accessed if:

- [M/S Comm Mode] $\Pi\ 5\ \mathcal{C}\ \Pi$ is not set to [No] $n\ o$, and
- [M/S Control Type] $\Pi\ 5\ \mathcal{C}\ E$ is set to [Torque Custom] $E\ r\ q\ c$.

Identical to [Speed Ref Direction] $S\ S\ d$.

[Torque ratio] $E\ r\ E$ ★

Torque ratio.

This parameter is used in case of using a slave motor with a different nominal torque than the master motor, or to unbalance torque between master and slave.

This parameter applies a factor in % on the torque reference received from the master.

This parameter can be accessed if:

- [M/S Comm Mode] $\Pi\ 5\ \mathcal{C}\ \Pi$ is not set to [No] $n\ o$, and
- [M/S Control Type] $\Pi\ 5\ \mathcal{C}\ E$ is set to [Torque Custom] $E\ r\ q\ c$.

Setting C	Description
0.0...1000.0%	Coefficient applied to [Torque ref. channel] $E\ r\ I$ or [Torque ref. 2 channel] $E\ r\ Z$ Factory setting: 100.0%

[Torque Ref Offset] $E\ q\ o\ P$ ★

Torques reference offset.

This parameter is used to scale the torque reference value.

This parameter applies an offset in % on the torque reference.

This parameter can be accessed if:

- [M/S Comm Mode] $\Pi\ 5\ \mathcal{C}\ \Pi$ is not set to [No] $n\ o$, and
- [M/S Control Type] $\Pi\ 5\ \mathcal{C}\ E$ is set to [Torque Custom] $E\ r\ q\ C$.

Setting C	Description
-1000.0...1000.0%	Setting range Factory setting: 0.0%

[Torque ramp time] $E\ r\ P$ ★

Torque ramp time.

This parameter can be accessed if:

- [M/S Comm Mode] $\Pi\ 5\ \mathcal{C}\ \Pi$ is not set to [No] $n\ o$, and
- [M/S Control Type] $\Pi\ 5\ \mathcal{C}\ E$ is set to [Torque Custom] $E\ r\ q\ C$.

Setting C	Description
0.0...99.99 s	Rise and fall time for a variation of 100% of the rated torque Factory setting: 3.00 s

[Torque control stop] $E\ 5\ E$

Torque control stop type.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Speed]	$S\ P\ d$	Speed regulation stop, in accordance with the type of stop configuration
[Freewheel Stop]	$n\ 5\ E$	Factory setting: Freewheel stop
[Spin]	$S\ P\ n$	Zero torque stop, but maintaining the flux in the motor (only in closed loop)

[Spin time] ***S P E*** ★

Torque regulation: spin time.

Spin time following stop in order to remain ready to restart quickly.

This parameter specifies the time the motor is maintained fluxed after the zero speed is attained.

This parameter can be accessed if [Torque control stop] ***E S E*** is set to [Spin] ***S P n***.

Setting ()	Description
0.0...3600.0 s	Setting range Factory setting: 1.0 s

[Positive deadband] ***d b P***

Torque regulation positive dead band.

The torque control is effective in an area defined by [Positive deadband] ***d b P*** and [Negative deadband] ***d b n*** around the speed reference value.

Outside of this area, the drive switch automatically in speed control to make speed returns inside the torque control area.

Value added algebraically to the speed reference.

Example for [Positive deadband] ***d b P*** = 10:

- If reference = + 50 Hz: + 50 + 10 = 60 Hz
- If reference = - 50 Hz: - 50 + 10 = - 40 Hz

Setting ()	Description
0.0...2 x [Max Frequency] <i>E F r</i>	Setting range Factory setting: 10.0 Hz

[Negative deadband] ***d b n***

Torque regulation negative dead band.

The torque control is effective in an area defined by [Positive deadband] ***d b P*** and [Negative deadband] ***d b n*** around the speed reference value.

Outside of this area, the drive switch automatically in speed control to make speed returns inside the torque control area.

Value subtracted algebraically from the speed reference.

Example for [Negative deadband] ***d b n*** = 10:

- If reference = + 50 Hz: + 50 - 10 = 40 Hz
- If reference = - 50 Hz: - 50 - 10 = - 60 Hz

Setting ()	Description
0.0...2 x [Max Frequency] <i>E F r</i>	Setting range Factory setting: 10.0 Hz

[Torque ctrl time out] ***r E o***

Torque control time-out.

Time following automatic exit of torque control mode in the event of an error or a warning has been triggered.

Setting	Description
0.0...999.9 s	Setting range Factory setting: 60 s

[Torque Ctrl ErrorResp] $E \square b$

Response to torque control error.

Response of drive once time [Torque ctrl time out] $r E \square$ has elapsed.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Warning]	$R L r \Pi$	Warning is triggered on timeout Factory setting
[Error]	$F L E$	An error is triggered with freewheel stop

[Low Torque] $L E \square$

Low torque threshold limit.

Torque applied on slave will be limited between [Low Torque] $L E \square$ and [High Torque] $H E \square$ (expressed in % of nominal torque).

This parameter cannot be higher than [High Torque] $H E \square$.

Setting \square	Description
-300.0...[High Torque] $H E \square$	Setting range Factory setting: -100.0%

[High Torque] $H E \square$

High torque threshold limit.

This parameter cannot be lower than [Low Torque] $L E \square$.

Setting \square	Description
[Low Torque] $L E \square$...300.0%	Setting range Factory setting: 100.0%

[M/S Control] π S E - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Master/Slave] → [M/S Control]

About This Menu

This menu can be accessed if [M/S Comm Mode] π S C π is not set to [No] π \square .

[Torque Filter] E r F \star

This function provides a filter on the torque reference for Slaves Drives to deal with dynamic control constraints (such as a communication delays). Select if the filtering on the input torque reference is present or not.

This parameter can be accessed if:

- [M/S Device Role] π S d E is set to [Slave] π L R V E or [M/S Device ID] π S $,d$ is set to [Slave1] to [Slave10], and
- [M/S Control Type] π S C E is set to:
 - [Torque Direct] E r q d , or
 - [Torque Reverse] E r q r , or
 - [Torque Custom] E r q C .

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[No]	π \square	Input torque reference filtering is disabled Factory setting
[Yes]	Y E S	Input torque reference filtering is enabled

[Torque Filter Bandwidth] E r W \star

Defines the bandwidth of the filter in Hertz.

This parameter can be accessed if:

- [Torque Filter] E r F is set to [Yes] Y E S , and
- [M/S Control Type] π S C E is set to:
 - [Torque Direct] E r q d , or
 - [Torque Reverse] E r q r , or
 - [Torque Custom] E r q C .

Setting	Description
1...1000 Hz	Setting range Factory setting: 20 Hz.

[M/S Filters] *N S F* - Menu

Access

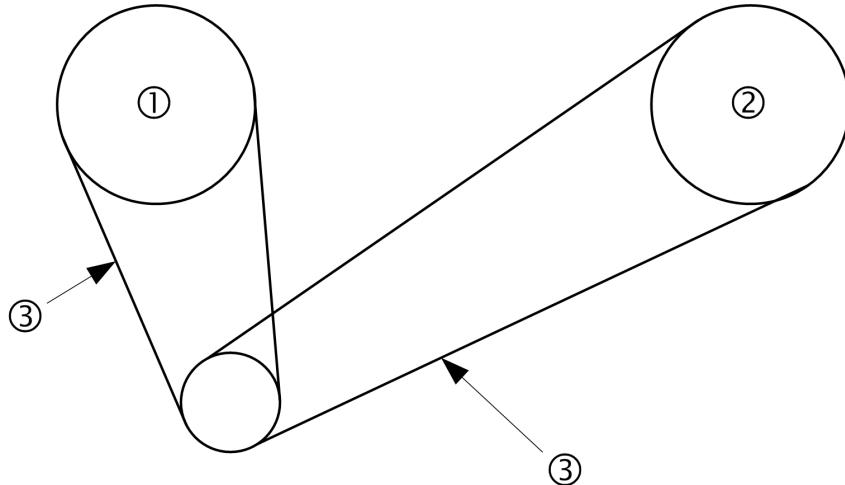
[Complete settings] → [Master/Slave] → [M/S Control] → [M/S Filters]

About This Menu

This menu can be accessed if [M/S Coupling Type] *N S N L* is set to [Elastic] *E L R S E*.

Master control speed and Slave is torque controlled. This feature allows configuring the transfer function between Master and Slave according to the dynamic of the coupling (elastic).

The advanced filter can be set independently on Master or/and Slaves to compensate the elasticity of the coupling:



- 1 Master
- 2 Slave
- 3 Advanced filter can be set for this elastic coupling

[M/S Advanced Filter] *N S F E*

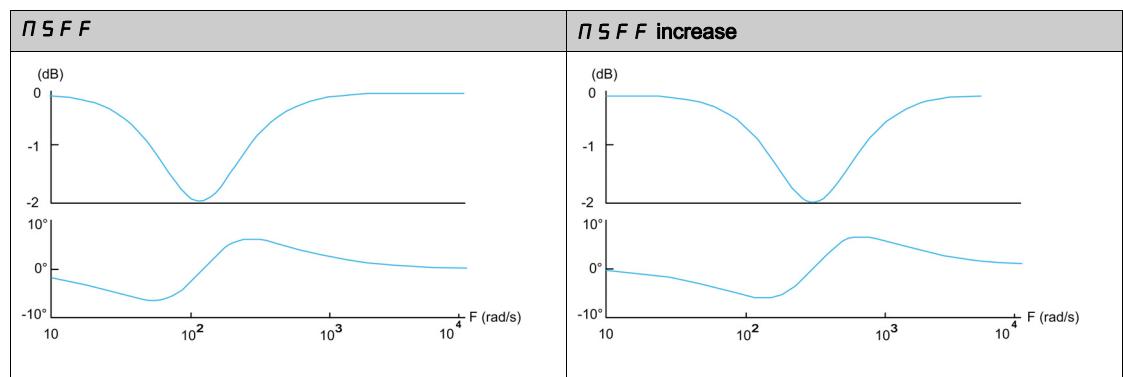
Master / Slave advanced filter activation.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[No]	<i>n o</i>	Advanced filtering disable Factory setting
[Yes]	<i>y E S</i>	Advanced filtering enable

[M/S Advanced Filter Freq] $\pi 5 F F$ ★

Defines the frequency of the filter in Hz.

Influence of the [M/S Advanced Filter Freq] $\pi 5 F F$ Parameter



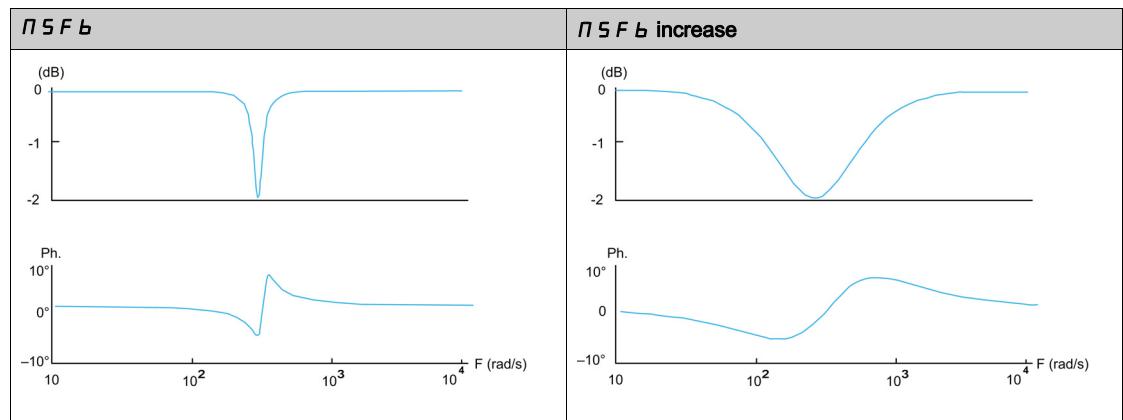
This parameter can be accessed if [M/S Advanced Filter] $\pi 5 F E$ is not set to [No] $n o$.

Setting	Description
10.0...150 Hz	Setting range Factory setting: 15.0 Hz

[M/S Advanced Filter Bdw] $\pi 5 F b$ ★

Defines the bandwidth. Means the width of the stop-band of the filter in % of the filter frequency.

Influence of the [M/S Advanced Filter Bdw] $\pi 5 F b$ Parameter



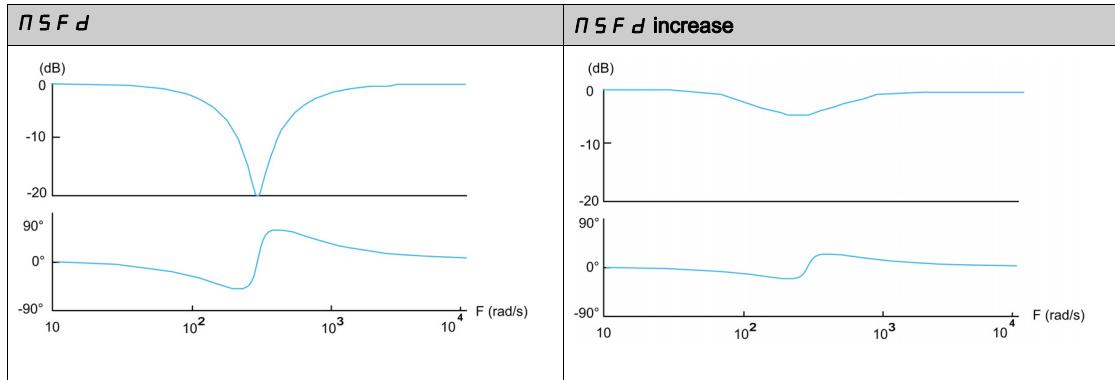
This parameter can be accessed if [M/S Advanced Filter] $\pi 5 F E$ is not set to [No] $n o$.

Setting	Description
10...400%	Setting range Factory setting: 100%

[M/S Advanced Filter Depth] $\pi S F d$ ★

Defines the attenuation level at the filter frequency.

Influence of the [M/S Advanced Filter Depth] $\pi S F d$ Parameter



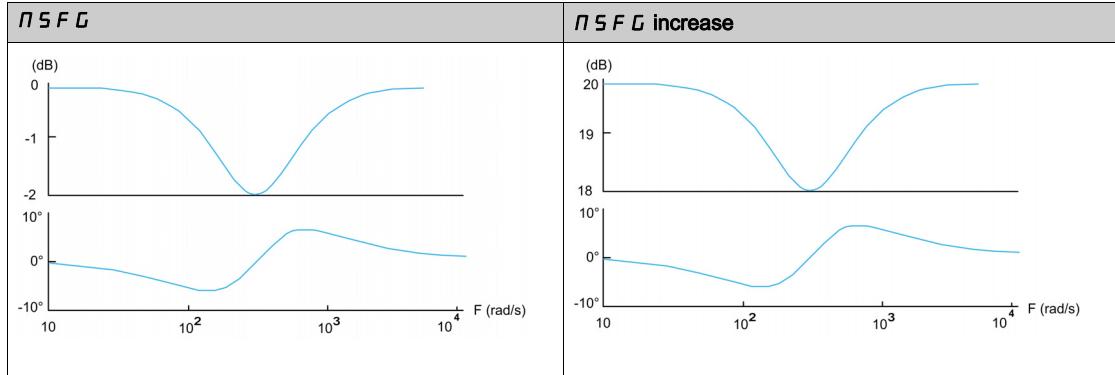
This parameter can be accessed if [M/S Advanced Filter] $\pi S F E$ is not set to [No] $n o$.

Setting	Description
0...99%	Setting range Factory setting: 10%

[M/S Advanced Filter Gain] $\pi S F G$ ★

Defines the gain of the filter. 100% means a unitary gain.

Influence of the [M/S Advanced Filter Gain] $\pi S F G$ Parameter



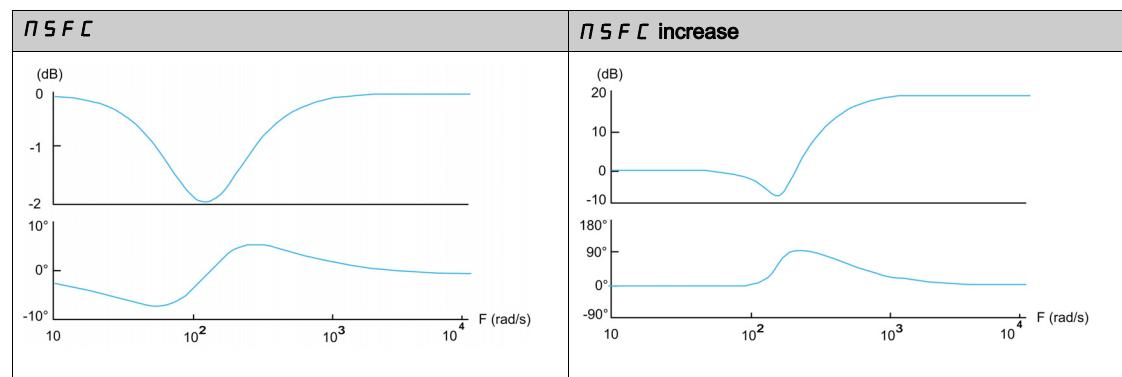
This parameter can be accessed if [M/S Advanced Filter] $\pi S F E$ is not set to [No] $n o$.

Setting	Description
0...1000%	Setting range Factory setting: 100%

[M/S Advanced Filter Coeff] $\pi S F C$ ★

Master / Slave advanced filter coefficient.

Influence of the [M/S Advanced Filter Coeff] $\pi S F C$ Parameter



This parameter can be accessed if [M/S Advanced Filter] $\pi S F E$ is not set to [No] .

Setting	Description
0...1000%	Setting range Factory setting: 100%

[Load Sharing M/S] π 5 b - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] \rightarrow [Master/Slave] \rightarrow [M/S Control] \rightarrow [Load Sharing M/S]

About This Menu

This menu can be accessed if:

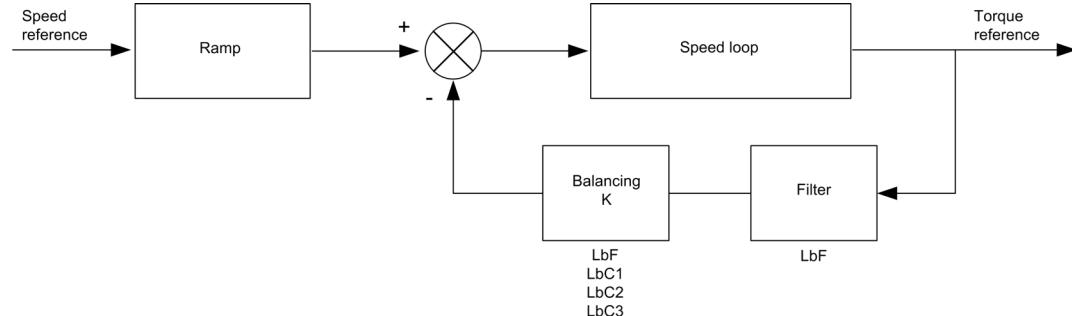
- [M/S Coupling Type] π 5 π L is set to [Elastic] E L A S E, and
- [M/S Device Role] π 5 d E or [M/S Device ID] π 5 , d is set to [Master] π 5 E E r.

Or if:

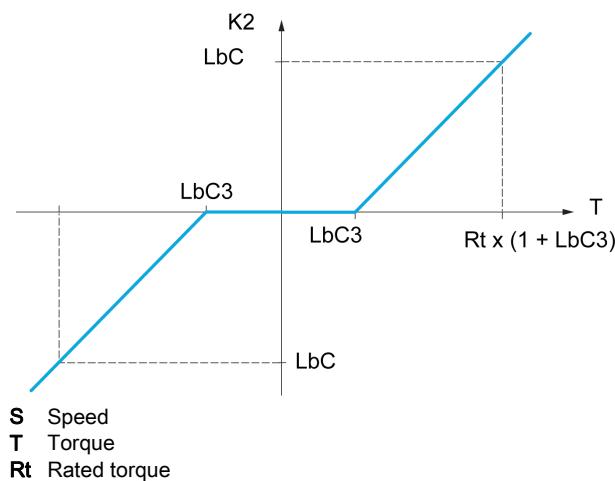
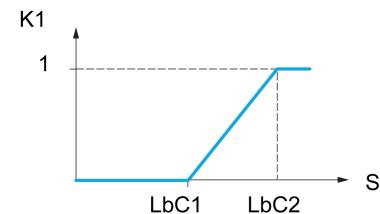
- [M/S Device Role] π 5 d E is set to [Slave] S L A V E or [M/S Device ID] π 5 , d is set to [Slave1] to [Slave10], and
- [M/S Control Type] π 5 C E is set to:
 - [Speed Direct] S P d d, or
 - [Speed Reverse] S P d r.

Load sharing, Parameters That can be Accessed at Expert Level

Principle:



The load sharing factor K is determined by the torque and speed, with two factors K1 and K2 ($K = K1 \times K2$).



[Load sharing] L b R

Load balancing configuration.

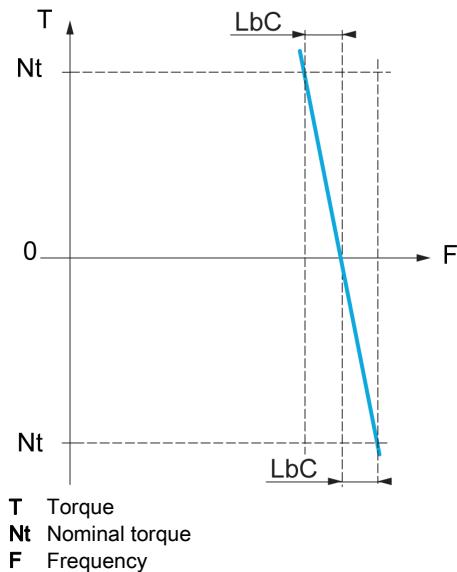
When 2 motors are connected mechanically and therefore at the same speed, and each is controlled by a drive, this function can be used to improve torque distribution between the two motors. To do this, it varies the speed based on the torque.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[No]	n o	Function inactive Factory setting
[Yes]	Y E S	Function active

[Load correction] L b C ★

Nominal speed load balance correction.

This parameter can be accessed if [Load sharing] L b R is not set to [No] n o.



Setting	Description
0.0...1000.0 Hz	Setting range Factory setting: 0.0 Hz

[Correction min spd] L b C l ★

Low Speed for torque decreasing function speed reference.

Minimum speed for load correction in Hz. Below this threshold, no corrections are made. Used to prevent correction at very low speed if this would hamper rotation of the motor.

This parameter can be accessed if:

- [Access Level] L R C is set to [Expert] E P r , and
- [Load sharing] L b R is not set to [No] n o .

Setting	Description
0.0...999.9 Hz	Setting range Factory setting: 0.0 Hz

[Correction max spd] L b C 2

High speed for torque decreasing function speed reference.

Speed threshold in Hz above which maximum load correction is applied.

This parameter can be accessed if:

- [Access Level] *L R C* is set to [Expert] *E P r*, and
- [Load sharing] *L b R* is not set to [No] *n o*.

Setting	Description
<i>L b C 1</i> ...1000.0 Hz	Setting range Factory setting: 0.0 Hz

[Torque offset] L b C 3

Torque offset for torque correction.

Minimum torque for load correction as a % of the rated torque. Below this threshold, no corrections are made. Used to avoid torque instabilities when the torque direction is not constant.

This parameter can be accessed if:

- [Access Level] *L R C* is set to [Expert] *E P r*, and
- [Load sharing] *L b R* is not set to [No] *n o*.

Setting	Description
0...300%	Setting range Factory setting: 0%

[Sharing filter] L b F

Time constant filter.

This parameter can be accessed if:

- [Access Level] *L R C* is set to [Expert] *E P r*, and
- [Load sharing] *L b R* is not set to [No] *n o*.

Setting	Description
100...20,000 ms	Setting range Factory setting: 100 ms

[M/S Balance Trq Ref Sel] P S ,b

Master / Slave load balancing torque reference selection.

This parameter can be accessed if [Load sharing] *L b R* is not set to [No] *n o*.

If [M/S Advanced Filter] *P S F E* is set to [No] *n o*, this parameter have no effect.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Not Applied]	<i>n o</i>	Not applied
[Before Advanced Filter]	<i>b F ,L E</i>	Before advanced filter Factory setting:
[After Advanced Filter]	<i>A F ,L E</i>	After filter

[M/S Control] $\pi 5 \text{ E}$ - Menu

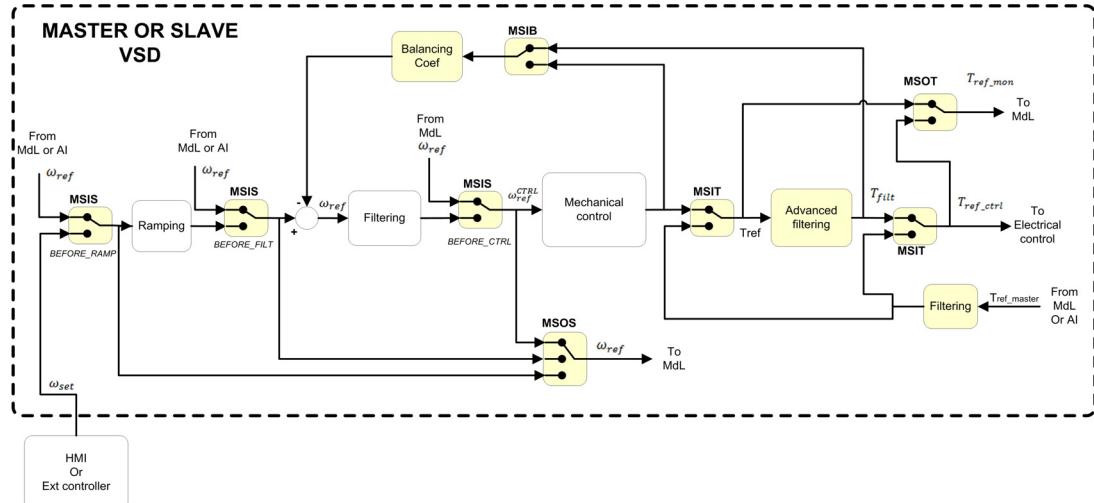
Access

[Complete settings] → [Master/Slave] → [M/S Control]

About This Menu

This function can be accessed if [M/S Comm Mode] $\pi 5 \text{ C } \pi$ is not set to [No] $n \text{ o}$.

The following diagram shows the influence of reference entries and selections in the Master/Slave structure:



[M/S Torque Ref Entry] $\pi 5 \text{ ,E} \star$

Master / Slave torque reference entry in control chain.

This parameter can be accessed if:

- [M/S Advanced Filter] $\pi 5 \text{ F } E$ is not set to [No] $n \text{ o}$.
- [M/S Coupling Type] $\pi 5 \text{ P } L$ is set to [Elastic] $E L A S E$, and
- [M/S Device Role] $\pi 5 \text{ d } E$ is set to [Slave] $S L A V E$ or [M/S Device ID] $\pi 5 \text{ ,d}$ is set to [Slave 1] to [Slave 10].

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Not Applied]	$n \text{ o}$	Not applied
[Before Advanced Filter]	$b F \text{ ,L } E$	Before advanced filter Factory setting
[After Advanced Filter]	$A F \text{ ,L } E$	After advanced filter

[M/S Out Torque Ref Select] $\pi 5 \text{ o } E \star$

Master / Slave output torque reference selection.

Select the input routing of balancing feature.

This parameter can be accessed if:

- [M/S Coupling Type] $\pi 5 \text{ P } L$ is set to [Elastic] $E L A S E$, and
- [M/S Advanced Filter] $\pi 5 \text{ F } E$ is not set to [No] $n \text{ o}$.

Identical to [M/S Torque Ref Entry] $\pi 5 \text{ ,E}$.

[M/S Speed Ref Entry] $\pi 5 \text{, } 5$ ★

Master / Slave speed reference entry in control chain.

Select the routing of the new speed reference input.

This parameter can be accessed if [M/S Device Role] $\pi 5 \text{d E}$ is set to [Slave] $5 L R V E$ or [M/S Device ID] $\pi 5 \text{, d}$ is set to [Slave 1] to [Slave 10].

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Not Applied]	$n o$	Not applied
[Before Ramp]	$b r \pi P$	The input speed reference is before the ramp input in the control scheme Factory setting
[After Ramp]	$A r \pi P$	The input speed reference is after the ramp input in the control scheme
[Before Control Loop]	$b C t r L$	The input speed reference is before the control input in the control scheme

[M/S Out Speed Ref Select] $\pi 5 \text{ o } 5$

Master / Slave output speed reference selection.

Identical to [M/S Speed Ref Entry] $\pi 5 \text{, } 5$.

Section 8.5

[Hoisting Functions]

What Is in This Section?

This section contains the following topics:

Topic	Page
[Brake logic control] <i>b L C</i> - Menu	272
[High speed hoisting] <i>H S H</i> - Menu	285
[Load Sharing] <i>L d S</i> - Menu	291
[Rope Slack Handling] <i>S d r</i> - Menu	294

[Brake logic control] L - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Hoisting Functions] → [Brake logic control]

About This Menu

NOTE: This function cannot be used with some other functions.

Used to control an electromagnetic brake by the drive, for horizontal and vertical hoisting applications, and for unbalanced machines.

Principle of the hoisting movements:

- Vertical movement: maintain motor torque in the driving load holding direction during brake opening and closing, in order to hold the load. Start smoothly when the brake is released and stop smoothly when the brake is engaged.
- Horizontal movement: synchronize brake release with the build-up of torque during startup and brake engage at zero speed on stopping, to prevent jolting.

Instructions for Brake Logic Control for a Vertical Hoisting Application

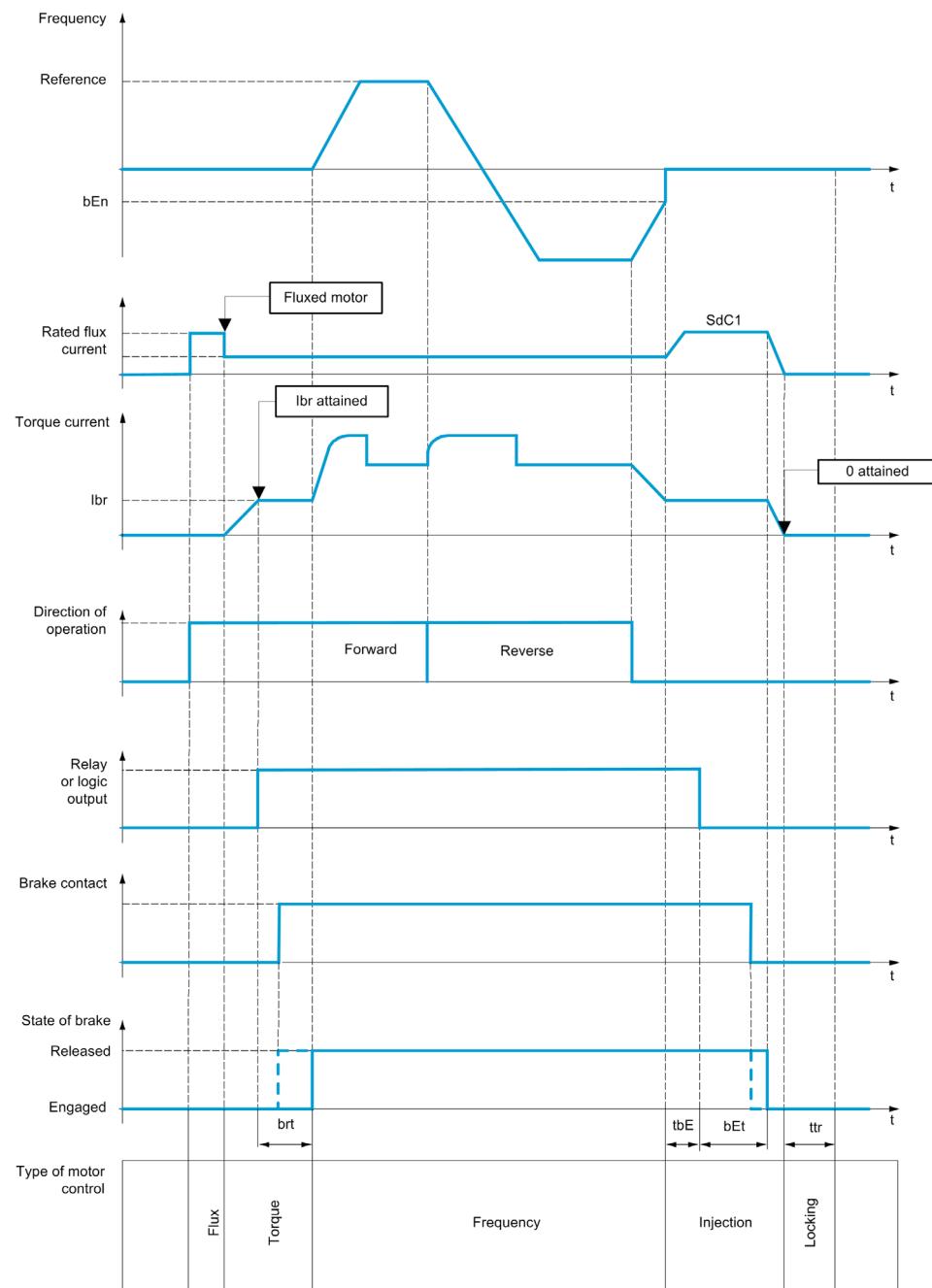
WARNING	
UNINTENDED EQUIPMENT OPERATION	
Check that the selected settings and configurations will not result in the dropping or loss of control of the load being lifted.	
Failure to follow these instructions can result in death, serious injury, or equipment damage.	

Step	Action
1	[Brake Release Pulse] , P : YES. Ensure that the direction of rotation FW corresponds to lifting the load. For applications in which the load being lowered is very different from the load being lifted, set [Brake Release Pulse] , P = [2 IBR] 2 , b r (e.g., ascent always with a load and descent always without a load).
2	Brake release current [Brk Release Current] , b r and [Brake release I Rev] , r d if [Brake Release Pulse] , P = [2 IBR] 2 , b r: adjust the brake release current to the rated current indicated on the motor. During testing, adjust the brake release current in order to hold the load smoothly.
3	Acceleration time: for hoisting applications it is advisable to set the acceleration ramps to more than 0.5 seconds. Ensure that the drive does not exceed the current limit. The same recommendation applies for deceleration. Reminder: for a hoisting movement, a braking resistor should be used.
4	[Brake Release time] b r : set according to the type of brake. It is the time required for the mechanical brake to release.
5	[Brake release freq] b , r, in open-loop mode only: Leave in [Auto] R u E , adjust if necessary.
6	[Brake engage freq] b E n: leave in [Auto] , adjust if necessary.
7	[Brake engage time] b E : set according to the type of brake. It is the time required for the mechanical brake to engage.

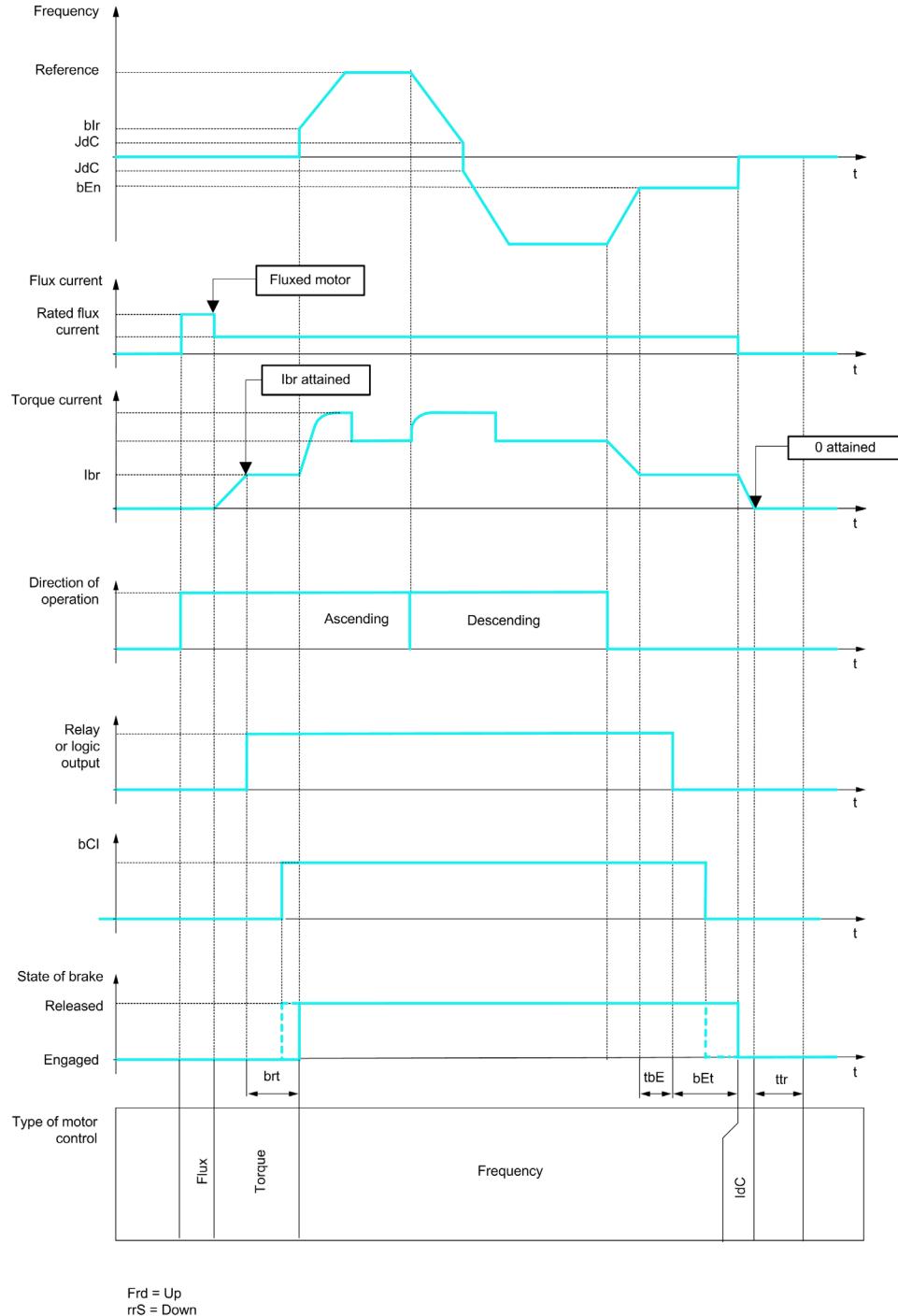
Instructions for Brake Logic Control for an Horizontal Hoisting Application

Step	Action
1	[Brake Release Pulse] , P : no
2	[Brk Release Current] , b r : set to .
3	[Brake Release time] b r : set according to the type of brake. It is the time required for the mechanical brake to release.
4	[Brake engage freq] b E n, in open-loop mode only: leave in [Auto] R u E , adjust if necessary.
5	[Brake engage time] b E : set according to the type of brake. It is the time required for the mechanical brake to engage.

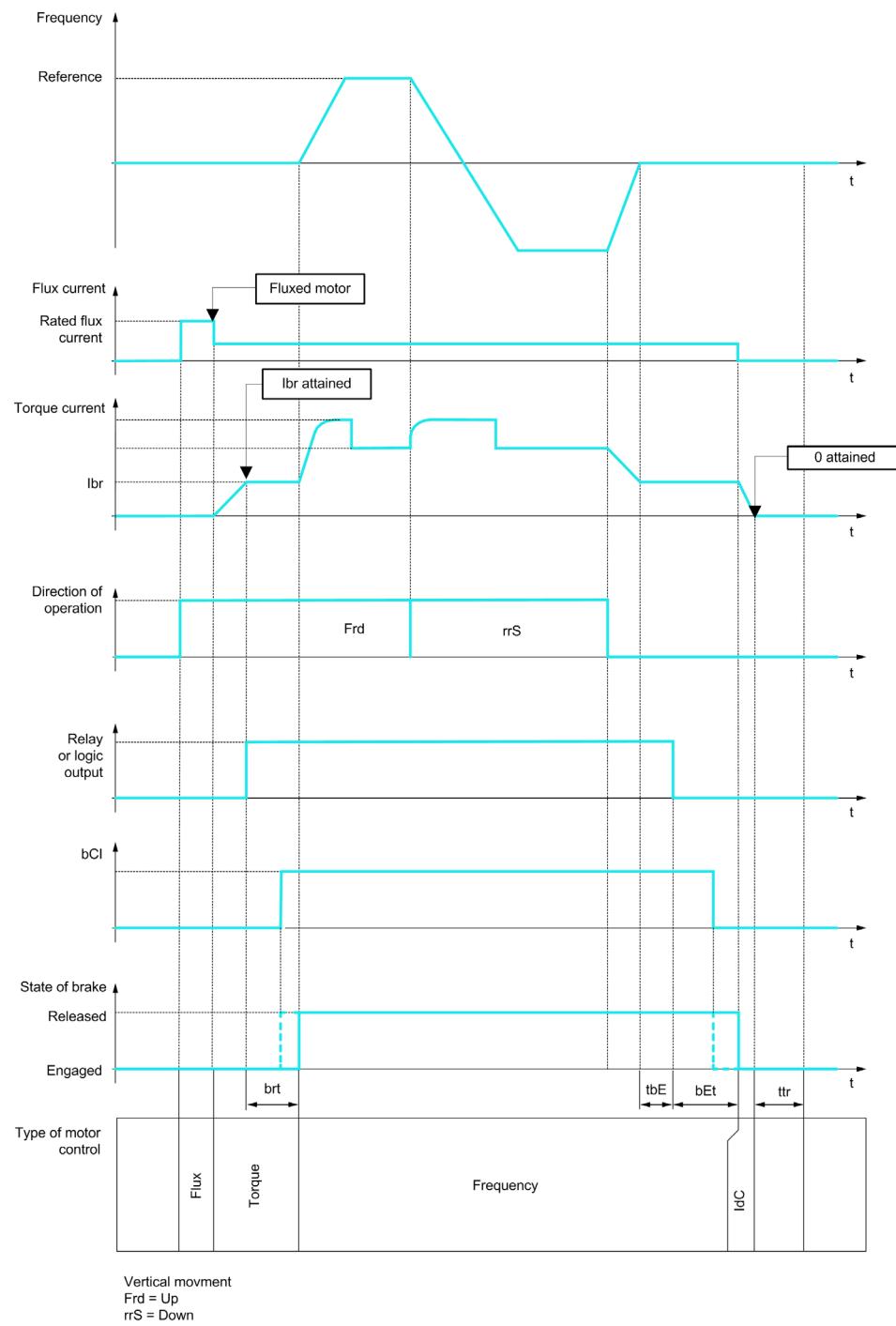
Horizontal Movement in Open-Loop Mode



Vertical Movement in Open-Loop Mode



Vertical or Horizontal Movement in Closed-Loop Mode



[Brake assignment] *b L C*

Brake function assignment.

[Brake assignment] *b L C* is forced to **[No]** *n o* if :

- **[Motor control type] *C E E*** is set to **[U/F VC 5pts] *u F 5***, **[SYN_U VC] *S Y n u***, **[Sync. mot.] *S Y n***, **[Rel. Mot.] *S r V C***.
- **[DC Injection Assign] *d C*** is not set to **[Not Assigned] *n o***
- **[Catch On Fly] *F L r*** is not set to **[No] *n o***
- **[Jog Assign] *J o G*** is not set to **[Not Assigned] *n o***
- **[PID feedback] *P , F*** is not set to **[Not Configured] *n o***
- **[OutPhaseLoss Assign] *o P L*** is set to **[No Error Triggered] *o R C***

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[No]	<i>n o</i>	Not assigned Factory setting
[R2]...[R3]	<i>r 2...r 3</i>	Relay output R2...R3 NOTE: R3 selection can be accessed on drives with a power greater than 22 kW.
[R4]...[R6]	<i>r 4...r 6</i>	Relay output R4...R6 if VW3A3204 relay output option module has been inserted
[DQ11 Digital Output]...[DQ12 Digital Output]	<i>d o 1 1...d o 1 2</i>	Digital output DQ11...DQ12 if VW3A3203 I/O extension module has been inserted

[Movement type] *b S E* ★

Brake sequence type.

This parameter can be accessed if **[Brake assignment] *b L C*** is not set to **[No] *n o***.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Traveling]	<i>H o r</i>	Resistive-load movement (translational motion of overhead crane, for example).
[Hoisting]	<i>V E r</i>	Driving-load movement (hoisting winch, for example). Factory setting

[Brake contact] *b L* , ★

Brake contact input.

This parameter can be accessed if [Brake assignment] *b L* *C* is not set to [No] *n o*.

If the brake has a monitoring contact (closed for released brake).

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Not Assigned]	<i>n o</i>	Not assigned Factory setting
[DI1]...[DI8]	<i>L</i> <i>, I</i> ... <i>L</i> <i>, B</i>	Digital input DI1...DI8 NOTE: DI8 selection can be accessed on drives with a power greater than 22 kW.
[DI11]...[DI16]	<i>L</i> <i>, I</i> <i>I</i> ... <i>L</i> <i>, I</i> <i>B</i>	Digital input DI11...DI16 if VW3A3203 I/O extension module has been inserted
[CD00]...[CD10]	<i>C d</i> <i>0</i> <i>0</i> ... <i>C d</i> <i>1</i> <i>0</i>	Virtual digital input CMD.0...CMD.10 in [I/O profile] <i>i o</i> configuration
[CD11]...[CD15]	<i>C d</i> <i>1</i> <i>1</i> ... <i>C d</i> <i>1</i> <i>5</i>	Virtual digital input CMD.11...CMD.15 regardless of configuration
[C101]...[C110]	<i>C</i> <i>1</i> <i>0</i> <i>I</i> ... <i>C</i> <i>1</i> <i>1</i> <i>O</i>	Virtual digital input CMD1.01...CMD1.10 with integrated Modbus Serial in [I/O profile] <i>i o</i> configuration
[C111]...[C115]	<i>C</i> <i>1</i> <i>1</i> <i>I</i> ... <i>C</i> <i>1</i> <i>5</i>	Virtual digital input CMD1.11...CMD1.15 with integrated Modbus Serial regardless of configuration
[C201]...[C210]	<i>C</i> <i>2</i> <i>0</i> <i>I</i> ... <i>C</i> <i>2</i> <i>1</i> <i>O</i>	Virtual digital input CMD2.01...CMD2.10 with CANopen® fieldbus module in [I/O profile] <i>i o</i> configuration
[C211]...[C215]	<i>C</i> <i>2</i> <i>1</i> <i>I</i> ... <i>C</i> <i>2</i> <i>1</i> <i>S</i>	Virtual digital input CMD2.11...CMD2.15 with CANopen® fieldbus module regardless of configuration
[C301]...[C310]	<i>C</i> <i>3</i> <i>0</i> <i>I</i> ... <i>C</i> <i>3</i> <i>1</i> <i>O</i>	Virtual digital input CMD3.01...CMD3.10 with a fieldbus module in [I/O profile] <i>i o</i> configuration
[C311]...[C315]	<i>C</i> <i>3</i> <i>1</i> <i>I</i> ... <i>C</i> <i>3</i> <i>1</i> <i>S</i>	Virtual digital input CMD3.11...CMD3.15 with a fieldbus module regardless of configuration
[C501]...[C510]	<i>C</i> <i>5</i> <i>0</i> <i>I</i> ... <i>C</i> <i>5</i> <i>1</i> <i>O</i>	Virtual digital input CMD5.01...CMD5.10 with integrated Ethernet in [I/O profile] <i>i o</i> configuration NOTE: This selection can be accessed on ATV340...N4E drives.
[C511]...[C515]	<i>C</i> <i>5</i> <i>1</i> <i>I</i> ... <i>C</i> <i>5</i> <i>1</i> <i>S</i>	Virtual digital input CMD5.11...CMD5.15 with integrated Ethernet regardless of configuration NOTE: This selection can be accessed on ATV340...N4E drives.

[Brake Fdbk Filter] *F b L* , ★

Brake feedback filter.

The parameter can be accessed if [Brake contact] *b L* *C* is not set to [No] *n o*.

Setting (s)	Description
0...1000 ms	Setting range Factory setting: 0 ms

[Brake Release Pulse] *b* , *P* 

Brake release pulse.

This parameter can be accessed if [Brake assignment] *b L E* is not set to [No] *n o*.

Setting  <i>C</i>	Code / Value	Description
[No]	<i>n o</i>	The motor torque is given in the required operating direction, at current [Brk Release Current] <i>, b r</i> . Factory setting: if [Movement type] <i>b S E</i> = [Traveling] <i>H o r</i>
[Yes]	<i>y E S</i>	The motor torque is always Forward (check that this direction corresponds to ascending), at current [Brk Release Current] <i>, b r</i> . Factory setting: if [Movement type] <i>b S E</i> = [Hoisting] <i>V E r</i>
[2 IBR]	<i>2 , b r</i>	The torque is in required direction, at current [Brk Release Current] <i>, b r</i> Forward and [Brake release I Rev] <i>, r d</i> for Reverse, for certain specific applications.

[Brk Release Current] *, b r* 

Brake release current level.

This parameter can be accessed if [Brake assignment] *b L E* is not set to [No] *n o*.

Setting  <i>C</i>	Description
0...1.1 In ⁽¹⁾	Setting range Factory setting: [Nom Motor Current] <i>n E r</i>
⁽¹⁾ In corresponds to the rated drive current indicated in the Installation Manual and on the drive nameplate.	

[Brake release I Rev] *, r d*

Brake release current level for going down.

Setting  <i>C</i>	Description
0...1.1 In ⁽¹⁾	Setting range Factory setting: 0
⁽¹⁾ In corresponds to the rated drive current indicated in the Installation Manual and on the drive nameplate.	

[Brake Release time] *b r t* 

Brake release time.

The parameter can be accessed if [Brake assignment] *b L E* is not set to [No] *n o*

Setting  <i>C</i>	Description
0.0...5.00 s	Setting range Factory setting: 0.50 s

[Brake release freq]

Brake release frequency.

The parameter can be accessed if [Motor control type]  is not [FVC]  and if [Movement type]  is set to [Hoisting] .

Setting ()	Code / Value	Description
[Auto]		The drive takes a value based on the rated slip of the motor, calculated using the drive parameters
0.0...10.0 Hz		Manual control Factory setting: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• 0 if [Movement type]  is set to [Traveling]  or [Hoisting]  and in closed loop.• [Auto]  if [Movement type]  is set to [Hoisting]  and in open loop

[Brake release frequency]

Brake engage frequency threshold.

The parameter can be accessed if [Motor control type]  is not set to [FVC] .

Setting ()	Code / Value	Description
[Auto]		The drive takes a value based on the rated slip of the motor, calculated using the drive parameters
0.0...10.0 Hz		Manual control Factory setting: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• 0 if [Movement type]  is set to [Traveling]  or [Hoisting]  and in closed loop.• [Auto]  if [Movement type]  is set to [Hoisting]  and in open loop

[Brake engage at 0]

Brake: brake engage delay when 0 speed on close loop.

This parameter can be accessed if [Motor control type]  is not set to:

- [FVC] , or
- [Sync.CL] .

This parameter can be used to adjust the brake engage delay once zero speed has been reached.

If a speed other than zero is then required, the command to release the brake is sent following torque application.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[No]		Brake does not engage at regulated zero speed. Factory setting
0.0...30.0 s		Brake engage delay once zero speed is reached.

[Brake engage delay]

Temporization at brake engage frequency.

The parameter can be accessed if [Brake assignment]  is not set to [No] .

Time delay before request to engage brake. To delay brake engagement, if you wish the brake to be engaged when the drive comes to a complete stop.

Setting ()	Description
0.00...5.00 s	Factory setting: 0.00 s

[Brake engage time] *b E t* ★

Brake engage time.

The parameter can be accessed if [Brake assignment] *b L C* is not set to [No] *n o*.

Setting (i)	Description
0.00...5.00 s	Factory setting: 0.50 s

[Auto DC inj Level 1] *S d C l* ★

Auto DC injection level 1.

NOTICE**OVERHEATING AND DAMAGE TO THE MOTOR**

Verify that the connected motor is properly rated for the DC injection current to be applied in terms of amount and time in order to avoid overheating and damage to the motor.

Failure to follow these instructions can result in equipment damage.

Level of standstill DC injection current [Auto DC Injection] *R d C* is not [No] *n o*.

Setting (i)	Description
0...1.1 In ⁽¹⁾	Setting range Factory setting: 0.7 In ⁽¹⁾

(1) In corresponds to the rated drive current indicated in the Installation Manual and on the drive nameplate.

[Engage at reversal] *b E d* ★

Brake engage at speed inversion.

Can be used to select whether or not the brake engages on transition to zero speed when the operating direction is reversed.

The parameter can be accessed if [Brake assignment] *b L C* is not set to [No] *n o*.

Setting (i)	Code / Value	Description
[No]	<i>n o</i>	The brake does not engage Factory setting
Yes	<i>y E S</i>	The brake engages

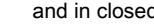
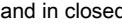
[Jump at reversal]

Brake: Jump frequency at direction change.

This parameter can be accessed if

- [Motor control type]  is not set to:
 - [FVC] , or
 - [Sync.CL] , and
- [Movement type]  is set to [Hoisting] .

When the reference direction is reversed, this parameter can be used to avoid loss of torque (and consequential release of load) on transition to zero speed. Parameter is not applicable if [Engage at reversal]  is set to [Yes] .

Setting 	Code / Value	Description
[Auto]		The drive takes a value based on the rated slip of the motor, calculated using the drive parameters
0.0...10.0 Hz		Manual control Factory setting: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 0 If [Movement type]  is set to [Traveling]  or [Hoisting]  and in closed loop. • [Auto]  if [Movement type]  is set to [Hoisting]  and in open loop

[Time to restart]

Brake time to restart.

Time between the end of a brake sequence and the start of the next brake release sequence.

The parameter can be accessed if [Brake assignment]  is not set to [No] .

Setting 	Description
0.00...15.00 s	Factory setting: 0.00 s

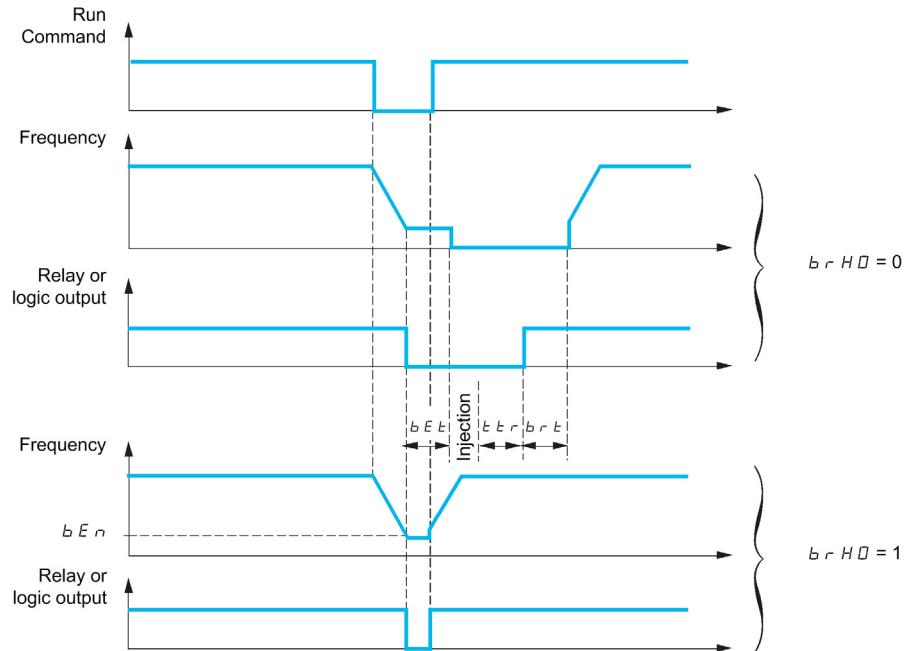
[BRH b0] *b r H* ★

Selection of the brake restart sequence if a run command is repeated while the brake is engaging.

This parameter can be accessed if [Access Level] *L A L* is set to [Expert] *E P r*.

Use in open-loop and closed-loop mode

A run command may be requested during the brake engagement phase. Whether or not the brake release sequence is executed depends on the value selected for [BRH b0] *b r H*.



NOTE: if a run command is requested during the [Time to restart] *t E r* phase, the complete brake control sequence is initialized.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[0]	0	The engage/release sequence is executed in full. Factory setting
[1]	1	The brake is released immediately.

[BRH b1] *b r H* ★

Deactivation of the brake contact in steady state error.

This parameter can be accessed if [Access Level] *L A L* is set to [Expert] *E P r*.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[0]	0	The brake contact in steady state error is active (error is triggered if the contact is open during operation). [Brake Feedback] <i>b r F</i> is monitored in all operating phases Factory setting
[1]	1	The brake contact in steady state error is inactive. [Brake Feedback] <i>b r F</i> is only monitored during the brake release and engage phases.

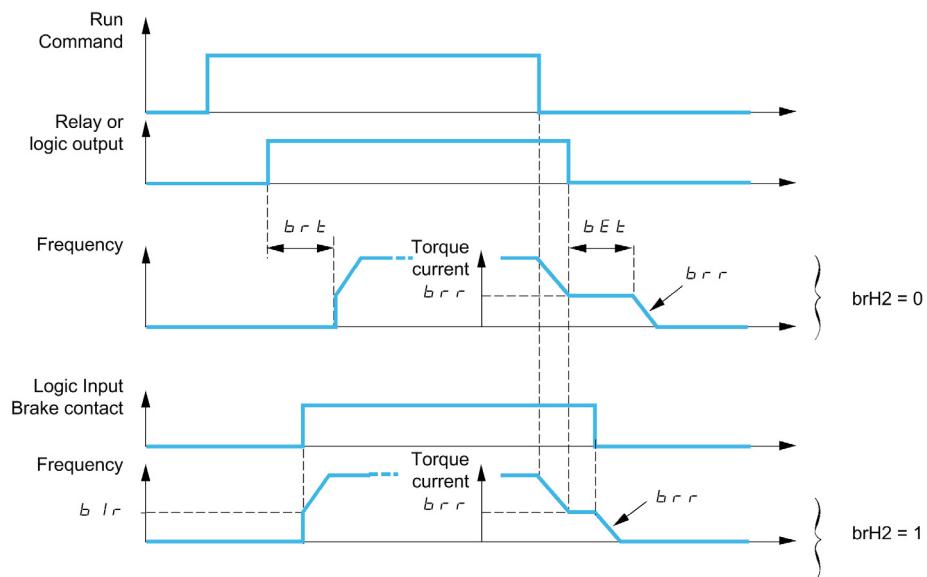
[BRH b2] b_{rH2} ★

Taking the brake contact into account for the brake control sequence.

This parameter can be accessed if [Access Level] LAC is set to [Expert] EP .

If a logic input is assigned to the brake contact.

- [BRH b2] $b_{rH2} = [0]$ \square : During the brake release sequence, the reference is enabled at the end of the time [Brake Release time] b_{rE} . During the brake engage sequence, the current changes to $[0]$ \square according to the ramp [Current ramp time] b_{rr} at the end of the [Brake engage time] b_{Et} .
- [BRH b2] $b_{rH2} = [1]$ $/$: When the brake is released, the reference is enabled when the logic input changes to $/$. When the brake is engaged, the current changes to \square according to the ramp [Current ramp time] b_{rr} when the logic input changes to \square .



Setting	Code / Value	Description
[0]	\square	The engage/release sequence is executed in full. Factory setting
[1]	$/$	The brake is released immediately.

[BRH b3] b_{rH3} ★

In closed-loop mode only. Management of the absence of brake contact response, if it is assigned.

This parameter can be accessed if [Access Level] LAC is set to [Expert] EP .

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[0]	\square	During the brake engage sequence, the brake contact must be open before the end of [Brake engage time] b_{Et} , otherwise the drive locks in a [Brake Feedback] b_{rf} brake contact error. Factory setting
[1]	$/$	During the brake engage sequence, the brake contact must be open before the end of [Brake engage time] b_{Et} , otherwise a [Brake Contact Warn] b_{Cw} is triggered and zero speed is maintained.

[Current ramp time] **b r r** ★

Brake current ramp.

The parameter can be accessed if [Brake assignment] **b L C** is not set to [No] **n o**.

Torque current ramp time (increase and decrease) for a current variation equal to [Brk Release Current] **i b r**.

Setting ↴	Description
0.00...5.00 s	Factory setting: 0.00 s

[High speed hoisting] H S H - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Hoisting Functions] → [High speed hoisting]

About This Menu

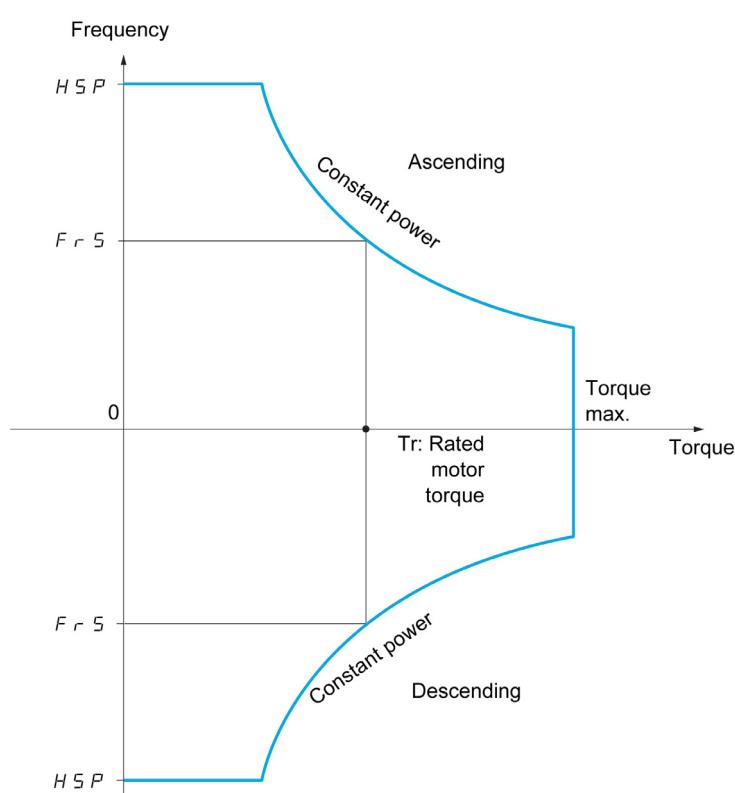
NOTE: This function cannot be used with some other functions.

This function can be used to optimize the cycle times for hoisting movements for zero or lightweight loads. It authorizes operation at "constant power" in order to reach a speed greater than the rated speed without exceeding the rated motor current.

The speed remains limited by the **[High speed] H S P**.

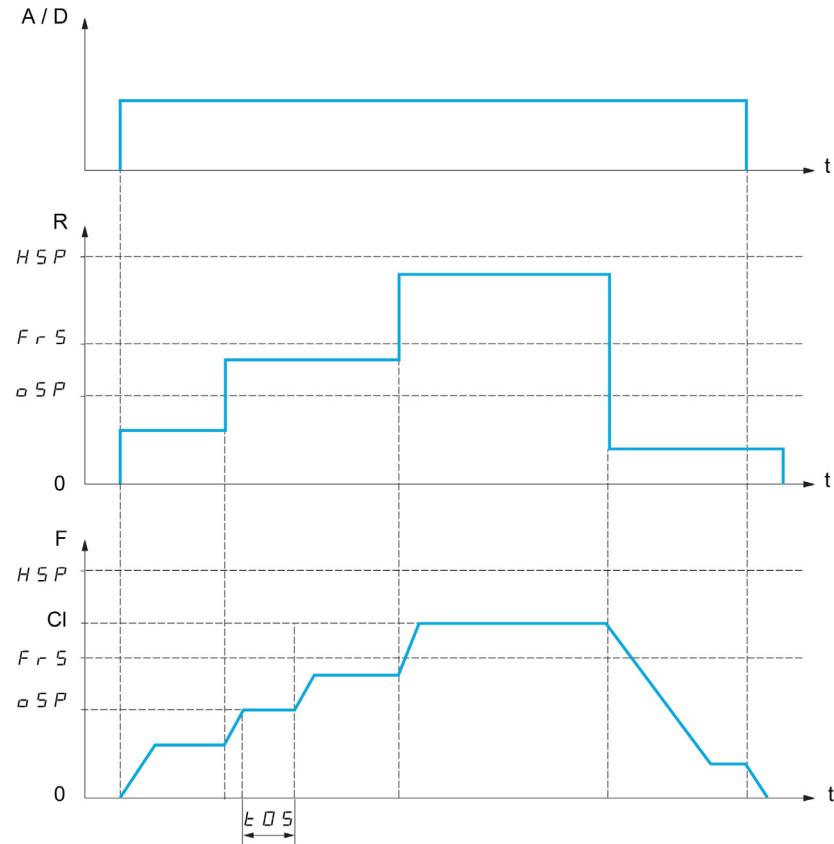
The function acts on the speed reference pedestal and not on the reference itself.

Principle



There are two possible operating modes:

- Speed reference mode: the maximum permissible speed is calculated by the drive during a speed step that is set so that the drive can measure the load.
- Current limitation mode: the maximum permissible speed is the speed that supports current limitation in motor mode, in the "ascending" direction only. For the "descending" direction, operation is in Speed reference mode.

Speed Reference Mode

A / D Ascend or descend command

R Reference

F Frequency

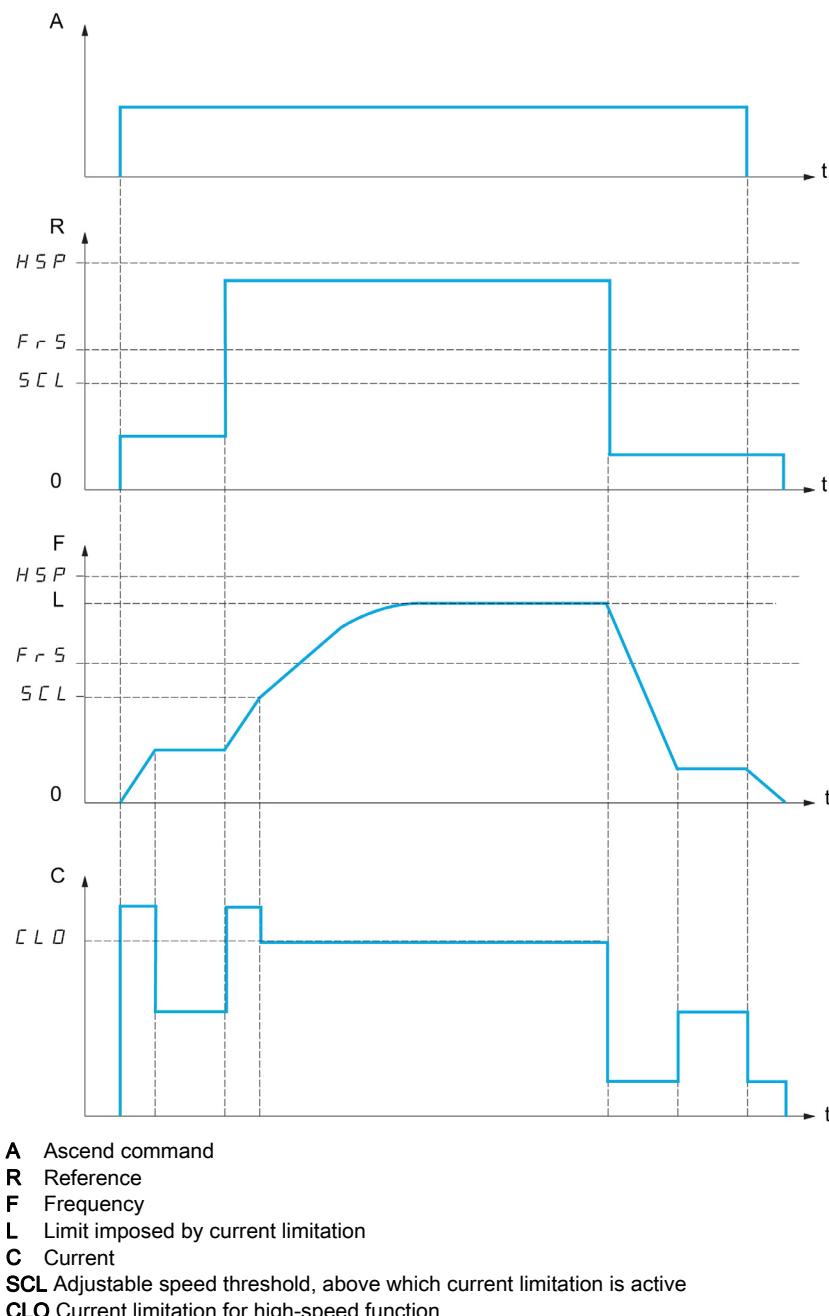
CI Calculated limit

oSP Adjustable speed step for load measurement

t0S Load measuring time

2 parameters are used to reduce the speed calculated by the drive, for ascending and descending.

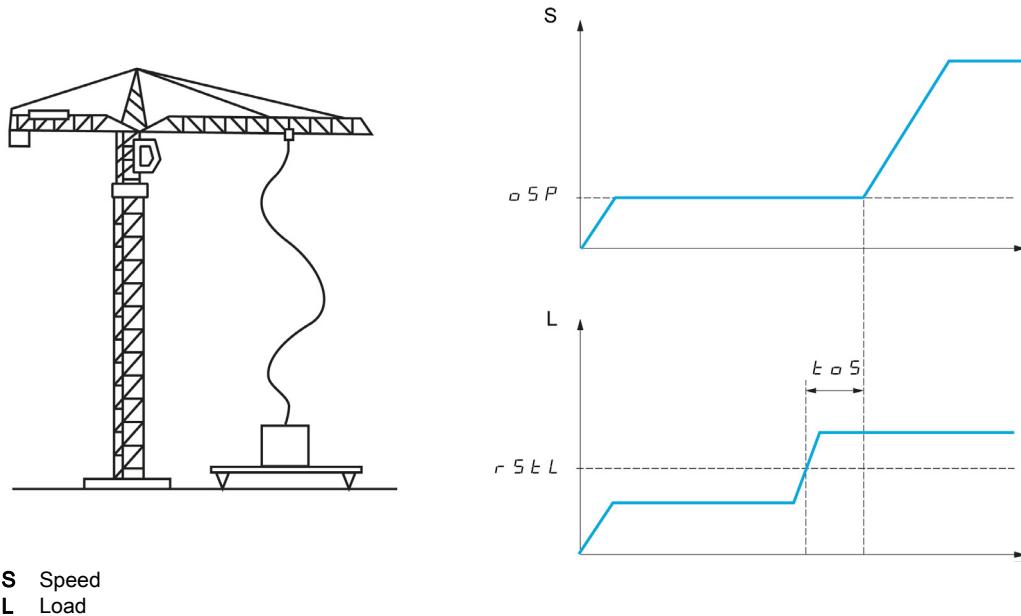
Current Limiting Mode



NOTE: The speed reached for a specific current will be lower in case of network undervoltage in comparison with nominal network voltage.

Rope Slack

The Rope slack function can be used to help to prevent starting up at high speed when a load has been set down ready for lifting but the rope is still slack (as illustrated below).



The speed step (OSP parameters) is used to measure the load. The effective measurement cycle will not be triggered until the load reaches the adjustable threshold [**Rope slack trq level**] $r 5 E L$, which corresponds to the weight of the hook.

A digital output or a relay can be assigned to the indication of the Rope slack state in the [**Input/Output**] $i - o -$ menu.

NOTE: The speed reached for a specific current will be lower in case of network undervoltage in comparison with nominal network voltage.

[High speed hoisting] $H 5 o$

High Speed Optimized activation function.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[No]	$n o$	Function inactive Factory setting
[Reference Frequency]	$S 5 o$	Speed reference mode
[Current Limit]	$E 5 o$	Current limitation mode

[Motor speed coeff.] $C o F \star$

Coefficient Optimize Forward (motor quadrant).

This parameter can be accessed if [High speed hoisting] $H 5 o$ is set to [Speed ref] $S 5 o$.

Setting (C)	Description
0...100%	Setting range Factory setting: 100%

[Gen. speed coeff] *C or* ★

Coefficient Optimize Reverse (generator quadrant).

This parameter can be accessed if [High speed hoisting] *H 5 □* is not set to [No] *n □*.

Setting (□)	Description
0...100%	Setting range Factory setting: 50%

[Load measuring tm.] *E o S* ★

Torque measuring time.

This parameter can be accessed if [High speed hoisting] *H 5 □* is not set to [No] *n □*.

Setting (□)	Description
0.10...65.00 s	Setting range Factory setting: 0.50 s

[Measurement spd] *o SP* ★

Optimize Speed.

This parameter can be accessed if [High speed hoisting] *H 5 □* is not set to [No] *n □*.

Setting (□)	Description
0.0...599.0 Hz	Setting range Factory setting: 40 Hz

[High speed I Limit] *EL o* ★

Current Limitation Optimize.

This parameter can be accessed if [High speed hoisting] *H 5 □* is set to [I Limit] *EL 5 □*.

NOTE: If the setting is less than 0.25 In, the drive may lock in [Output Phase Loss] *o PL* error if this has been enabled.

Setting (□)	Description
0...1.1 In ⁽¹⁾	Setting range Factory setting: In ⁽¹⁾

(1) *In* corresponds to the rated drive current indicated in the Installation Manual and on the drive nameplate.

[I Limit. frequency] *5 CL* ★

Frequency threshold, above which the high-speed limitation current is active.

This parameter can be accessed if [High speed hoisting] *H 5 □* is set to [I Limit] *EL 5 □*.

Setting (□)	Description
0.0...599.0 Hz	Setting range Factory setting: 40.0 Hz

[Rope slack config.] *r 5 d* ★

Load measurement feedback.

This parameter can be accessed if [High speed hoisting] *H 5 a* is not set to [No] *n o*.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[No]	<i>n o</i>	Function inactive Factory setting
[Weight Estimation]	<i>d r i</i>	Measurement of the load by estimating the torque generated by the drive

[Rope slack trq level] *r 5 E L* ★

Adjustment threshold corresponding to a load weighing slightly less than the hook when off-load, as a % of the rated load.

This parameter can be accessed if [Rope slack config.] *r 5 d* has been assigned.

Setting (i)	Description
0...100%	Setting range Factory setting: 0%

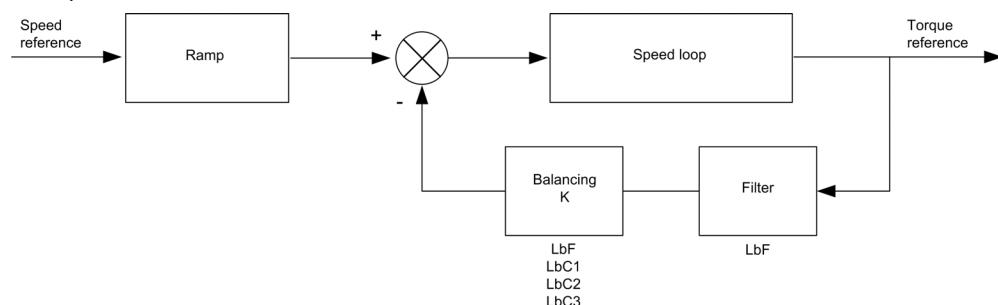
[Load Sharing] L d 5 - Menu

Access

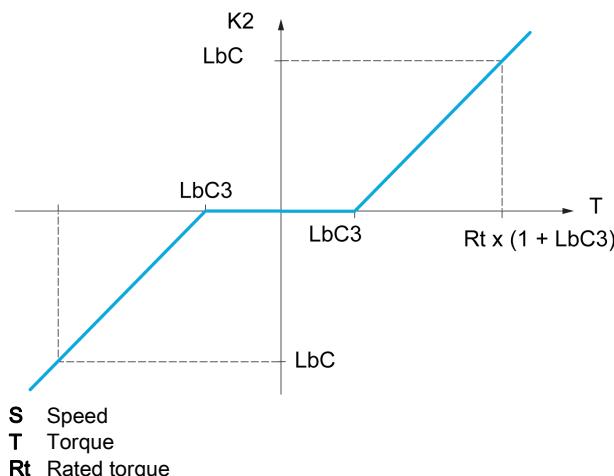
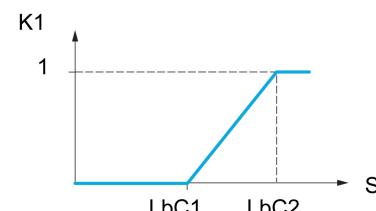
[Complete settings] → [Hoisting Functions] → [Load Sharing]

About This Menu

Principle:



The load sharing factor K is determined by the torque and speed, with two factors K_1 and K_2 ($K = K_1 \times K_2$).



[Load sharing] L b R

Load balancing configuration

When 2 motors are connected mechanically and therefore at the same speed, and each is controlled by a drive, this function can be used to improve torque distribution between the two motors. To do this, it varies the speed based on the torque.

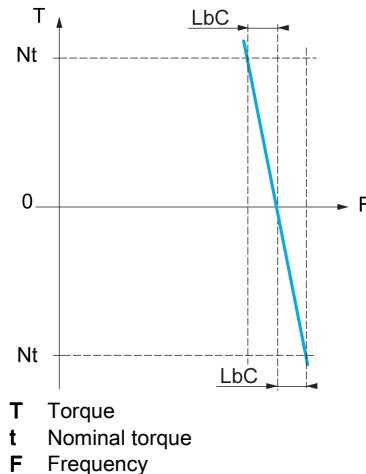
This parameter can only be accessed if [Motor control type] L E E is set to [SVC V] V V E or [FVC] F V E.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[No]	00	Function inactive Factory setting
[Yes]	YE5	Function active

[Load correction] L b C

Nominal speed load balance correction.

This parameter can be accessed if [Load sharing] L b R is set to [Yes] 4 E 5.



Setting	Description
0...1000.0 Hz	Setting range Factory setting: 0.0 Hz

[Correction min spd] L b C 1

Low Speed for torque decreasing function speed reference

Minimum speed for load correction in Hz. Below this threshold, no corrections are made. Used to prevent correction at very low speed if this would hamper rotation of the motor.

This parameter can be accessed if [Access Level] L R C is set to [Expert] E P r and if [Load sharing] L b R = [Yes] 4 E 5

Setting	Description
0...999.9 Hz	Setting range Factory setting: 0.0 Hz

[Correction max spd] L b C 2

High speed for torque decreasing function speed reference.

Speed threshold in Hz above which maximum load correction is applied.

This parameter can be accessed if [Access Level] L R C is set to [Expert] E P r and if [Load sharing] L b R = [Yes] 4 E 5

Setting	Description
L b C 1 +0.1 Hz at 1000.0 Hz	Setting range Factory setting: 0.1 Hz

[Torque offset] L b C 3

Torque offset for torque correction.

Minimum torque for load correction as a % of the rated torque. Below this threshold, no corrections are made. Used to avoid torque instabilities when the torque direction is not constant.

This parameter can be accessed if [Access Level] L R C is set to [Expert] E P r and if [Load sharing] L b R = [Yes] 4 E 5

Setting	Description
0...300%	Setting range Factory setting: 0%

[Sharing filter] L b F

Time constant filter.

This parameter can be accessed if **[Load sharing] L b R = [Yes] 4 E 5**. Used in the event of flexible mechanical coupling in order to avoid instabilities.

Setting	Description
100...20000 ms	Setting range Factory setting: 100 ms

[Rope Slack Handling] - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Hoisting Functions] → [Rope Slack Handling]

About This Menu

This parameter can be accessed if [High speed hoisting]  is not set to [No] .

[Rope slack config.]

Load measurement feedback.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[No]		Function not active Factory setting
[Weight Estimation]		Drive motor torque estimation

[Rope slack trq level]

Torque level for rope slack detection.

This parameter can be accessed if [Rope slack config.]  is not set to [No] .

Setting	Description
0...100%	Setting range Factory setting: 0%

Section 8.6

[Hoisting monitoring]

[Dynamic load detect.] **d L d** - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Hoisting monitoring] → [Dynamic load detect.]

About This Menu

This detection is only possible with the high-speed hoisting function. It can be used to detect if an obstacle has been reached, triggering a sudden (upward) increase or (downward) decrease in the load.

Load variation detection triggers a [Dynamic Load Error] **d L F**. The [Dyn. load Mgt.] **d L b** parameter can be used to configure the response of the drive in the event of this detected error.

Load variation detection can also be assigned to a relay or a digital output.

There are two possible detection modes, depending on the configuration of high-speed hoisting:

- Speed reference mode

[High speed hoisting] **H 5 o** is set to [Speed ref] **S 5 o**.

Torque variation detection.

During high-speed operation, the load is compared to that measured during the speed step. The permissible load variation and its duration can be configured. If exceeded, an error is triggered.

- Current limitation mode

[High speed hoisting] **H 5 o** is set to [Current Limit] **C 5 o**. On ascend, during high-speed operation, an increase in load will result in a drop in speed. Even if high-speed operation has been activated, if the motor frequency drops below the [I Limit Frequency] **S C L** threshold, an error is triggered. The detection is realized only for a positive variation of the load and only in the high-speed area (area upper to [I Limit Frequency] **S C L**). On descend, operation takes the form of speed reference mode.

[Dynamic load time] **t L d**

Activation of load variation detection and adjustment of time delay for taking load variation detected an error [Dynamic Load Error] **d L F** into account.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[No]	n o	No load variation detection Factory setting
0.00...10.00 s		Adjustment of the time delay for taking detected an error into account.

[Dyn. load threshold] **d L d**

Adjustment of the trip threshold for load variation detection, as a % of the load measured during the speed step.

Setting ()	Description
1...100%	Setting range Factory setting: 100%

[Dyn. load Mgt.] $d L b$

Drive response in the event of a load variation detected error.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Ignore]	$n \square$	Detected error ignored
[Freewheel Stop]	$y E S$	Freewheel stop Factory setting
[Per STT]	$S E E$	Stop according to [Type of stop] $S E E$ parameter but without an error triggered after stop
[Fallback Speed]	$L F F$	Change to fallback speed, maintained as long as the detected error persists and the run command has not been removed ⁽¹⁾
[Spd maintained]	$r L S$	Speed maintained as long as the detected error persists and the run command has not been removed ⁽¹⁾
[Ramp stop]	$r \Pi P$	Stop on ramp
[Fast stop]	$F S E$	Fast stop
[DC injection]	$d L ,$	DC injection

- 1** Because, in this case, the detected error does not trigger a stop, it is recommended to assign a relay or logic output to its indication.

Section 8.7

[Machine Functions]

What Is in This Section?

This section contains the following topics:

Topic	Page
[Load Sharing] <i>L d S</i> - Menu	298
[Backlash compensation] <i>b S q n</i> - Menu	299
[Positioning by sensors] <i>L P o</i> - Menu	308
[Brake logic control] <i>b L C</i> - Menu	308
[Torque control] <i>t o r</i> - Menu	308

[Load Sharing] L d 5 - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Machine Functions] → [Conveyor Functions] → [Load Sharing]

About This Menu

Identical to [Load Sharing] L d 5 - menu (*see page 291*)

[Backlash compensation] 6 5 9 7 - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Backlash compensation]

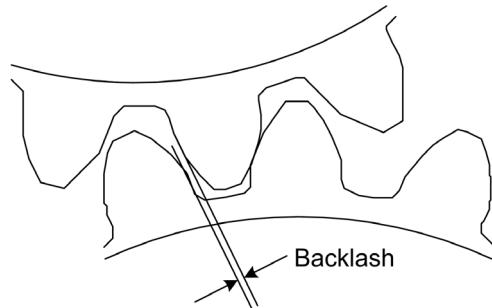
[Complete settings] → [Machine Functions] → [Backlash compensation]

About This Menu

This menu presents:

- The backlash compensation sequence.
- The backlash compensation sequence dedicated to the Master/Slave on rigid coupling.

The purpose of this menu is to provide a dedicated sequence to compensate backlashes in order to reduce the wear gears by limiting the torque at the moment of the impact:



This menu is dedicated to non driving loads (horizontal movement) without brakes. It is available either in torque control or speed control.

Backlash Sequence

The purpose of the backlash sequence is to regulate speed startup under a torque limitation allowing motion until the backlash is fully compensated. The load torque will become greater than the torque limitation and stop the movement. Then the run can proceed starting from applied limitation torque.

There are three different use cases:

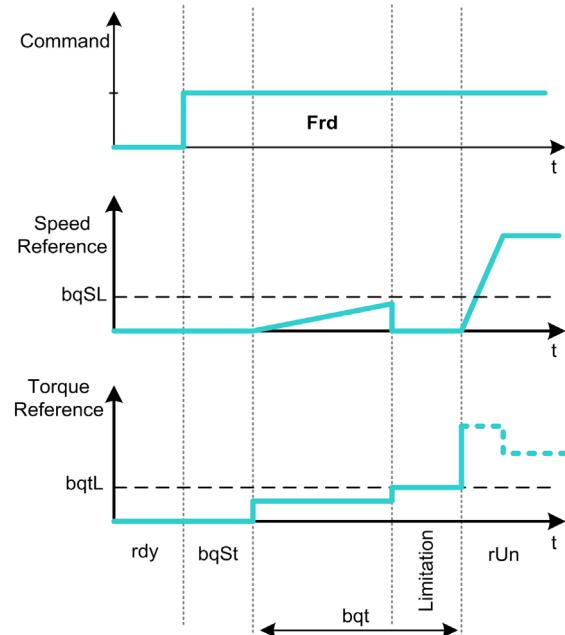
- Backlash sequence at startup only (UC-1)
- Stop at direction change (UC-2)
- Regulate 0 Hz speed at direction change (UC-3)

Those use cases depends on the control mode:

	Torque control	Speed control
Open loop	(UC-1) (UC-2)	(UC-1) (UC-2)
Closed loop	(UC-1) (UC-3)	(UC-1) (UC-3)

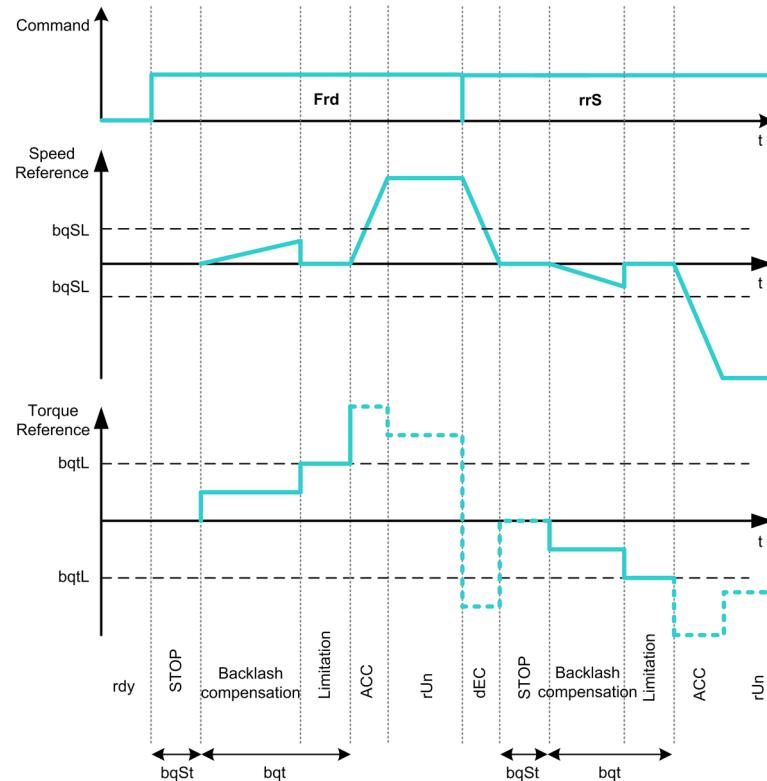
Backlash sequence at startup only (UC-1)

The backlash sequence is configured only during starts of the drive and become transparent once it is in run:



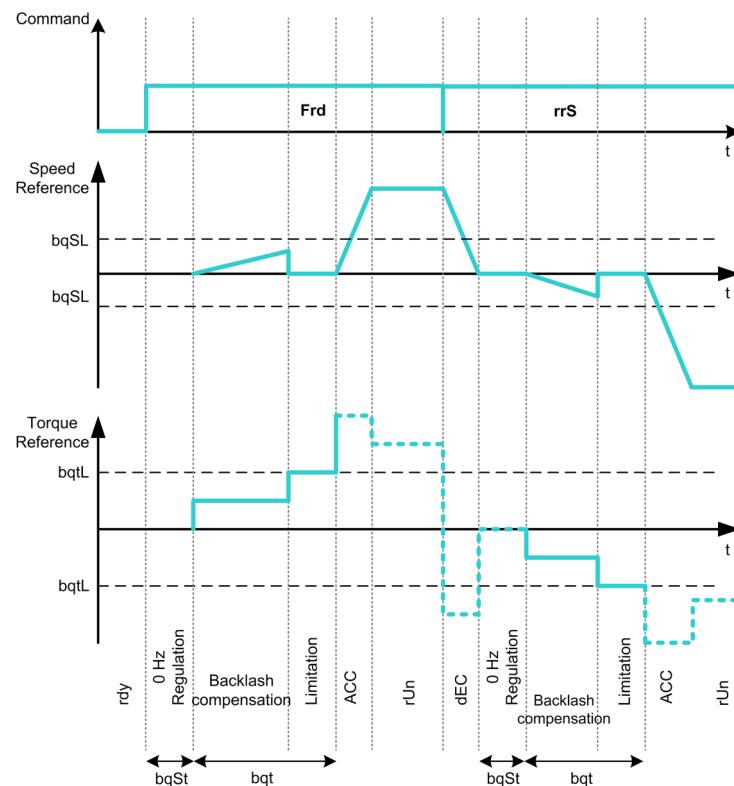
Stop at direction change (UC-2)

The drive stops when the direction of the movement changes and the drive will start if the run order is still present. Then do a backlash sequence according to its new direction:



Regulate 0 Hz speed at direction change (UC-3)

On a changing direction the drive will regulate the 0 Hz speed and proceed to the backlash sequence according to the new direction of movement to come back in run at the end of the sequence:



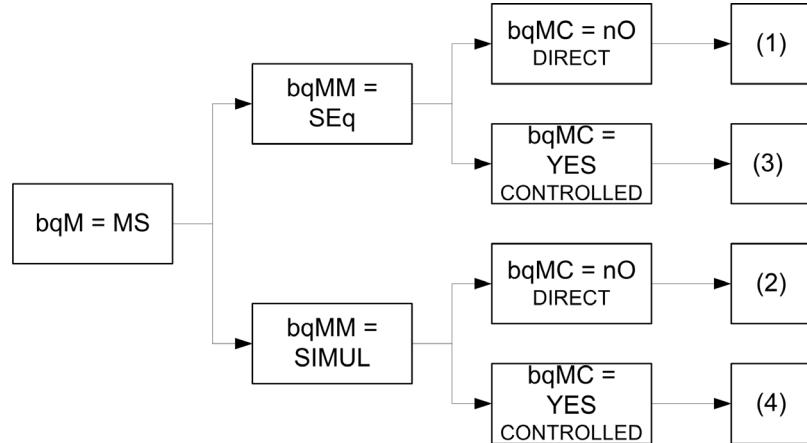
Backlash Sequence Dedicated to the Master/Slave on Rigid Coupling

The purpose of this menu is to provide backlash compensation dedicated to Master/Slave architectures in a rigid coupling context. The goal is to limit the impact torque on toothed wheels in order to reduce the wear.

There are four different Multiple Drive backlash compensation sequences strategies:

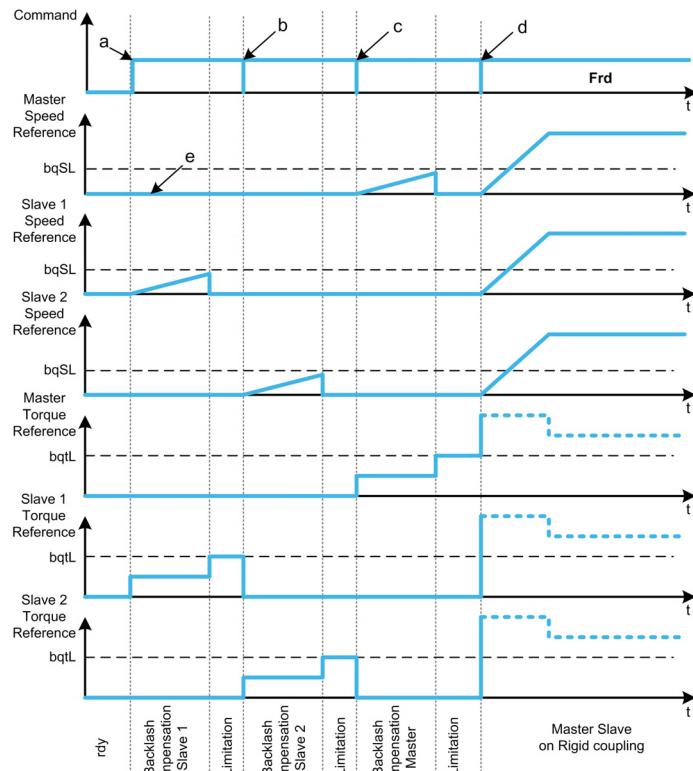
- Direct sequential slave backlash compensation (1)
- Direct simultaneous slave backlash compensation (2)
- Controlled sequential slave backlash compensation (3)
- Controlled simultaneous slave backlash compensation (4)

The following diagram shows how to configure the different compensation sequences strategies:



Direct sequential slave backlash compensation (1)

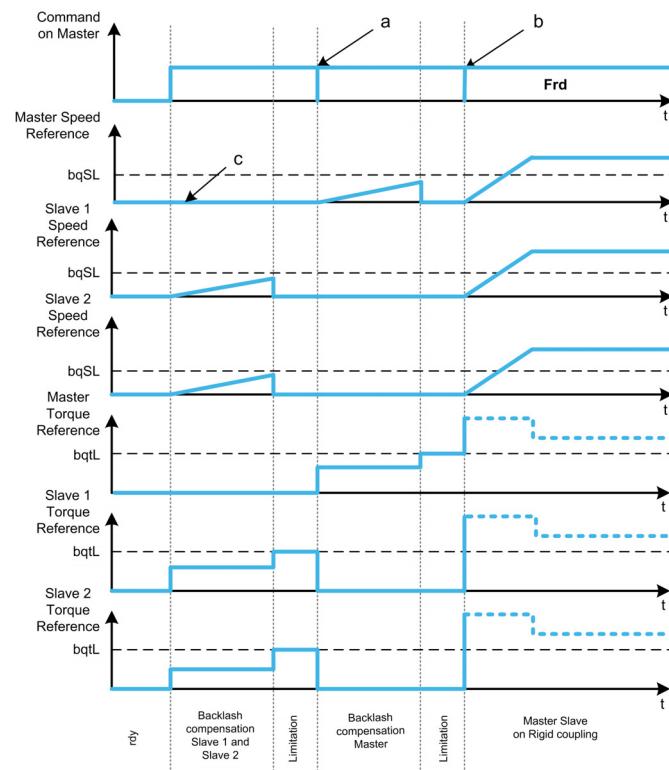
Each Slave will compensate its backlash by switching in speed control. Doing its sequence one at the time assuming that the settings allow compensating the backlash angle in the configured time. At the end, the master launches its own backlash sequence, meanwhile the Master stays in stop (open loop) or regulating 0 Hz speed (closed loop):



- a Slave 1 starts
- b Slave 2 starts, Slave 1 stops
- c Slave 2 stops
- d All slaves run start
- e 0 Hz regulation or stop

Direct simultaneous slave backlash compensation (2)

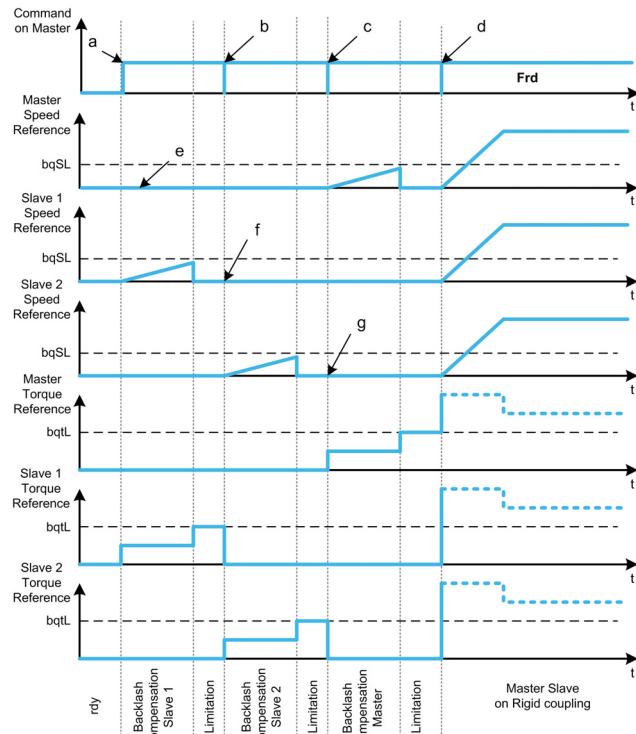
All slaves will compensate their backlashes angle simultaneously assuming that the tuning allows compensating the backlash angle in the configured time. Meanwhile the Master stays in stop (open loop) or regulating 0 Hz speed (closed loop):



- a** All slaves stop
- b** All slaves start
- c** 0 Hz regulation or stop

Controlled sequential slave backlash compensation (3)

All Slaves will compensate their backlashes angle one at the time. When it is done they notify to the Master. Meanwhile the Master stays in stop (open loop) or regulating 0 Hz speed (closed loop). Then starts compensating its backlash and go in run as soon as the last Slave has compensated its backlash:

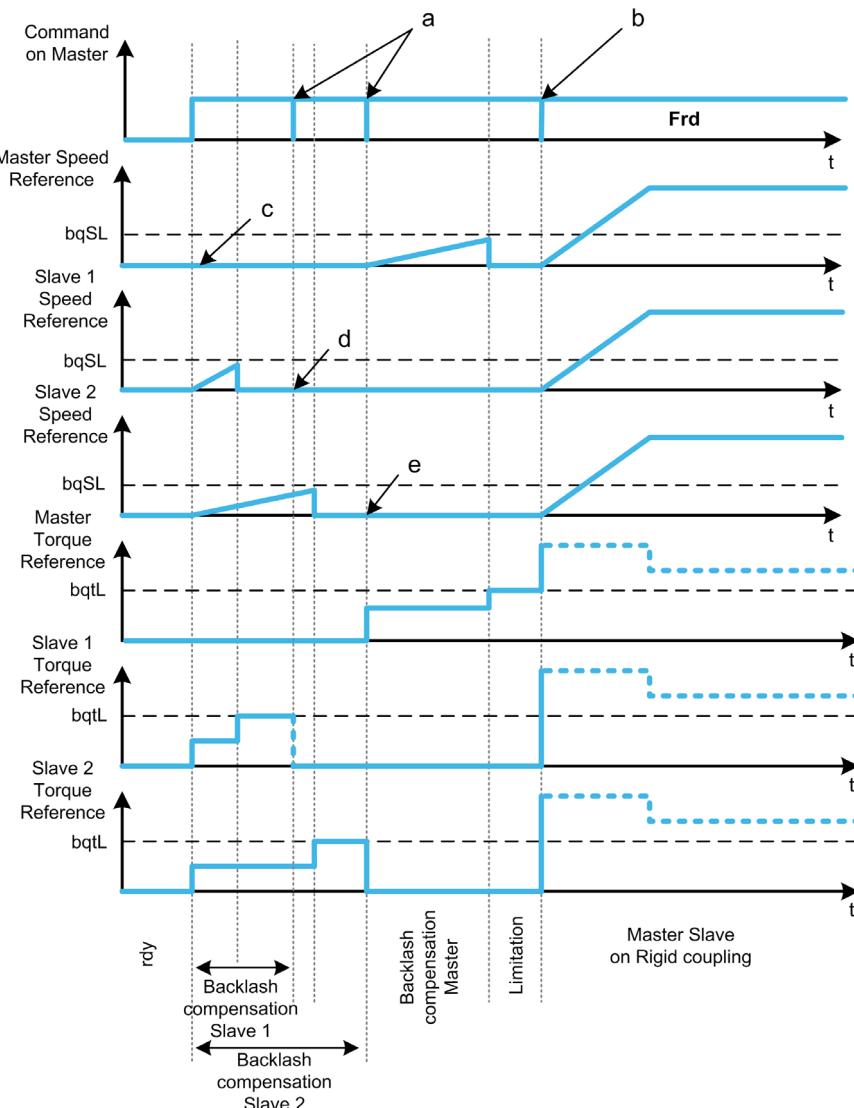


- a** Slave 1 starts
- b** Slave 2 starts, Slave 1 stops
- c** Slave 2 stops
- d** All slaves start
- e** 0 Hz regulation or stop
- f** Slave 1 feedback
- g** Slave 2 feedback

Controlled simultaneous slave backlash compensation (4)

All Slaves will compensate their backlashes angle simultaneously broadcasting to the Master when it is done. Meanwhile the Master drive stays in stop (open loop) or regulating 0 Hz speed (closed loop).

Then starts compensating its backlash and go in run as soon as the last Slave has compensated its backlash:



- a Stop orders when feedback is done
- b All slaves start
- c 0 Hz regulation or stop
- d Slave 1 feedback
- e Slave 2 feedback

[BL Mode] ပုံ၏

Backlash mode.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Not Configured]	<code>n o</code>	Backlash compensation not configured Factory setting
[On Start]	<code>S E R r E</code>	Backlash compensation is performed on each Drive start (run order appears or halt disappear)
[On Start + Dir Change]	<code>C H G d i r</code>	Backlash compensation is performed on each Drive start (run order appears or halt disappear) and on each direction change
[On Master Request]	<code>I S</code>	Backlash compensation managed through Master/Slave function.

[BL Type] 

Backlash type.

This parameter can be accessed if:

- [BL Mode]  is not set to [Not Configured] , and
- [M/S Comm Mode]  is set to [MultiDrive Link] , and
- [M/S Device Role]  is set to [Master] .

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Sequential]		Each slave will do its sequence one by one Factory setting
[Simultaneous]		Backlash compensation is performed on each Drive start (run order appears or halt disappear)

[BL Slave Fdbck] 

Backlash on slave(s) feedback.

This parameter can be accessed if:

- [BL Mode]  is not set to [Not Configured] , and
- [M/S Comm Mode]  is set to [MultiDrive Link] , and
- [M/S Device Role]  is set to [Master] , and
- [Access Level]  is set to [Expert] .

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[No]		Master does not take into account the slaves feedback
[Yes]		Master takes into account the slaves feedback Factory setting

[BL Time] 

Backlash time.

This parameter can be accessed if:

- [BL Mode]  is not set to [Not Configured] , and
- [M/S Comm Mode]  is set to [MultiDrive Link] , and
- [M/S Device Role]  is set to [Master] , and
- [Access Level]  is set to [Expert] .
- [BL Slave Fdbck]  is set to [No] .

Setting 	Description
0.1...100.0 s	Setting range Factory setting: 0.5 s

[BL Ref Freq] 

Backlash reference frequency.

This parameter can be accessed if [BL Mode]  is not set to [Not Configured] .

Setting 	Description
0.0...599.0 Hz	Setting range Factory setting: 0.0 Hz

[BL Acceleration] *b 9 A* ★

Backlash acceleration.

Backlash Acceleration ramp value.

This parameter can be accessed if [BL Mode] *b 9 I* is not set to [Not Configured] *n o*.

Setting ()	Description
0.01...999.90 s ⁽¹⁾	Setting range Factory setting: 10.00 s
(1) Range 0.01 to 99.99 s or 0.1 to 999.9 s or 1 to 9,999 according to [Ramp increment] <i>r rr</i>	

[BL Trq Lim Value] *b 9 E L* ★

Backlash torque limitation value.

This parameter can be accessed if [BL Mode] *b 9 I* is not set to [Not Configured] *n o*.

Setting ()	Description
0.0...100.0%	Setting range Factory setting: 5.0%

[BL Monit Delay] *b 9 E* ★

Backlash torque limitation monitoring delay.

Delay from beginning of backlash speed ramp and check of torque limitation.

This parameter can be accessed if [BL Mode] *b 9 I* is not set to [Not Configured] *n o*.

Setting ()	Description
0.1...100.0 s	Setting range Factory setting: 0.5 s

NOTE: To adjust this parameter, the time needed by Angle test function must be considered.

[BL Start Delay] *b 9 S E* ★

Backlash start delay.

Time spent in stop or standstill before backlash sequence.

This parameter can be accessed if [BL Mode] *b 9 I* is not set to [Not Configured] *n o*.

Setting ()	Description
0.0...100.0 s	Setting range Factory setting: 0.0 s

[BL Timeout] *b 9 F d* ★

Backlash timeout.

This parameter can be accessed if [BL Mode] *b 9 I* is not set to [Not Configured] *n o*.

Setting ()	Description
0.0...100.0 s	Setting range Factory setting: 5.0 s ([BL Monit Delay] <i>b 9 E</i> × 10)

[BL ErrorResp] **b 9F b** ★

Backlash compensation error response.

This parameter can be accessed if [BL Mode] **b 9P** is not set to [Not Configured] **n o**.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Ignore]	n o	Detected error ignored
[Freewheel Stop]	Y E 5	Freewheel stop Factory setting

[Positioning by sensors] **L P o** - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Machine Functions] → [Positioning by sensors]

About This Menu

Identical to [Positioning by sensors] **L P o** - menu (*see page 377*)

[Brake logic control] **b L C** - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Machine Functions] → [Brake logic control]

About This Menu

Identical to [Brake logic control] **b L C** - menu (*see page 272*)

[Torque control] **E o r** - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Machine Functions] → [Torque control]

About This Menu

Identical to [Torque control] **E o r** - menu (*see page 385*)

Section 8.8

[Generic functions] - [Speed limits]

[Speed limits] *S L P* - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Generic functions] → [Speed limits]

[Low Speed] *L S P*

Motor frequency at low speed.

Setting ()	Description
0.0...599.0 Hz	Setting range Factory setting: 0 Hz

[High Speed] *H S P*

Motor frequency at high speed.

Setting ()	Description
0.0...599.0 Hz	Setting range Factory setting: 50.0 Hz

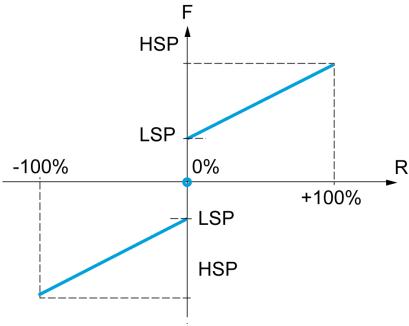
[Ref Freq Template] b 5 P

Low speed management (template).

This parameter defines how the speed reference is taken into account, for analog inputs and pulse input only. In the case of the PID controller, this is the PID output reference.

The limits are set by the **[Low speed] L 5 P** and **[High speed] H 5 P** parameters.

Setting (S)	Code / Value	Description
[Standard]	b 5 d	<p>F Frequency R Reference</p> <p>At reference = 0, the frequency = [Low speed] L 5 P Factory setting</p>
[Deadband]	b L 5	<p>F Frequency R Reference</p> <p>At reference = 0 to [Low speed] L 5 P, the frequency = [Low speed] L 5 P</p>
[Pedestal]	b n 5	<p>F Frequency R Reference</p> <p>At reference = 0 to L 5 P the frequency = 0</p>

Setting ()	Code / Value	Description
[Pedestal at 0%]	<i>b n 5 d</i>	 <p>F Frequency R Reference</p> <p>This operation is the same as [Standard] <i>b 5 d</i>, except that in the following cases at zero reference, the frequency = 0: The signal is less than [Min value], which is greater than 0 (example: 1 Vdc on a 2–10 Vdc input). The signal is greater than [Max value], which is greater than [Min value] (example: 11 Vdc on a 10–0 Vdc input). If the input range is configured as “bidirectional”, the operation remains identical to [Standard] <i>b 5 d</i>.</p>

Section 8.9

[Generic functions] - [Ramp]

[Ramp] \rightarrow RNP - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] \rightarrow [Generic functions] \rightarrow [Ramp]

[Ramp Type] \rightarrow P E

Type of ramp.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Linear]	L .. n	Linear ramp Factory setting
[S-Ramp]	S	S ramp
[U-Ramp]	U	U ramp
[Customized]	C U S	Customer ramp

[Ramp increment] \rightarrow n r

This parameter is valid for [Acceleration] A E L, [Deceleration] d E L, [Acceleration 2] A E 2 and [Deceleration 2] d E 2.

Setting (1)	Code / Value	Description
[0.01]	0.0 1	Ramp up to 99.99 seconds
[0.1]	0. 1	Ramp up to 999.9 seconds Factory setting
[1]	1	Ramp up to 6,000 seconds

[Acceleration] A E L

Time to accelerate from 0 to the [Nominal Motor Freq] F \rightarrow 5.

To have repeatability in ramps, the value of this parameter must be set according to the possibility of the application.

Setting (1)	Description
0.00...6,000.00 s ⁽¹⁾	Setting range Factory setting: 3.00 s
(1) Range 0.01 to 99.99 s or 0.1 to 999.9 s or 1 to 6,000 according to [Ramp increment] \rightarrow n r	

[Deceleration] d E L

Time to decelerate from the [Nominal Motor Freq] F \rightarrow 5 to 0.

To have repeatability in ramps, the value of this parameter must be set according to the possibility of the application.

Setting (1)	Description
0.00...6,000.00 s ⁽¹⁾	Setting range Factory setting: 3.00 s
(1) Range 0.01 to 99.99 s or 0.1 to 999.9 s or 1 to 6,000 according to [Ramp increment] \rightarrow n r	

[Begin Acc round] E R 1★

Rounding of start of acceleration ramp as a percentage of the [Acceleration] A_{LC} or [Acceleration 2] A_{LC2} ramp time.

Can be set from 0 to 100%.

This parameter can be accessed if the [Ramp type] rPE is set to [Customized] CuS .

Setting ()	Description
0...100%	Setting range Factory setting: 10%

[End Acc round] E R 2★

Rounding of end of acceleration ramp as a percentage of the [Acceleration] A_{LC} or [Acceleration 2] A_{LC2} ramp time.

Can be set between 0 and (100% - [Begin Acc round] $E R 1$).

This parameter can be accessed if the [Ramp type] rPE is set to [Customized] CuS .

Setting ()	Description
0...100%	Setting range Factory setting: 10%

[Begin Dec round] E R 3★

Rounding of start of deceleration ramp as a percentage of the [Deceleration] d_{LC} or [Deceleration 2] d_{LC2} ramp time.

Can be set from 0 to 100%.

This parameter can be accessed if the [Ramp type] rPE is set to [Customized] CuS .

Setting ()	Description
0...100%	Setting range Factory setting: 10%

[End Dec round] E R 4★

Rounding of end of deceleration ramp as a percentage of the [Deceleration] d_{LC} or [Deceleration 2] d_{LC2} ramp time.

Can be set between 0 and (100% - [Begin Dec round] $E R 3$).

This parameter can be accessed if the [Ramp type] rPE is [Customized] CuS .

Setting ()	Description
0...100%	Setting range Factory setting: 10%

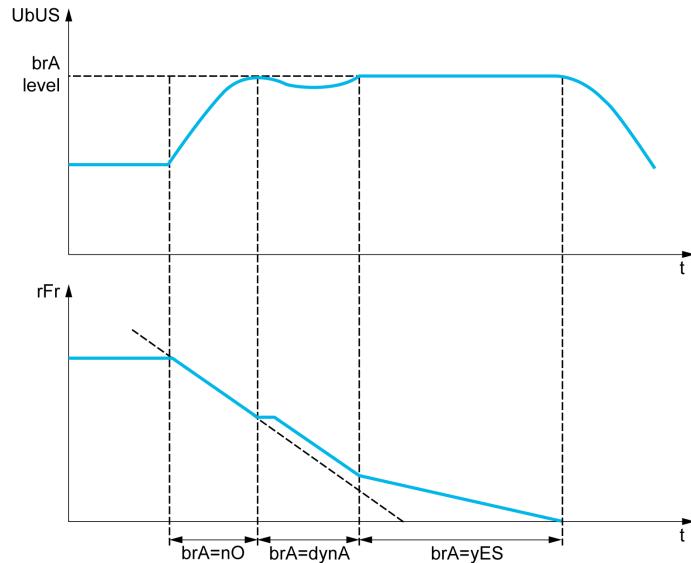
[Dec.Ramp Adapt] *b r R*

Deceleration ramp adaptation.

NOTICE**DAMAGE TO THE MOTOR**

Only set this parameter to ***YE 5*** or ***n o*** if the connected motor is a permanent magnet synchronous motor. Other settings demagnetize permanent magnet synchronous motors.

Failure to follow these instructions can result in equipment damage.



Activating this function automatically adapts the deceleration ramp, if this has been set at a too low value according to the inertia of the load, which can cause an overvoltage detected error.

The function is incompatible with applications requiring:

- Positioning on a ramp

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[No]	<i>n o</i>	Function inactive
[Yes]	<i>YE 5</i>	Function active, for applications that do not require strong deceleration Factory setting
[High Torque]	<i>d YE n R</i>	Addition of a constant current flow component. The [High torq. A] <i>d YE n R</i> selection appears depending on the rating of the drive and [Motor control type] <i>C E E</i> . It enables stronger deceleration to be obtained than with [Yes] <i>YE 5</i> . Use comparative testing to determine your selection. When [Dec.Ramp Adapt] <i>b r R</i> is configured on [High torq. A] <i>d YE n R</i> , the dynamic performances for braking are improved by the addition of a current flow component. The aim is to increase the iron loss and magnetic energy stored in the motor.

[Braking Resistor] *b r L*

Braking resistor connected.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[No]	<i>n o</i>	Function inactive Factory setting NOTE: With this selection [DB unit op. circuit] <i>b u F o</i> error can't be activated.
[Yes]	<i>YE 5</i>	Function active

Section 8.10

[Generic functions] - [Ramp switching]

[Ramp switching] $\rightarrow P E$ - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] \rightarrow [Generic functions] \rightarrow [Ramp switching]

[Ramp 2 Thd] $F \rightarrow E$

Ramp 2 frequency threshold

The second ramp is switched if the value of [Ramp 2 Thd] $F \rightarrow E$ is not 0 (0 deactivates the function) and the output frequency is greater than [Ramp 2 Thd] $F \rightarrow E$.

Threshold ramp switching can be combined with [Ramp Switch Assign] $\rightarrow P 5$ switching as follows:

DI or Bit	Frequency	Ramp
0	$< F \rightarrow E$	$R C C, d E C$
0	$> F \rightarrow E$	$R C 2, d E 2$
1	$< F \rightarrow E$	$R C 2, d E 2$
1	$> F \rightarrow E$	$R C 2, d E 2$

Setting ()	Description
0.0...599.0 Hz	Setting range Factory setting: 0.0 Hz

[Ramp Switch Assign] $\rightarrow P 5$

Ramp switching.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Not Assigned]	$\square \square$	Not assigned Factory setting
[DI1]...[DI8]	$L \square I \dots L \square B$	Digital input DI1...DI8 NOTE: DI8 selection can be accessed on drives with a power greater than 22 kW.
[DI11]...[DI16]	$L \square I I \dots L \square I 6$	Digital input DI11...DI16 if VW3A3203 I/O extension module has been inserted
[CD00]...[CD10]	$C d 0 0 \dots C d 1 0$	Virtual digital input CMD.0...CMD.10 in [I/O profile] $\rightarrow \square$ configuration
[CD11]...[CD15]	$C d 1 1 \dots C d 1 5$	Virtual digital input CMD.11...CMD.15 regardless of configuration
[C101]...[C110]	$C 1 0 I \dots C 1 1 0$	Virtual digital input CMD1.01...CMD1.10 with integrated Modbus Serial in [I/O profile] $\rightarrow \square$ configuration
[C111]...[C115]	$C 1 1 I \dots C 1 1 5$	Virtual digital input CMD1.11...CMD1.15 with integrated Modbus Serial regardless of configuration
[C201]...[C210]	$C 2 0 I \dots C 2 1 0$	Virtual digital input CMD2.01...CMD2.10 with CANopen® fieldbus module in [I/O profile] $\rightarrow \square$ configuration
[C211]...[C215]	$C 2 1 I \dots C 2 1 5$	Virtual digital input CMD2.11...CMD2.15 with CANopen® fieldbus module regardless of configuration

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[C301]...[C310]	C 3 0 I...C 3 1 O	Virtual digital input CMD3.01...CMD3.10 with a fieldbus module in [I/O profile] <i>i n</i> configuration
[C311]...[C315]	C 3 1 I...C 3 1 S	Virtual digital input CMD3.11...CMD3.15 with a fieldbus module regardless of configuration
[C501]...[C510]	C 5 0 I...C 5 1 O	Virtual digital input CMD5.01...CMD5.10 with integrated Ethernet in [I/O profile] <i>i n</i> configuration NOTE: This selection can be accessed on ATV340***N4E drives.
[C511]...[C515]	C 5 1 I...C 5 1 S	Virtual digital input CMD5.11...CMD5.15 with integrated Ethernet regardless of configuration NOTE: This selection can be accessed on ATV340***N4E drives.

[Acceleration 2] A C 2 ★

Acceleration 2 ramp time.

Time to accelerate from 0 to the [Nominal Motor Freq] *F r 5*. To have repeatability in ramps, the value of this parameter must be set according to the possibility of the application.

This parameter can be accessed if [Ramp 2 Thd] *F r E* is greater than 0 or if [Ramp Switch Assign] *r P 5* is assigned.

Setting (1)	Description
0.0...6,000 s ⁽¹⁾	Setting range Factory setting: 5.0 s
(1) Range 0.01 to 99.99 s or 0.1 to 999.9 s or 1...6,000 s according to [Ramp increment] <i>i n r</i> .	

[Deceleration 2] d E 2 ★

Time to decelerate from the [Nominal Motor Freq] *F r 5* to 0. To have repeatability in ramps, the value of this parameter must be set according to the possibility of the application.

This parameter can be accessed if:

- [Ramp 2 Thd] *F r E* is greater than 0, or
- [Ramp Switch Assign] *r P 5* is assigned.

Setting (1)	Description
0.0...6,000 s ⁽¹⁾	Setting range Factory setting: 5.0 s
(1) Range 0.01 to 99.99 s or 0.1 to 999.9 s or 1...6,000 s according to [Ramp increment] <i>i n r</i> .	

Section 8.11

[Generic functions] - [Stop configuration]

[Stop configuration] 5 E E - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Generic functions] → [Stop configuration]

About This Menu

NOTE: This function cannot be used with some other functions.

[Type of stop] 5 E E

Normal stop mode.

Stop mode on disappearance of the run command or appearance of a stop command.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[On Ramp]	r P P	Stop on ramp, if [Brake assignment] b L E or [Low speed time out] E L S are configured, only a [On Ramp] r P P is possible. Factory setting
[Fast stop]	F S E	Fast stop Available if [Motor fluxing] F L u is set to [Continuous] F L E .
[Freewheel]	n S E	Freewheel stop
[DC injection]	d C i	DC injection stop. Available if [Motor control type] E E E is not set to: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • [Sync. mot.] S Y n, or • [Sync.CL.] F S Y, or • [SYN_U VC] S Y n u, or • [Rel. Mot] S r V C

[Freewheel stop ass.] n S E

Freewheel stop.

The stop is activated when the input or the bit changes to 0. If the input returns to state 1 and the run command is still active, the motor will only restart if [2/3-wire control] E E E is set to [2-Wire Control] Z E and if [2-wire type] E E E is set to [Level] L E L or [Fwd priority] P F o . If not, a new run command must be sent.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Not Assigned]	n o	Not assigned Factory setting
[CD00]...[CD10]	C d 0 0 ... C d 1 0	Virtual digital input CMD.0...CMD.10 in [I/O profile] , o configuration
[CD11]...[CD15]	C d 1 1 ... C d 1 5	Virtual digital input CMD.11...CMD.15 regardless of configuration
[C101]...[C110]	C 1 0 1 ... C 1 1 0	Virtual digital input CMD1.01...CMD1.10 with integrated Modbus Serial in [I/O profile] , o configuration
[C111]...[C115]	C 1 1 1 ... C 1 1 5	Virtual digital input CMD1.11...CMD1.15 with integrated Modbus Serial regardless of configuration
[C201]...[C210]	C 2 0 1 ... C 2 1 0	Virtual digital input CMD2.01...CMD2.10 with CANopen® fieldbus module in [I/O profile] , o configuration
[C211]...[C215]	C 2 1 1 ... C 2 1 5	Virtual digital input CMD2.11...CMD2.15 with CANopen® fieldbus module regardless of configuration
[C301]...[C310]	C 3 0 1 ... C 3 1 0	Virtual digital input CMD3.01...CMD3.10 with a fieldbus module in [I/O profile] , o configuration
[C311]...[C315]	C 3 1 1 ... C 3 1 5	Virtual digital input CMD3.11...CMD3.15 with a fieldbus module regardless of configuration

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[C501]...[C510]	C 5 0 I...C 5 10	Virtual digital input CMD5.01...CMD5.10 with integrated Ethernet in [I/O profile], configuration NOTE: This selection can be accessed on ATV340...N4E drives.
[C511]...[C515]	C 5 1 I...C 5 15	Virtual digital input CMD5.11...CMD5.15 with integrated Ethernet regardless of configuration NOTE: This selection can be accessed on ATV340...N4E drives.
[DI1 (Low level)]...[DI8 (Low level)]	L 1 L ...L 8 L	Digital input DI1...DI8 used at low level NOTE: DI8 low level selection can be accessed on drives with a power greater than 22 kW.
[DI11 (Low level)]...[DI16 (Low level)]	L 11 L ...L 16 L	Digital input DI11...DI16 used at low level if VW3A3203 I/O extension module has been inserted

[Freewheel stop Thd] F F E

Freewheel stop threshold.

Speed threshold below which the motor switches to freewheel stop.

This parameter supports switching from a ramp stop or a fast stop to a freewheel stop below a low speed threshold.

This parameter can be accessed if:

- [Type of stop] 5 E E is set to [Fast stop] F 5 E or [Ramp stop] r P P, and
- [Auto DC Injection] A d C is configured.

Setting ()	Description
0.2...599.0 Hz	Setting range Factory setting: 0.2 Hz

[Fast stop ass.] F 5 E

Fast stop.

The stop is activated when the input changes to 0 or the bit changes to 1 (bit in [I/O profile], at 0).

If the input returns to state 1 and the run command is still active, the motor will only restart if [2/3-wire control] E C C is set to [2-Wire Control] 2 C and if [2-wire type] E C E is set to [Level] L E L or [Fwd priority] P F o.

If not, a new run command must be sent.

NOTE: This function cannot be used with some other functions.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Not Assigned]	n o	Not assigned Factory setting
[CD00]...[CD10]	C d 0 0 ...C d 10	Virtual digital input CMD.0...CMD.10 in [I/O profile], configuration
[CD11]...[CD15]	C d 1 1 ...C d 15	Virtual digital input CMD.11...CMD.15 regardless of configuration
[C101]...[C110]	C 1 0 1 ...C 1 10	Virtual digital input CMD1.01...CMD1.10 with integrated Modbus Serial in [I/O profile], configuration
[C111]...[C115]	C 1 1 1 ...C 1 15	Virtual digital input CMD1.11...CMD1.15 with integrated Modbus Serial regardless of configuration
[C201]...[C210]	C 2 0 1 ...C 2 10	Virtual digital input CMD2.01...CMD2.10 with CANopen® fieldbus module in [I/O profile], configuration
[C211]...[C215]	C 2 1 1 ...C 2 15	Virtual digital input CMD2.11...CMD2.15 with CANopen® fieldbus module regardless of configuration
[C301]...[C310]	C 3 0 1 ...C 3 10	Virtual digital input CMD3.01...CMD3.10 with a fieldbus module in [I/O profile], configuration
[C311]...[C315]	C 3 1 1 ...C 3 15	Virtual digital input CMD3.11...CMD3.15 with a fieldbus module regardless of configuration

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[C501]...[C510]	C 5 0 I...C 5 10	Virtual digital input CMD5.01...CMD5.10 with integrated Ethernet in [I/O profile] configuration NOTE: This selection can be accessed on ATV340...N4E drives.
[C511]...[C515]	C 5 1 I...C 5 15	Virtual digital input CMD5.11...CMD5.15 with integrated Ethernet regardless of configuration NOTE: This selection can be accessed on ATV340...N4E drives.
[DI1 (Low level)]...[DI8 (Low level)]	L 1 L ...L 8 L	Digital input DI1...DI8 used at low level NOTE: DI8 low level selection can be accessed on drives with a power greater than 22 kW.
[DI11 (Low level)]...[DI16 (Low level)]	L 1 I L ...L 16 L	Digital input DI11...DI16 used at low level if VW3A3203 I/O extension module has been inserted

[Ramp Divider] d C F ★

Fast Stop deceleration ramp reduction coefficient.

This parameter can be accessed if:

- [Type of stop] S E E is set to [Fast stop] F S E , or
- [Fast stop assign.] F S E is not set to [No] n o , or
- [Stop type] P R S is set to [Fast stop] F S E .

The ramp that is enabled ([Deceleration] d E L or [Deceleration 2] d E Z) is then divided by this coefficient when stop requests are sent.

Value 0 corresponds to a minimum ramp time.

Setting ()	Description
0...10	Setting range Factory setting: 4

[DC Injection Assign] d C ,

DC injection brake assignment.

WARNING

UNINTENDED MOVEMENT

- Do not use DC injection to generate holding torque when the motor is at a standstill.
- Use a holding brake to keep the motor in the standstill position.

Failure to follow these instructions can result in death, serious injury, or equipment damage.

DC injection braking is initiated when the assigned input or bit changes to state 1.

If the input returns to state 0 and the run command is still active, the motor will only restart if [2/3-wire control] E C C is set to [2-Wire Control] 2 C and if [2-wire type] E C E is set to [Level] L E L or [Fwd priority] P F o . If not, a new run command must be sent.

NOTE: This function cannot be used with some other functions.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Not Assigned]	n o	Not assigned Factory setting
[DI1]...[DI8]	L , I ...L , 8	Digital input DI1...DI8 NOTE: DI8 selection can be accessed on drives with a power greater than 22 kW.
[DI11]...[DI16]	L , I I ...L , 16	Digital input DI11...DI16 if VW3A3203 I/O extension module has been inserted
[CD00]...[CD10]	C d 0 0 ...C d 10	Virtual digital input CMD.0...CMD.10 in [I/O profile] configuration
[CD11]...[CD15]	C d 1 I ...C d 15	Virtual digital input CMD.11...CMD.15 regardless of configuration

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[C101]...[C110]	C 1 0 I...C 1 1 0	Virtual digital input CMD1.01...CMD1.10 with integrated Modbus Serial in [I/O profile] , □ configuration
[C111]...[C115]	C 1 1 I...C 1 1 5	Virtual digital input CMD1.11...CMD1.15 with integrated Modbus Serial regardless of configuration
[C201]...[C210]	C 2 0 I...C 2 1 0	Virtual digital input CMD2.01...CMD2.10 with CANopen® fieldbus module in [I/O profile] , □ configuration
[C211]...[C215]	C 2 1 I...C 2 1 5	Virtual digital input CMD2.11...CMD2.15 with CANopen® fieldbus module regardless of configuration
[C301]...[C310]	C 3 0 I...C 3 1 0	Virtual digital input CMD3.01...CMD3.10 with a fieldbus module in [I/O profile] , □ configuration
[C311]...[C315]	C 3 1 I...C 3 1 5	Virtual digital input CMD3.11...CMD3.15 with a fieldbus module regardless of configuration
[C501]...[C510]	C 5 0 I...C 5 1 0	Virtual digital input CMD5.01...CMD5.10 with integrated Ethernet in [I/O profile] , □ configuration NOTE: This selection can be accessed on ATV340...N4E drives.
[C511]...[C515]	C 5 1 I...C 5 1 5	Virtual digital input CMD5.11...CMD5.15 with integrated Ethernet regardless of configuration NOTE: This selection can be accessed on ATV340...N4E drives.

[DC inject. level 1] , d C ★

DC injection current.

NOTICE**OVERHEATING AND DAMAGE TO THE MOTOR**

Verify that the connected motor is properly rated for the DC injection current to be applied in terms of amount and time in order to avoid overheating and damage to the motor.

Failure to follow these instructions can result in equipment damage.

Level of DC injection braking current activated via digital input or selected as stop mode.

This parameter can be accessed if:

- [Type of stop] 5 E E is set to [DC injection] d C , or
- [DC.Brake DI] d C , is not set to [No] n o .

Setting (1)	Description
0.1...1.41 In ⁽¹⁾	Setting range This setting is independent of the [Auto DC Injection] R d C - function. Factory setting: 0.7 In ⁽¹⁾

(1) In corresponds to the rated drive current indicated in the Installation Manual and on the drive nameplate.

[DC injection time 1] E_d ★

DC injection time 1.

NOTICE**OVERHEATING AND DAMAGE TO THE MOTOR**

Verify that the connected motor is properly rated for the DC injection current to be applied in terms of amount and time in order to avoid overheating and damage to the motor.

Failure to follow these instructions can result in equipment damage.

Maximum current injection time **[DC inject. level 1]** d_L . After this time, the injection current becomes **[DC inject. level 2]** d_L .

This parameter can be accessed if:

- **[Type of stop] S_E** is set to **[DC injection]** d_L , or
- **[DC.Brake DI]** d_L is not set to **[No]** n_o .

Setting (S)	Description
0.1...30 s	Setting range This setting is independent of the [Auto DC Injection] A_dL - function. Factory setting: 0.5 s

[DC inject. level 2] d_L ★

DC injection current 2.

NOTICE**OVERHEATING AND DAMAGE TO THE MOTOR**

Verify that the connected motor is properly rated for the DC injection current to be applied in terms of amount and time in order to avoid overheating and damage to the motor.

Failure to follow these instructions can result in equipment damage.

Injection current activated by digital input or selected as stop mode once period **[DC injection time 1] E_d** , has elapsed.

This parameter can be accessed if:

- **[Type of stop] S_E** is set to **[DC injection]** d_L , or
- **[DC Injection Assign]** d_L is not set to **[No]** n_o .

Setting (S)	Description
0.1 In ⁽¹⁾ ...[DC inject. level 1] d_L	Setting range This setting is independent of the [Auto DC Injection] A_dL - function. Factory setting: 0.5 In ⁽¹⁾

(1) In corresponds to the rated drive current indicated in the Installation Manual and on the drive nameplate.

[DC Inj Time 2] 

2nd DC injection time.

NOTICE**OVERHEATING AND DAMAGE TO THE MOTOR**

Verify that the connected motor is properly rated for the DC injection current to be applied in terms of amount and time in order to avoid overheating and damage to the motor.

Failure to follow these instructions can result in equipment damage.

Maximum injection time [DC inject. level 2]  for injection, selected as stop mode only.

This parameter can be accessed if [Type of stop]  is set to [DC injection] .

Setting 	Description
0.1...30 s	Setting range This setting is independent of the [Auto DC Injection]  - function. Factory setting: 0.5 s

[SwitchOnDisable Stp] 

Disable operation stop mode.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Freewheel Stop]	 	Disable drive function
[Ramp Stop]	 	Ramp stop then disable drive function Factory setting

Section 8.12

[Generic functions] - [Auto DC injection]

[Auto DC injection] - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Generic functions] → [Auto DC injection]

About This Menu

This menu presents the automatic injection of motor current function. This is used to hold the rotor of the motor at the end of the deceleration ramp.

[Auto DC Injection]

Automatic DC Injection.

DANGER

HAZARD OF ELECTRIC SHOCK, EXPLOSION, OR ARC FLASH

If the parameter [Auto DC Injection]  is set to [Continuous] , DC injection is always active, even if the motor does not run.

- Verify that using this setting does not result in unsafe conditions.

Failure to follow these instructions will result in death or serious injury.

WARNING

UNINTENDED MOVEMENT

- Do not use DC injection to generate holding torque when the motor is at a standstill.
- Use a holding brake to keep the motor in the standstill position.

Failure to follow these instructions can result in death, serious injury, or equipment damage.

Automatic current injection on stopping (at the end of the ramp).

NOTE: There is an interlock between this function and [Motor fluxing] . If [Motor fluxing]  is set to [Continuous] , [Auto DC Injection]  must be [No] .

[Auto DC Injection]  is forced to [No]  when [Brake assignment]  is not set to [No] . This parameter gives rise to the injection of current even if a run command has not been sent.

Setting 	Code / Value	Description
[No]		No injection Factory setting
[Yes]		Adjustable injection time
[Continuous]		Continuous standstill injection

[Auto DC inj Level 1] 5 d C /★

Auto DC injection level 1.

NOTICE**OVERHEATING AND DAMAGE TO THE MOTOR**

Verify that the connected motor is properly rated for the DC injection current to be applied in terms of amount and time in order to avoid overheating and damage to the motor.

Failure to follow these instructions can result in equipment damage.

Level of standstill DC injection current [Auto DC Injection] *R d C* is not [No] *n o*.

Setting (i)	Description
0...1.1 In ⁽¹⁾	Setting range Factory setting: 0.7 In ⁽¹⁾

(1) In corresponds to the rated drive current indicated in the Installation Manual and on the drive nameplate.

[Auto DC Inj Time 1] L d C /★

Auto DC injection time 1.

NOTICE**OVERHEATING AND DAMAGE TO THE MOTOR**

Verify that the connected motor is properly rated for the DC injection current to be applied in terms of amount and time in order to avoid overheating and damage to the motor.

Failure to follow these instructions can result in equipment damage.

This parameter can be accessed if [Auto DC Injection] *R d C* is not set to [No] *n o*.

This time corresponds to the zero speed maintenance time, if [Motor control type] *L E E* is set to:

- [Sync. mot.] 5 Y n, or
- [Sync.CL.] F 5 Y, or
- [SYN_U VC] 5 Y n u, or
- [Rel. Mot] 5 r V L

Setting (i)	Description
0.1...30.0 s	Setting range Factory setting: 0.5 s

[Auto DC inj Level 2] 5 d C 2

Auto DC injection level 2.

NOTICE**OVERHEATING AND DAMAGE TO THE MOTOR**

Verify that the connected motor is properly rated for the DC injection current to be applied in terms of amount and time in order to avoid overheating and damage to the motor.

Failure to follow these instructions can result in equipment damage.

Second level of standstill DC injection current.

This parameter can be accessed if **[Auto DC Injection]** *R d C* is not set to **[No]** *n o*.

Setting ()	Description
0...1.1 In ⁽¹⁾	Setting range Factory setting: 0.5 In ⁽¹⁾

(1) In corresponds to the rated drive current indicated in the Installation Manual and on the drive nameplate.

[Auto DC Inj Time 2] E d C 2

Auto DC injection time 2.

NOTICE**OVERHEATING AND DAMAGE TO THE MOTOR**

Verify that the connected motor is properly rated for the DC injection current to be applied in terms of amount and time in order to avoid overheating and damage to the motor.

Failure to follow these instructions can result in equipment damage.

Second standstill injection time.

This parameter can be accessed if **[Auto DC Injection]** *R d C* is set to **[YES]** *y E 5*.

AdC	SdC2	Operation
YES	x	
Ct	$\neq 0$	
Ct	= 0	
Run command		
Speed		

Setting ()	Description
0.0...30.0 s	Setting range Factory setting: 0.0 s

Section 8.13

[Generic functions] - [Ref. operations]

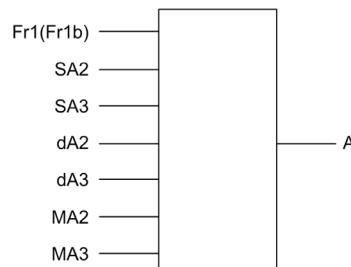
[Ref. operations] ▶ *R* - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Generic functions] → [Ref. operations]

About This Menu

Summing input / subtraction input / multiplier



$$A = (Fr1 \text{ or } Fr1b + SA2 + SA3 - dA2 - dA3) \times MA2 \times MA3$$

NOTE:

- If *SA2*, *SA3*, *dA2*, *dA3* are not assigned, they are set to 0.
- If *MA2*, *MA3* are not assigned, they are set to 1.
- *A* is limited by the minimum *LSP* and maximum *HSP* parameters.
- For a multiplication, the signal on *MA2* or *MA3* is interpreted as a %. 100% corresponds to the maximum value of the corresponding input. If *MA2* or *MA3* is sent via the communication bus or Display Terminal, an *MF* multiplication variable must be sent via the bus or Display Terminal.
- Reversal of the direction of operation in the event of a negative result can be blocked (see [Reverse Disable] *r* *in*).

[Summing Input 2] 5 R 2

Summing input 2.

Selection of a reference to be added to [Ref Freq 1 Config] F_{r_I} or [Ref.1B channel] F_{r_Ib} .

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Not Configured]	n o	Not assigned
[AI1]	R , I	Analog input AI1 Factory Setting
[AI2]...[AI3]	R , 2...R , 3	Analog input AI2...AI3
[AI4]...[AI5]	R , 4...R , 5	Analog input AI4...AI5 if VW3A3203 I/O extension module has been inserted
[Ref Frequency via DI]	u P d t	Up/Down function is assigned by DIx
[Ref. Freq- Rmt. Term]	L C C	Reference Frequency via remote terminal
[Ref. Freq-Modbus]	P d b	Reference frequency via Modbus
[Ref. Freq-CANopen]	C R n	Reference frequency via CANopen if a CANopen module has been inserted
[Ref. Freq-Com. Module]	n E t	Reference frequency via fieldbus module if a fieldbus module has been inserted
[Embedded Ethernet]	E t H	Embedded Ethernet NOTE: This selection can be accessed on ATV340***N4E drives.
[AI Virtual 1]	R , V , I	Virtual analogic input 1
[DI7 PulseInput]...[DI8 PulseInput]	P , 7...P , 8	Digital input DI7...DI8 used as pulse input NOTE: This selection can be accessed on drives with a power greater than 22 kW.
[RP]	P ,	Pulse input NOTE: This selection can be accessed on drives with a power below than 30 kW.

[Summing Input 3] 5 R 3

Summing input 3.

Selection of a reference to be added to [Ref Freq 1 Config] F_{r_I} or [Ref.1B channel] F_{r_Ib} .

Identical to [Summing Input 2] 5 R 2

[Subtract Ref Freq 2] d R 2

Subtract reference frequency 2.

Selection of a reference to be subtracted from [Ref Freq 1 Config] F_{r_I} or [Ref.1B channel] F_{r_Ib} .

Identical to [Summing Input 2] 5 R 2

[Subtract Ref Freq 3] d R 3

Subtract reference frequency 3.

Selection of a reference to be subtracted from [Ref Freq 1 Config] F_{r_I} or [Ref.1B channel] F_{r_Ib} .

Identical to [Summing Input 2] 5 R 2.

[Ref Freq 2 Multiply] P R 2

Reference frequency 2 multiply (in % of the source range).

Selection of a multiplier reference [Ref Freq 1 Config] F_{r_I} or [Ref.1B channel] F_{r_Ib} .

Identical to [Summing Input 2] 5 R 2.

[Ref Freq 3 Multiply] P R 3

Reference frequency 3 multiply (in % of the source range).

Selection of a multiplier reference [Ref Freq 1 Config] F_{r_I} or [Ref.1B channel] F_{r_Ib} .

Identical to [Summing Input 2] 5 R 2.

Section 8.14

[Generic functions] - [Preset speeds]

[Preset speeds] P 5 5 - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Generic functions] → [Preset speeds]

About This Menu

NOTE: This function cannot be used with some other functions.

Combination Table for Preset Speed Inputs

2, 4, 8 or 16 speeds can be preset, requiring 1, 2, 3 or 4 digital inputs respectively.

It is necessary to configure:

- 2 and 4 speeds in order to obtain 4 speeds.
- 2, 4 and 8 speeds in order to obtain 8 speeds.
- 2, 4, 8 and 16 speeds in order to obtain 16 speeds.

16 Preset Freq (PS16)	8 Preset Freq (PS8)	4 Preset Freq (PS4)	2 Preset Freq (PS2)	Speed Reference
0	0	0	0	Reference 1 ⁽¹⁾
0	0	0	1	SP2
0	0	1	0	SP3
0	0	1	1	SP4
0	1	0	0	SP5
0	1	0	1	SP6
0	1	1	0	SP7
0	1	1	1	SP8
1	0	0	0	SP9
1	0	0	1	SP10
1	0	1	0	SP11
1	0	1	1	SP12
1	1	0	0	SP13
1	1	0	1	SP14
1	1	1	0	SP15
1	1	1	1	SP16

(1) Reference 1 = 5 P 1, refer to diagram (*see page 215*)

[2 Preset Freq] P 5 2

2 preset freq assignment.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Not Assigned]	<i>n o</i>	Not assigned Factory setting
[DI1]...[DI8]	<i>L 1 I...L 8 B</i>	Digital input DI1...DI8 NOTE: DI8 selection can be accessed on drives with a power greater than 22 kW.
[DI11]...[DI16]	<i>L 1 I I...L 16 B</i>	Digital input DI11...DI16 if VW3A3203 I/O extension module has been inserted
[CD00]...[CD10]	<i>C d 0 0...C d 1 0</i>	Virtual digital input CMD.0...CMD.10 in [I/O profile] <i>, o</i> configuration
[CD11]...[CD15]	<i>C d 1 1...C d 1 5</i>	Virtual digital input CMD.11...CMD.15 regardless of configuration
[C101]...[C110]	<i>C 1 0 I 1...C 1 1 0</i>	Virtual digital input CMD1.01...CMD1.10 with integrated Modbus Serial in [I/O profile] <i>, o</i> configuration
[C111]...[C115]	<i>C 1 1 I 1...C 1 1 5</i>	Virtual digital input CMD1.11...CMD1.15 with integrated Modbus Serial regardless of configuration
[C201]...[C210]	<i>C 2 0 I 1...C 2 1 0</i>	Virtual digital input CMD2.01...CMD2.10 with CANopen® fieldbus module in [I/O profile] <i>, o</i> configuration
[C211]...[C215]	<i>C 2 1 I 1...C 2 1 5</i>	Virtual digital input CMD2.11...CMD2.15 with CANopen® fieldbus module regardless of configuration
[C301]...[C310]	<i>C 3 0 I 1...C 3 1 0</i>	Virtual digital input CMD3.01...CMD3.10 with a fieldbus module in [I/O profile] <i>, o</i> configuration
[C311]...[C315]	<i>C 3 1 I 1...C 3 1 5</i>	Virtual digital input CMD3.11...CMD3.15 with a fieldbus module regardless of configuration
[C501]...[C510]	<i>C 5 0 I 1...C 5 1 0</i>	Virtual digital input CMD5.01...CMD5.10 with integrated Ethernet in [I/O profile] <i>, o</i> configuration NOTE: This selection can be accessed on ATV340...N4E drives.
[C511]...[C515]	<i>C 5 1 I 1...C 5 1 5</i>	Virtual digital input CMD5.11...CMD5.15 with integrated Ethernet regardless of configuration NOTE: This selection can be accessed on ATV340...N4E drives.

[4 Preset Freq] P 5 4

4 preset freq assignment.

Identical to **[2 Preset Freq] P 5 2**

To obtain 4 speeds, you must also configure 2 speeds.

[8 Preset Freq] P 5 8

8 preset freq assignment.

Identical to **[2 Preset Freq] P 5 2**

To obtain 8 speeds, you must also configure 2 and 4 speeds.

[16 Preset Freq] P 5 1 6

16 preset freq assignment.

Identical to **[2 Preset Freq] P 5 2**

To obtain 16 speeds, you must also configure 2, 4 and 8 speeds.

[Preset speed 2] 5 P 2★

Preset speed 2. See the combination table for preset speed inputs (*see page 328*).

Setting (o)	Description
0.0...599.0 Hz	Setting range Factory setting: 10.0 Hz

[Preset speed 3] 5 P 3

Preset speed 3. See the combination table for preset speed inputs ([see page 328](#)).

Setting ()	Description
0.0...599.0 Hz	Setting range Factory setting: 15.0 Hz

[Preset speed 4] 5 P 4

Preset speed 4. See the combination table for preset speed inputs ([see page 328](#)).

Setting ()	Description
0.0...599.0 Hz	Setting range Factory setting: 20.0 Hz

[Preset speed 5] 5 P 5

Preset speed 5. See the combination table for preset speed inputs ([see page 328](#)).

Setting ()	Description
0.0...599.0 Hz	Setting range Factory setting: 25.0 Hz

[Preset speed 6] 5 P 6

Preset speed 6. See the combination table for preset speed inputs ([see page 328](#)).

Setting ()	Description
0.0...599.0 Hz	Setting range Factory setting: 30.0 Hz

[Preset speed 7] 5 P 7

Preset speed 7. See the combination table for preset speed inputs ([see page 328](#)).

Setting ()	Description
0.0...599.0 Hz	Setting range Factory setting: 35.0 Hz

[Preset speed 8] 5 P 8

Preset speed 8. See the combination table for preset speed inputs ([see page 328](#)).

Setting ()	Description
0.0...599.0 Hz	Setting range Factory setting: 40.0 Hz

[Preset speed 9] 5 P 9

Preset speed 9. See the combination table for preset speed inputs ([see page 328](#)).

Setting ()	Description
0.0...599.0 Hz	Setting range Factory setting: 45.0 Hz

[Preset speed 10] 5 P 10★

Preset speed 10. See the combination table for preset speed inputs ([see page 328](#)).

Setting ()	Description
0.0...599.0 Hz	Setting range Factory setting: 50.0 Hz

[Preset speed 11] 5 P 11★

Preset speed 11. See the combination table for preset speed inputs ([see page 328](#)).

Setting ()	Description
0.0...599.0 Hz	Setting range Factory setting: 55.0 Hz

[Preset speed 12] 5 P 12★

Preset speed 12. See the combination table for preset speed inputs ([see page 328](#)).

Setting ()	Description
0.0...599.0 Hz	Setting range Factory setting: 60.0 Hz

[Preset speed 13] 5 P 13★

Preset speed 13. See the combination table for preset speed inputs ([see page 328](#)).

Setting ()	Description
0.0...599.0 Hz	Setting range Factory setting: 70.0 Hz

[Preset speed 14] 5 P 14★

Preset speed 14. See the combination table for preset speed inputs ([see page 328](#)).

Setting ()	Description
0.0...599.0 Hz	Setting range Factory setting: 80.0 Hz

[Preset speed 15] 5 P 15★

Preset speed 15 See the combination table for preset speed inputs ([see page 328](#)).

Setting ()	Description
0.0...599.0 Hz	Setting range Factory setting: 90.0 Hz

[Preset speed 16] 5 P 16★

Preset speed 16. See the combination table for preset speed inputs ([see page 328](#)).

Setting ()	Description
0.0...599.0 Hz	Setting range Factory setting: 100.0 Hz

Section 8.15

[Generic functions] - [+- speed]

[+- speed] ↳ P d - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Generic functions] → [+- speed]

About This Menu

This function can be accessed if reference channel **[Ref Freq 2 Config] F r 2** is set to **[Ref Frequency via DI] ↳ P d E**

NOTE: This function cannot be used with some other functions.

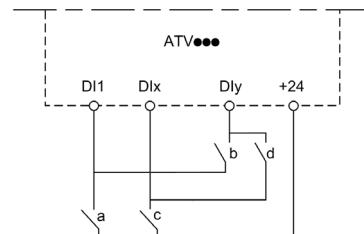
2 types of operations are available:

- **Use of single action keys:** 2 digital inputs are required in addition to the operating directions.
The input assigned to the “+ speed” command increases the speed, the input assigned to the “– speed” command decreases the speed.
- **Use of double action keys:** Only one digital input assigned to “+ speed” is required.

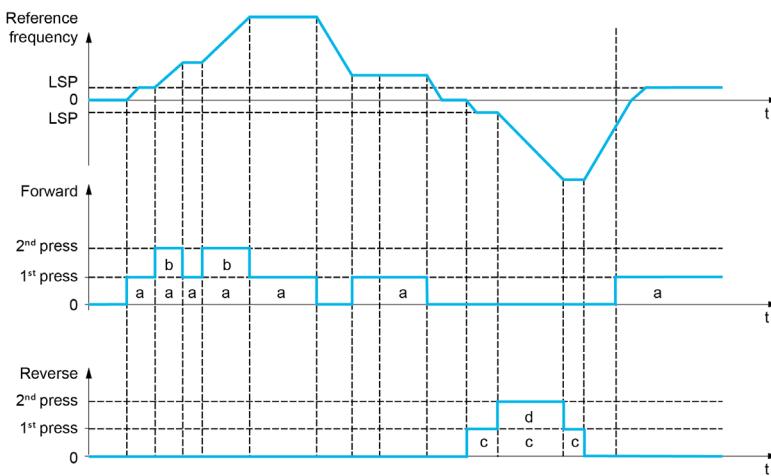
+- speed with double-press buttons:

Description: 1 button pressed twice (2 steps) for each direction of rotation. A contact closes each time the button is pressed.

Setting	Released (– Speed)	First Press (Speed Maintained)	Second Press (Faster)
Forward button	–	a	a and b
Reverse button	–	c	c and d



DI1 Forward
Dlx Reverse
Dly + speed



Do not use this +/− speed type with a 3-wire control.

Whichever type of operation is selected, the max. speed is set by **[High speed] H 5 P**.

NOTE: If the reference is switched via **[Freq Switch Assign] r F L** from any reference channel to another reference channel with "+/- speed", the value of reference **[Motor Frequency] r F r** (after ramp) may be copied at the same time in accordance with the **[Copy Ch1-Ch2] L o P** parameter.

If the reference is switched via **[Freq Switch Assign] r F L** from one reference channel to any other reference channel with "+/- speed", the value of reference **[Motor Frequency] r F r** (after ramp) is copied at the same time.

This helps to prevent the speed from being incorrectly reset to zero when switching takes place.

[+ Speed Assign] u 5 P

Increase speed input assignment.

Function active if the assigned input or bit is at 1.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Not Assigned]	o o	Not assigned Factory setting
[DI1]...[DI8]	L , I...L , B	Digital input DI1...DI8 NOTE: DI8 selection can be accessed on drives with a power greater than 22 kW.
[DI11]...[DI16]	L , I I...L , I B	Digital input DI11...DI16 if VW3A3203 I/O extension module has been inserted
[CD00]...[CD10]	C d 0 0...C d 1 0	Virtual digital input CMD.0...CMD.10 in [I/O profile] , o configuration
[CD11]...[CD15]	C d 1 1...C d 1 5	Virtual digital input CMD.11...CMD.15 regardless of configuration
[C101]...[C110]	C 1 0 1...C 1 1 0	Virtual digital input CMD1.01...CMD1.10 with integrated Modbus Serial in [I/O profile] , o configuration
[C111]...[C115]	C 1 1 1...C 1 1 5	Virtual digital input CMD1.11...CMD1.15 with integrated Modbus Serial regardless of configuration
[C201]...[C210]	C 2 0 1...C 2 1 0	Virtual digital input CMD2.01...CMD2.10 with CANopen® fieldbus module in [I/O profile] , o configuration
[C211]...[C215]	C 2 1 1...C 2 1 5	Virtual digital input CMD2.11...CMD2.15 with CANopen® fieldbus module regardless of configuration
[C301]...[C310]	C 3 0 1...C 3 1 0	Virtual digital input CMD3.01...CMD3.10 with a fieldbus module in [I/O profile] , o configuration
[C311]...[C315]	C 3 1 1...C 3 1 5	Virtual digital input CMD3.11...CMD3.15 with a fieldbus module regardless of configuration
[C501]...[C510]	C 5 0 1...C 5 1 0	Virtual digital input CMD5.01...CMD5.10 with integrated Ethernet in [I/O profile] , o configuration NOTE: This selection can be accessed on ATV340...N4E drives.
[C511]...[C515]	C 5 1 1...C 5 1 5	Virtual digital input CMD5.11...CMD5.15 with integrated Ethernet regardless of configuration NOTE: This selection can be accessed on ATV340...N4E drives.

[- Speed Assign] d 5 P

Down speed input assignment. See the assignment conditions.

Parameter settings identical to **[+ Speed Assign] u 5 P**.

Function active if the assigned input or bit is at 1.

[Ref Frequency Save] *S E r* ★

Reference frequency saves. This parameter can be accessed if [**+ Speed Assign**] *u S P* is not set to [**Not Assigned**] *n o*.

Associated with the "+/- speed" function, this parameter can be used to save the reference:

- When the run commands disappear (saved to RAM).
- When the supply mains or the run commands disappear (saved to EEPROM).

Therefore, next time the drive starts up, the speed reference is the last reference frequency saved.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[No save]	<i>n o</i>	Not saved Factory setting
[Save to RAM]	<i>r R n</i>	+/- speed with saving of the reference frequency in RAM
[Save to EEPROM]	<i>E E P</i>	+/- speed with saving of the reference frequency in EEPROM

Section 8.16

[Generic functions] - [+/- speed around ref]

[+/- speed around ref] 5 r E - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Generic functions] → [+/- speed around ref]

About This Menu

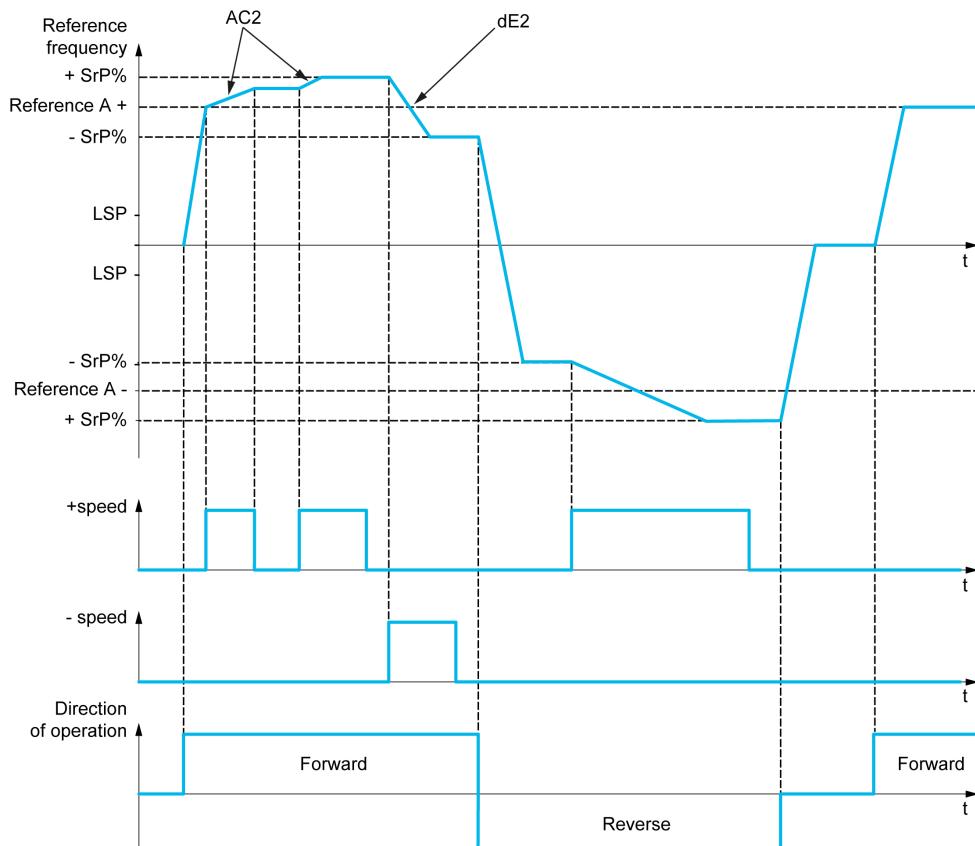
The function can be accessed for reference channel [Ref Freq 1 Config] F_{r1} .

NOTE: This function cannot be used with some other functions.

The reference is given by [Ref Freq 1 Config] F_{r1} or [Ref.1B channel] F_{r1b} with summing/subtraction/multiplication functions and preset speeds if relevant (see the diagram below).

For improved clarity, it calls this reference A. The action of the +speed and -speed keys can be set as a % of this reference A. On stopping, the reference (A +/- speed) is not saved, so the drive restarts with reference A+ only.

The maximum total reference is limited by [High Speed] H_{SP} and the minimum reference by [Low Speed] L_{SP} .



[+ Speed Assign] *u* 5 ,

Upper speed assignment.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Not Assigned]	<i>n o</i>	Not assigned Factory setting
[DI1]...[DI8]	<i>L , I...L , B</i>	Digital input DI1...DI8 NOTE: DI8 selection can be accessed on drives with a power greater than 22 kW.
[DI11]...[DI16]	<i>L , I I...L , I B</i>	Digital input DI11...DI16 if VW3A3203 I/O extension module has been inserted
[CD00]...[CD10]	<i>C d 0 0...C d 1 0</i>	Virtual digital input CMD.0...CMD.10 in [I/O profile] <i>, o</i> configuration
[CD11]...[CD15]	<i>C d 1 1...C d 1 5</i>	Virtual digital input CMD.11...CMD.15 regardless of configuration
[C101]...[C110]	<i>C 1 0 1...C 1 1 0</i>	Virtual digital input CMD1.01...CMD1.10 with integrated Modbus Serial in [I/O profile] <i>, o</i> configuration
[C111]...[C115]	<i>C 1 1 1...C 1 1 5</i>	Virtual digital input CMD1.11...CMD1.15 with integrated Modbus Serial regardless of configuration
[C201]...[C210]	<i>C 2 0 1...C 2 1 0</i>	Virtual digital input CMD2.01...CMD2.10 with CANopen® fieldbus module in [I/O profile] <i>, o</i> configuration
[C211]...[C215]	<i>C 2 1 1...C 2 1 5</i>	Virtual digital input CMD2.11...CMD2.15 with CANopen® fieldbus module regardless of configuration
[C301]...[C310]	<i>C 3 0 1...C 3 1 0</i>	Virtual digital input CMD3.01...CMD3.10 with a fieldbus module in [I/O profile] <i>, o</i> configuration
[C311]...[C315]	<i>C 3 1 1...C 3 1 5</i>	Virtual digital input CMD3.11...CMD3.15 with a fieldbus module regardless of configuration
[C501]...[C510]	<i>C 5 0 1...C 5 1 0</i>	Virtual digital input CMD5.01...CMD5.10 with integrated Ethernet in [I/O profile] <i>, o</i> configuration NOTE: This selection can be accessed on ATV340...N4E drives.
[C511]...[C515]	<i>C 5 1 1...C 5 1 5</i>	Virtual digital input CMD5.11...CMD5.15 with integrated Ethernet regardless of configuration NOTE: This selection can be accessed on ATV340...N4E drives.

[- Speed Assign] *d* 5 ,

Down speed assignment. See the assignment conditions.

Function active if the assigned input or bit is at 1.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[No]	<i>n o</i>	Factory setting

[+/-Speed limitation] *S r P* ★

Up/Down speed limit.

This parameter limits the variation range with +/– speed as a % of the reference. The ramps used in this function are [Acceleration 2] *R L 2* and [Deceleration 2] *d E 2*.

This parameter can be accessed if [+ Speed Assign] *u* 5 , or [- Speed Assign] *d* 5 , is not set to [No] *n o*.

Setting <i>()</i>	Description
0...50%	Setting range Factory setting: 10%

[Acceleration 2] *A_C 2* ★

Acceleration 2 ramp time.

Time to accelerate from 0 to the [Nominal Motor Freq] *F_r 5*. To have repeatability in ramps, the value of this parameter must be set according to the possibility of the application.

This parameter can be accessed if [+ Speed Assign] *u 5* , or [- Speed Assign] *d 5* , is not set to [No] *n o*.

Setting ()	Description
0.00...6,000 s ⁽¹⁾	Setting range Factory setting: 5.00 s
(1) Range 0.01 to 99.99 s or 0.1 to 999.9 s or 1...6,000 s according to [Ramp increment] <i>i n r</i> .	

[Deceleration 2] *d_E 2* ★

Deceleration 2.

Time to decelerate from the [Nominal Motor Freq] *F_r 5* to 0. To have repeatability in ramps, the value of this parameter must be set according to the possibility of the application.

This parameter can be accessed if [+ Speed Assign] *u 5* , or [- Speed Assign] *d 5* , is not set to [No] *n o*.

Setting ()	Description
0.00...6,000 s ⁽¹⁾	Setting range Factory setting: 5.00 s
(1) Range 0.01 to 99.99 s or 0.1 to 999.9 s or 1...6,000 s according to [Ramp increment] <i>i n r</i> .	

Section 8.17

[Generic functions] - [Jump frequency]

[Jump frequency] *J F* - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Generic functions] → [Jump frequency]

About This Menu

This function helps to prevent prolonged operation within an adjustable range around the regulated frequency.

This function can be used to help to prevent a speed, which could cause resonance, being reached. Setting the function to 0 renders it inactive.

[Skip Frequency] *J F F*

Jump frequency.

Setting (i)	Description
0.0...599.0 Hz	Setting range Factory setting: 0.0 Hz

[Skip Frequency 2] *J F 2*

Jump frequency 2.

Setting (i)	Description
0.0...599.0 Hz	Setting range Factory setting: 0.0 Hz

[3rd Skip Frequency] *J F 3*

Jump frequency 3.

Setting (i)	Description
0.0...599.0 Hz	Setting range Factory setting: 0.0 Hz

[Skip.Freq.Hysteresis] *J F H*

Jump frequency bandwidth.

This parameter can be accessed if at least one skip frequency *J F F*, *J F 2*, or *J F 3* is different from 0.

Skip frequency range: between *J F F* – *J F H* and *J F F* + *J F H* for example.

This adjustment is common to the 3 frequencies *J F F*, *J F 2*, *J F 3*.

Setting (i)	Description
0.1...10.0 Hz	Setting range Factory setting: 1.0 Hz

Section 8.18

[Generic functions] - [PID controller]

What Is in This Section?

This section contains the following topics:

Topic	Page
[PID controller] <i>P</i> , <i>d</i> - Overview	340
[Feedback] <i>F</i> <i>d</i> <i>b</i> - Menu	343
[PID Reference] <i>r</i> <i>F</i> - Menu	348
[PID preset references] <i>P</i> <i>r</i> , - Menu	351
[Reference frequency] <i>r</i> <i>F</i> - Menu	353
[Settings] <i>S</i> <i>E</i> - Menu	354

[PID controller] P_{ref} - Overview

About This Menu

NOTE: This function cannot be used with some other functions.

Block Diagram

The function is activated by assigning an analog input to the PID feedback (measurement).

The PID feedback needs to be assigned to one of the analog inputs AI1 to AI5 or a pulse input, according to whether any I/O extension module has been inserted.

The PID reference needs to be assigned to the following parameters:

- Preset references via digital inputs ([Ref PID Preset 2] $\rightarrow P_2$, [Ref PID Preset 3] $\rightarrow P_3$, [Ref PID Preset 4] $\rightarrow P_4$).
- In accordance with the configuration of [Intern PID Ref] P_{ref} :
 - [Internal PID ref] $\rightarrow P_1$, or
 - Reference A [Ref Freq 1 Config] F_{ref1} or [Ref.1B channel] F_{ref1b} .

Combination Table for Preset PID References:

DI (P_{ref4})	DI (P_{ref2})	$P_{ref2} = \text{no}$	Reference
0	0		$\rightarrow P_1$ or F_{ref1b}
0	1		$\rightarrow P_1$ or F_{ref1b}
1	0		$\rightarrow P_2$
1	1		$\rightarrow P_3$
			$\rightarrow P_4$

A predictive speed reference can be used to initialize the speed on restarting the process.

Scaling of feedback and references:

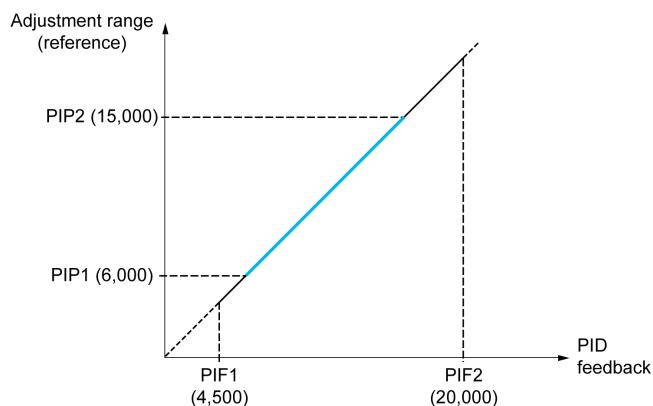
- [Min PID feedback] P_{ref1} , [Max PID feedback] P_{ref2} parameters can be used to scale the PID feedback (sensor range). **This scale MUST be maintained for all other parameters.**
- [Min PID Process] P_{ref1} , [Max PID Process] P_{ref2} parameters can be used to scale the adjustment range, for example the reference. **Check that the adjustment range remains within the sensor range.**

The maximum value of the scaling parameters is 32,767. To facilitate the installation, it is recommended to use values as close as possible to this maximum level, while retaining powers of 10 in relation to the actual values. The scaling is without unit if [Type of control] E_{ctrl} is set to [NA] $\rightarrow R$, in % if set to [OTHER] $\rightarrow H E$.

Example

Adjustment of the volume in a tank, 6...15 m³.

- Probe used 4-20 mA, 4.5 m³ for 4 mA and 20 m³ for 20 mA, with the result that $P_1 F_1 = 4,500$ and $P_2 F_2 = 20,000$.
- Adjustment range 6 to 15 m³, with the result that $P_1 P_1 = 6,000$ (min. reference) and $P_2 P_2 = 15,000$ (max. reference).
- Example references:
 - $r P_1$ (internal reference) = 9,500
 - $r P_2$ (preset reference) = 6,500
 - $r P_3$ (preset reference) = 8,000
 - $r P_4$ (preset reference) = 11,200



Other parameters:

- Reversal of the direction of correction [PID Inversion] $P_1 L$. If [PID Inversion] $P_1 L$ is set to [No] \square , the speed of the motor increases when the detected error is positive (for example pressure control with a compressor). If [PID Inversion] $P_1 L$ is set to [Yes] \checkmark , the speed of the motor decreases when the detected error is positive (for example temperature control using a cooling fan).
- The integral gain may be short-circuited by a digital input.
- A warning on the [PID feedback] $P_1 F$ may be configured.
- A warning on the [PID error] $r P_E$ may be configured.

"Manual - Automatic" Operation with PID

This function combines the PID controller, the preset speeds, and a manual reference. Depending on the state of the digital input, the speed reference is given by the preset speeds or by a manual reference input via the PID function.

Manual PID reference [Manual PID reference] $P_1 \Pi$:

- Analog inputs AI1 to AI5
- Pulse inputs

Predictive speed reference [Predictive Speed Ref] $F P_1$:

- [AI1] $R_1 I$: analog input
- [AI2] $R_2 Z$: analog input
- [AI3] $R_3 E$: analog input
- [AI4] $R_4 U$: analog input if VW3A3203 I/O extension module has been inserted
- [AI5] $R_5 S$: analog input if VW3A3203 I/O extension module has been inserted
- [Ref.Freq-Rmt.Term] $L C L$: Display Terminal
- [Modbus] $M d b$: integrated Modbus
- [Com. Module] $n E t$: fieldbus option module (if inserted)

Setting Up the PID Controller

1. Configuration in PID mode.

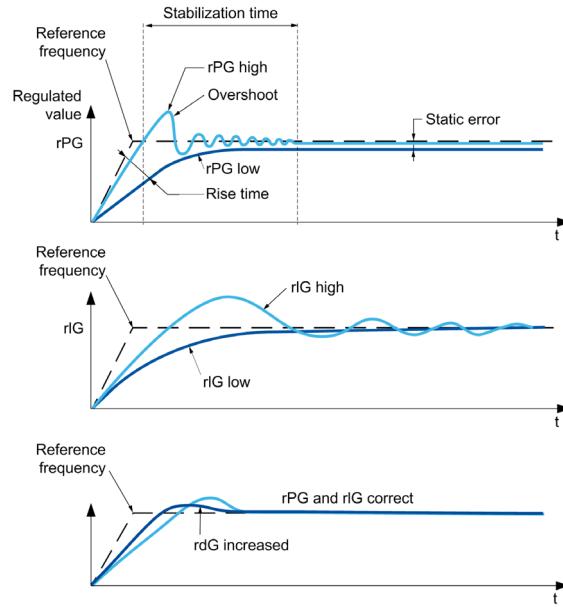
Refer to the Block Diagram ([see page 340](#)).

2. Perform a test in factory settings mode.

To optimize the drive, adjust [PID Prop.Gain] $r_P G$ or [PID Intgl.Gain] $r_I G$ gradually and independently, and observe the effect on the PID feedback in relation to the reference.

3. If the factory settings are unstable or the reference is incorrect.

Step	Action
1	Perform a test with a speed reference in manual mode (without PID controller) and with the drive on load for the speed range of the system: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> In steady state, the speed must be stable and comply with the reference, and the PID feedback signal must be stable. In transient state, the speed must follow the ramp and stabilize quickly, and the PID feedback must follow the speed. If not, see the settings for the drive and/or sensor signal and wiring.
2	Switch to PID mode.
3	Set [PID ramp] $P_r P$ to the minimum permitted by the mechanism without triggering an [DC Bus Overvoltage] $o_b F$.
4	Set the integral gain [PID Intgl.Gain] $r_I G$ to minimum.
5	Leave the derivative gain [PID derivative gain] $r_d G$ at 0.
6	Observe the PID feedback and the reference.
7	Switch the drive ON/OFF a number of times or vary the load or reference rapidly a number of times.
8	Set the proportional gain [PID Prop.Gain] $r_P G$ in order to ascertain the compromise between response time and stability in transient phases (slight overshoot and 1 to 2 oscillations before stabilizing).
9	If the reference varies from the preset value in steady state, gradually increase the integral gain [PID Intgl.Gain] $r_I G$, reduce the proportional gain [PID Prop.Gain] $r_P G$ in the event of instability (pump applications), find a compromise between response time and static precision (see diagram).
10	Lastly, the derivative gain may permit the overshoot to be reduced and the response time to be improved, although this is more difficult to obtain a compromise in terms of stability, as it depends on 3 gains.
11	Perform in-production tests over the whole reference range.



The oscillation frequency depends on the system kinematics:

Parameter	Rise time	Overshoot	Stabilization time	Static error
rPG +	--	+	=	-
rIG +	-	++	+	--
rdG +	=	-	-	=

[Feedback] F d b - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Generic functions] → [PID controller] → [Feedback]

About This Menu

NOTE: This function cannot be used with some other functions.

[Type of Control] E o C t

Type of control for the PID = unit choice.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[nA]	n R	Nothing special Factory setting
[Other]	o E h E r	Other control and unit

[PID Feedback] P , F

PID controller feedback.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[No]	n o	Not assigned Factory setting
[AI1]...[AI3]	R , I...R , 3	Analog input AI1...AI3
[AI4]...[AI5]	R , 4...R , 5	Analog input AI4...AI5 if VW3A3203 I/O extension module has been inserted
[AI Virtual 1]	R , V , I	Virtual analogic input 1
[RP]	P ,	Pulse input NOTE: This selection can be accessed on drives with a power below than 30 kW.

[AI1 Type] R , I E ★

Configuration of analog input AI1.

This parameter can be accessed if [PID Feedback] P , F is set to [AI1] R , I.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Voltage]	I D u	0-10 Vdc Factory setting
[Current]	D R	0-20 mA

[AI1 min value] u , L , I ★

AI1 voltage scaling parameter of 0%.

This parameter can be accessed if:

- [PID Feedback] P , F is set to [AI1] R , I, and
- [AI1 Type] R , I E is set to [Voltage] I D u.

Setting	Description
0.0...10.0 Vdc	Setting range Factory setting: 0.0 Vdc

[AI1 max value] $\text{u}, \text{H} \ 1$ ★

AI1 voltage scaling parameter of 100%.

This parameter can be accessed if:

- [PID Feedback] P, F is set to [AI1] R, I , and
- [AI1 Type] R, IE is set to [Voltage] $I\text{D}\text{u}$.

Setting	Description
0.0...10.0 Vdc	Setting range Factory setting: 10.0 Vdc

[AI1 min. value] $\text{L}, \text{r}, \text{L} \ 1$ ★

AI1 current scaling parameter of 0%.

This parameter can be accessed if:

- [PID Feedback] P, F is set to [AI1] R, I , and
- [AI1 Type] R, IE is set to [Current] $D\text{R}$.

Setting	Description
0.0...20.0 mA	Setting range Factory setting: 0.0 mA

[AI1 max. value] $\text{L}, \text{r}, \text{H} \ 1$ ★

AI1 current scaling parameter of 100%.

This parameter can be accessed if:

- [PID Feedback] P, F is set to [AI1] R, I , and
- [AI1 Type] R, IE is set to [Current] $D\text{R}$.

Setting	Description
0.0...20.0 mA	Setting range Factory setting: 20.0 mA

[AI2 Type] $R, 2E$ ★

Configuration of analog input AI2.

This parameter can be accessed if [PID Feedback] P, F is set to [AI2] $R, 2$

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Voltage]	$I\text{D}\text{u}$	0-10 Vdc
[Voltage +/-]	$\text{n } I\text{D}\text{u}$	-10/+10 Vdc Factory setting

[AI2 min value] $\text{u}, \text{L}, \text{2}$ ★

AI2 voltage scaling parameter of 0%.

This parameter can be accessed if:

- [PID Feedback] P, F is set to [AI2] $R, 2$, and
- [AI2 Type] $R, 2E$ is set to [Voltage] $I\text{D}\text{u}$.

Identical to [AI1 min value] $\text{u}, \text{L}, \text{1}$ (*see page 343*).

[AI2 max value] $\text{u}, \text{H}, \text{2}$ ★

AI2 voltage scaling parameter of 100%.

This parameter can be accessed if:

- [PID Feedback] P, F is set to [AI2] $R, 2$, and
- [AI2 Type] $R, 2E$ is set to [Voltage] $I\text{D}\text{u}$.

Identical to [AI1 max value] $\text{u}, \text{H}, \text{1}$ (*see page 344*).

[AI3 Type] R , 3 E ★

Configuration of analog input AI3.

This parameter can be accessed if [PID Feedback] P , F is set to [AI3] R , 3.

Identical to [AI2 Type] R , 2 E ([see page 344](#)).

[AI3 min value] u , L 3 ★

AI3 voltage scaling parameter of 0%.

This parameter can be accessed if:

- [PID Feedback] P , F is set to [AI3] R , 3, and
- [AI3 Type] R , 3 E is set to [Voltage] 10 u.

Identical to [AI1 min value] u , L 1 ([see page 343](#)).

[AI3 max value] u , H 3 ★

AI3 voltage scaling parameter of 100%.

This parameter can be accessed if:

- [PID Feedback] P , F is set to [AI3] R , 3, and
- [AI3 Type] R , 3 E is set to [Voltage] 10 u.

Identical to [AI1 max value] u , H 1 ([see page 344](#)).

[AI3 min. value] L r L 3 ★

AI3 current scaling parameter of 0%.

This parameter can be accessed if:

- [PID Feedback] P , F is set to [AI3] R , 3, and
- [AI3 Type] R , 3 E is set to [Current] 0 A.

Identical to [AI1 min. value] L r L 1 ([see page 344](#)).

[AI3 max. value] L r H 3 ★

AI3 current scaling parameter of 100%.

This parameter can be accessed if:

- [PID Feedback] P , F is set to [AI3] R , 3, and
- [AI3 Type] R , 3 E is set to [Current] 0 A.

Identical to [AI1 max. value] L r H 1 ([see page 344](#)).

[AI4 Type] R , 4 E ★

Configuration of analog input AI4.

This parameter can be accessed if:

- VW3A3203 I/O extension module has been inserted, and
- [PID Feedback] P , F is set to [AI4] R , 4.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Voltage]	10 u	0-10 Vdc
[Current]	0 A	0-20 mA Factory setting
[Voltage +/-]	-10 u	-10/+10 Vdc

[AI4 min value] u , L 4 ★

AI4 voltage scaling parameter of 0%.

This parameter can be accessed if:

- [PID Feedback] P , F is set to [AI4] R , 4, and
- [AI4 Type] R , 4 E is set to [Voltage] 10 u.

Identical to [AI1 min value] u , L 1 ([see page 343](#)).

[AI4 max value]

AI4 voltage scaling parameter of 100%.

This parameter can be accessed if:

- [PID Feedback] P_F is set to [AI4] $R_{4,4}$, and
- [AI4 Type] $R_{4,4E}$ is set to [Voltage] $I\Omega u$.

Identical to [AI1 max value] $u_{1,H} I$ ([see page 344](#)).

[AI4 min. value]

AI4 current scaling parameter of 0%.

This parameter can be accessed if:

- [PID Feedback] P_F is set to [AI4] $R_{4,4}$, and
- [AI4 Type] $R_{4,4E}$ is set to [Current] DA .

Identical to [AI1 min. value] $L_{r,L} I$ ([see page 344](#)).

[AI4 max. value]

AI4 current scaling parameter of 100%.

This parameter can be accessed if:

- [PID Feedback] P_F is set to [AI4] $R_{4,4}$, and
- [AI4 Type] $R_{4,4E}$ is set to [Current] DA .

Identical to [AI1 max. value] $L_{r,H} I$ ([see page 344](#)).

[AI5 Type]

Configuration of analog input AI5.

This parameter can be accessed if:

- VW3A3203 I/O extension module has been inserted, and
- [PID Feedback] P_F is set to [AI5] $R_{5,5}$.

Identical to [AI4 Type] $R_{4,4E}$.

[AI5 min value]

AI5 voltage scaling parameter of 0%.

This parameter can be accessed if:

- [PID Feedback] P_F is set to [AI5] $R_{5,5}$, and
- [AI4 Type] $R_{5,5E}$ is set to [Voltage] $I\Omega u$.

Identical to [AI1 min value] $u_{1,L} I$ ([see page 343](#)).

[AI5 max value]

AI5 voltage scaling parameter of 100%.

This parameter can be accessed if:

- [PID Feedback] P_F is set to [AI5] $R_{5,5}$, and
- [AI4 Type] $R_{5,5E}$ is set to [Voltage] $I\Omega u$.

Identical to [AI1 max value] $u_{1,H} I$ ([see page 344](#)).

[AI5 min. value]

AI5 current scaling parameter of 0%.

This parameter can be accessed if:

- [PID Feedback] P_F is set to [AI5] $R_{5,5}$, and
- [AI5 Type] $R_{5,5E}$ is set to [Current] DA .

Identical to [AI1 min. value] $L_{r,L} I$ ([see page 344](#)).

[AI5 max. value] *C r H 5*

AI5 current scaling parameter of 100%.

This parameter can be accessed if:

- [PID Feedback] *P ,F* is set to [AI5] *R ,S*, and
- [AI5 Type] *R ,S E* is set to [Current] *D R*.

Identical to [AI1 max. value] *C r H 1* (*see page 344*).

[Min PID feedback] *P ,F 1*

Minimum PID feedback.

This parameter can be accessed if [PID Feedback] *P ,F* is not set to [Not Configured] *n o*.

Setting ()	Description
0...[Max PID feedback] <i>P ,F 2</i>	Setting range Factory setting: 100

[Max PID feedback] *P ,F 2*

Maximum PID feedback.

This parameter can be accessed if [PID Feedback] *P ,F* is not set to [Not Configured] *n o*.

Setting ()	Description
[Min PID feedback] <i>P ,F 1</i> ...32,767	Setting range Factory setting: 1,000

[PID feedback] *r P F*

Value for PID feedback, display only.

This parameter can be accessed if [PID Feedback] *P ,F* is not set to [Not Configured] *n o*.

Setting	Description
0...65,535	Setting range Factory setting: 0

[Min Fbk Warning] *P r L*

Minimum feedback level warning.

This parameter can be accessed if [PID Feedback] *P ,F* is not set to [Not Configured] *n o*.

Setting ()	Description
0...65,535	Setting range Factory setting: 100

[Max Fbk Warning] *P r H*

Maximum feedback level warning.

This parameter can be accessed if [PID Feedback] *P ,F* is not set to [Not Configured] *n o*.

Setting ()	Description
0...65,535	Setting range Factory setting: 1,000

[PID Reference] P_{ref} - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Generic functions] → [PID controller] → [PID Reference]

About This Menu

NOTE: This function cannot be used with some other functions.

[Intern PID Ref] $P_{ref,int}$

Internal PID reference.

This parameter can be accessed if [PID Feedback] P_{fb} is not set to [Not Configured] $n\ o$.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[No]	$n\ o$	The PID controller reference is given by [Ref Freq 1 Config] $F_{ref,1}$ or [Ref.1B channel] $F_{ref,1b}$ with summing/subtraction/multiplication functions. Refer to the block diagram. Factory setting
[Yes]	$y\ e\ s$	The PID controller reference is internal via [Internal PID ref] $P_{ref,int}$.

[Ref Freq 1 Config] $F_{ref,1}$

Configuration reference frequency 1.

This parameter can be accessed if:

- [PID Feedback] P_{fb} is not set to [Not Configured] $n\ o$, and
- [Intern PID Ref] $P_{ref,int}$ is set to [No] $n\ o$.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Not Configured]	$n\ o$	Not assigned
[AI1]	$R_{in,1}$	Analog input AI1 Factory Setting
[AI2]...[AI3]	$R_{in,2} \dots R_{in,3}$	Analog input AI2...AI3 NOTE: AI3 selection can be accessed on drives with a power greater than 22 kW.
[AI4]...[AI5]	$R_{in,4} \dots R_{in,5}$	Analog input AI4...AI5 if VW3A3203 I/O extension module has been inserted
[Ref Frequency via DI]	$u\ P\ d\ t$	Up/Down function is assigned by DIx
[HMI]	$L\ C\ C$	Reference Frequency via remote terminal
[Modbus]	$\Pi\ d\ b$	Reference frequency via Modbus
[Com. Module]	$n\ E\ t$	Reference frequency via fieldbus module if a fieldbus module has been inserted
[Embedded Ethernet]	$E\ t\ H$	Embedded Ethernet NOTE: This selection can be accessed on ATV340...N4E drives.
[RP]	P_{ref}	Pulse input NOTE: This selection can be accessed on drives with a power below than 30 kW.

[Min PID reference] P_{min}

Minimum PID reference.

This parameter can be accessed if [PID Feedback] P_{fb} is not set to [Not Configured] $n\ o$.

Setting (1)	Description
[Min PID feedback] $P_{fb,1}$...[Max PID reference] $P_{fb,2}$	Setting range Factory setting: 150

[Max PID reference] $P_{1,2}$ ★

Maximum PID reference.

This parameter can be accessed if [PID Feedback] $P_{1,F}$ is not set to [Not Configured] \square .

Setting ()	Description
[Min PID reference] $P_{1,P}$... [Max PID feedback] $P_{1,F}$	Setting range Factory setting: 900

[Internal PID ref] r_P ★

Internal PID reference.

This parameter can be accessed if:

- [PID Feedback] $P_{1,F}$ is not set to [Not Configured] \square , and
- [Intern PID Ref] $P_{1,r}$ is set to [Yes] \checkmark .

Setting ()	Description
[Min PID reference] $P_{1,P}$... [Max PID reference] $P_{1,P}$	Setting range Factory setting: 150

[Auto/Manual assign.] $P_{A,u}$ ★

Auto/Manual select input.

This parameter can be accessed if [PID Feedback] $P_{1,F}$ is not set to [Not Configured] \square .

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Not Assigned]	\square	Not assigned Factory setting
[DI1]...[DI8]	$L_{1,I}...L_{8,B}$	Digital input DI1...DI8 NOTE: DI8 selection can be accessed on drives with a power greater than 22 kW.
[DI11]...[DI16]	$L_{11,I}...L_{16,B}$	Digital input DI11...DI16 if VW3A3203 I/O extension module has been inserted
[CD00]...[CD10]	$C_{d00}...C_{d10}$	Virtual digital input CMD.0...CMD.10 in [I/O profile] \square configuration
[CD11]...[CD15]	$C_{d11}...C_{d15}$	Virtual digital input CMD.11...CMD.15 regardless of configuration
[C101]...[C110]	$C_{101}...C_{110}$	Virtual digital input CMD1.01...CMD1.10 with integrated Modbus Serial in [I/O profile] \square configuration
[C111]...[C115]	$C_{111}...C_{115}$	Virtual digital input CMD1.11...CMD1.15 with integrated Modbus Serial regardless of configuration
[C201]...[C210]	$C_{201}...C_{210}$	Virtual digital input CMD2.01...CMD2.10 with CANopen® fieldbus module in [I/O profile] \square configuration
[C211]...[C215]	$C_{211}...C_{215}$	Virtual digital input CMD2.11...CMD2.15 with CANopen® fieldbus module regardless of configuration
[C301]...[C310]	$C_{301}...C_{310}$	Virtual digital input CMD3.01...CMD3.10 with a fieldbus module in [I/O profile] \square configuration
[C311]...[C315]	$C_{311}...C_{315}$	Virtual digital input CMD3.11...CMD3.15 with a fieldbus module regardless of configuration
[C501]...[C510]	$C_{501}...C_{510}$	Virtual digital input CMD5.01...CMD5.10 with integrated Ethernet in [I/O profile] \square configuration NOTE: This selection can be accessed on ATV340...N4E drives.
[C511]...[C515]	$C_{511}...C_{515}$	Virtual digital input CMD5.11...CMD5.15 with integrated Ethernet regardless of configuration NOTE: This selection can be accessed on ATV340...N4E drives.

[Manual PID Reference] P_1, P_7 ★

Manual PID reference.

Reference input in manual mode.

This parameter can be accessed if:

- [PID Feedback] P_1, F is not set to [Not Configured] $n\text{ o}$, and
- [Auto/Manual assign.] P_1, M is not set to [No] $n\text{ o}$.

The preset speeds are active on the manual reference if they have been configured.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[No]	$n\text{ o}$	Not assigned Factory setting
[AI1]...[AI3]	$R_1, 1 \dots R_1, 3$	Analog input AI1...AI3
[AI4]...[AI5]	$R_1, 4 \dots R_1, 5$	Analog input AI4...AI5 if VW3A3203 I/O extension module has been inserted
[RP]	$P_1,$	Pulse input NOTE: This selection can be accessed on drives with a power below than 30 kW.

[PID preset references] *P r 1* - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Generic functions] → [PID controller] → [Reference frequency] → [PID preset references]

About This Menu

The function can be accessed if [PID feedback ass.] *P r F* is assigned.

[2 PID Preset Assign] *P r 2*

2 PID Preset assignment.

If the assigned input or bit is at 0, the function is inactive.

If the assigned input or bit is at 1, the function is active.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Not Assigned]	<i>n/a</i>	Not assigned Factory setting
[DI1]...[DI8]	<i>L 1 I...L 8 I</i>	Digital input DI1...DI8 NOTE: DI8 selection can be accessed on drives with a power greater than 22 kW.
[DI11]...[DI16]	<i>L 11 I...L 16 I</i>	Digital input DI11...DI16 if VW3A3203 I/O extension module has been inserted
[CD00]...[CD10]	<i>C d 0 0 ... C d 1 0</i>	Virtual digital input CMD.0...CMD.10 in [I/O profile] <i>1</i> , <i>a</i> configuration
[CD11]...[CD15]	<i>C d 1 1 ... C d 1 5</i>	Virtual digital input CMD.11...CMD.15 regardless of configuration
[C101]...[C110]	<i>C 1 0 1 I ... C 1 1 0</i>	Virtual digital input CMD1.01...CMD1.10 with integrated Modbus Serial in [I/O profile] <i>1</i> , <i>a</i> configuration
[C111]...[C115]	<i>C 1 1 1 I ... C 1 1 5</i>	Virtual digital input CMD1.11...CMD1.15 with integrated Modbus Serial regardless of configuration
[C201]...[C210]	<i>C 2 0 1 I ... C 2 1 0</i>	Virtual digital input CMD2.01...CMD2.10 with CANopen® fieldbus module in [I/O profile] <i>1</i> , <i>a</i> configuration
[C211]...[C215]	<i>C 2 1 1 I ... C 2 1 5</i>	Virtual digital input CMD2.11...CMD2.15 with CANopen® fieldbus module regardless of configuration
[C301]...[C310]	<i>C 3 0 1 I ... C 3 1 0</i>	Virtual digital input CMD3.01...CMD3.10 with a fieldbus module in [I/O profile] <i>1</i> , <i>a</i> configuration
[C311]...[C315]	<i>C 3 1 1 I ... C 3 1 5</i>	Virtual digital input CMD3.11...CMD3.15 with a fieldbus module regardless of configuration
[C501]...[C510]	<i>C 5 0 1 I ... C 5 1 0</i>	Virtual digital input CMD5.01...CMD5.10 with integrated Ethernet in [I/O profile] <i>1</i> , <i>a</i> configuration NOTE: This selection can be accessed on ATV340...N4E drives.
[C511]...[C515]	<i>C 5 1 1 I ... C 5 1 5</i>	Virtual digital input CMD5.11...CMD5.15 with integrated Ethernet regardless of configuration NOTE: This selection can be accessed on ATV340...N4E drives.

[4 PID Preset Assign] *P r 4*

4 PID Preset assignment.

Identical to [2 PID Preset Assign] *P r 2* (see page 351).

Verify that [2 PID Preset Assign] *P r 2* has been assigned before assigning this function.

[Ref PID Preset 2] *P 2*

Second PID preset reference.

This parameter can be accessed only if [2 PID Preset Assign] *P r 2* is assigned.

Setting (i)	Description
[Min PID reference] <i>P ,P 1</i> ...[Max PID reference] <i>P ,P 2</i>	Setting range Factory setting: 300

[Ref PID Preset 3] *P 3*

Third PID preset reference.

This parameter can be accessed only if [4 PID Preset Assign] *P r 4* is assigned.

Setting (i)	Description
[Min PID reference] <i>P ,P 1</i> ...[Max PID reference] <i>P ,P 2</i>	Setting range Factory setting: 600

[Ref PID Preset 4] *P 4*

Fourth PID preset reference.

This parameter can be accessed only if [4 PID Preset Assign] *P r 4* and [2 PID Preset Assign] *P r 2* are assigned.

Setting (i)	Description
[Min PID reference] <i>P ,P 1</i> ...[Max PID reference] <i>P ,P 2</i>	Setting range Factory setting: 900

[Reference frequency] *F* - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Generic functions] → [PID controller] → [Reference frequency]

[Predictive Speed Ref] *F P*, ★

Predictive speed reference.

This parameter can be accessed if [Access Level] *L A L* is set to [Expert] *E P r*.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[No]	<i>n o</i>	Not assigned Factory setting
[AI1]...[AI3]	<i>R , I...R , 3</i>	Analog input AI1...AI3
[AI4]...[AI5]	<i>R , 4...R , 5</i>	Analog input AI4...AI5 if VW3A3203 I/O extension module has been inserted
[Ref.Freq-Rmt.Term]	<i>L C C</i>	Reference frequency via remote terminal
[Ref. Freq-Modbus]	<i>N d b</i>	Reference frequency via Modbus
[Ref. Freq-Com. Module]	<i>n E t</i>	Reference frequency via communication module
[RP]	<i>P ,</i>	Pulse input NOTE: This selection can be accessed on drives with a power below than 30 kW.

[Speed Input %] *P S r*, ★

PID speed input % reference.

This parameter can be accessed if [Access Level] *L A L* is set to [Expert] *E P r*.

Setting ()	Description
1...100%	Setting range Factory setting: 100%

[Settings] - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Generic functions] → [PID controller] → [Settings]

About This Menu

Following parameters can be accessed if [PID Feedback] P_F is not set to [Not Configured] .

NOTE: This function cannot be used with some other functions.

[PID Prop.Gain]

PID proportional gain.

Setting 	Description
0.01...100.00	Setting range Factory setting: 1.00

[PI Intgl.Gain]

Integral gain.

Setting 	Description
0.01...100.00	Setting range Factory setting: 1.00

[PID derivative gain]

Derivative gain.

Setting 	Description
0.00...100.00	Setting range Factory setting: 0.00

[PID ramp]

PID acceleration/deceleration ramp, defined to go from [Min PID reference] P_{min} to [Max PID reference] P_{max} and conversely.

Setting 	Description
0.0...99.9 s	Setting range Factory setting: 0.0 s

[PID Inversion]

PID inversion.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[No]		No Factory setting
[Yes]		Yes

[PID Min Output]

PID controller minimum output in Hz.

Setting 	Description
	Setting range Factory setting: 0.0 Hz

[PID Max Output] P o H ★

PID controller maximum output in Hz.

Setting ()	Description
	Setting range Factory setting: 60.0 Hz

[PID Error Warning] P E r ★

PID error warning.

Setting ()	Description
0...65,535	Setting range Factory setting: 100

[PID Integral OFF] P , S ★

Integral shunt.

If the assigned input or bit is at 0, the function is inactive (the PID integral is enabled).

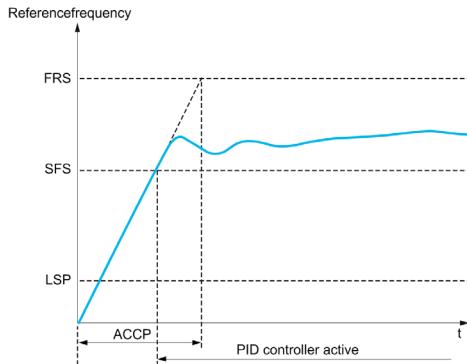
If the assigned input or bit is at 1, the function is active (the PID integral is disabled).

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Not Assigned]	n o	Not assigned Factory setting
[DI1]...[DI8]	L , I...L , B	Digital input DI1...DI8 NOTE: DI8 selection can be accessed on drives with a power greater than 22 kW.
[DI11]...[DI16]	L , I I...L , I B	Digital input DI11...DI16 if VW3A3203 I/O extension module has been inserted
[CD00]...[CD10]	C d 0 0...C d 1 0	Virtual digital input CMD.0...CMD.10 in [I/O profile] , o configuration
[CD11]...[CD15]	C d 1 1...C d 1 5	Virtual digital input CMD.11...CMD.15 regardless of configuration
[C101]...[C110]	C 1 0 I...C 1 1 0	Virtual digital input CMD1.01...CMD1.10 with integrated Modbus Serial in [I/O profile] , o configuration
[C111]...[C115]	C 1 1 I...C 1 1 5	Virtual digital input CMD1.11...CMD1.15 with integrated Modbus Serial regardless of configuration
[C201]...[C210]	C 2 0 I...C 2 1 0	Virtual digital input CMD2.01...CMD2.10 with CANopen® fieldbus module in [I/O profile] , o configuration
[C211]...[C215]	C 2 1 I...C 2 1 5	Virtual digital input CMD2.11...CMD2.15 with CANopen® fieldbus module regardless of configuration
[C301]...[C310]	C 3 0 I...C 3 1 0	Virtual digital input CMD3.01...CMD3.10 with a fieldbus module in [I/O profile] , o configuration
[C311]...[C315]	C 3 1 I...C 3 1 5	Virtual digital input CMD3.11...CMD3.15 with a fieldbus module regardless of configuration
[C501]...[C510]	C 5 0 I...C 5 1 0	Virtual digital input CMD5.01...CMD5.10 with integrated Ethernet in [I/O profile] , o configuration NOTE: This selection can be accessed on ATV340...N4E drives.
[C511]...[C515]	C 5 1 I...C 5 1 5	Virtual digital input CMD5.11...CMD5.15 with integrated Ethernet regardless of configuration NOTE: This selection can be accessed on ATV340...N4E drives.

[PID acceleration time] R C C P ★

PID: acceleration during start-up.

PID start ramp can be applied before starting the PID controller to allow reaching quickly the PID reference without increasing PID gains.



Setting (C)	Description
0.01...99,99 s	Setting range Factory setting: 5.00 s
(1) Range 0.01 to 99.99 s or 0.1 to 999.9 s or 1 to 6,000 according to [Ramp increment] ↴ ↵ ↶ ↷	

[PID Start Ref Freq] S F 5 ★

PID start reference frequency.

Setting (C)	Description
	Setting range If [PID Start Ref Freq] S F 5 is lower than [Low speed] L 5 P, this function has no effect. Factory setting: 0.0 Hz

Section 8.19

[Generic functions] - [Threshold reached]

[Threshold reached] E H r E - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Generic functions] → [Threshold reached]

[Low I Threshold] E E d L

Current low threshold value.

Setting ()	Description
0...65,535 A	Setting range Factory setting: 0 A

[High Current Thd] E E d H

Current high threshold value.

Setting ()	Description
0...65,535 A	Setting range Factory setting: Drive nominal current

[Low Freq. Threshold] F E d L

Motor low frequency threshold.

Setting ()	Description
0.0...599.0 Hz	Setting range Factory setting: 0.0 Hz

[Motor Freq Thd] F E d

Motor frequency threshold.

Setting ()	Description
0.0...599.0 Hz	Setting range Factory setting: 50.0 Hz

[2 Freq. Threshold] F 2 d L

Motor low frequency second threshold.

Setting ()	Description
0.0...599.0 Hz	Setting range Factory setting: 0.0 Hz

[Freq. threshold 2] F 2 d

Motor frequency threshold 2.

Setting ()	Description
0.0...599.0 Hz	Setting range Factory setting: 50.0 Hz

[Motor Thermal Thd] *E E d*

Motor thermal state threshold.

Setting (i)	Description
0...118%	Setting range Factory setting: 100%

[Motor2 therm. level] *E E d 2*

Motor 2 thermal state threshold.

Setting (i)	Description
0...118%	Setting range Factory setting: 100%

[Motor3 therm. level] *E E d 3*

Motor 3 thermal state threshold.

Setting (i)	Description
0...118%	Setting range Factory setting: 100%

[Motor4 therm. level] *E E d 4*

Motor 4 thermal state threshold.

Setting (i)	Description
0...118%	Setting range Factory setting: 100%

[Reference high Thd] *r E d*

Reference frequency high threshold.

Setting (i)	Description
0.0...599.0 Hz	Setting range Factory setting: 0.0 Hz

[Reference low Thd] *r E d L*

Reference frequency low threshold.

Setting (i)	Description
0.0...599.0 Hz	Setting range Factory setting: 0.0 Hz

[High torque thd.] E E H

High torque threshold.

Setting ()	Description
-300...300%	Setting range Factory setting: 100%

[Low torque thd.] E E L

Low torque threshold.

Setting ()	Description
-300...300%	Setting range Factory setting: 50%

Section 8.20

[Generic functions] - [Mains contactor command]

[Mains contactor command] *L L E* - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Generic functions] → [Mains contactor command]

About This Menu

The line contactor closes every time a run command (forward or reverse) is sent and opens after every stop, as soon as the drive is locked. For example, if the stop mode is stop on ramp, the contactor opens when the motor reaches zero speed.

NOTE: The drive control power supply must be provided via an external 24 Vdc source.

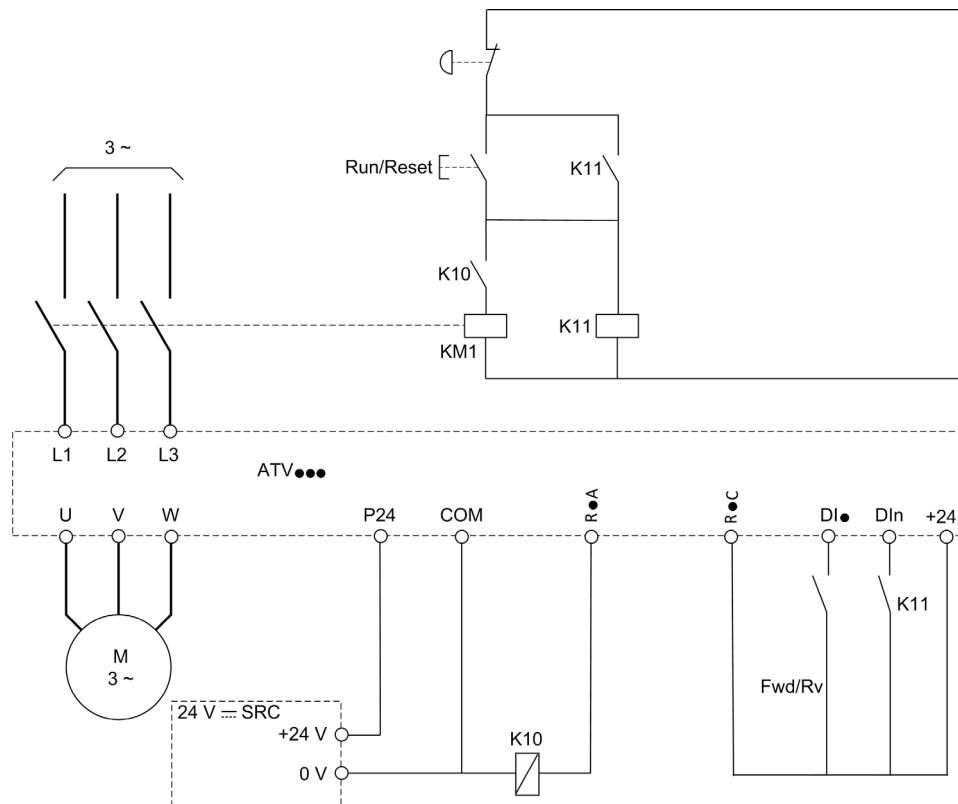
NOTICE

DAMAGE TO THE DRIVE

Do not use this function at intervals of less than 60 s.

Failure to follow these instructions can result in equipment damage.

Example circuit (24 Vdc power supply):



DI• = Run command [Forward] *F r d* or [Reverse] *r r S*

R•A/R•C = [Mains Contactor] *L L E*

DIn = [Drive Lock] *L E S*

NOTE: The Run/Reset key must be pressed once the emergency stop key has been released.

[Mains Contactor] L L C

Mains contactor control.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[No]	n o	Not assigned Factory setting
[R2]...[R3]	r 2...r 3	Relay output R2...R3 NOTE: R3 selection can be accessed on drives with a power greater than 22 kW.
[R4]...[R6]	r 4...r 6	Relay output R4...R6 if VW3A3204 relay output option module has been inserted
[DQ11 Digital Output]...[DQ12 Digital Output]	d o 11...d o 12	Digital output DQ11...DQ12 if VW3A3203 I/O extension module has been inserted

[Drive Lock] L E 5 ★

Drive lock assignment.

This parameter can be accessed if [Mains Contactor] L L C is not set to [No] n o.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Not Assigned]	n o	Not assigned Factory setting
[CD00]...[CD10]	C d 0 0...C d 1 0	Virtual digital input CMD.0...CMD.10 in [I/O profile] , o configuration
[CD11]...[CD15]	C d 1 1...C d 1 5	Virtual digital input CMD.11...CMD.15 regardless of configuration
[C101]...[C110]	C 1 0 1...C 1 1 0	Virtual digital input CMD1.01...CMD1.10 with integrated Modbus Serial in [I/O profile] , o configuration
[C111]...[C115]	C 1 1 1...C 1 1 5	Virtual digital input CMD1.11...CMD1.15 with integrated Modbus Serial regardless of configuration
[C201]...[C210]	C 2 0 1...C 2 1 0	Virtual digital input CMD2.01...CMD2.10 with CANopen® fieldbus module in [I/O profile] , o configuration
[C211]...[C215]	C 2 1 1...C 2 1 5	Virtual digital input CMD2.11...CMD2.15 with CANopen® fieldbus module regardless of configuration
[C301]...[C310]	C 3 0 1...C 3 1 0	Virtual digital input CMD3.01...CMD3.10 with a fieldbus module in [I/O profile] , o configuration
[C311]...[C315]	C 3 1 1...C 3 1 5	Virtual digital input CMD3.11...CMD3.15 with a fieldbus module regardless of configuration
[C501]...[C510]	C 5 0 1...C 5 1 0	Virtual digital input CMD5.01...CMD5.10 with integrated Ethernet in [I/O profile] , o configuration NOTE: This selection can be accessed on ATV340...N4E drives.
[C511]...[C515]	C 5 1 1...C 5 1 5	Virtual digital input CMD5.11...CMD5.15 with integrated Ethernet regardless of configuration NOTE: This selection can be accessed on ATV340...N4E drives.
[DI1 (Low level)]...[DI8 (Low level)]	L 1 L...L 8 L	Digital input DI1...DI8 used at low level NOTE: DI8 low level selection can be accessed on drives with a power greater than 22 kW.
[DI11 (Low level)]...[DI16 (Low level)]	L 11 L...L 16 L	Digital input DI11...DI16 used at low level if VW3A3203 I/O extension module has been inserted

[Mains V. time out] L C E

Monitoring time for closing of line contactor.

Setting	Description
1...999 s	Setting range Factory setting: 5 s

Section 8.21

[Generic functions] - [Reverse disable]

[Reverse disable] *r E 1 n* - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Generic functions] → [Reverse disable]

[Reverse Disable] *r 1 n*

Reverse direction disable.

Reverse direction requests sent by digital inputs are taken into account.

Reverse direction requests sent by the Display Terminal or sent by the line are not taken into account.

Any reverse speed reference originating from the PID, summing input, and so on, is interpreted as a zero reference (0 Hz).

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[No]	<i>n o</i>	No Factory setting
[Yes]	<i>y E 5</i>	Yes

Section 8.22

[Generic functions] - [Torque limitation]

[Torque limitation] $E \square L$ - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] \rightarrow [Generic functions] \rightarrow [Torque limitation]

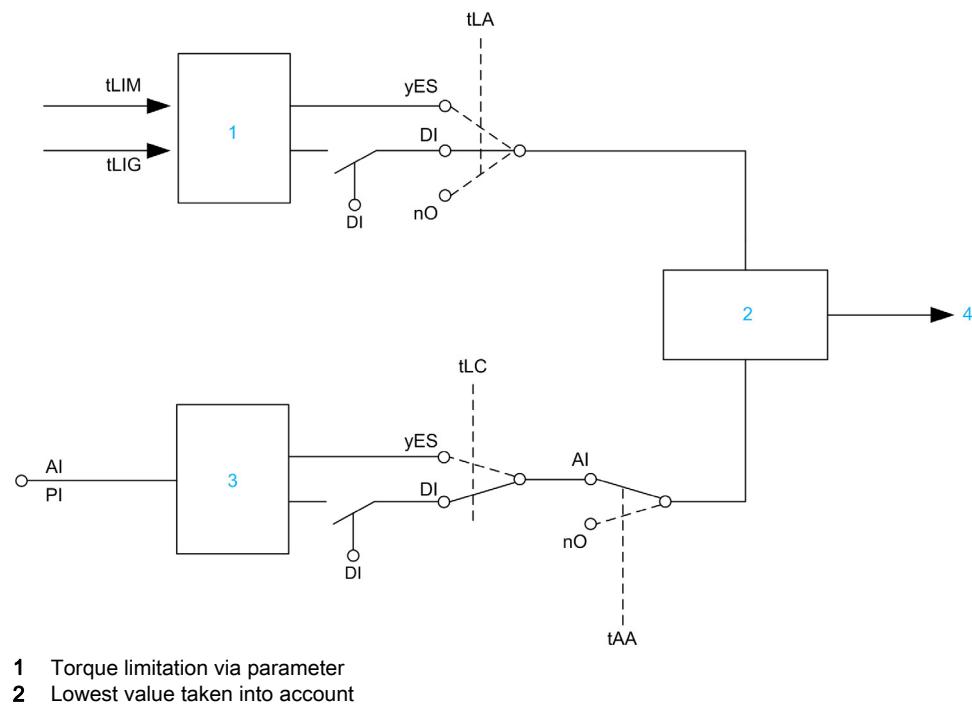
About This Menu

There are 2 types of torque limitation:

- With a value that is fixed by a parameter
- With a value that is set by an analog input (AI or pulse)

If both types are enabled, the lowest value is taken into account.

These 2 types can be configured or switched remotely using a digital input or via the communication bus.



[Torque limit activ.] $E\ L\ R$

Activation of the permanent torque limitation.

If the assigned input or bit is at 0, the function is inactive.

If the assigned input or bit is at 1, the function is active.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Not Assigned]	no	Not assigned Factory setting
[Yes]	$Y\ E\ S$	Yes
[DI1]...[DI8]	$L\ ,\ I\ ...L\ ,\ B$	Digital input DI1...DI8 NOTE: DI8 selection can be accessed on drives with a power greater than 22 kW.
[DI11]...[DI16]	$L\ ,\ I\ I\ ...L\ ,\ I\ B$	Digital input DI11...DI16 if VW3A3203 I/O extension module has been inserted
[CD00]...[CD10]	$C\ d\ 0\ 0\ ...C\ d\ 1\ 0$	Virtual digital input CMD.0...CMD.10 in [I/O profile] \rightarrow configuration
[CD11]...[CD15]	$C\ d\ 1\ 1\ ...C\ d\ 1\ 5$	Virtual digital input CMD.11...CMD.15 regardless of configuration
[C101]...[C110]	$C\ 1\ 0\ I\ ...C\ 1\ 1\ 0$	Virtual digital input CMD1.01...CMD1.10 with integrated Modbus Serial in [I/O profile] \rightarrow configuration
[C111]...[C115]	$C\ 1\ 1\ I\ ...C\ 1\ 1\ 5$	Virtual digital input CMD1.11...CMD1.15 with integrated Modbus Serial regardless of configuration
[C201]...[C210]	$C\ 2\ 0\ I\ ...C\ 2\ 1\ 0$	Virtual digital input CMD2.01...CMD2.10 with CANopen® fieldbus module in [I/O profile] \rightarrow configuration
[C211]...[C215]	$C\ 2\ 1\ I\ ...C\ 2\ 1\ 5$	Virtual digital input CMD2.11...CMD2.15 with CANopen® fieldbus module regardless of configuration
[C301]...[C310]	$C\ 3\ 0\ I\ ...C\ 3\ 1\ 0$	Virtual digital input CMD3.01...CMD3.10 with a fieldbus module in [I/O profile] \rightarrow configuration
[C311]...[C315]	$C\ 3\ 1\ I\ ...C\ 3\ 1\ 5$	Virtual digital input CMD3.11...CMD3.15 with a fieldbus module regardless of configuration
[C501]...[C510]	$C\ 5\ 0\ I\ ...C\ 5\ 1\ 0$	Virtual digital input CMD5.01...CMD5.10 with integrated Ethernet in [I/O profile] \rightarrow configuration NOTE: This selection can be accessed on ATV340...N4E drives.
[C511]...[C515]	$C\ 5\ 1\ I\ ...C\ 5\ 1\ 5$	Virtual digital input CMD5.11...CMD5.15 with integrated Ethernet regardless of configuration NOTE: This selection can be accessed on ATV340...N4E drives.

[Torque increment] $\rightarrow\ n\ E\ P\ \star$

Torque limitation increment.

This parameter can be accessed if [Torque limit activ.] $E\ L\ R$ is not set to [No] no .

Selection of units for the [Motoring torque lim] $E\ L\ ,\ \Pi$ and [Gen. torque limit] $E\ L\ ,\ G$ parameters.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
0.1%	$0.\ I$	Unit 0.1% Factory setting
1%	I	Unit 1%

[Motoring torque lim] $E\ L\ ,\ \Pi\ \star$

Motor torque limitation.

This parameter can be accessed if [Torque limit activ.] $E\ L\ R$ is no set to [No] no .

Torque limitation in motor mode, as a % or in 0.1% increments of the rated torque in accordance with the [Torque increment] $\rightarrow\ n\ E\ P$ parameter.

Setting ()	Description
0...300%	Setting range Factory setting: 100%

[Gen. torque limit] $E\ L\ ,G$

Generative torque limitation.

This parameter can be accessed if [Torque limit activ.] $E\ L\ R$ is not set to [No] .

Torque limitation in generator mode, as a % or in 0.1% increments of the rated torque in accordance with the [Torque increment] $\downarrow n\ t\ P$ parameter.

Setting ()	Description
0...300%	Setting range Factory setting: 100%

[Analog limit activ.] $E\ L\ C$

Activation (analog input) by a logic input.

This parameter cannot be accessed if [Torque limit activ.] $E\ L\ R$ is set to [No] .

Identical to [Torque limit activ.] $E\ L\ R$.

If the assigned input or bit is at 0:

- The limitation is specified by the [Motor torque limit] $E\ L\ ,P$ and [Gen. torque limit] $E\ L\ ,G$ parameters if [Torque limit activ.] $E\ L\ R$ is not set to [No] .
- No limitation if [Torque limit activ.] $E\ L\ R$ is set to [No] .

If the assigned input or bit is at 1: the limitation depends on the input assigned by [Ref Torque Assign] $E\ R\ R$.

NOTE: If [Torque limitation] $E\ L\ R$ and [Ref Torque Assign] $E\ R\ R$ are enabled at the same time, the lowest value is taken into account.

[Ref Torque Assign] $E\ R\ R$

Activation by an analog value.

If the function is assigned, the limitation varies between 0% and 300% of the rated torque based on the 0% to 100% signal applied to the assigned input.

Examples: 12 mA on a 4-20 mA input results in a limitation to 150% of the rated torque. 2.5 Vdc on a 10 Vdc input results in 75% of the rated torque.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[No]		Analog input is not assigned Factory setting
[AI1]...[AI3]	$R\ ,\ I\ ...R\ ,\ 3$	Analog input AI1...AI3
[AI4]...[AI5]	$R\ ,\ 4\ ...R\ ,\ 5$	Analog input AI4...AI5 if VW3A3203 I/O extension module has been inserted
[AI Virtual 1]	$R\ ,\ V\ ,\ 1$	Virtual analogic input 1
[DI7 PulseInput]...[DI8 PulseInput]	$P\ ,\ 7\ ...P\ ,\ 8$	Digital input DI7...DI8 used as pulse input NOTE: This selection can be accessed on drives with a power greater than 22 kW.
[RP]	$P\ ,$	Pulse input NOTE: This selection can be accessed on drives with a power below than 30 kW.

[Ref Torque Switch Assign] $E\ R\ S\ u$

Reference torque switch assignment.

This parameter can be accessed if [Ref Torque Assign] $E\ R\ R$ or [Ref Torque 2 Assign] $E\ R\ R\ Z$ are not set to [No] .

Identical to [Torque limit activ.] $E\ L\ R$.

[Ref Torque 2 Assign] $E\ A\ A\ Z$

Activation by another analog value.

Identical to **[Ref Torque Assign] $E\ A\ A$** .

[Trq/I limit. stop] $S\ S\ b$

Torque current limitation: behavior configuration.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Ignore]	$n\ o$	Detected error ignored Factory setting
[Freewheel Stop]	$y\ E\ S$	Freewheel stop
[Per STT]	$S\ t\ t$	Stop according to [Type of stop] $S\ t\ t$ parameter but without an error triggered after stop
[Fallback Speed]	$L\ F\ F$	Change to fallback speed, maintained as long as the detected error persists and the run command has not been removed ⁽¹⁾
[Spd maintained]	$r\ L\ S$	Speed maintained as long as the detected error persists and the run command has not been removed ⁽¹⁾
[Ramp stop]	$r\ n\ P$	Stop on ramp
[Fast stop]	$F\ S\ t$	Fast stop
[DC injection]	$d\ C\ ,$	DC injection

⁽¹⁾ Because, in this case, the detected error does not trigger a stop, it is recommended to assign a relay or logic output to its indication.

[Trq/I limit. time out] $S\ t\ o$

Torque current limitation: **[Torque Limitation Error] $S\ S\ F$** error delay and **[Torque Limit Reached] $S\ S\ R$** warning delay.

Setting 	Description
0...9,999 ms	Setting range Factory setting: 1,000 ms

Section 8.23

[Generic functions] - [2nd current limit.]

[2nd current limit.] *L* - - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Generic functions] → [2nd current limit.]

[Current Limitation2] *L* *C* 2

Current limitation switching assignment

If the assigned input or bit is at 0, the first current limitation is active.

If the assigned input or bit is at 1, the second current limitation is active.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Not Assigned]	<i>n</i> <i>a</i>	Not assigned Factory setting
[DI1]...[DI8]	<i>L</i> <i>, I</i> ... <i>L</i> <i>, B</i>	Digital input DI1...DI8 NOTE: DI8 selection can be accessed on drives with a power greater than 22 kW.
[DI11]...[DI16]	<i>L</i> <i>, I</i> <i>I</i> ... <i>L</i> <i>, I</i> <i>B</i>	Digital input DI11...DI16 if VW3A3203 I/O extension module has been inserted
[CD00]...[CD10]	<i>C</i> <i>d</i> <i>0</i> <i>0</i> ... <i>C</i> <i>d</i> <i>1</i> <i>0</i>	Virtual digital input CMD.0...CMD.10 in [I/O profile] <i>, a</i> configuration
[CD11]...[CD15]	<i>C</i> <i>d</i> <i>1</i> <i>1</i> ... <i>C</i> <i>d</i> <i>1</i> <i>5</i>	Virtual digital input CMD.11...CMD.15 regardless of configuration
[C101]...[C110]	<i>C</i> <i>1</i> <i>0</i> <i>I</i> ... <i>C</i> <i>1</i> <i>1</i> <i>0</i>	Virtual digital input CMD1.01...CMD1.10 with integrated Modbus Serial in [I/O profile] <i>, a</i> configuration
[C111]...[C115]	<i>C</i> <i>1</i> <i>1</i> <i>I</i> ... <i>C</i> <i>1</i> <i>1</i> <i>5</i>	Virtual digital input CMD1.11...CMD1.15 with integrated Modbus Serial regardless of configuration
[C201]...[C210]	<i>C</i> <i>2</i> <i>0</i> <i>I</i> ... <i>C</i> <i>2</i> <i>1</i> <i>0</i>	Virtual digital input CMD2.01...CMD2.10 with CANopen® fieldbus module in [I/O profile] <i>, a</i> configuration
[C211]...[C215]	<i>C</i> <i>2</i> <i>1</i> <i>I</i> ... <i>C</i> <i>2</i> <i>1</i> <i>5</i>	Virtual digital input CMD2.11...CMD2.15 with CANopen® fieldbus module regardless of configuration
[C301]...[C310]	<i>C</i> <i>3</i> <i>0</i> <i>I</i> ... <i>C</i> <i>3</i> <i>1</i> <i>0</i>	Virtual digital input CMD3.01...CMD3.10 with a fieldbus module in [I/O profile] <i>, a</i> configuration
[C311]...[C315]	<i>C</i> <i>3</i> <i>1</i> <i>I</i> ... <i>C</i> <i>3</i> <i>1</i> <i>5</i>	Virtual digital input CMD3.11...CMD3.15 with a fieldbus module regardless of configuration
[C501]...[C510]	<i>C</i> <i>5</i> <i>0</i> <i>I</i> ... <i>C</i> <i>5</i> <i>1</i> <i>0</i>	Virtual digital input CMD5.01...CMD5.10 with integrated Ethernet in [I/O profile] <i>, a</i> configuration NOTE: This selection can be accessed on ATV340...N4E drives.
[C511]...[C515]	<i>C</i> <i>5</i> <i>1</i> <i>I</i> ... <i>C</i> <i>5</i> <i>1</i> <i>5</i>	Virtual digital input CMD5.11...CMD5.15 with integrated Ethernet regardless of configuration NOTE: This selection can be accessed on ATV340...N4E drives.

[Current Limitation2] $C_L\ 2$ ★

Second current limitation value

This parameter can be accessed if [Current Limitation2] $C_L\ 2$ is not set to [No] \square .

NOTICE**OVERHEATING AND DAMAGE TO THE MOTOR**

- Verify that the motor is properly rated for the maximum current to be applied to the motor.
- Consider the duty cycle of the motor and all factors of your application including derating requirements in determining the current limit.

Failure to follow these instructions can result in equipment damage.

The adjustment range is limited to 1.8 In.

NOTE: If the setting is less than 0.25 In, the drive may lock in [Output Phase Loss] \square P_L if this has been enabled. If it is less than the no-load motor current, the motor cannot run.

Setting (1)	Description
0...1.8 In ⁽¹⁾	Setting range Factory setting: 1.8 In ⁽¹⁾

(1) \square corresponds to the rated drive current indicated in the Installation Manual and on the drive nameplate.

[Current limitation] $C_L\ 1$ ★

First current limitation value

NOTICE**OVERHEATING AND DAMAGE TO THE MOTOR**

- Verify that the motor is properly rated for the maximum current to be applied to the motor.
- Consider the duty cycle of the motor and all factors of your application including derating requirements in determining the current limit.

Failure to follow these instructions can result in equipment damage.

The adjustment range is limited to 1.8 In.

NOTE: If the setting is less than 0.25 In, the drive may lock in [Output Phase Loss] \square P_L if this has been enabled. If it is less than the no-load motor current, the motor cannot run.

Setting (1)	Description
0...1.8 In ⁽¹⁾	Setting range Factory setting: 1.8 In ⁽¹⁾

(1) \square corresponds to the rated drive current indicated in the Installation Manual and on the drive nameplate.

Section 8.24

[Generic functions] - [Jog]

[Jog] - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Generic functions] → [Jog]

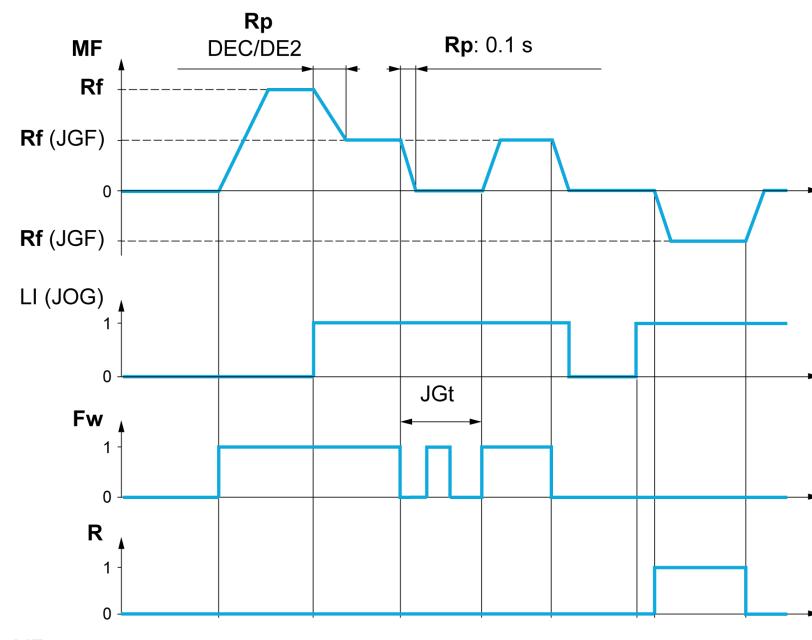
[Jog Assign] D

Jog assignment.

The JOG function is only active if the command channel and the reference channels are on the terminals.

The function is active when the assigned input or bit is at 1.

Example: 2-wire control operation ([2/3-Wire Control] = [2-Wire Control]).



MF Motor frequency

Rf Reference

Rp Ramp

Rp: 0.1 s Ramp forced to 0.1 S

Fw Forward

R Reverse

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Not Assigned]	<i>n o</i>	Not assigned Factory setting
[DI1]...[DI8]	<i>L , I...L , B</i>	Digital input DI1...DI8 NOTE: DI8 selection can be accessed on drives with a power greater than 22 kW.
[DI11]...[DI16]	<i>L , I I...L , I B</i>	Digital input DI11...DI16 if VW3A3203 I/O extension module has been inserted
[CD00]...[CD10]	<i>C d 0 0...C d 1 0</i>	Virtual digital input CMD.0...CMD.10 in [I/O profile] <i>, o</i> configuration
[CD11]...[CD15]	<i>C d 1 1...C d 1 5</i>	Virtual digital input CMD.11...CMD.15 regardless of configuration
[C101]...[C110]	<i>C 1 0 I...C 1 1 0</i>	Virtual digital input CMD1.01...CMD1.10 with integrated Modbus Serial in [I/O profile] <i>, o</i> configuration
[C111]...[C115]	<i>C 1 1 I...C 1 1 5</i>	Virtual digital input CMD1.11...CMD1.15 with integrated Modbus Serial regardless of configuration
[C201]...[C210]	<i>C 2 0 I...C 2 1 0</i>	Virtual digital input CMD2.01...CMD2.10 with CANopen® fieldbus module in [I/O profile] <i>, o</i> configuration
[C211]...[C215]	<i>C 2 1 I...C 2 1 5</i>	Virtual digital input CMD2.11...CMD2.15 with CANopen® fieldbus module regardless of configuration
[C301]...[C310]	<i>C 3 0 I...C 3 1 0</i>	Virtual digital input CMD3.01...CMD3.10 with a fieldbus module in [I/O profile] <i>, o</i> configuration
[C311]...[C315]	<i>C 3 1 I...C 3 1 5</i>	Virtual digital input CMD3.11...CMD3.15 with a fieldbus module regardless of configuration
[C501]...[C510]	<i>C 5 0 I...C 5 1 0</i>	Virtual digital input CMD5.01...CMD5.10 with integrated Ethernet in [I/O profile] <i>, o</i> configuration NOTE: This selection can be accessed on ATV340***N4E drives.
[C511]...[C515]	<i>C 5 1 I...C 5 1 5</i>	Virtual digital input CMD5.11...CMD5.15 with integrated Ethernet regardless of configuration NOTE: This selection can be accessed on ATV340***N4E drives.

[Jog frequency] *J G F* ★

This parameter can be accessed if [Jog Assign] (*J o G*) is not set to [No] (*n o*).

Setting <i>()</i>	Description
0.0...10.0 Hz	Setting range Factory setting: 10.0 Hz

[Jog Delay] *J G E* ★

This parameter can be accessed if [Jog Assign] (*J o G*) is not set to [No] (*n o*).

Setting <i>()</i>	Description
0.0...2.0 s	Setting range Factory setting: 0.5 s

Section 8.25

[Generic functions] - [High Speed Switching]

[High Speed Switching] *C H S* - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Generic functions] → [High Speed Switching]

[2 High speed] *S H 2*

2 High speed assign.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Not Assigned]	<i>n o</i>	Not assigned Factory setting
[Mot Freq High Thd]	<i>F E R</i>	Motor frequency high threshold reached
[2nd Freq Thd Reached]	<i>F Z R</i>	Second frequency threshold reached
[DI1]...[DI8]	<i>L , I...L , B</i>	Digital input DI1...DI8 NOTE: DI8 selection can be accessed on drives with a power greater than 22 kW.
[DI11]...[DI16]	<i>L , I I...L , I B</i>	Digital input DI11...DI16 if VW3A3203 I/O extension module has been inserted
[CD00]...[CD10]	<i>C d 0 0...C d 1 0</i>	Virtual digital input CMD.0...CMD.10 in [I/O profile] <i>, o</i> configuration
[CD11]...[CD15]	<i>C d 1 1...C d 1 5</i>	Virtual digital input CMD.11...CMD.15 regardless of configuration
[C101]...[C110]	<i>C 1 0 1...C 1 1 0</i>	Virtual digital input CMD1.01...CMD1.10 with integrated Modbus Serial in [I/O profile] <i>, o</i> configuration
[C111]...[C115]	<i>C 1 1 1...C 1 1 5</i>	Virtual digital input CMD1.11...CMD1.15 with integrated Modbus Serial regardless of configuration
[C201]...[C210]	<i>C 2 0 1...C 2 1 0</i>	Virtual digital input CMD2.01...CMD2.10 with CANopen® fieldbus module in [I/O profile] <i>, o</i> configuration
[C211]...[C215]	<i>C 2 1 1...C 2 1 5</i>	Virtual digital input CMD2.11...CMD2.15 with CANopen® fieldbus module regardless of configuration
[C301]...[C310]	<i>C 3 0 1...C 3 1 0</i>	Virtual digital input CMD3.01...CMD3.10 with a fieldbus module in [I/O profile] <i>, o</i> configuration
[C311]...[C315]	<i>C 3 1 1...C 3 1 5</i>	Virtual digital input CMD3.11...CMD3.15 with a fieldbus module regardless of configuration
[C501]...[C510]	<i>C 5 0 1...C 5 1 0</i>	Virtual digital input CMD5.01...CMD5.10 with integrated Ethernet in [I/O profile] <i>, o</i> configuration NOTE: This selection can be accessed on ATV340...N4E drives.
[C511]...[C515]	<i>C 5 1 1...C 5 1 5</i>	Virtual digital input CMD5.11...CMD5.15 with integrated Ethernet regardless of configuration NOTE: This selection can be accessed on ATV340...N4E drives.

[4 High speed] *S H 4*

4 High speed assign.

NOTE: In order to obtain 4 High speed, [2 High speed] *S H 2* must also be configured.

Identical to [2 High speed] *S H 2*.

[High speed] H 5 P

Motor frequency at maximum reference, can be set between [Low speed] L 5 P and [Max frequency] E Fr.

The factory setting changes to 60 Hz if [Standard mot. freq] b Fr is set to [60 Hz NEMA] 6 D.

Setting ()	Description
0...599 Hz	Setting range Factory setting: 50 Hz

[High speed 2] H 5 P 2★

Visible if [2 High speed] 5 H 2 is not set to [No] n o.

Identical to [High speed] H 5 P.

[High speed 3] H 5 P 3★

Visible if [4 High speed] 5 H 4 is not set to [No] n o.

Identical to [High speed] H 5 P.

[High speed 4] H 5 P 4★

Visible if [4 High speed] 5 H 4 is not set to [No] n o.

Identical to [High speed] H 5 P.

Section 8.26

[Generic functions] - [Memo reference frequency]

[Memo reference frequency] 5 P 11 - Menu

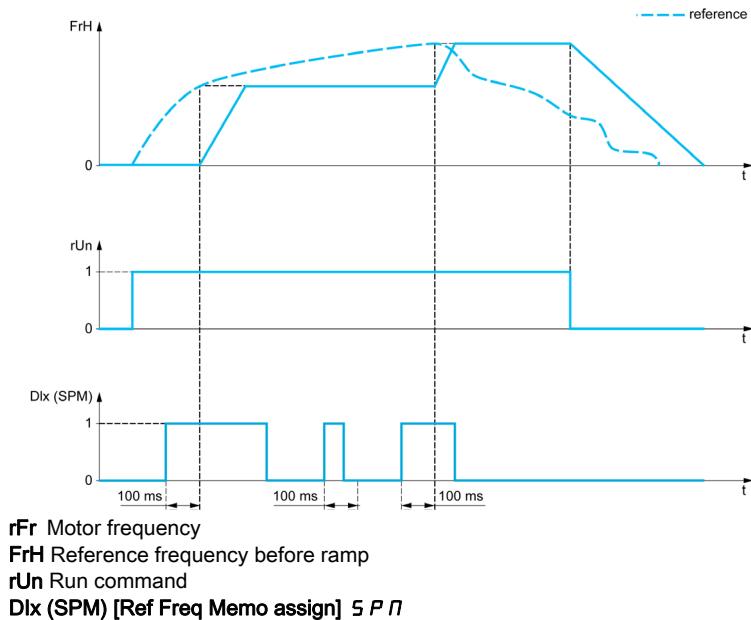
Access

[Complete settings] → [Generic functions] → [Memo reference frequency]

About This Menu

Saving a speed reference value using a digital input command lasting longer than 0.1 s.

- This function is used to control the speed of several drives alternately via a single analog reference and one digital input for each drive.
- It is also used to confirm a line reference (communication bus or network) on several drives via a digital input. This allows movements to be synchronized by getting rid of variations when the reference is set.
- The reference is acquired 100 ms after the rising edge of the request. A new reference is not then acquired until a new request is made.



[Ref Freq Memo assign] 5 P 11

Reference frequency memory assignment

Function active if the assigned input is at active state.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Not Assigned]	n/a	Not assigned Factory setting
[DI1]...[DI8]	L1...L8	Digital input DI1...DI8 NOTE: DI8 selection can be accessed on drives with a power greater than 22 kW.
[DI11]...[DI16]	L11...L16	Digital input DI11...DI16 if VW3A3203 I/O extension module has been inserted

Section 8.27

[Generic functions] - [Brake logic control]

[Brake logic control] *b L C* - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Generic functions] → [Brake logic control]

About This Menu

Identical to [Brake logic control] *b L C* - menu (*see page 272*).

Section 8.28

[Generic functions] - [Limit switches]

[Limit switches] L S E - Menu

Access

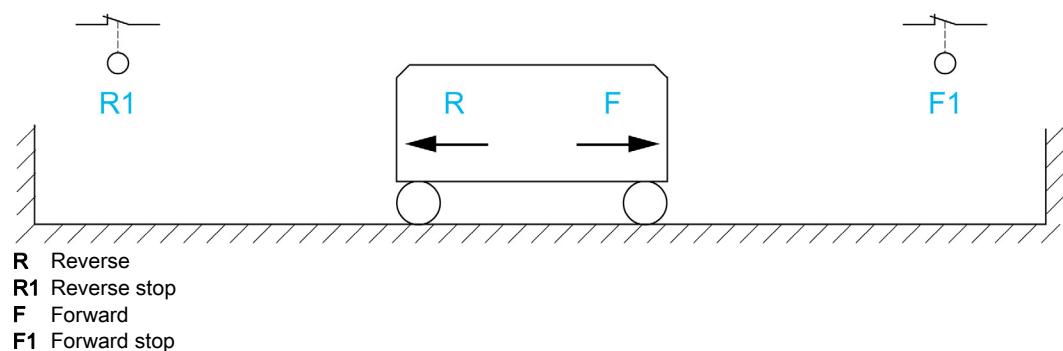
[Complete settings] → [Generic functions] → [Limit switches]

About This Menu

This function can be used to manage trajectory limits using limit switches

The stop mode is configurable. When the stop contact is activated, startup in the other direction is authorized.

Example:



The stop is activated when the input is at 0 (contact open).

[Stop FW assign] L R F

Stop forward limit assignment.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Not Assigned]	n o	Not assigned Factory setting
[CD00]...[CD10]	C d 0 0 ... C d 1 0	Virtual digital input CMD.0...CMD.10 in [I/O profile] , o configuration
[CD11]...[CD15]	C d 1 1 ... C d 1 5	Virtual digital input CMD.11...CMD.15 regardless of configuration
[C101]...[C110]	C 1 0 1 ... C 1 1 0	Virtual digital input CMD1.01...CMD1.10 with integrated Modbus Serial in [I/O profile] , o configuration
[C111]...[C115]	C 1 1 1 ... C 1 1 5	Virtual digital input CMD1.11...CMD1.15 with integrated Modbus Serial regardless of configuration
[C201]...[C210]	C 2 0 1 ... C 2 1 0	Virtual digital input CMD2.01...CMD2.10 with CANopen® fieldbus module in [I/O profile] , o configuration
[C211]...[C215]	C 2 1 1 ... C 2 1 5	Virtual digital input CMD2.11...CMD2.15 with CANopen® fieldbus module regardless of configuration
[C301]...[C310]	C 3 0 1 ... C 3 1 0	Virtual digital input CMD3.01...CMD3.10 with a fieldbus module in [I/O profile] , o configuration
[C311]...[C315]	C 3 1 1 ... C 3 1 5	Virtual digital input CMD3.11...CMD3.15 with a fieldbus module regardless of configuration
[C501]...[C510]	C 5 0 1 ... C 5 1 0	Virtual digital input CMD5.01...CMD5.10 with integrated Ethernet in [I/O profile] , o configuration NOTE: This selection can be accessed on ATV340...N4E drives.
[C511]...[C515]	C 5 1 1 ... C 5 1 5	Virtual digital input CMD5.11...CMD5.15 with integrated Ethernet regardless of configuration NOTE: This selection can be accessed on ATV340...N4E drives.
[DI1 (Low level)]...[DI8 (Low level)]	L 1 L ... L 8 L	Digital input DI1...DI8 used at low level NOTE: DI8 low level selection can be accessed on drives with a power greater than 22 kW.
[DI11 (Low level)]...[DI16 (Low level)]	L 1 1 L ... L 1 6 L	Digital input DI11...DI16 used at low level if VW3A3203 I/O extension module has been inserted

[Stop RV assign] L R r

Stop reverse limit assignment.

Identical to **[Stop FW assign] L R F**.

[Stop type] L R S

Stop type on limit switch.

This parameter can be accessed if **[Stop FW assign] L R F** or **[Stop RV assign] L R r** is assigned.

When the assigned input changes to 0, the stop is controlled in accordance with the selected type. Restarting is only authorized for the other operating direction once the motor has stopped. If the two inputs **[Stop FW assign] L R F** and **[Stop RV assign] L R r** are assigned and at state 0, restarting will be impossible.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[On Ramp]	r n P	Stop on ramp
[Fast stop]	F s t	Fast stop
[Freewheel Stop]	n s t	Freewheel stop Factory setting

Section 8.29

[Generic functions] - [Positioning by sensors]

[Positioning by sensors] *L P □*

Access

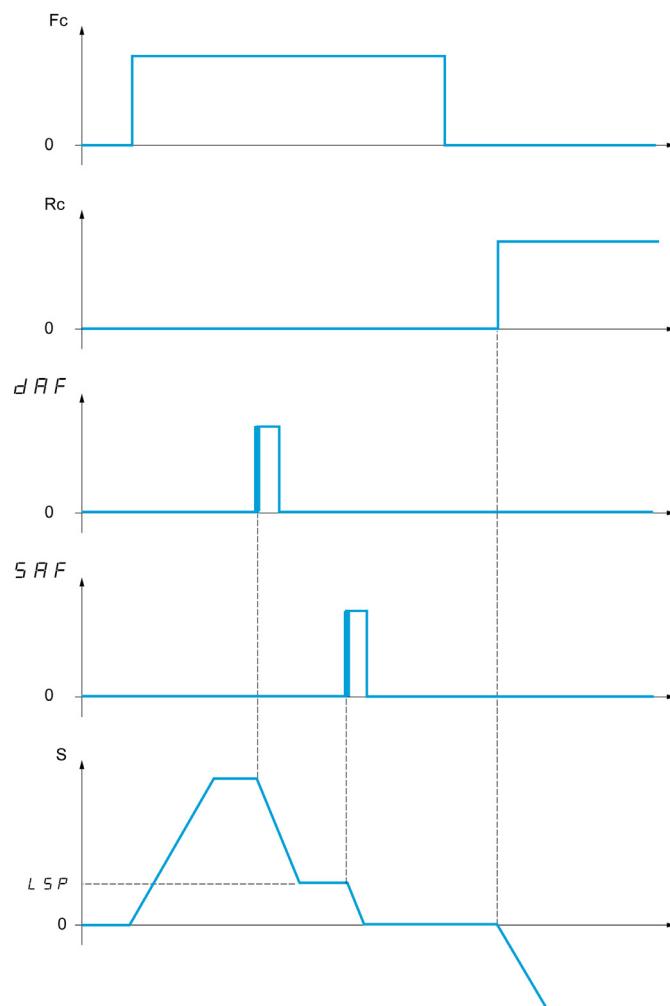
[Complete settings] → [Generic functions] → [Positioning by sensors]

About This Menu

This function is used for managing positioning using position sensors or limit switches linked to logic inputs or using control word bits:

- Slowing down
- Stopping

The action logic for the inputs and bits can be configured on a rising edge (change from 0 to 1) or a falling edge (change from 1 to 0). The example below has been configured on a rising edge:



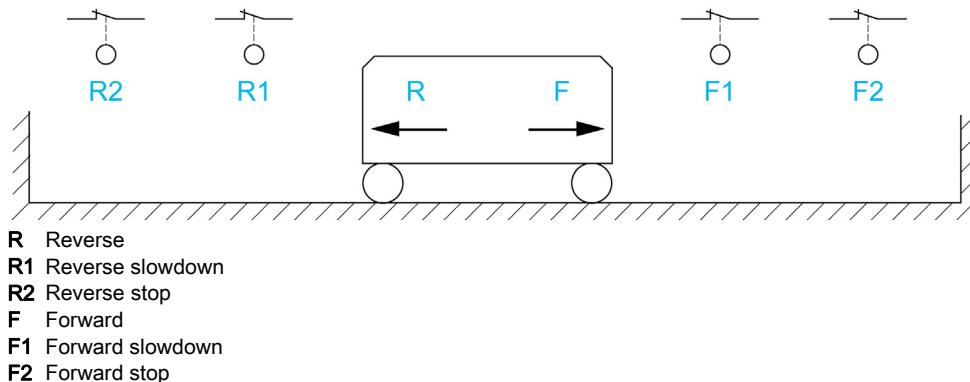
F_c Forward run command
R_c Reverse run command
S Speed

The slowdown mode and stop mode can be configured.

The operation is identical for both directions of operation. Slowdown and stopping operate according to the same logic, described below.

Example: Forward slowdown, on rising edge

- Forward slowdown takes place on a rising edge (change from 0 to 1) of the input or bit assigned to forward slowdown if this rising edge occurs in forward operation. The slowdown command is then stored, even in the event of a power outage. Operation in the opposite direction is authorized at high speed. The slowdown command is deleted on a falling edge (change from 1 to 0) of the input or bit assigned to forward slowdown if this falling edge occurs in reverse operation.
- A bit or a logic input can be assigned to disable this function.
- Although forward slowdown is disabled while the disable input or bit is at 1, sensor changes continue to be monitored and saved.

Example: Positioning on a limit switch, on rising edge

⚠ WARNING

LOSS OF CONTROL

- Verify correct connection of the limit switches.
- Verify the correct installation of the limit switches. The limit switches must be mounted in a position far enough away from the mechanical stop to allow for an adequate stopping distance.
- You must release the limit switches before you can use them.
- Verify the correct function of the limit switches.

Failure to follow these instructions can result in death, serious injury, or equipment damage.

Operation with short cams:

⚠ WARNING

LOSS OF CONTROL

When operating for the first time or after a reset of the configuration to the factory settings, the motor must always be started outside of the Slowdown and Stop ranges.

Failure to follow these instructions can result in death, serious injury, or equipment damage.

⚠ WARNING

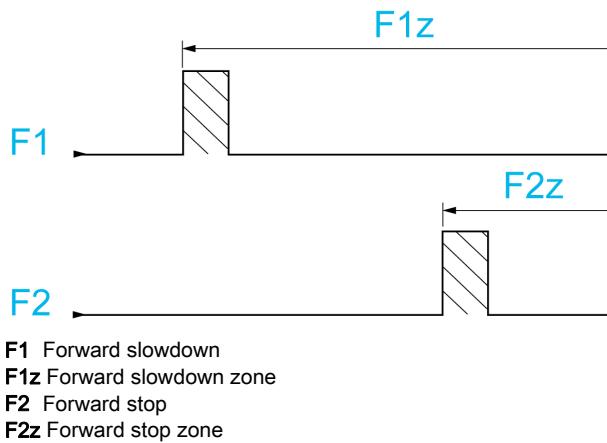
LOSS OF CONTROL

When the drive is switched off, it stores the range which it is currently in.

If the system is moved manually while the drive is off, you must restore the original position before switching it on again.

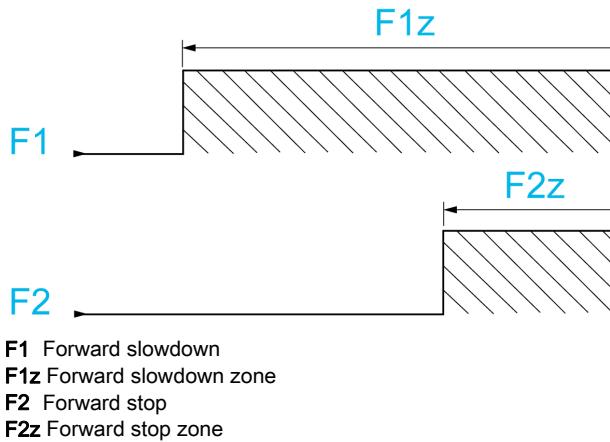
Failure to follow these instructions can result in death, serious injury, or equipment damage.

In this instance, when operating for the first time or after restoring the factory settings, the drive must initially be started outside the slowdown and stop zones in order to initialize the function.



Operation with long cams:

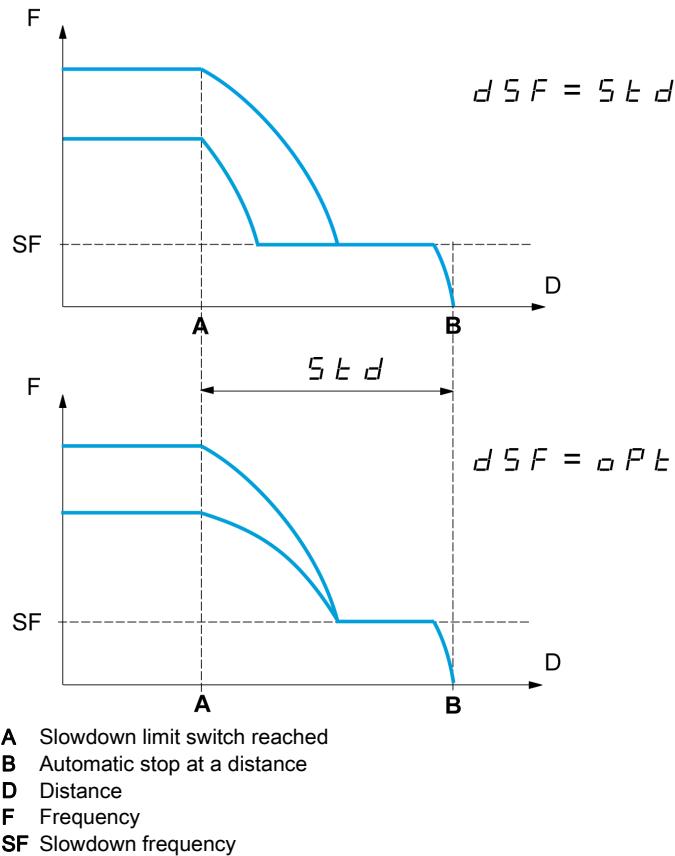
In this instance, there is no restriction, which means that the function is initialized across the whole trajectory.



Stop at distance calculated after deceleration limit switch

This function can be used to control the stopping of the moving part automatically once a preset distance has been traveled after the slowdown limit switch. On the basis of the rated linear speed and the speed estimated by the drive when the slowdown limit switch is tripped, the drive will induce the stop at the configured distance. This function is useful in applications where one manual-reset overtravel limit switch is common to both directions. It will then only respond to help management if the distance is exceeded. The stop limit switch retains priority in respect of the function.

The **[Deceleration type] d 5 F** parameter can be configured to obtain either of the functions described below:

**Note:**

- If the deceleration ramp is modified while stopping at a distance is in progress, this distance will not be observed.
- If the direction is modified while stopping at a distance is in progress, this distance will not be observed.

WARNING

LOSS OF CONTROL

Verify that the configured distance is actually possible.

This function does not replace the limit switch.

Failure to follow these instructions can result in death, serious injury, or equipment damage.

[Stop FW limit sw.] 5 R F

Stop switch forward.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Not Assigned]	n o	Not assigned Factory setting
[DI1]...[DI8]	L 1 I...L 8	Digital input DI1...DI8 NOTE: DI8 selection can be accessed on drives with a power greater than 22 kW.
[DI11]...[DI16]	L 1 I I...L 1 6	Digital input DI11...DI16 if VW3A3203 I/O extension module has been inserted
[CD00]...[CD10]	C d 0 0...C d 1 0	Virtual digital input CMD.0...CMD.10 in [I/O profile] , o configuration
[CD11]...[CD15]	C d 1 1...C d 1 5	Virtual digital input CMD.11...CMD.15 regardless of configuration
[C101]...[C110]	C 1 0 I I...C 1 1 0	Virtual digital input CMD1.01...CMD1.10 with integrated Modbus Serial in [I/O profile] , o configuration
[C111]...[C115]	C 1 1 I I...C 1 1 5	Virtual digital input CMD1.11...CMD1.15 with integrated Modbus Serial regardless of configuration
[C201]...[C210]	C 2 0 I I...C 2 1 0	Virtual digital input CMD2.01...CMD2.10 with CANopen® fieldbus module in [I/O profile] , o configuration
[C211]...[C215]	C 2 1 I I...C 2 1 5	Virtual digital input CMD2.11...CMD2.15 with CANopen® fieldbus module regardless of configuration
[C301]...[C310]	C 3 0 I I...C 3 1 0	Virtual digital input CMD3.01...CMD3.10 with a fieldbus module in [I/O profile] , o configuration
[C311]...[C315]	C 3 1 I I...C 3 1 5	Virtual digital input CMD3.11...CMD3.15 with a fieldbus module regardless of configuration
[C501]...[C510]	C 5 0 I I...C 5 1 0	Virtual digital input CMD5.01...CMD5.10 with integrated Ethernet in [I/O profile] , o configuration NOTE: This selection can be accessed on ATV340...N4E drives.
[C511]...[C515]	C 5 1 I I...C 5 1 5	Virtual digital input CMD5.11...CMD5.15 with integrated Ethernet regardless of configuration NOTE: This selection can be accessed on ATV340...N4E drives.

[Stop RV limit sw.] 5 R r

Stop switch reverse.

Identical to **[Stop FW limit sw.] 5 R F**.

[Forward Slowdown] d R F

Slowdown attained forward.

Identical to **[Stop FW limit sw.] 5 R F**.

[Reverse Slowdown] d R r

Slowdown attained reverse.

Identical to **[Stop FW limit sw.] 5 R F**.

[Disable limit sw.] *L* *L* 5

Limits switches clearing.

WARNING
LOSS OF CONTROL

If [Disable limit sw.] [CLS] is set to an input and activated, the limit switch management will be disabled.

- Verify that activating this function does not result in unsafe conditions.

Failure to follow these instructions can result in death, serious injury, or equipment damage.

The action of the limit switches is disabled when the assigned bit or input is at 1. If, at this time, the drive is stopped or being slowed down by limit switches, it will restart up to its speed reference.

This parameter can be accessed if at least one limit switch or one sensor has been assigned.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Not Assigned]	<i>n o</i>	Not assigned Factory setting
[DI1]...[DI8]	<i>L</i> <i>, I</i> ... <i>L</i> <i>, B</i>	Digital input DI1...DI8 NOTE: DI8 selection can be accessed on drives with a power greater than 22 kW.
[DI11]...[DI16]	<i>L</i> <i>, I</i> <i>I</i> ... <i>L</i> <i>, I</i> <i>6</i>	Digital input DI11...DI16 if VW3A3203 I/O extension module has been inserted
[CD00]...[CD10]	<i>C</i> <i>d</i> <i>0</i> <i>0</i> ... <i>C</i> <i>d</i> <i>1</i> <i>0</i>	Virtual digital input CMD.0...CMD.10 in [I/O profile] <i>, o</i> configuration
[CD11]...[CD15]	<i>C</i> <i>d</i> <i>1</i> <i>1</i> ... <i>C</i> <i>d</i> <i>1</i> <i>5</i>	Virtual digital input CMD.11...CMD.15 regardless of configuration
[C101]...[C110]	<i>C</i> <i>1</i> <i>0</i> <i>I</i> ... <i>C</i> <i>1</i> <i>1</i> <i>0</i>	Virtual digital input CMD1.01...CMD1.10 with integrated Modbus Serial in [I/O profile] <i>, o</i> configuration
[C111]...[C115]	<i>C</i> <i>1</i> <i>1</i> <i>I</i> ... <i>C</i> <i>1</i> <i>I</i> <i>5</i>	Virtual digital input CMD1.11...CMD1.15 with integrated Modbus Serial regardless of configuration
[C201]...[C210]	<i>C</i> <i>2</i> <i>0</i> <i>I</i> ... <i>C</i> <i>2</i> <i>1</i> <i>0</i>	Virtual digital input CMD2.01...CMD2.10 with CANopen® fieldbus module in [I/O profile] <i>, o</i> configuration
[C211]...[C215]	<i>C</i> <i>2</i> <i>1</i> <i>I</i> ... <i>C</i> <i>2</i> <i>I</i> <i>5</i>	Virtual digital input CMD2.11...CMD2.15 with CANopen® fieldbus module regardless of configuration
[C301]...[C310]	<i>C</i> <i>3</i> <i>0</i> <i>I</i> ... <i>C</i> <i>3</i> <i>1</i> <i>0</i>	Virtual digital input CMD3.01...CMD3.10 with a fieldbus module in [I/O profile] <i>, o</i> configuration
[C311]...[C315]	<i>C</i> <i>3</i> <i>1</i> <i>I</i> ... <i>C</i> <i>3</i> <i>I</i> <i>5</i>	Virtual digital input CMD3.11...CMD3.15 with a fieldbus module regardless of configuration
[C501]...[C510]	<i>C</i> <i>5</i> <i>0</i> <i>I</i> ... <i>C</i> <i>5</i> <i>1</i> <i>0</i>	Virtual digital input CMD5.01...CMD5.10 with integrated Ethernet in [I/O profile] <i>, o</i> configuration NOTE: This selection can be accessed on ATV340...N4E drives.
[C511]...[C515]	<i>C</i> <i>5</i> <i>1</i> <i>I</i> ... <i>C</i> <i>5</i> <i>I</i> <i>5</i>	Virtual digital input CMD5.11...CMD5.15 with integrated Ethernet regardless of configuration NOTE: This selection can be accessed on ATV340...N4E drives.

[Stop type] *P* *R* 5

Stop type on limit switch activation.

This parameter can be accessed if at least one limit switch or one sensor has been assigned.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[On Ramp]	<i>r</i> <i>P</i> <i>P</i>	Follow ramp Factory setting
[Fast stop]	<i>F</i> <i>5</i> <i>E</i>	Fast stop (ramp time reduced by [Ramp Divider] <i>d</i> <i>C</i> <i>F</i>)
[Freewheel Stop]	<i>n</i> <i>E</i>	Freewheel stop

[Deceleration type]

Limit switch deceleration adaptation.

This parameter can be accessed if at least one limit switch or one sensor has been assigned.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Standard]	S E d	Uses the [Deceleration] d E L or [Deceleration 2] d E Z ramp (depending on which has been enabled) Factory setting
[Optimized]	o P t	The ramp time is calculated on the basis of the actual speed when the slowdown contact switches, in order to limit the operating time at low speed (optimization of the cycle time: the slowdown time is constant regardless of the initial speed)

[Stop distance]

Stop distance.

This parameter can be accessed if at least one limit switch or one sensor has been assigned. Activation and adjustment of the "Stop at distance calculated after the slowdown limit switch" function.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[No]	n o	Function inactive Factory setting
[0.01...10.00]	0.0 1...10.00	Stop distance range in meters

[Nom linear speed]

Rated linear speed.

This parameter can be accessed if at least one limit switch or one sensor has been assigned and [Stop distance] **S E d** is not set to [No] **n o**.

Setting	Description
0.20...5.00 m/s	Factory setting: 1.00 m/s

[Stop corrector]

Scaling factor applied to the stop distance to compensate, for example, a non-linear ramp.

This parameter can be accessed if at least one limit switch or one sensor has been assigned and [Stop distance] **S E d** is not set to [No] **n o**.

Setting	Description
50...200%	Factory setting: 100%

[Memo Stop]

Stop switch memorization.

This parameter can be accessed if at least one limit switch or one sensor has been assigned.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[No]	n o	No memorization of limit switch
[Yes]	Y E S	Memorization of limit switch Factory setting

[Priority restart] *P r S E* ★

Priority given to the starting even if stop switch is activated.

This parameter can be accessed if at least one limit switch or one sensor has been assigned.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[No]	<i>n o</i>	No restart priority if stop switch is activated Factory setting
[Yes]	<i>y E S</i>	Priority to restart even if stop switch is activated

Section 8.30

[Generic functions] - [Torque control]

[Torque control] - Menu

Access

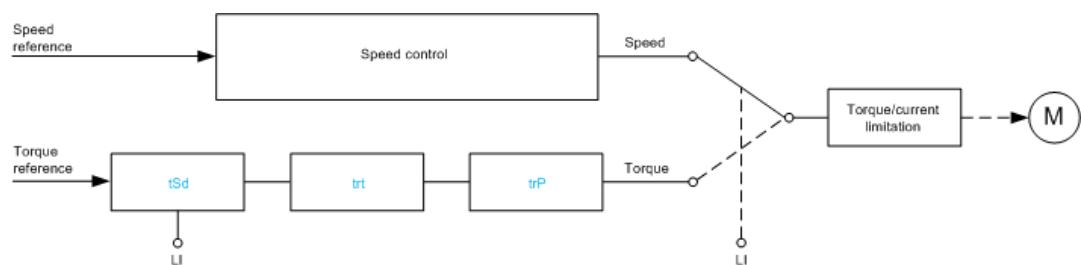
[Complete settings] → [Generic functions] → [Torque control]

About This Menu

This function can be used if [Motor control type] is set to [SVCV] or [FVC] or [Sync. mot.] or [Sync.CL] .

NOTE: This function cannot be used with some other functions.

NOTE: This function is not compatible with the handling of the [Load slipping] error.



The function can be used to switch between operation in speed regulation mode and operation in torque control mode.

In torque control mode, the speed may vary within a configurable "deadband". When it reaches a lower or upper limit, the drive automatically reverts to speed regulation mode and remains at this limit speed. The regulated torque is therefore no longer maintained and two scenarios may occur.

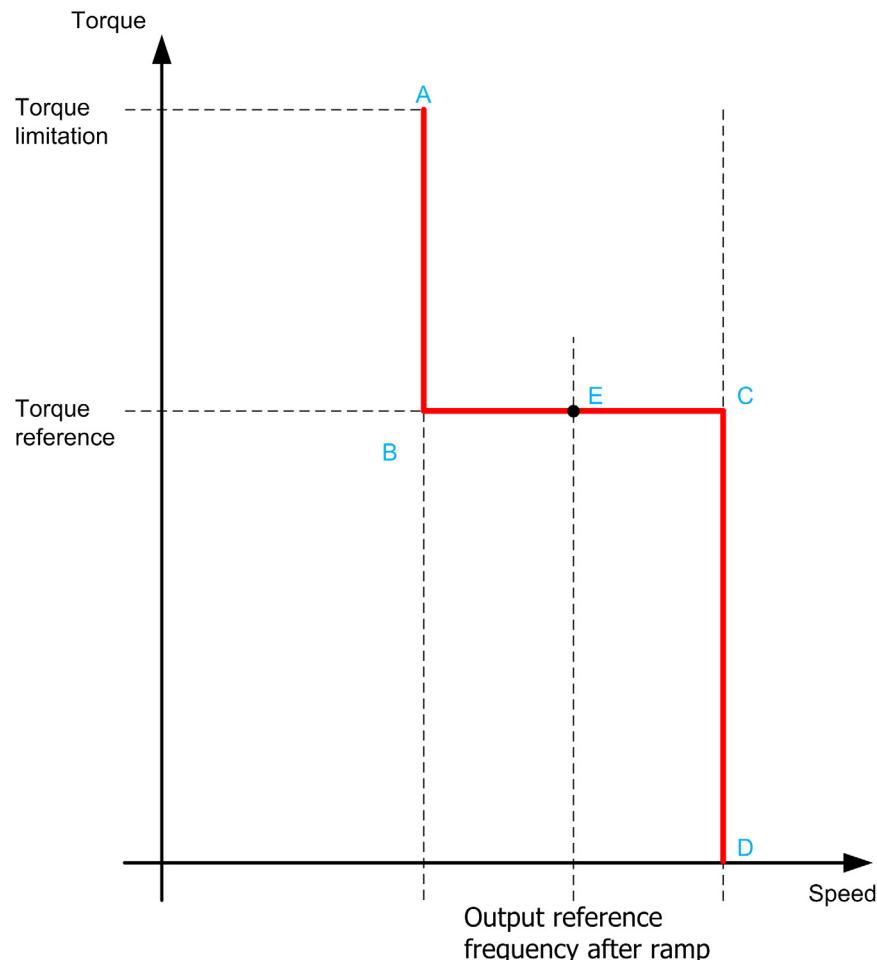
- If the torque returns to the required value, the drive returns to torque control mode.
- If the torque does not return to the required value at the end of a configurable period, the drive switches to [Torque Reg Warning] or [Torque timeout] .

WARNING

UNANTICIPATED EQUIPMENT OPERATION

Verify that activating this function does not result in unsafe conditions.

Failure to follow these instructions can result in death, serious injury, or equipment damage.



AB, CD "Fallback" to speed regulation

BC Torque control zone

E Ideal operating point

The torque sign and value can be transmitted via a logic output and an analog output.

[Trq/spd switching] E 5 5

Torque / speed regulation switching by a logic input.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Not Assigned]	n o	Not assigned Factory setting
[Yes]	Y E S	Yes
[DI1]...[DI8]	L 1 I...L 1 B	Digital input DI1...DI8 NOTE: DI8 selection can be accessed on drives with a power greater than 22 kW.
[DI11]...[DI16]	L 1 I I...L 1 B	Digital input DI11...DI16 if VW3A3203 I/O extension module has been inserted
[CD00]...[CD10]	C d D 0...C d D 0	Virtual digital input CMD.0...CMD.10 in [I/O profile] , o configuration
[CD11]...[CD15]	C d I I...C d I S	Virtual digital input CMD.11...CMD.15 regardless of configuration
[C101]...[C110]	C I O I I...C I I O	Virtual digital input CMD1.01...CMD1.10 with integrated Modbus Serial in [I/O profile] , o configuration
[C111]...[C115]	C I I I I...C I I S	Virtual digital input CMD1.11...CMD1.15 with integrated Modbus Serial regardless of configuration
[C201]...[C210]	C 2 D I I...C 2 D 0	Virtual digital input CMD2.01...CMD2.10 with CANopen® fieldbus module in [I/O profile] , o configuration
[C211]...[C215]	C 2 I I I...C 2 I S	Virtual digital input CMD2.11...CMD2.15 with CANopen® fieldbus module regardless of configuration
[C301]...[C310]	C 3 D I I...C 3 D 0	Virtual digital input CMD3.01...CMD3.10 with a fieldbus module in [I/O profile] , o configuration
[C311]...[C315]	C 3 I I I...C 3 I S	Virtual digital input CMD3.11...CMD3.15 with a fieldbus module regardless of configuration
[C501]...[C510]	C 5 D I I...C 5 D 0	Virtual digital input CMD5.01...CMD5.10 with integrated Ethernet in [I/O profile] , o configuration NOTE: This selection can be accessed on ATV340...N4E drives.
[C511]...[C515]	C 5 I I I...C 5 I S	Virtual digital input CMD5.11...CMD5.15 with integrated Ethernet regardless of configuration NOTE: This selection can be accessed on ATV340...N4E drives.

[Torque ref. channel] E r / I★

Channel for torque reference.

This parameter can be accessed if [Trq/spd switching] E 5 5 is not set to [No] n o.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Not Configured]	n o	Not assigned Factory setting
[AI1]...[AI3]	A 1 I...A 1 3	Analog input AI1...AI3
[AI4]...[AI5]	A 4 I...A 4 5	Analog input AI4...AI5 if VW3A3203 I/O extension module has been inserted
[Ref. Freq- Rmt.Term]	L C C	Reference frequency via remote terminal
[Ref. Freq-Modbus]	I d b	Reference frequency via Modbus
[Ref. Freq-CANopen]	C R n	Reference frequency via CANopen
[Ref. Freq-Comm. Module]	n E t	Reference frequency via communication module
[Embedded Ethernet]	E E H	Embedded Ethernet NOTE: This selection can be accessed on ATV340...N4E drives.
[DI7 PulseInput]...[DI8 PulseInput]	P 7 I...P 8 B	Digital input DI7...DI8 used as pulse input NOTE: This selection can be accessed on drives with a power greater than 22 kW.
[RP]	P ,	Pulse input NOTE: This selection can be accessed on drives with a power below than 30 kW.

[Torque Ref Assign] E_{r1} ★

Torque reference channel assignment.

This parameter can be accessed if [Trq/spd switching] E_{55} is not set to [No] $n\sigma$.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[DI1]...[DI8]	$L_1 \dots L_8$	Digital input DI1...DI8 NOTE: DI8 selection can be accessed on drives with a power greater than 22 kW.
[DI11]...[DI16]	$L_{11} \dots L_{16}$	Digital input DI11...DI16 if VW3A3203 I/O extension module has been inserted
[C101]...[C110]	$C_{101} \dots C_{110}$	Virtual digital input CMD1.01...CMD1.10 with integrated Modbus Serial in [I/O profile] \rightarrow configuration
[C111]...[C115]	$C_{111} \dots C_{115}$	Virtual digital input CMD1.11...CMD1.15 with integrated Modbus Serial regardless of configuration
[C201]...[C210]	$C_{201} \dots C_{210}$	Virtual digital input CMD2.01...CMD2.10 with CANopen® fieldbus module in [I/O profile] \rightarrow configuration
[C211]...[C215]	$C_{211} \dots C_{215}$	Virtual digital input CMD2.11...CMD2.15 with CANopen® fieldbus module regardless of configuration
[C301]...[C310]	$C_{301} \dots C_{310}$	Virtual digital input CMD3.01...CMD3.10 with a fieldbus module in [I/O profile] \rightarrow configuration
[C311]...[C315]	$C_{311} \dots C_{315}$	Virtual digital input CMD3.11...CMD3.15 with a fieldbus module regardless of configuration
[C501]...[C510]	$C_{501} \dots C_{510}$	Virtual digital input CMD5.01...CMD5.10 with integrated Ethernet in [I/O profile] \rightarrow configuration
[C511]...[C515]	$C_{511} \dots C_{515}$	Virtual digital input CMD5.11...CMD5.15 with integrated Ethernet Modbus TCP regardless of configuration NOTE: This selection can be accessed on ATV340...N4E drives.
[Torque ref. channel]	E_{r1}	Torque reference channel 1
[Torque ref. 2 channel]	E_{r2}	Torque reference channel 2

[Torque ref. 2 channel] E_{r2} ★

Torque reference channel 2.

This parameter can be accessed if [Trq/spd switching] E_{55} is not set to [No] $n\sigma$.

Identical to [Torque ref. channel] E_{r1} ([see page 387](#)).

[Torque ref. sign] E_{5d} ★

Assignment for the inversion of the sign of the reference for the torque regulation function.

This parameter can be accessed if [Trq/spd switching] E_{55} is not set to [No] $n\sigma$.

Identical to [Trq/spd switching] E_{55} ([see page 387](#)).

[Torque ratio] E_{rE} ★

Torque regulation: torque ratio.

This parameter can be accessed if [Trq/spd switching] E_{55} is not set to [No] $n\sigma$.

Setting $\langle \rangle$	Description
0.0...1000.0%	Coefficient applied to [Torque ref. channel] E_{r1} or [Torque ref. 2 channel] E_{r2} Factory setting: 100.0%

[Torque Ratio Assign] $E\ 9\ r$ ★

Torque regulation: torque ratio value selection.

This parameter can be accessed if [Trq/spd switching] $E\ 5\ 5$ is not set to [No] $n\ o$.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[No]	$n\ o$	Analog input is not assigned Factory setting
[AI1]...[AI3]	$R\ ,\ I\ ...R\ ,\ 3$	Analog input AI1...AI3
[AI4]...[AI5]	$R\ ,\ 4\ ...R\ ,\ 5$	Analog input AI4...AI5 if VW3A3203 I/O extension module has been inserted
[AI Virtual 1]	$R\ ,\ V\ ,\ 1$	Virtual analogic input 1
[DI7 PulseInput]...[DI8 PulseInput]	$P\ ,\ 7\ ...P\ ,\ 8$	Digital input DI7...DI8 used as pulse input NOTE: This selection can be accessed on drives with a power greater than 22 kW.
[RP]	$P\ ,\ ,$	Pulse input NOTE: This selection can be accessed on drives with a power below than 30 kW.

[Torque Ref Offset] $E\ 9\ o\ P$ ★

Torque reference offset.

This parameter can be accessed if [Trq/spd switching] $E\ 5\ 5$ is not set to [No] $n\ o$.

Setting ()	Description
-1000.0...1000.0%	Setting range Factory setting: 0.0%

[Torque Offset Assign] $E\ 9\ o$ ★

Torque regulation: Torque offset value selection

This parameter can be accessed if [Trq/spd switching] $E\ 5\ 5$ is not set to [No] $n\ o$.

Identical to [Torque Ratio Assign] $E\ 9\ r$ (*see page 389*).

[Low Torque] $L\ E\ 9$ ★

Low torque threshold.

This parameter can be accessed if [Trq/spd switching] $E\ 5\ 5$ is not set to [No] $n\ o$.

This parameter cannot be higher than [High Torque] $H\ E\ 9$.

Setting ()	Description
-300.0...[High Torque] $H\ E\ 9$	Setting range Factory setting: -100.0%

[High Torque] $H\ E\ 9$ ★

High torque threshold.

This parameter can be accessed if [Trq/spd switching] $E\ 5\ 5$ is not set to [No] $n\ o$.

This parameter cannot be lower than [Low Torque] $L\ E\ 9$.

Setting ()	Description
[Low Torque] $L\ E\ 9$...300.0%	Setting range Factory setting: 100.0%

[Torque ramp time] $E \text{--} r P$ ★

Torque ramp time.

This parameter can be accessed if [Trq/spd switching] $E \text{--} S \text{--} S$ is not set to [No] no .

Setting (S)	Description
0.00...99.99 s	Rise and fall time for a variation of 100% of the rated torque Factory setting: 3.00 s

[Torque Filter] $E \text{--} r F$ ★

Torque filter activation.

This parameter can be accessed if [Trq/spd switching] $E \text{--} S \text{--} S$ is not set to [No] no .

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[No]	no	Not activated. Factory setting
[Yes]	ye	Activated

[Torque Filter Bandwidth] $E \text{--} r W$ ★

Torque filter bandwidth.

This parameter can be accessed if [Torque Filter] $E \text{--} F$ is set to [Yes] ye .

Setting (S)	Description
1...1000 Hz	Setting range Factory setting: 20 Hz

[Torque control stop] $E \text{--} S E$ ★

Torque regulation: stop command type.

This parameter can be accessed if [Trq/spd switching] $E \text{--} S \text{--} S$ is not set to [No] no .

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Speed]	$S P d$	Speed regulation stop, in accordance with the [Type of stop] $S E E$ configuration
[Freewheel Stop]	$\text{no } S E$	Freewheel stop Factory setting
[Spin]	$S P n$	Zero torque stop, but maintaining the flux in the motor (only in close loop)

[Spin time] $S P E$ ★

Torque regulation: spin time.

Spin time following stop, in order to remain ready to restart quickly.

This parameter can be accessed if:

- [Trq/spd switching] $E \text{--} S \text{--} S$ is not set to [No] no , and
- [Torque control stop] $E \text{--} S E$ is set to [Spin] $S P n$.

Setting (S)	Description
0.0...3600.0 s	Setting range Factory setting: 1.0 s

[Positive deadband] $d b P$ ★

Torque regulation positive deadband.

This parameter can be accessed if [Trq/spd switching] $E 5 5$ is not set to [No] $n \sigma$.

Value added algebraically to the speed reference.

Example for $d b P = 10$:

- If reference = +50 Hz : +50 + 10 = 60 Hz
- If reference = -50 Hz : -50 + 10 = -40 Hz

Setting ()	Description
0...2 x [Max Frequency] $E F r$	Setting range Factory setting: 10 Hz

[Negative deadband] $d b n$ ★

Torque regulation negative deadband.

This parameter can be accessed if [Trq/spd switching] $E 5 5$ is not set to [No] $n \sigma$.

Value subtracted algebraically from the speed reference.

Example for $d b n = 10$:

- If reference = +50 Hz: + 50 - 10 = 40 Hz
- If reference = -50 Hz: -50 - 10 = -60 Hz

Setting ()	Description
0...2 x [Max Frequency] $E F r$	Setting range Factory setting: 10 Hz

[Torque ctrl time out] $r t o$ ★

Torque control time-out.

This parameter can be accessed if [Trq/spd switching] $E 5 5$ is not set to [No] $n \sigma$.

Time following automatic exit of torque control mode in the event of an error or a warning has been triggered.

Setting	Description
0.0...999.9 s	Setting range Factory setting: 60 s

[Torque Ctrl ErrorResp] $E o b$ ★

Response to torque control error.

This parameter can be accessed if [Trq/spd switching] $E 5 5$ is not set to [No] $n \sigma$.

Response of drive once time [Torque ctrl time out] $r t o$ has elapsed.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Warning]	$R L r \Pi$	Warning is triggered on time-out Factory setting
[Error]	$F L t$	An error is triggered with freewheel stop

Section 8.31

[Generic functions] - [Parameters switching]

What Is in This Section?

This section contains the following topics:

Topic	Page
[Parameters switching] $\Pi L P$ - Menu	393
[Set 1] $P 5 1$ - Menu	397
[Set 2] $P 5 2$ - Menu	397
[Set 3] $P 5 3$ - Menu	397

[Parameters switching] *Π L P* - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Generic functions] → [Parameters switching]

About This Menu

A set of 1 to 15 parameters from the [Parameter Selection] *5 P 5* list ([see page 394](#)) can be selected and 2 or 3 different values assigned. These 2 or 3 sets of values can then be switched using 1 or 2 digital inputs or control word bits. This switching can be performed during operation (motor running). It can also be controlled based on 1 or 2 frequency thresholds, whereby each threshold acts as a digital input (0 = threshold not reached, 1 = threshold reached).

	Values 1	Values 2	Values 3
Parameter 1 ... Parameter 15	Parameter 1 ... Parameter 15	Parameter 1 ... Parameter 15	Parameter 1 ... Parameter 15
Input DI or bit or frequency threshold 2 values	0	1	0 or 1
Input DI or bit or frequency threshold 3 values	0	0	1

NOTE: Do not modify the parameters in [Parameter Selection] *5 P 5* ([see page 394](#)), because any modifications made in this menu will be lost on the next power-up. The parameters can be adjusted during operation in the [Parameters switching] *Π L P* - menu, on the active configuration.

[2 Parameter sets] *C H R 1*

Parameter switching assignment 1.

Switching 2 parameter sets.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Not Assigned]	<i>n o</i>	Not assigned Factory setting
[Mot Freq High Thd]	<i>F E R</i>	Motor frequency high threshold reached
[2nd Freq Thd Reached]	<i>F E R</i>	Second frequency threshold reached
[DI1]...[DI8]	<i>L 1 I...L 8 B</i>	Digital input DI1...DI8 NOTE: DI8 selection can be accessed on drives with a power greater than 22 kW.
[DI11]...[DI16]	<i>L 1 I I...L 1 I 6</i>	Digital input DI11...DI16 if VW3A3203 I/O extension module has been inserted
[CD00]...[CD10]	<i>C d 0 0...C d 1 0</i>	Virtual digital input CMD.0...CMD.10 in [I/O profile] <i>1 o</i> configuration
[CD11]...[CD15]	<i>C d 1 1...C d 1 5</i>	Virtual digital input CMD.11...CMD.15 regardless of configuration
[C101]...[C110]	<i>C 1 0 1...C 1 1 0</i>	Virtual digital input CMD1.01...CMD1.10 with integrated Modbus Serial in [I/O profile] <i>1 o</i> configuration
[C111]...[C115]	<i>C 1 1 1...C 1 1 5</i>	Virtual digital input CMD1.11...CMD1.15 with integrated Modbus Serial regardless of configuration
[C201]...[C210]	<i>C 2 0 1...C 2 1 0</i>	Virtual digital input CMD2.01...CMD2.10 with CANopen® fieldbus module in [I/O profile] <i>1 o</i> configuration
[C211]...[C215]	<i>C 2 1 1...C 2 1 5</i>	Virtual digital input CMD2.11...CMD2.15 with CANopen® fieldbus module regardless of configuration

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[C301]...[C310]	C 3 0 1...C 3 1 0	Virtual digital input CMD3.01...CMD3.10 with a fieldbus module in [I/O profile] <i>no configuration</i>
[C311]...[C315]	C 3 1 1...C 3 1 5	Virtual digital input CMD3.11...CMD3.15 with a fieldbus module regardless of configuration
[C501]...[C510]	C 5 0 1...C 5 1 0	Virtual digital input CMD5.01...CMD5.10 with integrated Ethernet in [I/O profile] <i>no configuration</i>
		NOTE: This selection can be accessed on ATV340***N4E drives.
[C511]...[C515]	C 5 1 1...C 5 1 5	Virtual digital input CMD5.11...CMD5.15 with integrated Ethernet regardless of configuration
		NOTE: This selection can be accessed on ATV340***N4E drives.

[3 Parameter sets] C HR 2

Parameter switching assignment 2.

Identical to [2 Parameter sets] C HR 1.

Switching 3 parameter sets.

NOTE: In order to obtain 3 parameter sets, it is necessary to configure first [2 Parameter sets] C HR 1.

[Parameter Selection] S P 5

This parameter can be accessed if [2 Parameter sets] C HR 1 is not set to [No] *no*.

Making an entry in this parameter opens a window containing all the adjustment parameters that can be accessed. Select 1 to 15 parameters using OK key. Parameter(s) can also be deselected using OK key.

Available parameters for parameters switching function are:

Parameter	Code
[Ramp increment]	i n r
[Acceleration]	R C C
[Deceleration]	d E C
[Acceleration 2]	R C 2
[Deceleration 2]	d E 2
[Begin Acc round]	t R 1
[End Acc round]	t R 2
[Begin Dec round]	t R 3
[End Dec round]	t R 4
[Low Speed]	L S P
[High Speed]	H S P
[High Speed 2]	H S P 2
[High Speed 3]	H S P 3
[High Speed 4]	H S P 4
[Motor Th Current]	i E H
[IR compensation]	u F r
[Slip compensation]	S L P
[K speed loop filter]	S F C
[Speed time integral]	S , t
[Speed prop. gain]	S P G
[Inertia Factor]	S P G u
[Ramp Divider]	d C F
[DC Inj Level 1]	i d C
[DC Inj Time 1]	t d ,
[DC Inj Level 2]	i d C 2

Parameter	Code
[DC Inj Time 2]	<i>t d C</i>
[Auto DC inj Level 1]	<i>S d C 1</i>
[Auto DC Inj Time 1]	<i>t d C 1</i>
[Auto DC inj Level 2]	<i>S d C 2</i>
[Auto DC Inj Time 2]	<i>t d C 2</i>
[Switching frequency]	<i>S F r</i>
[Current Limitation]	<i>C L 1</i>
[Current Limitation2]	<i>C L 2</i>
[Motor fluxing]	<i>F L u</i>
[Low Speed Timeout]	<i>t L S</i>
[Sleep Offset Thres.]	<i>S L E</i>
[Jog frequency]	<i>J G F</i>
[Jog Delay]	<i>J G t</i>
[Preset speed 2]...[Preset speed 16]	<i>S P 2 ... S P 16</i>
[+/- Speed limitation]	<i>S r P</i>
[Multiplying coeff.]	<i>P F r</i>
[Brk Release Current]	<i>i b r</i>
[Brake release I Rev]	<i>i r d</i>
[Brake Release time]	<i>b r t</i>
[Brake release freq]	<i>b i r</i>
[Brake engage freq]	<i>b E n</i>
[Brake engage delay]	<i>t b E</i>
[Brake engage time]	<i>b E t</i>
[Jump at reversal]	<i>J d C</i>
[Time to restart]	<i>t t r</i>
[Motor torque limit]	<i>t L , n</i>
[Gen. torque limit]	<i>t L , G</i>
[Torque ratio]	<i>t r t</i>
[Low Torque]	<i>L t q</i>
[High Torque]	<i>H t q</i>
[PID Prop.Gain]	<i>r P G</i>
[PID Intgl.Gain]	<i>r i G</i>
[PID derivative gain]	<i>r d G</i>
[PID ramp]	<i>P r P</i>
[PID Min Output]	<i>P o L</i>
[PID Max Output]	<i>P o H</i>
[PID Start Ref Freq]	<i>S F S</i>
[PID acceleration time]	<i>A C C P</i>
[Min fbk Warning]	<i>P R L</i>
[Max fbk Warning]	<i>P R H</i>
[PID error Warning]	<i>P E r</i>
[Speed input %]	<i>P S r</i>
[Ref PID Preset 2]	<i>r P 2</i>
[Ref PID Preset 3]	<i>r P 3</i>
[Ref PID Preset 4]	<i>r P 4</i>
[High Current Thd]	<i>C t d</i>
[Low I Threshold]	<i>C t d L</i>
[High torque thd.]	<i>t E H</i>

Parameter	Code
[Low torque thd.]	<i>t t L</i>
[Motor Freq Thd]	<i>F t d</i>
[Low Freq.Threshold]	<i>F t d L</i>
[Freq. threshold 2]	<i>F 2 d</i>
[2 Freq. Threshold]	<i>F 2 d L</i>
[Freewheel stop Thd]	<i>F F t</i>
[Motor Therm Thd]	<i>t t d</i>
[Reference high Thd]	<i>r t d</i>
[Reference low Thd]	<i>r t d L</i>
[Skip Frequency]	<i>J P F</i>
[Skip Frequency 2]	<i>J F 2</i>
[3rd Skip Frequency]	<i>J F 3</i>
[Skip Freq.Hysteresis]	<i>J F H</i>
[Unid.Thr.Nom.Speed]	<i>L u n</i>
[Unid.Thr.0.Speed]	<i>L u L</i>
[Unld. FreqThr. Det.]	<i>r n u d</i>
[Hysteresis Freq]	<i>S r b</i>
[Underload T.B.Rest.]	<i>F t u</i>
[Ovld Detection Thr.]	<i>L o C</i>
[Overload T.B.Rest.]	<i>F t o</i>
[Fan mode]	<i>F F n</i>
[Stall Max Time]	<i>S t P 1</i>
[Stall Current]	<i>S t P 2</i>
[Stall Frequency]	<i>S t P 3</i>
[AI1 Th Warn Level]	<i>t H 1 R</i>
[AI3 Th Warn Level]	<i>t H 3 R</i>
[AI4 Th Warn Level]	<i>t H 4 R</i>
[AI5 Th Warn Level]	<i>t H 5 R</i>
[AI1 Th Error Level]	<i>t H 1 F</i>
[AI3 Th Error Level]	<i>t H 3 F</i>
[AI4 Th Error Level]	<i>t H 4 F</i>
[AI5 Th Error Level]	<i>t H 5 F</i>
[Load correction]	<i>L b C</i>

[Set 1] P 5 1 - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Generic functions] → [Parameters switching] → [Set 1]

About This Menu

Making an entry in this menu opens a settings window containing the selected parameters in the order in which they were selected.

[Set 2] P 5 2 - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Generic functions] → [Parameters switching] → [Set 2]

About This Menu

Identical to [Set 1] P 5 1 - (*see page 397*).

[Set 3] P 5 3 - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Generic functions] → [Parameters switching] → [Set 3]

About This Menu

Identical to [Set 1] P 5 1 - (*see page 397*).

Section 8.32

[Generic functions] - [Stop after speed timeout]

[Stop after speed timeout] *P r 5 P* - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Generic functions] → [Stop after speed timeout]

Sleep/Wake-Up in Speed Control Mode

The drive is in Speed control mode, when PID is not active, typically when:

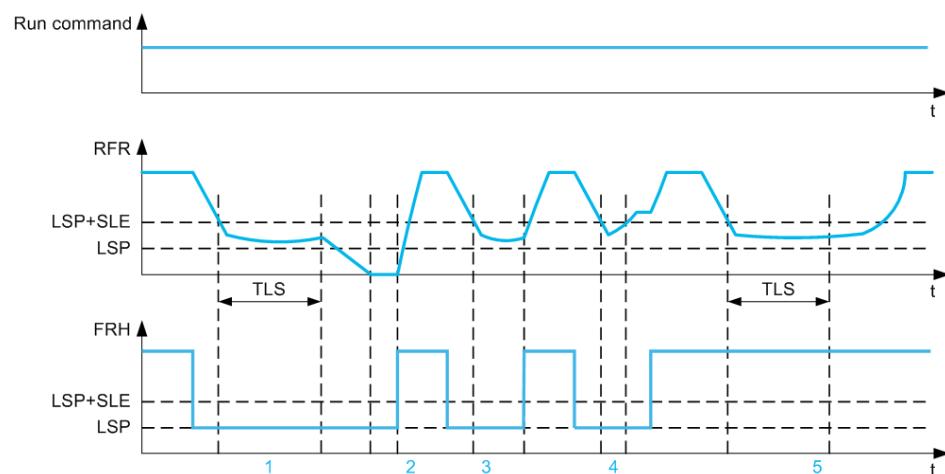
- PID is not configured (the motor speed setpoint is controlled by an external PLC, for example).
- PID is in manual mode (manual application mode, for example).
- PID is not active because Channel 1 is not selected (forced local mode enabled, for example).

When the drive is used in Speed Control (PID not used or not active), a speed condition is used to switch the application to the sleep state. When the drive is in sleep state, the motor is restarted if the sleep condition disappears.

This function avoids prolonged operation at low speeds when neither useful nor compliant with the system constraints. It stops the motor after a period of operation at reduced speed. This time and speed can be adjusted.

In Speed control mode, Sleep/Wake-up is managed according to the following rules:

- The motor is stopped when [Pre-Ramp Ref Freq] *F r H* and [Output frequency] *r F r* become and stay lower than [Low speed] *L 5 P* + [Sleep Offset Thres.] *5 L E* during [Low Speed Timeout] *E L 5*.
- The motor is restarted when [Pre-Ramp Ref Freq] *F r H* > [Low speed] *L 5 P* + [Sleep Offset Thres.] *5 L E*.



- 1 Nominal [Low Speed Timeout] *E L 5* function action: after [Low Speed Timeout] *E L 5* time, the motor is stopped according to the current deceleration ramp
- 2 [Pre-Ramp Ref Freq] *F r H* becomes greater than [Low speed] *L 5 P* + [Sleep Offset Thres.] *5 L E* and run order still present [Low Speed Timeout] *E L 5* function is deactivated
- 3 [Low Speed Timeout] *E L 5* function is not activated because [Pre-Ramp Ref Freq] *F r H* becomes greater than [Low speed] *L 5 P* + [Sleep Offset Thres.] *5 L E* before [Low Speed Timeout] *E L 5* has expired
- 4 [Low Speed Timeout] *E L 5* function is not activated because [Output frequency] *r F r* becomes greater than [Low speed] *L 5 P* + [Sleep Offset Thres.] *5 L E* before [Low Speed Timeout] *E L 5* has expired
- 5 [Low Speed Timeout] *E L 5* function is not activated because [Pre-Ramp Ref Freq] *F r H* stays greater than [Low speed] *L 5 P* + [Sleep Offset Thres.] *5 L E*

[Low Speed Timeout] *L S*

Low speed timeout

Setting (i)	Description
0.0...999.9 s	Setting range Factory setting: 0.0 s

[Sleep Offset Thres.] *S L E* ★

Sleep offset threshold.

This parameter can be accessed if **[Low Speed Timeout] *L S*** is not set to 0.

Adjustable restart threshold (offset) following a stop after prolonged operation at **[Low speed] *L S P*** + **[Sleep Offset Thres.] *S L E***, in Hz. The motor restarts if the reference rises above (LSP + SLE) and if a run command is still present.

Setting (i)	Description
1.0...[Max Frequency] <i>E F r</i>	Setting range Factory setting: 1.0 Hz

Section 8.33

[Generic functions] - [DC bus supply]

[DC bus supply] - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Generic functions] → [DC bus supply]

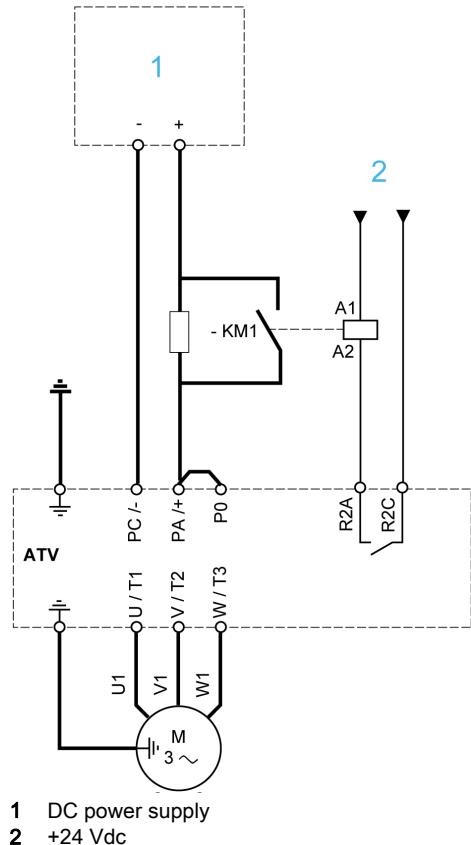
About This Menu

This menu can be accessed on 480 V Drives with power **greater than 22 kW**.

It gives the possibility to switch off/on drives supplied by a common DC bus without stopping the supply unit. Direct power supply via the DC bus requires a protected direct current source with adequate power and voltage as well as a suitably dimensioned resistor and capacitor precharging contactor. Consult Schneider Electric for information about specifying these components.

The **Direct Power Supply via Dc Bus** function can be used to control the precharging contactor via a relay or a logic input on the drive.

Example circuit using R2 relay:



[DC Charging Assign]

DC Bus charge assignment.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[No]	<i>n o</i>	Not assigned Factory setting
[R2]...[R3]	<i>r 2...r 3</i>	Relay output R2...R3 NOTE: R3 selection can be accessed on drives with a power greater than 22 kW.
[R4]...[R6]	<i>r 4...r 6</i>	Relay output R4...R6 if VW3A3204 relay output option module has been inserted
[DQ11 Digital Output]...[DQ12 Digital Output]	<i>d o 11...d o 12</i>	Digital output DQ11...DQ12 if VW3A3203 I/O extension module has been inserted

[DC Bus Charge Time]

DC Bus charge option time.

This parameter can be accessed if [DC Charging Assign]  is not set to [Not Assigned] *n o*.

Setting	Description
0.00...10.00 s	Factory setting: 0.00 s

Section 8.34

[Generic functions] - [Multimotors config]

[Multimotors config] ППС - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Generic functions] → [Multimotors config]

Motor or Configuration Switching

The drive may contain up to 4 configurations, which can be saved using the [Save Configuration] 5C5 parameter.

Each of these configurations can be activated remotely, enabling adaptation to:

- 2 to 4 different motors or mechanisms (multi-motors mode).
- 2 to 4 different configurations for a single motor (multi-configurations mode).

The two switching modes cannot be combined.

Note: Observe the following conditions:

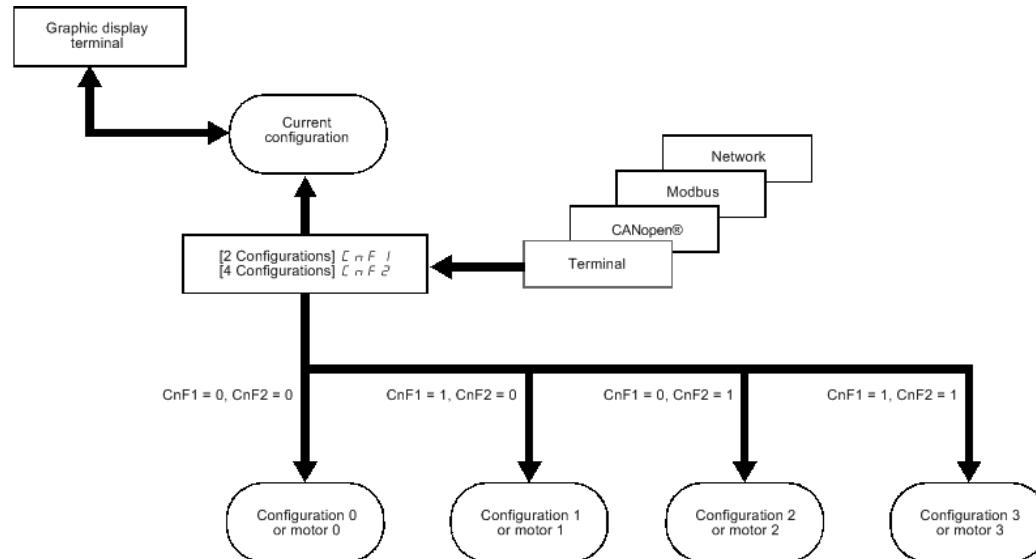
- Switching may take place when stopped (drive locked). If a switching request is sent during operation, it will be executed at next stop.
- When switching between motors, the concerned power and control terminals must be switched as appropriate.
- All configurations must share the same hardware configuration; otherwise the drive locks in [Incorrect Configuration] CfF.
- Switching to a configuration that does not exist causes the drive to lock in [Empty Configuration] CfF4.

Menus and Parameters Switched in Multi-Motor Mode

In multi-configurations mode, communication parameters are not switched.

- [Motor parameters] ПРР - menu.
- [Input/Output] ИД - menu.
- [Generic functions] ГСГФ - menu except for the [Multimotors config] ППС - function (to be configured once only).
- [Generic monitoring] ГПр - menu.
- [My menu] ПУПн - menu.

Transfer of a Drive Configuration to Another one, With Display Terminal, When the Drive Uses [Multimotors config] ППС - Function

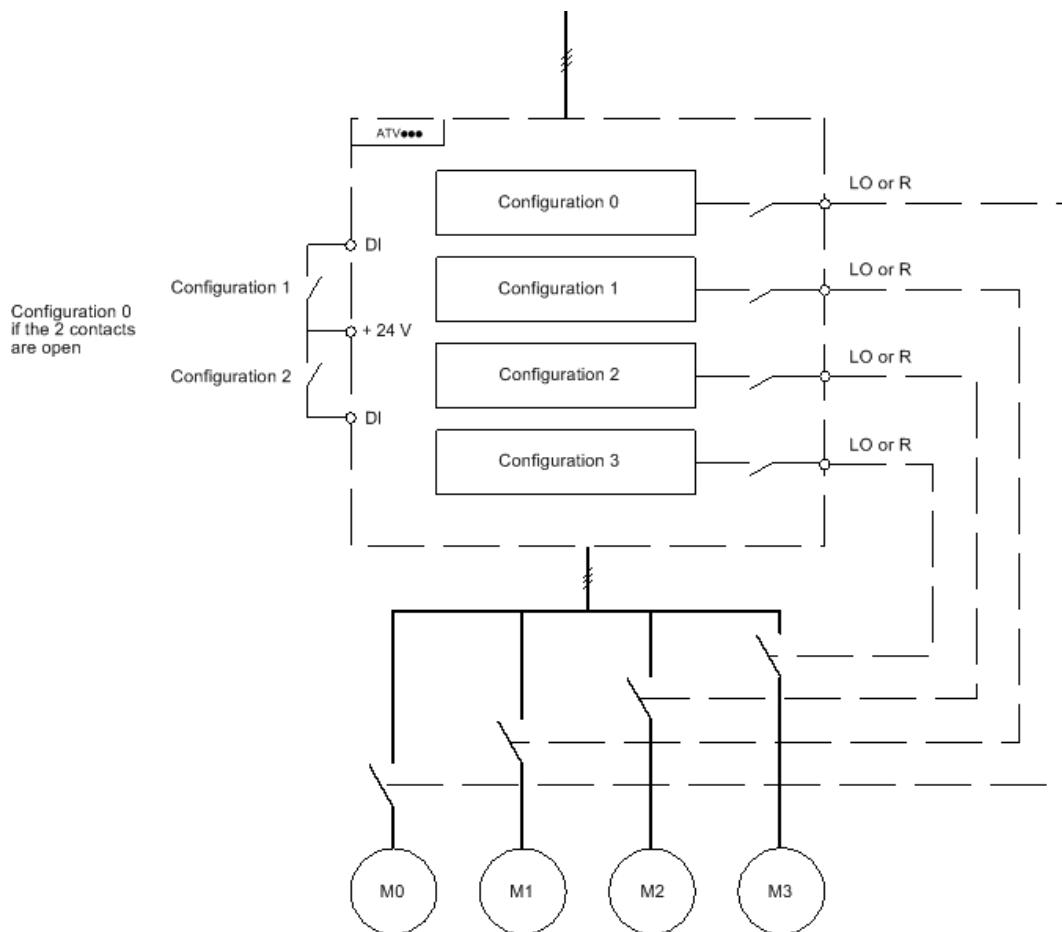


Switching Command

Depending on the number of motors or selected configurations (2 to 4), the switching command is sent using one or two logic inputs. The table below lists the possible combinations.

DI ($L \cap F _I$) 2 motors or configurations	DI ($L \cap F _2$) 3 motors or configurations	Number of configurations or active motors
0	0	0
1	0	1
0	1	2
1	1	3

Schematic Diagram for Multi-Motor Mode



Auto-Tuning in Multi-Motor Mode

This auto-tuning can be performed:

- Manually using a logic input when the motor changes.
- Automatically each time the motor is activated for the first time after switching on the drive if the [Automatic autotune] **R u E** parameter is set to [Yes] **Y E 5**.

Motor thermal states in multimotor mode:

The drive helps to protect the three motors individually. Each thermal state takes into account all stop times if the drive power is not switched off.

Configuration Information Output

In the [Input/Output] \rightarrow menu, a logic output can be assigned to each configuration or motor (2 to 4) for remote information transmission.

NOTE: As the [Input/Output] \rightarrow menu is switched, these outputs must be assigned in all configurations in which information is required.

[Multimotors] $\mathcal{C} \mathcal{H} \mathcal{P}$

Multimotors selection.

NOTICE	
MOTOR OVERHEATING	
<p>When the drive is switched off, the thermal states of the connected motors are not saved. When the drive is switched on again, the drive is not aware of the thermal states of the connected motors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Use separate temperature sensors for each connected motor for thermal monitoring. <p>Failure to follow these instructions can result in equipment damage.</p>	

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[No]	DO	Multiconfiguration possible Factory setting
[Yes]	YES	Multimotor possible

[2 Configurations] $\mathcal{C} \mathcal{N} \mathcal{F} \mathcal{I}$

Switching of two motors or 2 configurations.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Not Assigned]	DO	Not assigned Factory setting
[DI1]...[DI8]	$\text{L}\text{1}\text{I}\dots\text{L}\text{8}\text{I}$	Digital input DI1...DI8 NOTE: DI8 selection can be accessed on drives with a power greater than 22 kW.
[DI11]...[DI16]	$\text{L}\text{11}\text{I}\dots\text{L}\text{16}\text{I}$	Digital input DI11...DI16 if VW3A3203 I/O extension module has been inserted
[C101]...[C110]	$\text{C}\text{101}\text{I}\dots\text{C}\text{110}\text{I}$	Virtual digital input CMD1.01...CMD1.10 with integrated Modbus Serial in [I/O profile] \rightarrow configuration
[C111]...[C115]	$\text{C}\text{111}\text{I}\dots\text{C}\text{115}\text{I}$	Virtual digital input CMD1.11...CMD1.15 with integrated Modbus Serial regardless of configuration
[C201]...[C210]	$\text{C}\text{201}\text{I}\dots\text{C}\text{210}\text{I}$	Virtual digital input CMD2.01...CMD2.10 with CANopen® fieldbus module in [I/O profile] \rightarrow configuration
[C211]...[C215]	$\text{C}\text{211}\text{I}\dots\text{C}\text{215}\text{I}$	Virtual digital input CMD2.11...CMD2.15 with CANopen® fieldbus module regardless of configuration
[C301]...[C310]	$\text{C}\text{301}\text{I}\dots\text{C}\text{310}\text{I}$	Virtual digital input CMD3.01...CMD3.10 with a fieldbus module in [I/O profile] \rightarrow configuration
[C311]...[C315]	$\text{C}\text{311}\text{I}\dots\text{C}\text{315}\text{I}$	Virtual digital input CMD3.11...CMD3.15 with a fieldbus module regardless of configuration
[C501]...[C510]	$\text{C}\text{501}\text{I}\dots\text{C}\text{510}\text{I}$	Virtual digital input CMD5.01...CMD5.10 with integrated Ethernet in [I/O profile] \rightarrow configuration NOTE: This selection can be accessed on ATV340...N4E drives.
[C511]...[C515]	$\text{C}\text{511}\text{I}\dots\text{C}\text{515}\text{I}$	Virtual digital input CMD5.11...CMD5.15 with integrated Ethernet regardless of configuration NOTE: This selection can be accessed on ATV340...N4E drives.

[3 Configurations] C n F 2

Switching of three motors or 3 configurations.

NOTE: In order to obtain four motors or 4 configurations, **[2 Configurations] C n F 1** must also be configured.

Identical to **[2 Configurations] C n F 1**

Section 8.35

[Generic functions] - [24 V Supply Output]

[24 V Supply Output] 5 2 4 V - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Generic functions] → [24 V Supply Output]

This menu can be accessed on drives with a power lower than 30 kW.

[24 V Supply Output] 5 2 4 V

24 V Supply Output

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[No]	n o	24 V pin is used as input supply.
[Yes]	y E 5	24 V pin is used as output supply. Factory setting

Section 8.36

[Generic monitoring]

What Is in This Section?

This section contains the following topics:

Topic	Page
[Process underload] u L d - Menu	408
[Process overload] o L d - Menu	410
[Stall monitoring] S t P r - Menu	412
[Thermal monitoring] t P P - Menu	413
[Frequency meter] F q F - Menu	414

[Process underload] $\downarrow L \downarrow$ - Menu

Access

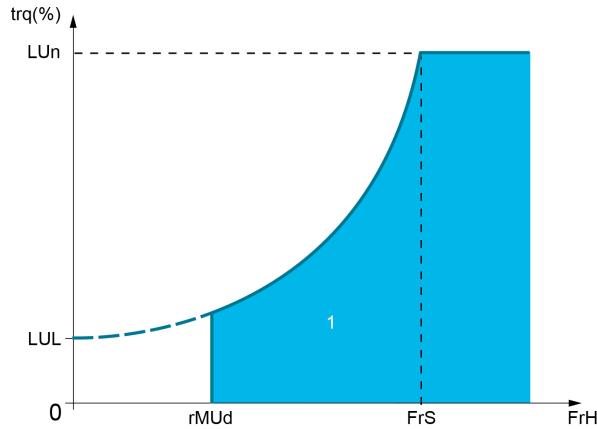
[Complete settings] \rightarrow [Generic monitoring] \rightarrow [Process underload]

Process Underload Detected Error

A process underload is detected when the next event occurs and remains pending for a minimum time [**Unld T. Del. Detect**] $\downarrow L \downarrow t$, which is configurable:

- The motor is in steady state and the torque is below the set underload limit ([**Unld.Thr.0.Speed**] $L \downarrow L$, [**Unld.Thr.Nom.Speed**] $L \downarrow n$, [**Unld. FreqThr. Det.**] $r \Pi \downarrow d$ parameters).
- The motor is in steady state when the offset between the frequency reference and motor frequency falls below the configurable threshold [**Hysteresis Freq**] $5 r b$.

Between zero frequency and the rated frequency, the curve reflects the following equation: torque = $L \downarrow L + (L \downarrow n - L \downarrow L) \times (\text{frequency})^2 / (\text{rated frequency})^2$. The underload function is not active for frequencies below $r \Pi \downarrow d$.



1 Underload zone.

A relay or a digital output can be assigned to the signaling of this detected error in the [**Input/Output**] $\downarrow \square$ - , [**I/O assignment**] $\downarrow \square R 5$ - menus.

[Unld T. Del. Detect] $\downarrow L \downarrow t$

Underload detection time delay.

A value of 0 deactivates the function and makes the other parameters inaccessible.

Setting	Description
0...100 s	Setting range Factory setting: 0 s

[Unld.Thr.Nom.Speed] $L \downarrow n$ \star

Underload threshold at nominal motor speed [**Nominal Motor Freq**] $F \downarrow 5$, as a % of the rated motor torque.

This parameter can be accessed if [**Unld T. Del. Detect**] $\downarrow L \downarrow t$ is not set to 0.

Setting \square	Description
20...100%	Setting range Factory setting: 60%

[Und.Thr.0.Speed] L u L ★

Underload threshold at zero frequency as a % of the rated motor torque.

This parameter can be accessed if **[Und T. Del. Detect] u L E** is not set to 0.

Setting ()	Description
0...[Und.Thr.Nom.Speed] L u n	Setting range Factory setting: 0%

[Und. FreqThr. Det.] r P u d ★

Minimum frequency underload detection threshold.

This parameter can be accessed if **[Und T. Del. Detect] u L E** is not set to 0.

Setting ()	Description
0.0...599.0 Hz	Setting range Factory setting: 0.0 Hz

[Hysteresis Freq] S r b ★

Maximum deviation between the frequency reference and the motor frequency, which defines a steady state operation.

This parameter can be accessed if **[Und T. Del. Detect] u L E** or **[Ovld Time Detect.] E o L** is not set to 0.

Setting ()	Description
0.3...599.0 Hz	Setting range Factory setting: 0.3 Hz

[Underload Mangmt.] u d L ★

Underload management.

Behavior on switching to underload detection.

This parameter can be accessed if **[Und T. Del. Detect] u L E** is not set to 0.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Ignore]	n o	Detected error ignored
[Freewheel stop]	Y E S	Freewheel stop Factory setting
[Ramp stop]	r P P	Stop on ramp
[Fast stop]	F S E	Fast stop

[Underload T.B.Rest.] F E u ★

Minimum time permitted between an underload being detected and any automatic restart.

To allow an automatic restart, the value of **[Fault Reset Time] E R r** must exceed this parameter by at least 1 minute.

This parameter can be accessed if **[Underload Mangmt.] u d L** is not set to **[Ignore] n o**.

Setting ()	Description
0...6 min	Setting range Factory setting: 0 min

[Process overload] $\sigma L d$ - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Generic monitoring] → [Process overload]

About This Menu

A process overload error is detected when the next event occurs and remains pending for a minimum time [Ovld Time Detect.] $E \sigma L$, which is configurable:

- The drive is in current limitation mode.
- The motor is in steady state and the current is above the set overload threshold [Ovld Detection Thr.] $L \sigma C$.

The motor is in steady state when the offset between the frequency reference and motor frequency falls below the configurable threshold [Hysteresis Freq] $S r b$.

A relay or a digital output can be assigned to the signaling of this detected error.

[Ovld Time Detect.] $E \sigma L$

Overload reaction time.

A value of 0 deactivates the function and makes the other parameters inaccessible.

Setting	Description
0...100 s	Setting range Factory setting: 0 s

[Ovld Detection Thr.] $L \sigma C$ ★

Overload threshold.

Overload detection threshold, as a % of the rated motor current [Nom Motor Current] $n C r$. This value must be less than the limit current in order for the function to work.

This parameter can be accessed if [Ovld Time Detect.] $E \sigma L$ is not set to 0.

Setting ()	Description
70...150%	Setting range Factory setting: 110%

[Hysteresis Freq] $S r b$ ★

Hysteresis for steady state.

Maximum deviation between the frequency reference and the motor frequency, which defines a steady state operation.

This parameter can be accessed if [Ovld Time Detect.] $E \sigma L$ or [Unld T. Del. Detect.] $u L E$ is not set to 0.

Setting ()	Description
0.3...599.0 Hz	Setting range Factory setting: 0.3 Hz

[Ovld.Prces.Mngmt] $\sigma d L$ ★

Behavior on switching to overload detection.

This parameter can be accessed if [Ovld Time Detect.] $E \sigma L$ is not set to 0.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Ignore]	$n o$	Detected error ignored
[Freewheel stop]	$y E S$	Freewheel stop Factory setting
[Ramp stop]	$r \pi P$	Stop on ramp
[Fast stop]	$F S E$	Fast stop

[Overload T.B.Rest.] F E o ★

Minimum time permitted between an overload being detected and any automatic restart.

In order to allow an automatic restart, the value of **[Fault Reset Time]** E R r must exceed this parameter by at least 1 minute.

This parameter can be accessed if **[Ovld Time Detect.]** E o L or **[Ovld.Process.Mngmt]** o d L is not set to 0.

Setting (S)	Description
0...6 min	Setting range Factory setting: 0 min

[Stall monitoring] **S E P r** - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Generic monitoring] → [Stall monitoring]

About This Menu

This function helps to prevent a motor overload by monitoring the motor current and the speed rise time.

A stalling condition is when:

- An output frequency is smaller than the stalling frequency [Stall Frequency] **S E P 3**
- And an output current is higher than the stalling current [Stall Current] **S E P 2**
- During a time longer than the stalling time [Stall Max Time] **S E P 1**

When a stalling condition occurs, an [Motor Stall Error] **S E F** error is triggered.

[Stall Monitoring] **S E P L**

Stall monitoring activation.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[No]	n o	Function disabled Factory setting
[Yes]	y E S	Function enabled

[Stall Max Time] **S E P 1** ★

Motor stall maximum time.

This parameter can be accessed if [Stall Monitoring] **S E P L** is not set to [No] **n o**.

Setting ()	Description
0.0...200 s	Setting range Factory setting: 60.0 s

[Stall Current] **S E P 2** ★

Stall monitoring current level.

This parameter can be accessed if [Stall Monitoring] **S E P L** is not set to [No] **n o**.

The factory setting changes to 150.0% if [Dual rating] **d r E** is set to [Heavy Duty] **H , G H**

Setting ()	Description
0.0...150.0%	Setting range Factory setting: 150.0%

[Stall Frequency] **S E P 3** ★

Stall monitoring frequency level.

This parameter can be accessed if [Stall Monitoring] **S E P L** is not set to [No] **n o**.

Setting ()	Description
0.0...[Max Frequency] E F r	Setting range Factory setting: 2.0 Hz

[Thermal monitoring] *E P P* - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Generic monitoring] → [Thermal monitoring]

About This Menu

Identical to [Thermal monitoring] *E P P* - Menu (*see page 179*).

[Frequency meter] F 9 F - Menu

Access

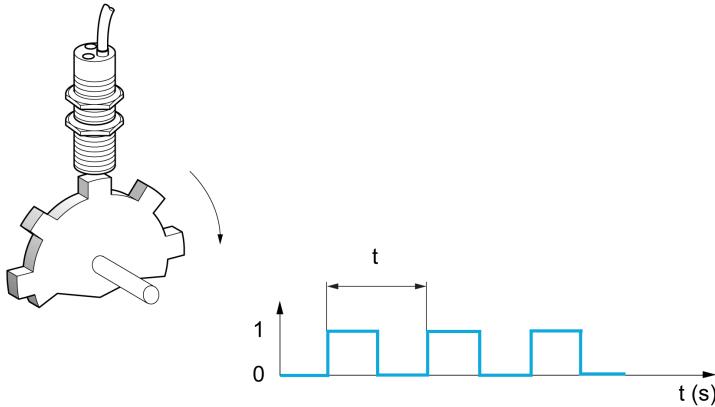
[Complete settings] → [Generic monitoring] → [Frequency meter]

About This Menu

This function uses the "Pulse input" input and can only be used if the "Pulse input" input is not being used for another function.

Example of Use

An indexed disk driven by the motor and connected to a proximity sensor can be used to generate a frequency signal that is proportional to the speed of rotation of the motor.



When applied to the "Pulse input" input, this signal supports:

- Measurement and display of the motor speed: signal frequency = $1/T$. This frequency is displayed with the [Measured Freq] F 9 5.
- Overspeed detection (if the measured speed exceeds a preset threshold, the drive trips).
- Brake failure detection if brake logic control has been configured: If the speed does not drop sufficiently quickly following a command to engage the brake, the drive trips. This function can be used to detect worn brake linings.
- Detection of a speed threshold that can be adjusted using [Pulse warning thd.] F 9 L (*see page 416*) and is assignable to a relay or digital output.

[Frequency meter] F 9 F

Frequency Meter function activation.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Not Configured]	n o	Not assigned Factory Setting
[DI7 PulseInput]...[DI8 PulseInput]	P 1, 7...P 1, 8	Digital input DI7...DI8 used as pulse input NOTE: This selection can be accessed on drives with a power greater than 22 kW.
[PTI]	P E ,	Pulse Train Input NOTE: This selection can be accessed on drives with a power lower than 30 kW.
[RP]	P ,	Pulse input NOTE: This selection can be accessed on drives with a power below than 30 kW.

[Pulse scal. divider] F 9 C

Coefficient for measure.

The frequency measured is displayed with the **[Measured Freq] F 9 S** parameter.

Setting ()	Description
1.0...100.0	Setting range Factory setting: 1.0

[Overspd. pulse thd.] F 9 H

Maximum frequency authorized.

Activation and adjustment of overspeed monitoring: **[Motor Overspeed] S o F**.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[No]	<input type="checkbox"/>	No motor overspeed monitoring Factory setting
0...30 kHz		Adjustment of the frequency tripping threshold on the "Pulse input" input divided by [Pulse scal. divider] F 9 C .

[Pulse overspd delay] E d 5

Time before trip in over-speed.

Setting	Description
0.0...10.0 s	Setting range Factory setting: 0.0 s

[Level fr. pulse ctrl] F d L

Feedback detection threshold.

Activation and adjustment of monitoring for the pulse input (speed feedback): **[Encoder Feedback Loss] S P F**.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[No]	<input type="checkbox"/>	No monitoring of speed feedback Factory setting
0.0...599 Hz		Adjustment of the motor frequency threshold for tripping a speed feedback detection. (difference between the estimated frequency and the measured speed).

[Pulse thd. wo Run] F 9 E

Frequency threshold wear brake.

Activation and adjustment of brake feedback monitoring: **[Brake Feedback] b r F**. If brake logic control **[Brake assignment] b L C** is not configured, this parameter is forced to [No] .

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[No]	<input type="checkbox"/>	No brake monitoring Factory setting
1...1,000 Hz		Adjustment of the motor frequency threshold to trigger a [Brake Feedback] b r F error (detection of speeds other than 0).

[Pulse wo Run delay] **E 9 b**

Time before trip in wear brake.

Setting	Description
0.0...10.0 s	Setting range Factory setting: 0.0 s

[Pulse warning thd.] **F 9 L**

Frequency level.

Setting	Description
0...30,000 Hz	Setting range Factory setting: 0 Hz

Section 8.37

[Input/Output] - [I/O assignment]

What Is in This Section?

This section contains the following topics:

Topic	Page
[DI1 assignment] L 1 R - Menu	418
[DI2 assignment] L 2 R - Menu	420
[DI3 assignment] L 3 R - Menu	420
[DI4 assignment] L 4 R - Menu	420
[DI5 assignment] L 5 R - Menu	421
[DI6 assignment] L 6 R - Menu	421
[DI7 assignment] L 7 R - Menu	421
[DI8 assignment] L 8 R - Menu	422
[DI11 assignment] L 11 R - Menu	422
[DI12 assignment] L 12 R - Menu	422
[DI13 assignment] L 13 R - Menu	423
[DI14 assignment] L 14 R - Menu	423
[DI15 assignment] L 15 R - Menu	423
[DI16 assignment] L 16 R - Menu	424
[DI7 Pulse Input Assign] P , 7 R - Menu	425
[DI8 Pulse Input Assign] P , 8 R - Menu	426
[RP assignment] P , R - Menu	426
[AI1 assignment] R , 1 R - Menu	427
[AI2 assignment] R , 2 R - Menu	428
[AI3 assignment] R , 3 R - Menu	428
[AI4 assignment] R , 4 R - Menu	428
[AI5 assignment] R , 5 R - Menu	429
[AIV1 assignment] R V 1 R - Menu	429

[DI1 assignment] L / R - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Input/Output] → [I/O assignment] → [DI1 assignment]

[DI1 Low Assignment] L / L

DI1 low assignment.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[No]	n o	Not assigned
[Fast stop]	F S t	Fast stop
[External Error]	E E F	External error
[Drive Lock]	L E S	Drive lock assignment
[Stop FW]	L R F	Stop forward limit assignment
[Stop RV]	L R r	Stop reverse limit assignment
[Stop FW limit sw.]	S R F	Fwd stop limit input assig
[Stop RV limit sw.]	S R r	RV stop limit input assign
[Forward Slowdown]	d R F	Forward slowdown limit
[Reverse Slowdown]	d R r	Reverse slowdown limit
[Disable limit sw.]	C L S	Disable limit switch

[DI1 High Assignment] L / H

DI1 high assignment.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[No]	n o	Not assigned
[Run]	r u n	Run enable
[Forward]	F r d	Forward operation
[Reverse]	r r S	Reverse operation
[Ramp switching]	r P S	Ramp switching
[Jog]	J o G	Jog
[+Speed]	u S P	+ speed
[- speed]	d S P	- Speed
[2 preset speeds]	P S 2	2 preset speeds
[4 preset speeds]	P S 4	4 preset speeds
[8 preset speeds]	P S 8	8 preset speeds
[Ref. 2 switching]	r F C	Reference switching
[DC injection]	d C ,	Injection DC stop
[Forced local]	F L o	Forced local mode
[Fault reset]	r S F	Fault reset
[Autotuning Assign]	t u L	Autotuning assignment
[Ref Frequency stored]	S P n	Reference frequency stored
[Pre Fluxing]	F L ,	Pre fluxing
[Auto / manual]	P R u	PID auto-manu
[PID integral reset]	P , S	Integral shunting PID
[2 preset PID ref.]	P r 2	2 preset PID references
[4 preset PID ref.]	P r 4	4 preset PID references
[Torque limitation]	t L R	Permanent torque limitation
[External Error]	E E F	External error
[2 config. switching]	C n F 1	2 configuration switching
[3 config. switching]	C n F 2	3 configuration switching
[2 parameter sets]	C H R 1	Parameter switching 1

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[3 parameter sets]	C H R 2	Parameter switching 2
[Analog torque limitation]	E L C	Analog torque limitation
[Trq/spd switching]	E S S	Torque/Speed switching
[Torque ref. sign]	E S d	Torque reference sign switching
[Cmd switching]	C C S	Command channel switching
[ErrorDetect Disable]	i n H	Error detection disable
[16 preset speeds]	P S 1 6	16 preset speeds
[Current limit 2]	L C 2	Current limit 2 switching
[Ref 1B switching]	r C b	Reference channel switching (1 to 1B)
[Brake contact]	b C ,	Brake contact
[Stop FW limit sw.]	S R F	Fwd stop limit input assig
[Stop RV limit sw.]	S R r	RV stop limit input assign
[Forward Slowdown]	d R F	Forward slowdown limit
[Reverse Slowdown]	d R r	Reverse slowdown limit
[Disable limit sw.]	C L S	Disable limit switch
[Drive Lock]	L E S	Drive lock assignment
[ProductRestart Assign]	r P R	Restart product
[Angle test]	R S L	Angle setting test
[Stop on top Z]	E o S E	Stop on next top Z detection
[2 HSP]	S h 2	2 High Speed assignment
[4 HSP]	S h 4	4 High Speed assignment
[Idle]	, d L S	Stop and go : idle mode enable condition
[TrqLimit Switch Assign]	E R S u	Torque limitation switch assignment
[+speed around Ref Freq]	u S ,	Increase speed around reference frequency
[-speed around Ref Freq]	d S ,	Decrease speed around reference frequency
[Trq Ref Switch Assign]	E r ,	Torque control reference switch assignment

[DI2 assignment] L 2 R - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Input/Output] → [I/O assignment] → [DI2 assignment]

About This Menu

Identical to [DI1 assignment] L 1 R - menu (*see page 418*).

[DI2 Low Assignment] L 2 L

DI2 low assignment.

[DI2 High Assignment] L 2 H

DI2 high assignment.

[DI3 assignment] L 3 R - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Input/Output] → [I/O assignment] → [DI3 assignment]

About This Menu

Identical to [DI1 assignment] L 1 R - menu (*see page 418*).

[DI3 Low Assignment] L 3 L

DI3 low assignment.

[DI3 High Assignment] L 3 H

DI3 high assignment.

[DI4 assignment] L 4 R - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Input/Output] → [I/O assignment] → [DI4 assignment]

About This Menu

Identical to [DI1 assignment] L 1 R - menu (*see page 418*).

[DI4 Low Assignment] L 4 L

DI4 low assignment.

[DI4 High Assignment] L 4 H

DI4 high assignment.

[DI5 assignment] L 5 R - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Input/Output] → [I/O assignment] → [DI5 assignment]

About This Menu

Identical to [DI1 assignment] L 1 R - menu (*see page 418*).

[DI5 Low Assignment] L 5 L

DI5 low assignment.

[DI5 High Assignment] L 5 H

DI5 high assignment.

[DI6 assignment] L 6 R - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Input/Output] → [I/O assignment] → [DI6 assignment]

About This Menu

Identical to [DI1 assignment] L 1 R - menu (*see page 418*).

[DI6 Low Assignment] L 6 L

DI6 low assignment.

[DI6 High Assignment] L 6 H

DI6 high assignment.

[DI7 assignment] L 7 R - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Input/Output] → [I/O assignment] → [DI7 assignment]

About This Menu

Identical to [DI1 assignment] L 1 R - menu (*see page 418*).

[DI7 Low Assignment] L 7 L

DI7 low assignment.

[DI7 High Assignment] L 7 H

DI7 high assignment.

[DI8 assignment] L B R - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Input/Output] → [I/O assignment] → [DI8 assignment]

About This Menu

This menu can be accessed on drives with a power **greater than 22 kW**.

Identical to [DI1 assignment] L IR - menu (*see page 418*).

[DI8 Low Assignment] L BL

DI8 low assignment.

[DI8 High Assignment] L BH

DI8 high assignment.

[DI11 assignment] L I IR - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Input/Output] → [I/O assignment] → [DI11 assignment]

About This Menu

Identical to [DI1 assignment] L IR - menu (*see page 418*).

Following parameters can be accessed if VW3A3203 I/O extension module has been inserted.

[DI11 Low Assignment] L IL *

DI11 low assignment.

[DI11 High Assignment] L IH *

DI11 high assignment.

[DI12 assignment] L I2 R - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Input/Output] → [I/O assignment] → [DI12 assignment]

About This Menu

Identical to [DI1 assignment] L IR - menu (*see page 418*).

Following parameters can be accessed if VW3A3203 I/O extension module has been inserted.

[DI12 Low Assignment] L I2L *

DI12 low assignment.

[DI12 High Assignment] L I2H *

DI12 high assignment.

[DI13 assignment] L / 3 R - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Input/Output] → [I/O assignment] → [DI13 assignment]

About This Menu

Identical to [DI1 assignment] L / R - menu (*see page 418*).

Following parameters can be accessed if VW3A3203 I/O extension module has been inserted.

[DI13 Low Assignment] L / 3 L ★

DI13 low assignment.

[DI13 High Assignment] L / 3 H ★

DI13 high assignment.

[DI14 assignment] L / 4 R - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Input/Output] → [I/O assignment] → [DI14 assignment]

About This Menu

Identical to [DI1 assignment] L / R - menu (*see page 418*).

Following parameters can be accessed if VW3A3203 I/O extension module has been inserted.

[DI14 Low Assignment] L / 4 L ★

DI14 low assignment.

[DI14 High Assignment] L / 4 H ★

DI14 high assignment.

[DI15 assignment] L / 5 R - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Input/Output] → [I/O assignment] → [DI15 assignment]

About This Menu

Identical to [DI1 assignment] L / R - menu (*see page 418*).

Following parameters can be accessed if VW3A3203 I/O extension module has been inserted.

[DI15 Low Assignment] L / 5 L ★

DI15 low assignment.

[DI15 High Assignment] L / 5 H ★

DI15 high assignment.

[DI16 assignment] L I E R - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Input/Output] → [I/O assignment] → [DI16 assignment]

About This Menu

Identical to [DI1 assignment] L I R - menu (*see page 418*).

Following parameters can be accessed if VW3A3203 I/O extension module has been inserted.

[DI16 Low Assignment] L I E L ★

DI16 low assignment.

[DI16 High Assignment] L I E H ★

DI16 high assignment.

[DI7 Pulse Input Assign] *P* , *7F* - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Input/Output] → [I/O assignment] → [DI7 Pulse Input Assign]

About This Menu

Following parameters can be accessed on the Display Terminal by pressing the OK key on the [DI7 Frequency Measured] *P F C* 7 parameter.

This menu can be accessed on drives with a power **greater than 22 kW**.

[DI7 Pulse Input Assign] *P* , *7F*

DI7 pulse input assignment.

It displays all the functions associated with the pulse input in order to verify, for example, for compatibility problems.

If no functions have been assigned, [No] *n o* is displayed.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[No]	<i>n o</i>	Not assigned
[Torque Ref Offset]	<i>E 9 o</i>	Torque offset source
[Torque Ref Ratio]	<i>E 9 r</i>	Torque ratio source
[Ref Frequency 1]	<i>F r 1</i>	Reference frequency 1
[Ref Frequency 2]	<i>F r 2</i>	Reference frequency 2
[Ref Frequency 2 Summing]	<i>S R 2</i>	Reference frequency 2 summing
[Torque limitation]	<i>E R R</i>	Torque limitation: activation by an analog value
[Torque limitation 2]	<i>E R R 2</i>	Torque limitation: activation by an analog value
[Subtract Ref Freq 2]	<i>d R 2</i>	Subtract reference frequency 2
[PID Ref Frequency]	<i>F P 1</i>	PID reference frequency
[Ref Frequency 3 Summing]	<i>S R 3</i>	Reference frequency 3 summing
[Ref Frequency 1B]	<i>F r 1 b</i>	Reference frequency 1B
[Subtract Ref Freq 3]	<i>d R 3</i>	Subtract reference frequency 3
[Forced local]	<i>F L o C</i>	Forced local reference source1
[Ref Frequency 2 multiplier]	<i>N R 2</i>	Reference frequency 2 multiplier
[Ref Frequency 3 multiplier]	<i>N R 3</i>	Reference frequency 3 multiplier
[Torque reference]	<i>E r 1</i>	Torque regulation: torque set point 1
[Torque reference 2]	<i>E r 2</i>	Torque regulation: torque set point 2
[Frequency Meter]	<i>F 9 F</i>	Frequency meter function activation
[External Feed Forward]	<i>E E F F</i>	External feed-forward

[DI8 Pulse Input Assign] $P_{10}B_{11}$ - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Input/Output] → [I/O assignment] → [Pulse Input DI8 Assign]

About This Menu

Identical to [DI7 Pulse Input Assign] $P_{10}B_{11}$.

Following parameters can be accessed on the Display Terminal by pressing the OK key on the [DI8 Frequency Measured] $P_{10}F_{11}C_{12}B$ parameter.

This menu can be accessed on drives with a power **greater than 22 kW**.

[Pulse Input DI8 Assign] $P_{10}B_{11}$

Pulse Input DI8 Assignment.

Identical to [Pulse Input DI7 Assign] $P_{10}T_{11}$ (*see page 425*)

[RP assignment] $P_{10}R_{11}$ - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Input/Output] → [I/O assignment] → [RP assignment]

About This Menu

This menu can be accessed on drives with a power **lower than 30 kW**.

About This Menu

Following parameters can be accessed on the Display Terminal by pressing the OK key on the [DI8 Frequency Measured] $P_{10}F_{11}C_{12}B$ parameter.

This menu can be accessed on drives with a power greater than 30 kW.

[RP assignment] $P_{10}R_{11}\star$

Pulse input assignment

Identical to [Pulse Input DI7 Assign] $P_{10}T_{11}$ (*see page 425*)

[AI1 assignment] $\text{F} \downarrow / \text{F} \uparrow$ - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Input/Output] → [I/O assignment] → [AI1 assignment]

[AI1 Assignment] $\text{F} \downarrow / \text{F} \uparrow$

Analog input AI1 functions assignment.

Read-only parameter, cannot be configured. It displays all the functions associated with input AI1 in order to verify, for example, for compatibility problems.

If no functions have been assigned, [No] n o is displayed.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[No]	n o	Not assigned
[Torque Ref Offset]	t q o	Torque offset source
[Torque Ref Ratio]	t q r	Torque ratio source
[Ref Freq Channel 1]	f r 1	Reference frequency channel 1 Factory Setting
[Ref Freq Channel 2]	f r 2	Reference frequency channel 2
[Ref Frequency 2 Summing]	s r 2	Reference frequency 2 summing
[Torque limitation]	t r l	Torque limitation: activation by an analog value
[Torque limitation 2]	t r l 2	Torque limitation: activation by an analog value
[Subtract Ref Freq 2]	d r 2	Subtract reference frequency 2
[Manual PID Ref.]	p , n	Manual speed reference of the PID controller (auto-man)
[PID Ref Frequency]	f p ,	PID reference frequency
[Ref Frequency 3 Summing]	s r 3	Reference frequency 3 summing
[Ref Frequency 1B]	f r 1b	Reference frequency 1B
[Subtract Ref Freq 3]	d r 3	Subtract reference frequency 3
[Forced local]	f l o c	Forced local reference source1
[Ref Frequency 2 multiplier]	p r 2	Reference frequency 2 multiplier
[Ref Frequency 3 multiplier]	p r 3	Reference frequency 3 multiplier
[Torque reference]	t r 1	Torque regulation: torque set point 1
[Torque reference 2]	t r 2	Torque regulation: torque set point 2
[External Feed Forward]	e f f	External feed-forward
[M/S Speed Ref In]	m s s ,	Master Slave: speed input
[M/S Trq Ref In]	m s t ,	Master Slave: torque input

[AI2 assignment] $R_1, 2 R$ - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Input/Output] → [I/O assignment] → [AI2 assignment]

About This Menu

Identical to [AI1 assignment] $R_1, 1 R$ - menu (*see page 427*).

[AI2 Assignment] $R_1, 2 R$

AI2 assignment.

[AI3 assignment] $R_1, 3 R$ - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Input/Output] → [I/O assignment] → [AI3 assignment]

About This Menu

Identical to [AI1 assignment] $R_1, 1 R$ - menu (*see page 427*).

[AI3 assignment] $R_1, 3 R$

AI3 assignment.

[AI4 assignment] $R_1, 4 R$ - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Input/Output] → [I/O assignment] → [AI4 assignment]

About This Menu

Identical to [AI1 assignment] $R_1, 1 R$ - menu (*see page 427*).

[AI4 Assignment] $R_1, 4 R \star$

AI4 assignment.

This parameter can be accessed if VW3A3203 I/O extension module has been inserted.

[AI5 assignment] R , $S R$ - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Input/Output] → [I/O assignment] → [AI5 assignment]

About This Menu

Identical to [AI1 assignment] R , $I R$ - menu (*see page 427*).

[AI5 Assignment] R , $S R$ \star

AI5 assignment.

This parameter can be accessed if VW3A3203 I/O extension module has been inserted.

[AIV1 assignment] $R V$ $I R$ - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Input/Output] → [I/O assignment] → [AIV1 assignment]

[AIV1 Assignment] $R V$ $I R$

Virtual analog input 1 function assignment.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[No]	$n \square$	Not assigned
[Torque Ref Offset]	$t \square o$	Torque offset source
[Torque Ref Ratio]	$t \square r$	Torque ratio source
[Ref Frequency 2 Summing]	$S R 2$	Reference frequency 2 summing
[Torque limitation]	$t R R$	Torque limitation: activation by an analog value
[Torque limitation 2]	$t R R 2$	Torque limitation: activation by an analog value
[Subtract Ref Freq 2]	$d R 2$	Subtract reference frequency 2
[Ref Frequency 3 Summing]	$S R 3$	Reference frequency 3 summing
[Subtract Ref Freq 3]	$d R 3$	Subtract reference frequency 3
[Ref Frequency 2 multiplier]	$P R 2$	Reference frequency 2 multiplier
[Ref Frequency 3 multiplier]	$P R 3$	Reference frequency 3 multiplier

Section 8.38

[Input/Output] - [DI/DQ]

What Is in This Section?

This section contains the following topics:

Topic	Page
[DI1 Configuration] <i>d</i> , <i>I</i> - Menu	431
[DI2 Configuration] <i>d</i> , <i>I2</i> - Menu	433
[DI3 Configuration] <i>d</i> , <i>I3</i> - Menu	433
[DI4 Configuration] <i>d</i> , <i>I4</i> - Menu	434
[DI5 Configuration] <i>d</i> , <i>I5</i> - Menu	434
[DI6 Configuration] <i>d</i> , <i>I6</i> - Menu	435
[DI7 Configuration] <i>d</i> , <i>I7</i> - Menu	435
[DI8 Configuration] <i>d</i> , <i>I8</i> - Menu	436
[DI11 Configuration] <i>d</i> , <i>I11</i> - Menu	436
[DI12 Configuration] <i>d</i> , <i>I12</i> - Menu	437
[DI13 Configuration] <i>d</i> , <i>I13</i> - Menu	437
[DI14 Configuration] <i>d</i> , <i>I14</i> - Menu	438
[DI15 Configuration] <i>d</i> , <i>I15</i> - Menu	438
[DI16 Configuration] <i>d</i> , <i>I16</i> - Menu	439
[DI7 Pulse Config] <i>PR</i> , <i>I7</i> - Menu	440
[DI8 Pulse Config] <i>PR</i> , <i>I8</i> - Menu	442
[Pulse Input] <i>PE</i> , <i>I</i> - Menu	443
[PTO configuration] <i>PE</i> <i>o</i> - Menu	445
[PTO configuration] <i>PE</i> <i>o</i> <i>o</i> - Menu	447
[DQ1 Configuration] <i>d</i> <i>o</i> <i>I</i> - Menu	449
[DQ2 Configuration] <i>d</i> <i>o</i> <i>I2</i> - Menu	450
[DQ11 Configuration] <i>d</i> <i>o</i> <i>I11</i> - Menu	451
[DQ12 Configuration] <i>d</i> <i>o</i> <i>I12</i> - Menu	452

[DI1 Configuration] / - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Input/Output] → [DI/DQ] → [DI1 Configuration]

[DI1 Low Assignment] /

DI1 low assignment.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[No]	<i>n o</i>	Not assigned
[Fast stop]	<i>F S t</i>	Fast stop
[External Error]	<i>E t F</i>	External error
[Drive Lock]	<i>L E S</i>	Drive lock assignment
[Stop FW]	<i>L R F</i>	Stop forward limit assignment
[Stop RV]	<i>L R r</i>	Stop reverse limit assignment
[Stop FW limit sw.]	<i>S R F</i>	Fwd stop limit input assig
[Stop RV limit sw.]	<i>S R r</i>	RV stop limit input assign
[Forward Slowdown]	<i>d R F</i>	Forward slowdown limit
[Reverse Slowdown]	<i>d R r</i>	Reverse slowdown limit
[Disable limit sw.]	<i>C L S</i>	Disable limit switch
[Switch Source]	<i>S L P W</i>	Select an external condition to enter in sleep mode (for example. Flow switch)

[DI1 High Assignment] /

DI1 high assignment.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[No]	<i>n o</i>	Not assigned
[Run]	<i>r u n</i>	Run enable
[Forward]	<i>F r d</i>	Forward operation
[Reverse]	<i>r r S</i>	Reverse operation
[Ramp switching]	<i>r P S</i>	Ramp switching
[Jog]	<i>J o G</i>	Jog
[+Speed]	<i>u S P</i>	+ speed
[- speed]	<i>d S P</i>	- Speed
[2 preset speeds]	<i>P S 2</i>	2 preset speeds
[4 preset speeds]	<i>P S 4</i>	4 preset speeds
[8 preset speeds]	<i>P S 8</i>	8 preset speeds
[Ref. 2 switching]	<i>r F C</i>	Reference switching
[DC injection]	<i>d C i</i>	Injection DC stop
[Forced local]	<i>F L o</i>	Forced local mode
[Fault reset]	<i>r S F</i>	Fault reset
[Autotuning Assign]	<i>t u L</i>	Autotuning assignment
[Ref Frequency stored]	<i>S P n</i>	Reference frequency stored
[Pre Fluxing]	<i>F L i</i>	Pre fluxing
[Auto / manual]	<i>P R u</i>	PID auto-manu
[PID integral reset]	<i>P i S</i>	Integral shunting PID
[2 preset PID ref.]	<i>P r 2</i>	2 preset PID references
[4 preset PID ref.]	<i>P r 4</i>	4 preset PID references
[Torque limitation]	<i>t L R</i>	Permanent torque limitation

1 Because, in this case, the detected error does not trigger a stop, it is recommended to assign a relay or logic output to its indication.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[External Error]	E E F	External error
[2 config. switching]	C n F 1	2 configuration switching
[3 config. switching]	C n F 2	3 configuration switching
[2 parameter sets]	C H R 1	Parameter switching 1
[3 parameter sets]	C H R 2	Parameter switching 2
[Analog torque limitation]	E L C	Analog torque limitation
[Trq/spd switching]	E S S	Torque/Speed switching
[Torque ref. sign]	E S d	Torque reference sign switching
[Cmd switching]	C C S	Command channel switching
[ErrorDetect Disable]	1 n H	Error detection disable
[16 preset speeds]	P S 16	16 preset speeds
[Current limit 2]	L C 2	Current limit 2 switching
[Ref 1B switching]	r C b	Reference channel switching (1 to 1B)
[Brake contact]	b C i	Brake contact
[Stop FW limit sw.]	S R F	Fwd stop limit input assign
[Stop RV limit sw.]	S R r	RV stop limit input assign
[Forward Slowdown]	d R F	Forward slowdown limit
[Reverse Slowdown]	d R r	Reverse slowdown limit
[Disable limit sw.]	C L S	Disable limit switch
[Drive Lock]	L E S	Drive lock assignment
[ProductRestart Assign]	r P R	Restart product
[Angle test]	R S L	Angle setting test
[Stop on top Z]	E o S E	Stop on next top Z detection
[2 HSP]	S h 2	2 High Speed assignment
[4 HSP]	S h 4	4 High Speed assignment
[Idle]	i d L S	Stop and go : idle mode enable condition
[TrqLimit Switch Assign]	E R S u	Torque limitation switch assignment
[+speed around Ref Freq]	u S i	Increase speed around reference frequency
[-speed around Ref Freq]	d S i	Decrease speed around reference frequency
[Trq Ref Switch Assign]	E r i	Torque control reference switch assignment

1 Because, in this case, the detected error does not trigger a stop, it is recommended to assign a relay or logic output to its indication.

[DI1 Delay] L 1 d

DI1 delay.

NOTE: Commands received via this digital input are processed once the delay time set via this parameter has elapsed.

Setting	Description
0...200 ms	Setting range Factory setting: 2 ms

[DI2 Configuration] - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Input/Output] → [DI/DQ] → [DI2 Configuration]

About This Menu

Identical to [DI1 Configuration]  - menu (*see page 431*).

[DI2 Low Assignment] L

DI2 low assignment.

[DI2 High Assignment] H

DI2 high assignment.

[DI2 Delay] d

DI2 delay.

[DI3 Configuration] - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Input/Output] → [DI/DQ] → [DI3 Configuration]

About This Menu

Identical to [DI1 Configuration]  - menu (*see page 431*).

[DI3 Low Assignment] L

DI3 low assignment.

[DI3 High Assignment] H

DI3 high assignment.

[DI3 Delay] d

DI3 delay.

[DI4 Configuration] d_1 , 4 - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Input/Output] → [DI/DQ] → [DI4 Configuration]

About This Menu

Identical to [DI1 Configuration] d_1 , 1 - menu (*see page 431*).

[DI4 Low Assignment] $L\ 4L$

DI4 low assignment.

[DI4 High Assignment] $L\ 4H$

DI4 high assignment.

[DI4 Delay] $L\ 4d$

DI4 delay.

[DI5 Configuration] d_1 , 5 - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Input/Output] → [DI/DQ] → [DI5 Configuration]

About This Menu

Identical to [DI1 Configuration] d_1 , 1 - menu (*see page 431*).

[DI5 Low Assignment] $L\ 5L$

DI5 low assignment.

[DI5 High Assignment] $L\ 5H$

DI5 high assignment.

[DI5 Delay] $L\ 5d$

DI5 delay.

[DI6 Configuration] 6 - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Input/Output] → [DI/DQ] → [DI6 Configuration]

About This Menu

Identical to [DI1 Configuration]  1 - menu (*see page 431*).

[DI6 Low Assignment] 6 L

DI6 low assignment.

[DI6 High Assignment] 6 H

DI6 high assignment.

[DI6 Delay] 6 d

DI6 delay.

[DI7 Configuration] 7 - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Input/Output] → [DI/DQ] → [DI7 Configuration]

About This Menu

Identical to [DI1 Configuration]  1 - menu (*see page 431*).

[DI7 Low Assignment] 7 L

DI7 low assignment.

[DI7 High Assignment] 7 H

DI7 high assignment.

[DI7 Delay] 7 d

DI7 delay.

[DI8 Configuration] - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Input/Output] → [DI/DQ] → [DI8 Configuration]

About This Menu

This menu can be accessed on drives with a power **greater than 22 kW**.

Identical to [DI1 Configuration] - menu (*see page 431*).

[DI8 Low Assignment] L

DI8 low assignment.

[DI8 High Assignment] H

DI8 high assignment.

[DI8 Delay] d

DI8 delay.

[DI11 Configuration] / / - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Input/Output] → [DI/DQ] → [DI11 Configuration]

About This Menu

Identical to [DI1 Configuration] - menu (*see page 431*).

Following parameters can be accessed if VW3A3203 I/O extension module has been inserted.

[DI11 Low Assignment] / L

DI11 low assignment.

[DI11 High Assignment] H

DI11 high assignment.

[DI11 Delay] d

DI11 delay.

[DI12 Configuration] - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Input/Output] → [DI/DQ] → [DI12 Configuration]

About This Menu

Identical to [DI1 Configuration]  - menu (*see page 431*).

Following parameters can be accessed if VW3A3203 I/O extension module has been inserted.

[DI12 Low Assignment] *

DI12 low assignment.

[DI12 High Assignment] *

DI12 high assignment.

[DI12 Delay] *

DI12 delay.

[DI13 Configuration] - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Input/Output] → [DI/DQ] → [DI13 Configuration]

About This Menu

Identical to [DI1 Configuration]  - menu (*see page 431*).

Following parameters can be accessed if VW3A3203 I/O extension module has been inserted.

[DI13 Low Assignment] *

DI13 low assignment.

[DI13 High Assignment] *

DI13 high assignment.

[DI13 Delay] *

DI13 delay.

[DI14 Configuration] / 14 - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Input/Output] → [DI/DQ] → [DI14 Configuration]

About This Menu

Identical to [DI1 Configuration]  / 1 - menu (*see page 431*).

Following parameters can be accessed if VW3A3203 I/O extension module has been inserted.

[DI14 Low Assignment] L / 14 L

DI14 low assignment.

[DI14 High Assignment] L / 14 H

DI14 high assignment.

[DI14 Delay] L / 14 d

DI14 delay.

[DI15 Configuration] / 15 - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Input/Output] → [DI/DQ] → [DI15 Configuration]

About This Menu

Identical to [DI1 Configuration]  / 1 - menu (*see page 431*).

Following parameters can be accessed if VW3A3203 I/O extension module has been inserted.

[DI15 Low Assignment] L / 15 L

DI15 low assignment.

[DI15 High Assignment] L / 15 H

DI15 high assignment.

[DI15 Delay] L / 15 d

DI15 delay.

[DI16 Configuration] / - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Input/Output] → [DI/DQ] → [DI16 Configuration]

About This Menu

Identical to [DI1 Configuration]  /  - menu (*see page 431*).

Following parameters can be accessed if VW3A3203 I/O extension module has been inserted.

[DI16 Low Assignment] / ★

DI16 low assignment.

[DI16 High Assignment] / ★

DI16 high assignment.

[DI16 Delay] / ★

DI16 delay.

[DI7 Pulse Config] $P\ A$, 7 - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Input/Output] → [DI/DQ] → [DI7 Pulse Config]

About This Menu

Following parameters can be accessed on the Display Terminal by pressing the OK key on the [DI Frequency Measured] $P\ F\ C$ 7 parameter.

This menu can be accessed on drives with a power greater than 22 kW.

[DI7 Pulse Input Assign] $P\ ,\ 7\ R$

DI7 pulse input assignment.

It displays all the functions associated with the pulse input in order to verify, for example, for compatibility problems.

If no functions have been assigned, [No] $n\ o$ is displayed.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[No]	$n\ o$	Not assigned
[Torque Ref Offset]	$t\ q\ o$	Torque offset source
[Torque Ref Ratio]	$t\ q\ r$	Torque ratio source
[Ref Frequency 1]	$F\ r\ 1$	Reference frequency 1
[Ref Frequency 2]	$F\ r\ 2$	Reference frequency 2
[Ref Frequency 2 Summing]	$S\ R\ 2$	Reference frequency 2 summing
[PID Feedback]	$P\ ,\ F$	PI controller feedback
[Torque limitation]	$t\ R\ R$	Torque limitation: activation by an analog value
[Torque limitation 2]	$t\ R\ R\ 2$	Torque limitation: activation by an analog value
[Subtract Ref Freq 2]	$d\ R\ 2$	Subtract reference frequency 2
[Manual PID Ref.]	$P\ ,\ \Pi$	Manual speed reference of the PID controller (auto-man)
[PID Ref Frequency]	$F\ P\ ,$	PID reference frequency
[Ref Frequency 3 Summing]	$S\ R\ 3$	Reference frequency 3 summing
[Ref Frequency 1B]	$F\ r\ 1b$	Reference frequency 1B
[Subtract Ref Freq 3]	$d\ R\ 3$	Subtract reference frequency 3
[Forced local]	$F\ L\ o\ C$	Forced local reference source1
[Ref Frequency 2 multiplier]	$\Pi\ R\ 2$	Reference frequency 2 multiplier
[Ref Frequency 3 multiplier]	$\Pi\ R\ 3$	Reference frequency 3 multiplier
[Torque reference]	$t\ r\ 1$	Torque regulation: torque set point 1
[Torque reference 2]	$t\ r\ 2$	Torque regulation: torque set point 2
[Frequency Meter]	$F\ q\ F$	Frequency meter function activation
[External Feed Forward]	$E\ E\ F\ F$	External feed-forward

[DI7 PulseInput Low Freq] $P\ ,\ L\ 7$

DI7 pulse input low frequency.

Pulse input scaling parameter of 0% in Hz x 10 unit.

Setting	Description
0.00...30,000.00 Hz	Setting range Factory setting: 0.00 Hz

[DI7 PulseInput High Freq] *P* , *H* 7

DI7 pulse input high frequency.

Pulse input scaling parameter of 100% in Hz x 10 unit.

Setting	Description
0.00...30.00 kHz	Setting range Factory setting: 30.00 kHz

[DI7 Frequency Filter] *P* *F* , *T* 7

Interference filtering pulse input cut-off time of the low-filter.

Setting	Description
0...1,000 ms	Setting range Factory setting: 0 ms

[DI8 Pulse Config] $P\ A$, B - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Input/Output] → [DI/DQ] → [DI8 Pulse Config]

About This Menu

Following parameters can be accessed on the Display Terminal by pressing the **OK** key on the **[DI8 Frequency Measured] $P\ F\ C\ B$** parameter.

This menu can be accessed on drives with a power **greater than 22 kW**.

[DI8 Pulse Input Assign] $P\ ,B\ R$

DI8 Pulse Input assignment.

Identical to **[DI7 Pulse Input Assign] $P\ ,T\ R$** (*see page 440*).

[DI8 PulseInput Low Freq] $P\ ,L\ B$

DI8 pulse input low frequency.

Identical to **[DI7 PulseInput Low Freq] $P\ ,L\ T$** (*see page 440*).

[DI8 PulseInput High Freq] $P\ ,H\ B$

DI8 pulse input high frequency.

Identical to **[DI7 PulseInput High Freq] $P\ ,H\ T$** (*see page 441*).

[DI8 Frequency Filter] $P\ F\ ,B$

Interference filtering pulse input cut-off time of the low-filter.

Identical to **[DI7 Frequency Filter] $P\ F\ ,T$** (*see page 441*).

[Pulse Input] *P E* , - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Input/Output] → [DI/DQ] → [Pulse Input]

About This Menu

This menu can be accessed on drives with a power **lower than 30 kW**.

[PTI assignment] *P E* , *A* ★

PTI Assignment

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[No]	<i>n o</i>	Not assigned
[Torque Ref Offset]	<i>t q o</i>	Torque offset source
[Torque Ref Ratio]	<i>t q r</i>	Torque ratio source
[Ref Frequency 1]	<i>F r 1</i>	Reference frequency 1
[Ref Frequency 2]	<i>F r 2</i>	Reference frequency 2
[Ref Frequency 2 Summing]	<i>S R 2</i>	Reference frequency 2 summing
[PID Feedback]	<i>P , F</i>	PI controller feedback
[Torque limitation]	<i>t R R</i>	Torque limitation: activation by an analog value
[Torque limitation 2]	<i>t R R 2</i>	Torque limitation: activation by an analog value
[Subtract Ref Freq 2]	<i>d R 2</i>	Subtract reference frequency 2
[Manual PID Ref.]	<i>P , n</i>	Manual speed reference of the PID controller (auto-man)
[PID Ref Frequency]	<i>F P ,</i>	PID reference frequency
[Ref Frequency 3 Summing]	<i>S R 3</i>	Reference frequency 3 summing
[Ref Frequency 1B]	<i>F r 1b</i>	Reference frequency 1B
[Subtract Ref Freq 3]	<i>d R 3</i>	Subtract reference frequency 3
[Forced local]	<i>F L o C</i>	Forced local reference source1
[Ref Frequency 2 multiplier]	<i>P R 2</i>	Reference frequency 2 multiplier
[Ref Frequency 3 multiplier]	<i>P R 3</i>	Reference frequency 3 multiplier
[Torque reference]	<i>t r 1</i>	Torque regulation: torque set point 1
[Torque reference 2]	<i>t r 2</i>	Torque regulation: torque set point 2
[Frequency Meter]	<i>F q F</i>	Frequency meter function activation
[External Feed Forward]	<i>E E F F</i>	External feed-forward

[PTI Low Freq] *P E* , *L* ★

Pulse Train Input low frequency.

Setting	Description
-1000000.00...1000000.00 Hz	Setting range Factory setting: 0 Hz

[PTI High Freq] *P E* , *H* ★

Pulse Train Input high frequency.

Setting	Description
-1000000.00...1000000.00 Hz	Setting range Factory setting: 0 Hz

[PTI Filter Time Analog] $P E_{1,2} E$ ★

PTI filter time analog

Setting	Description
0...1000 ms	Setting range Factory setting: 0 ms

[PTI Mode] $P E_{1,2} P$ ★

PTI mode

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[A/B]	$R b$	A/B input signals Factory Setting
[Pulse/Dir]	$P d$	Pulse direction input signals
[CW/CCW]	$C W C C W$	Clockwise/Counterclockwise input signals

[PTI Filter Time Inp] $P E_{1,2} S$ ★

PTI Filter Time Input

Setting	Description
0.00...13.00 µs	Setting range Factory setting: 0.25 µs

[PTI Counting Dir Inv] $P E_{1,2} I$ ★

PTI direction inversion

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[OFF]	$\square F F$	No inversion of counting direction Factory Setting
[ON]	$\square n$	Inversion of counting direction

[PTO configuration] $P E \square$ - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Input/Output] → [DI/DQ] → [PTO configuration]

About This Menu

This menu can be accessed on drives with a power **greater than 22 kW**.

[PTO Assign] $P E \square$

Pulse train output assignment.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Not Configured]	$n \square$	Not assigned
[Motor Current]	$\square L r$	Current in the motor, from 0 to 2 In (In = rated drive current indicated in the Installation manual and on the drive nameplate) Factory Setting
[Motor Frequency]	$\square F r$	Output frequency, from 0 to [Max Frequency] $E F r$
[Ramp out.]	$\square r P$	From 0 to [Max Frequency] $E F r$
[Motor torq.]	$E r \square$	Motor torque, from 0 to 3 times the rated motor torque
[Sign. torque]	$S E \square$	Signed motor torque, between -3 and +3 times the rated motor torque. The + sign corresponds to the motor mode and the - sign to the generator mode (braking).
[sign ramp]	$\square r S$	Signed ramp output, between -[Max Frequency] $E F r$ and +[Max Frequency] $E F r$
[PID ref.]	$\square P S$	PID controller reference between [Min PID reference] P_1, P_1 and [Max PID reference] P_2, P_2
[PID feedbk]	$\square P F$	PID controller feedback between [Min PID feedback] P_1, F_1 and [Max PID feedback] P_2, F_2
[PID error]	$\square P E$	PID controller detected error between -5% and +5% of [Max PID feedback] P_1, F_2 - [Min PID feedback] P_1, F_1
[PID output]	$\square P_1$	PID controller output between [Low speed] $L S P$ and [High speed] $H S P$
[Drive power]	$\square P r$	Motor power, between 0 and 2.5 times [Nominal Motor Power] $n P r$
[Mot thermal]	$E H r$	Motor thermal state, from 0 to 200% of the rated thermal state
[Drv thermal]	$E H d$	Drive thermal state, from 0 to 200% of the rated thermal state
[Measured Motor Freq.]	$\square F r r$	Measured motor frequency
[Sig. o/p frq.]	$\square F S$	Signed output frequency, between -[Max Frequency] $E F r$ and +[Max Frequency] $E F r$
[Mot therm2]	$E H r 2$	Motor thermal 2 state
[Mot therm3]	$E H r 3$	Motor thermal 3 state
[Mot therm4]	$E H r 4$	Motor thermal 4 state
[Unsigned Trq Ref]	$u E r$	Unsigned torque reference
[Signed Trq Ref]	$S E r$	Signed torque reference
[Torque lim.]	$E \square L$	Torque limit
[Motor volt.]	$u o P$	Voltage applied to the motor, between 0 and [Nom Motor Voltage] $u n S$
[DC Bus voltage]	$V b u S$	DC bus voltage
[Copy Pl8]	$L o P Y$	Copy Pulse

[PTO Max Output Freq] *P E o H* ★

Pulse train output maximum output frequency.

This parameter can be accessed if [PTO Assign] *P E o* is not set to [Not configured] *n o*.

Setting	Description
1.00...30.00 kHz	Setting range Factory setting: 4.00 kHz

[PTO Min Output Freq] *P E o L* ★

Pulse train output minimum output frequency.

This parameter can be accessed if [PTO Assign] *P E o* is not set to [Not configured] *n o*.

Setting	Description
1.00...30.00 kHz	Setting range Factory setting: 1.00 kHz

[PTO configuration] $P_E \square \square$ - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Input/Output] → [DI/DQ] → [PTO configuration]

About This Menu

This menu can be accessed on drives with a power **lower than 30 kW**.

[PTO Mode Selection] $P_E \square \Pi$

Pulse train output assignment.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Not Configured]	$\square \square$	Not assigned
[PTI Signal]	$P_E \square$	PTI signal.
[PTO Assigned Param]	$C \square \square \square$	PTO assigned parameter.

[PTO Assign] $P_E \square E$ ★

PTO assignment.

This parameter can be accessed if [PTO Mode Selection] $P_E \square \Pi$ is not set to [PTO Assigned Param] $C \square \square \square$.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Not Configured]	$\square \square$	Not assigned
[Motor Current]	$\square C \square$	Current in the motor, from 0 to 2 In (In = rated drive current indicated in the Installation manual and on the drive nameplate) Factory Setting
[Motor Frequency]	$\square F \square$	Output frequency, from 0 to [Max Frequency] $E F \square$
[Ramp out.]	$\square r P$	From 0 to [Max Frequency] $E F \square$
[Motor torq.]	$E \square \square$	Motor torque, from 0 to 3 times the rated motor torque
[Sign. torque]	$S E \square$	Signed motor torque, between -3 and +3 times the rated motor torque. The + sign corresponds to the motor mode and the - sign to the generator mode (braking).
[sign ramp]	$\square r S$	Signed ramp output, between -[Max Frequency] $E F \square$ and +[Max Frequency] $E F \square$
[PID ref.]	$\square P S$	PID controller reference between [Min PID reference] $P \square P \square$ and [Max PID reference] $P \square P \square$
[PID feedbk]	$\square P F$	PID controller feedback between [Min PID feedback] $P \square F \square$ and [Max PID feedback] $P \square F \square$
[PID error]	$\square P E$	PID controller detected error between -5% and +5% of [Max PID feedback] $P \square F \square$ - [Min PID feedback] $P \square F \square$
[PID output]	$\square P \square$	PID controller output between [Low speed] $L S P$ and [High speed] $H S P$
[Drive power]	$\square P r$	Motor power, between 0 and 2.5 times [Nominal Motor Power] $n P r$
[Mot thermal]	$E H \square$	Motor thermal state, from 0 to 200% of the rated thermal state
[Drv thermal]	$E H d$	Drive thermal state, from 0 to 200% of the rated thermal state
[Measured Motor Freq.]	$\square F \square \square$	Measured motor frequency
[Sig. o/p frq.]	$\square F S$	Signed output frequency, between -[Max Frequency] $E F \square$ and +[Max Frequency] $E F \square$

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Mot therm2]	<i>E H r 2</i>	Motor thermal 2 state
[Mot therm3]	<i>E H r 3</i>	Motor thermal 3 state
[Mot therm4]	<i>E H r 4</i>	Motor thermal 4 state
[Unsigned Trq Ref]	<i>u E r</i>	Unsigned torque reference
[Signed Trq Ref]	<i>S E r</i>	Signed torque reference
[Torque lim.]	<i>E 9 L</i>	Torque limit
[Motor volt.]	<i>u o P</i>	Voltage applied to the motor, between 0 and [Nom Motor Voltage] <i>u n 5</i>
[DC Bus voltage]	<i>V b u S</i>	DC bus voltage
[Copy Pl8]	<i>E o P Y</i>	Copy Pulse

[PTO High Freq] *P E o u* ★

PTO high frequency.

This parameter can be accessed if [PTO Mode Selection] *P E o I* is not set to [PTO Assigned Param] *C o n 5*.

Setting	Description
-1,000,000.00...1,000,000.00 Hz	Setting range Factory setting: 1,000,000.00 Hz

[PTO Low Freq] *P E o b* ★

PTO low frequency.

This parameter can be accessed if [PTO Mode Selection] *P E o I* is not set to [PTO Assigned Param] *C o n 5*.

Setting	Description
-1,000,000.00...1,000,000.00 Hz	Setting range Factory setting: 0.00 Hz

[PTO Freq Value] *P E o F* ★

PTO frequency value.

This parameter can be accessed if [PTO Mode Selection] *P E o I* is not set to [PTO Assigned Param] *C o n 5*.

Setting	Description
-1,000,000.00...1,000,000.00 Hz	Setting range Factory setting: _

[DQ1 Configuration] - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Input/Output] → [DI/DQ] → [DQ1 Configuration]

[DQ1 Assignment]

Digital output 1 assignment.

Identical to [R2 Assignment]   (see page 474).

[DQ1 Delay time]

DQ1 activation delay time

Setting	Description
0...60,000 ms	Setting range 0...9,999 ms then 10.00...60.00 s on the Display Terminal Factory setting: 0 ms

[DQ1 Active at]

DQ1 status (output active level)

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[1]	  5	State 1 when the information is true Factory Setting
[0]	  	State 0 when the information is true

[DQ1 Holding time]

DQ1 holding delay time.

Setting	Description
0...9,999 ms	Setting range Factory setting: 0 ms

[DQ2 Configuration] - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Input/Output] → [DI/DQ] → [DQ2 Configuration]

About This Menu

This menu can be accessed on drives with power below 30 kW.

[DQ2 Assignment]

Digital output 1 assignment.

Identical to [DQ1 Assignment]   (see page 449).

[DQ2 Delay time]

DQ2 activation delay time

Identical to [DQ1 Delay time]   (see page 449).

[DQ2 Active at]

DQ2 status (output active level)

Identical to [DQ1 Active at]   (see page 449).

[DQ2 Holding time]

DQ2 holding delay time.

Identical to [DQ1 Holding time]   (see page 449).

[DQ11 Configuration] - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Input/Output] → [DI/DQ] → [DQ11 Configuration]

About This Menu

Following parameters can be accessed if VW3A3203 I/O extension module has been inserted.

[DQ11 Assignment] *

Digital output 11 assignment.

Identical to [R2 Assignment]  (see page 474)

[DQ11 activ delay] *

DQ11 activation delay time.

The delay cannot be set for the [Operating State "Fault"]  and [Mains Contactor]  assignments, and remains at 0.

The change in state only takes effect once the configured time has elapsed when the information becomes true.

Setting	Description
0...60,000 ms	Setting range 0...9,999 ms then 10.00...60.00 s on the Display Terminal Factory setting: 0 ms

[DQ11 status] *

DQ11 status (output active level).

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[1]	 5	State 1 when the information is true Factory Setting
[0]	 E 	State 0 when the information is true

The configuration [1]  5 cannot be modified for the [Operating State "Fault"] , [Brake Sequence] , and [Mains Contactor]  assignments.

[DQ11 hold delay] *

DQ11 holding delay time.

The holding time cannot be set for the [Operating State "Fault"] , [Brake Sequence] , and [Mains Contactor]  assignments, and remains at 0.

The change in state only takes effect once the configured time has elapsed when the information becomes false.

Setting	Description
0...9,999 ms	Setting range Factory setting: 0 ms

[DQ12 Configuration] - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Input/Output] → [DI/DQ] → [DQ12 Configuration]

About This Menu

Identical to [DQ11 Configuration]   - Menu (see page 451).

Following parameters can be accessed if VW3A3203 I/O extension module has been inserted.

[DQ12 Assignment]

Digital output 12 assignment.

[DQ12 activ delay]

DQ12 activation delay time.

[DQ12 status]

DQ12 status (output active level).

[DQ12 hold delay]

DQ12 holding delay time.

Section 8.39

[Input/Output] - [Analog I/O]

What Is in This Section?

This section contains the following topics:

Topic	Page
[AI1 configuration] $R \downarrow 1$ - Menu	454
[AI2 configuration] $R \downarrow 2$ - Menu	457
[AI3 configuration] $R \downarrow 3$ - Menu	458
[AI4 configuration] $R \downarrow 4$ - Menu	459
[AI5 configuration] $R \downarrow 5$ - Menu	461
[AQ1 configuration] $R \square 1$ - Menu	462
[AQ2 configuration] $R \square 2$ - Menu	467
[Virtual AI1] $R \sqcup 1$ - Menu	469

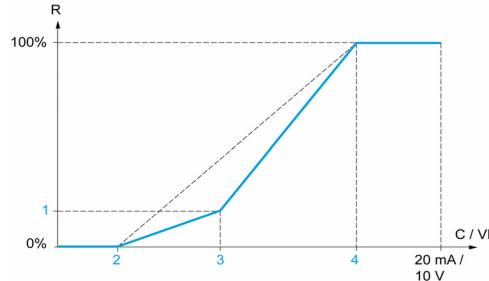
[AI1 configuration] R / I - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Input/Output] → [AI/AQ] → [AI1 configuration]

About This Menu

The input can be delinearized by configuring an intermediate point on the input/output curve of this input:



- R** Reference
- C / VI** Current or Voltage Input
- 1 [Y Interm. point]
- 2 [Min value] (0%)
- 3 [X Interm. point]
- 4 [Max value] (100%)

NOTE: For [X Interm. point], 0% corresponds to [Min value] and 100% to [Max value].

[AI1 Assignment] R / I R

Analog input AI1 functions assignment.

Read-only parameter, cannot be configured. It displays all the functions associated with input AI1 in order to verify, for example, for compatibility problems.

If no functions have been assigned, [No] n o is displayed.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[No]	n o	Not assigned
[Torque Ref Offset]	t q o	Torque offset source
[Torque Ref Ratio]	t q r	Torque ratio source
[Ref Freq Channel 1]	F r 1	Reference frequency channel 1 Factory Setting
[Ref Freq Channel 2]	F r 2	Reference frequency channel 2
[Ref Frequency 2 Summing]	S R 2	Reference frequency 2 summing
[Torque limitation]	t R R	Torque limitation: activation by an analog value
[Torque limitation 2]	t R R 2	Torque limitation: activation by an analog value
[Subtract Ref Freq 2]	d R 2	Subtract reference frequency 2
[Manual PID Ref.]	P , P	Manual speed reference of the PID controller (auto-man)
[PID Ref Frequency]	F P ,	PID reference frequency
[Ref Frequency 3 Summing]	S R 3	Reference frequency 3 summing
[Ref Frequency 1B]	F r 1 b	Reference frequency 1B
[Subtract Ref Freq 3]	d R 3	Subtract reference frequency 3
[Forced local]	F L o C	Forced local reference source1
[Ref Frequency 2 multiplier]	P R 2	Reference frequency 2 multiplier
[Ref Frequency 3 multiplier]	P R 3	Reference frequency 3 multiplier
[Torque reference]	t r 1	Torque regulation: torque set point 1
[Torque reference 2]	t r 2	Torque regulation: torque set point 2
[External Feed Forward]	t E F F	External feed-forward
[M/S Speed Ref In]	P S S ,	Master Slave: speed input
[M/S Trq Ref In]	P S E ,	Master Slave: torque input

[AI1 Type] R , I E

Configuration of analog input AI1.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Voltage]	I D u	0-10 Vdc Factory setting
[Current]	D R	0-20 mA

[AI1 min value] u , L I ★

AI1 voltage scaling parameter of 0%.

This parameter can be accessed if [AI1 Type] R , I E is set to [Voltage] I D u.

Setting	Description
0.0...10.0 Vdc	Setting range Factory setting: 0.0 Vdc

[AI1 max value] u , H I ★

AI1 voltage scaling parameter of 100%.

This parameter can be accessed if [AI1 Type] R , I E is set to [Voltage] I D u.

Setting	Description
0.0...10.0 Vdc	Setting range Factory setting: 10.0 Vdc

[AI1 min. value] L r L I ★

AI1 current scaling parameter of 0%.

This parameter can be accessed if [AI1 Type] R , I E is set to [Current] D R.

Setting	Description
0.0...20.0 mA	Setting range Factory setting: 0.0 mA

[AI1 max. value] L r H I ★

AI1 current scaling parameter of 100%.

This parameter can be accessed if [AI1 Type] R , I E is set to [Current] D R.

Setting	Description
0.0...20.0 mA	Setting range Factory setting: 20.0 mA

[AI1 filter] R , I F

AI1 cutoff time of the low filter.

Setting	Description
0.00...10.00 s	Setting range Factory setting: 0.00 s

[AI1 X Interm. point] R , IE

Input delinearization point coordinate. Percentage of the physical input signal.

0% corresponds to [AI1 min value] (ω_{IL})

100% corresponds to [AI1 max value] (ω_{IH})

Setting	Description
0...100%	Setting range Factory setting: 0%

[AI1 Y Interm. point] R , IS

Input delinearization point coordinate (frequency reference).

Percentage of the internal frequency reference corresponding to the [AI1 X Interm. point] (R , IE) percentage of physical input signal.

Setting	Description
0...100%	Setting range Factory setting: 0%

[AI2 configuration] R , 2 - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Input/Output] → [AI/AQ] → [AI2 configuration]

[AI2 Assignment] R , 2 R

AI2 functions assignment.

Identical to [AI1 Assignment] R , 1 R (*see page 454*).

[AI2 Type] R , 2 E

Configuration of analog input AI2.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Voltage]	10 u	0-10 Vdc
[Voltage +/-]	-10 u	-10/+10 Vdc Factory setting

[AI2 min value] u , L 2 ★

AI2 voltage scaling parameter of 0%.

This parameter can be accessed if [AI2 Type] R , 2 E is set to [Voltage] 10 u.

Identical to [AI1 min value] u , L 1 (*see page 455*).

[AI2 max value] u , H 2 ★

AI2 voltage scaling parameter of 100%.

This parameter can be accessed if [AI2 Type] R , 2 E is set to [Voltage] 10 u.

Identical to [AI1 max value] u , H 1 (*see page 455*).

[AI2 filter] R , 2 F

AI2 filter.

Identical to [AI1 filter] R , 1 F (*see page 455*).

[AI2 X Interm. point] R , 2 E

AI2 delinearization input level.

Identical to [AI1 X Interm. point] R , 1 E (*see page 456*).

[AI2 Y Interm. point] R , 2 S

AI2 delinearization output level.

Identical to [AI1 Y Interm. point] R , 1 S (*see page 456*).

[AI3 configuration] R , E - Menu**Access**

[Complete settings] → [Input/Output] → [AI/AQ] → [AI3 configuration]

[AI3 Assignment] R , E R

AI3 functions assignment.

Identical to [AI1 Assignment] R , I R (*see page 454*).

[AI3 Type] R , E E

Configuration of analog input AI3.

Identical to [AI2 Type] R , E E (*see page 457*) with factory setting: [Current] D R.

[AI3 min value] u , L E ★

AI3 voltage scaling parameter of 0%.

Identical to [AI1 min value] u , L I (*see page 455*).

This parameter can be accessed if [AI3 Type] R , E E is set to [Voltage] I D u.

[AI3 max value] u , H E ★

AI3 voltage scaling parameter of 100%.

Identical to [AI1 max value] u , H I (*see page 455*).

This parameter can be accessed if [AI3 Type] R , E E is set to [Voltage] I D u.

[AI3 min. value] L r L E ★

AI3 current scaling parameter of 0%.

Identical to [AI1 min. value] L r L I (*see page 455*).

This parameter can be accessed if [AI3 Type] R , E E is set to [Current] D R.

[AI3 max. value] L r H E ★

AI3 current scaling parameter of 100%.

Identical to [AI1 max. value] L r H I (*see page 455*).

This parameter can be accessed if [AI3 Type] R , E E is set to [Current] D R.

[AI3 filter] R , E F

AI3 cutoff time of the low filter.

Identical to [AI1 filter] R , I F (*see page 455*).

[AI3 X Interm. point] R , E E

AI3 delinearization input level.

Identical to [AI1 X Interm. point] R , I E (*see page 456*).

[AI3 Y Interm. point] R , E S

AI3 delinearization output level.

Identical to [AI1 Y Interm. point] R , I S (*see page 456*).

[AI4 configuration] R , 4 - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Input/Output] → [AI/AQ] → [AI4 configuration]

[AI4 Assignment] R , 4 A ★

AI4 functions assignment.

This parameter can be accessed if VW3A3203 I/O extension module has been inserted.

Identical to [AI1 Assignment] R , 1 A (see page 454).

[AI4 Type] R , 4 E ★

Configuration of analog input AI4.

This parameter can be accessed if VW3A3203 I/O extension module has been inserted.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Voltage]	I D u	0-10 Vdc
[Current]	D R	0-20 mA Factory setting
[Voltage +/-]	n I D u	-10/+10 Vdc

[AI4 min value] u , L 4 ★

AI4 voltage scaling parameter of 0%.

Identical to [AI1 min value] u , L 1 (see page 455).

[AI4 max value] u , H 4 ★

AI4 voltage scaling parameter of 100%.

Identical to [AI1 max value] u , H 1 (see page 455).

[AI4 min. value] C r L 4 ★

AI4 current scaling parameter of 0%.

Identical to [AI1 min. value] C r L 1 (see page 455).

[AI4 max. value] C r H 4 ★

AI4 current scaling parameter of 100%.

Identical to [AI1 max. value] C r H 1 (see page 455).

[AI4 filter] R , 4 F ★

AI4 cutoff time of the low filter.

This parameter can be accessed if VW3A3203 I/O extension module has been inserted.

Identical to [AI1 filter] R , 1 F (see page 455).

[AI4 X Interm. point] R , 4 E ★

AI4 delinearization input level.

This parameter can be accessed if VW3A3203 I/O extension module has been inserted.

Identical to **[AI1 X Interm. point] R , 1 E** (*see page 456*).

[AI4 Y Interm. point] R , 4 S ★

AI4 delinearization output level.

This parameter can be accessed if VW3A3203 I/O extension module has been inserted.

Identical to **[AI1 Y Interm. point] R , 1 S** (*see page 456*).

[AI5 configuration] R , 5 - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Input/Output] → [AI/AQ] → [AI5 configuration]

[AI5 Assignment] R , 5 R ★

AI5 functions assignment.

This parameter can be accessed if VW3A3203 I/O extension module has been inserted.

Identical to [AI1 Assignment] R , 1 R (see page 454).

[AI5 Type] R , 5 E ★

Configuration of analog input AI5.

This parameter can be accessed if VW3A3203 I/O extension module has been inserted.

Identical to [AI4 Type] R , 4 E . (see page 459).

[AI5 min value] u , L 5 ★

AI5 voltage scaling parameter of 0%.

Identical to [AI1 min value] u , L 1 (see page 455).

[AI5 max value] u , H 5 ★

AI5 voltage scaling parameter of 100%.

Identical to [AI1 max value] u , H 1 (see page 455).

[AI5 min. value] L r L 5 ★

AI5 current scaling parameter of 0%.

Identical to [AI1 min. value] L r L 1 (see page 455).

[AI5 max. value] L r H 5 ★

AI5 current scaling parameter of 100%.

Identical to [AI1 max. value] L r H 1 (see page 455).

[AI5 filter] R , 5 F ★

AI5 cutoff time of the low filter.

This parameter can be accessed if VW3A3203 I/O extension module has been inserted.

Identical to [AI1 filter] R , 1 F (see page 455).

[AI5 X Interm. point] R , 5 E ★

AI5 delinearization input level.

This parameter can be accessed if VW3A3203 I/O extension module has been inserted.

Identical to [AI1 X Interm. point] R , 1 E (see page 456).

[AI5 Y Interm. point] R , 5 S ★

AI5 delinearization output level.

This parameter can be accessed if VW3A3203 I/O extension module has been inserted.

Identical to [AI1 Y Interm. point] R , 1 S (see page 456).

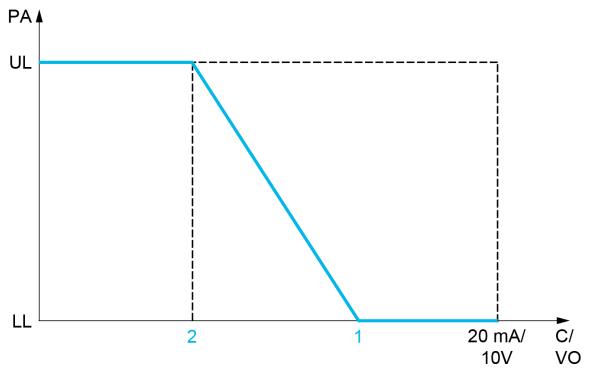
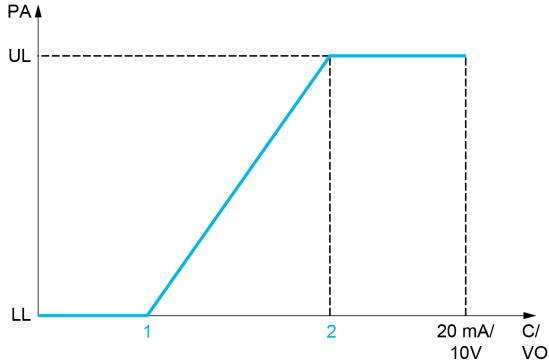
[AQ1 configuration] / - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Input/Output] → [AI/AQ] → [AQ1 configuration]

Minimum and Maximum Output Values

The minimum output value, in volts, corresponds to the lower limit of the assigned parameter and the maximum value corresponds to its upper limit. The minimum value may be greater than the maximum value.



PA Parameter assigned

C / VO Current or voltage output

UL Upper limit

LL Lower limit

1 [Min Output] L X or L X

2 [Max Output] H X or H X

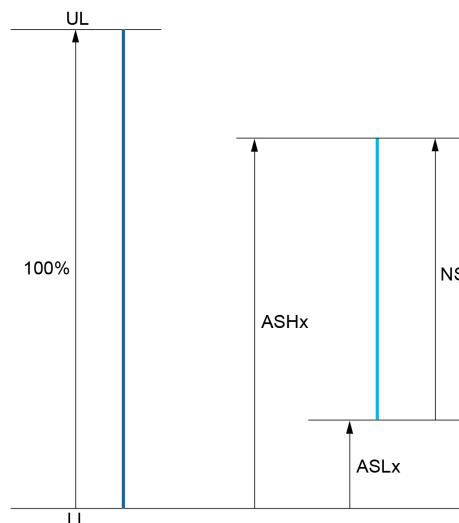
Scaling of the Assigned Parameter

The scale of the assigned parameter can be adapted in accordance with the requirements by modifying the values of the lower and upper limits with two parameters for each analog output.

These parameters are given in %. 100% corresponds to the total variation range of the configured parameter, so: 100% = upper limit - lower limit.

For example, [Sign. torque] **S E 9** which varies between -3 and +3 times the rated torque, 100% corresponds to 6 times the rated torque.

- The [**Scaling AQx min**] **R 5 L X** parameter modifies the lower limit: new value = lower limit + (range x **R 5 L X**). The value 0% (factory setting) does not modify the lower limit.
- The [**Scaling AQx max**] **R 5 H X**) parameter modifies the upper limit: new value = lower limit + (range x **R 5 L X**). The value 100% (factory setting) does not modify the upper limit.
- [**Scaling AQx min**] **R 5 L X** must always be lower than [**Scaling AQx max**] **R 5 H X**.



UL Upper limit of the assigned parameter

LL Lower limit of the assigned parameter

NS New scale

1 R 5 H X

2 R 5 L X

Application Example

The value of the motor current at the AQ1 output is to be transferred with 0...20 mA, range 2 in motor, In motor being the equivalent of a 0.8 A drive.

- The [**Motor Current**] **a L r I** parameter varies from 0 to 2 times the rated drive current, or a range of 2.5 times the rated drive current.
- [**Scaling AQ1 min**] **R 5 L I** must not modify the lower limit, which therefore remains at its factory setting of 0%.
- [**Scaling AQ1 max**] **R 5 H I** must modify the upper limit by 0.5x the rated motor torque, or 100 - 100/5 = 80% (new value = lower limit + (range x [**Scaling AQ1 max**] **R 5 H I**)).

[AQ1 Assignment] R o /

AQ1 assignment.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Not Configured]	n o	Not assigned
[Motor Current]	o C r	Current in the motor, from 0 to 2 In (In = rated drive current indicated in the Installation manual and on the drive nameplate)
[Motor Frequency]	o F r	Output frequency, from 0 to [Max Frequency] E F r Factory Setting
[Ramp out.]	o r P	From 0 to [Max Frequency] E F r
[Motor torq.]	E r q	Motor torque, from 0 to 3 times the rated motor torque
[Sign. torque]	S E q	Signed motor torque, between -3 and +3 times the rated motor torque. The + sign corresponds to the motor mode and the - sign to the generator mode (braking).
[sign ramp]	o r S	Signed ramp output, between -[Max Frequency] E F r and +[Max Frequency] E F r
[PID ref.]	o P S	PID controller reference between [Min PID reference] P , P 1 and [Max PID reference] P , P 2
[PID feedbk]	o P F	PID controller feedback between [Min PID feedback] P , F 1 and [Max PID feedback] P , F 2
[PID error]	o P E	PID controller detected error between -5% and +5% of [Max PID feedback] P , F 2 - [Min PID feedback] P , F 1
[PID output]	o P i	PID controller output between [Low speed] L 5 P and [High speed] H 5 P
[Drive power]	o P r	Motor power, between 0 and 2.5 times [Nominal Motor Power] n P r
[Mot thermal]	E H r	Motor thermal state, from 0 to 200% of the rated thermal state
[Drv thermal]	E H d	Drive thermal state, from 0 to 200% of the rated thermal state
[Torque 4Q]	E r 4 q	Signed motor torque, between -3 and +3 times the rated motor torque. The + and - signs correspond to the physical direction of the torque, regardless of mode (motor or generator)
[Measured Motor Freq]	o F r r	Measured motor frequency
[Sig. o/p freq.]	o F S	Signed output frequency, between -[Max Frequency] E F r and +[Max Frequency] E F r
[Mot therm2]	E H r 2	Motor thermal 2 state
[Mot therm3]	E H r 3	Motor thermal 3 state
[Mot therm4]	E H r 4	Motor thermal 4 state
[Unsigned Trq Ref]	u t r	Unsigned torque reference
[Signed Trq Ref]	S E r	Signed torque reference
[Torque lim.]	E q L	Torque limit
[Motor volt.]	u o P	Voltage applied to the motor, between 0 and [Nom Motor Voltage] u n 5
[M/S Out Speed Reference]	P S S o	Master / slave output speed reference
[M/S Out Torque Reference]	P S E o	Master / slave output torque reference

[AQ1 Type] R o / E

AQ1 type.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Voltage]	I D u	0-10 Vdc
[Current]	D R	0-20 mA Factory setting

[AQ1 min output] R o L I★

AQ1 current scaling parameter of 0%.

This parameter can be accessed if [AQ1 Type] R o I E is set to [Current] D R.

Setting	Description
0.0...20.0 mA	Setting range Factory setting: 0.0 mA

[AQ1 max output] R o H I★

AQ1 current scaling parameter of 100%.

This parameter can be accessed if [AQ1 Type] R o I E is set to [Current] D R.

Setting	Description
0.0...20.0 mA	Setting range Factory setting: 20.0 mA

[AQ1 min Output] u o L I★

AQ1 voltage scaling parameter of 0%.

This parameter can be accessed if [AQ1 Type] R o I E is set to [Voltage] I D u.

Setting	Description
0.0...10.0 Vdc	Setting range Factory setting: 0.0 Vdc

[AQ1 max Output] u o H I★

AQ1 voltage scaling parameter of 100%.

This parameter can be accessed if [AQ1 Type] R o I E is set to [Voltage] I D u.

Setting	Description
0.0...10.0 Vdc	Setting range Factory setting: 10.0 Vdc

[Scaling AQ1 min] R 5 L I

AQ1 scaling parameter of 0%.

Scaling of the lower limit of the assigned parameter, as a % of the maximum possible variation.

Setting	Description
0.0...100.0%	Setting range Factory setting: 0.0%

[Scaling AQ1 max] R 5 H I

AQ1 scaling parameter of 100%.

Scaling of the upper limit of the assigned parameter, as a % of the maximum possible variation.

Setting	Description
0.0...100.0%	Setting range Factory setting: 100.0%

[AQ1 Filter] *R o IF*

AQ1 cutoff time of the low-filter.

Setting	Description
0.00...10.00 s	Setting range Factory setting: 0.00 s

[AQ2 configuration] - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Input/Output] → [AI/AQ] → [AQ2 configuration]

[AQ2 assignment]

AQ2 assignment.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Not Configured]	<i>n o</i>	Not assigned
[Motor Current]	<i>o E r</i>	Current in the motor, from 0 to 2 In (In = rated drive current indicated in the Installation manual and on the drive nameplate) Factory Setting
[Motor Frequency]	<i>o F r</i>	Output frequency, from 0 to [Max Frequency] <i>E F r</i>
[Ramp out.]	<i>o r P</i>	From 0 to [Max Frequency] <i>E F r</i>
[Motor torq.]	<i>E r q</i>	Motor torque, from 0 to 3 times the rated motor torque
[Sign. torque]	<i>S E q</i>	Signed motor torque, between -3 and +3 times the rated motor torque. The + sign corresponds to the motor mode and the - sign to the generator mode (braking).
[sign ramp]	<i>o r S</i>	Signed ramp output, between -[Max Frequency] <i>E F r</i> and +[Max Frequency] <i>E F r</i>
[PID ref.]	<i>o P S</i>	PID controller reference between [Min PID reference] <i>P , P 1</i> and [Max PID reference] <i>P , P 2</i>
[PID feedbk]	<i>o P F</i>	PID controller feedback between [Min PID feedback] <i>P , F 1</i> and [Max PID feedback] <i>P , F 2</i>
[PID error]	<i>o P E</i>	PID controller detected error between -5% and +5% of [Max PID feedback] <i>P , F 2</i> - [Min PID feedback] <i>P , F 1</i>
[PID output]	<i>o P ,</i>	PID controller output between [Low speed] <i>L S P</i> and [High speed] <i>H S P</i>
[Drive power]	<i>o P r</i>	Motor power, between 0 and 2.5 times [Nominal Motor Power] <i>n P r</i>
[Mot thermal]	<i>E H r</i>	Motor thermal state, from 0 to 200% of the rated thermal state
[Drv thermal]	<i>E H d</i>	Drive thermal state, from 0 to 200% of the rated thermal state
[Torque 4Q]	<i>E r 4 q</i>	Signed motor torque, between -3 and +3 times the rated motor torque. The + and - signs correspond to the physical direction of the torque, regardless of mode (motor or generator)
[Measured Motor Freq.]	<i>o F r r</i>	Measured motor frequency
[Sig. o/p freq.]	<i>o F S</i>	Signed output frequency, between -[Max Frequency] <i>E F r</i> and +[Max Frequency] <i>E F r</i>
[Mot therm2]	<i>E H r 2</i>	Motor thermal 2 state
[Mot therm3]	<i>E H r 3</i>	Motor thermal 3 state
[Mot therm4]	<i>E H r 4</i>	Motor thermal 4 state
[Unsigned Trq Ref]	<i>u E r</i>	Unsigned torque reference
[Signed Trq Ref]	<i>S E r</i>	Signed torque reference
[Torque lim.]	<i>E q L</i>	Torque limit
[Motor volt.]	<i>u o P</i>	Voltage applied to the motor, between 0 and [Nom Motor Voltage] <i>u n S</i>

[AQ2 Type]

AQ2 type.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Voltage]	<i>I D u</i>	0-10 Vdc
[Current]	<i>D R</i>	0-20 mA Factory setting

[AQ2 min output] **R o L 2** ★

AQ2 current scaling parameter of 0%.

This parameter can be accessed if [AQ2 Type] **R o 2 E** is set to [Current] **D R**.

Identical to [AQ1 min output] **R o L 1** (*see page 465*).

[AQ2 max output] **R o H 2** ★

AQ2 current scaling parameter of 100%.

This parameter can be accessed if [AQ2 Type] **R o 2 E** is set to [Current] **D R**.

Identical to [AQ1 max output] **R o H 1** (*see page 465*).

[AQ2 min Output] **u o L 2** ★

AQ2 voltage scaling parameter of 0%.

This parameter can be accessed if [AQ2 Type] **R o 2 E** is set to [Voltage] **I D u**.

Identical to [AQ1 min Output] **u o L 1** (*see page 465*).

[AQ2 max Output] **u o H 2** ★

AQ2 voltage scaling parameter of 100%.

This parameter can be accessed if [AQ2 Type] **R o 2 E** is set to [Voltage] **I D u**.

Identical to [AQ1 max Output] **u o H 1** (*see page 465*).

[Scaling AQ2 min] **R 5 L 2**

AQ2 scaling parameter of 0%.

Identical to [Scaling AQ1 min] **R 5 L 1** (*see page 465*).

[Scaling AQ2 max] **R 5 H 2**

AQ2 scaling parameter of 100%.

Identical to [Scaling AQ1 max] **R 5 H 1** (*see page 465*).

[AQ2 Filter] **R o 2 F**

AQ2 cutoff time of the low-filter.

Identical to [AQ1 Filter] **R o 1 F** (*see page 466*).

[Virtual AI1] / - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Input/Output] → [AI/AQ] → [Virtual AI1]

[AIV1 Assignment]

Virtual AI1 function assignment.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[No]		Not assigned
[Torque Ref Offset]		Torque offset source
[Torque Ref Ratio]		Torque ratio source
[Ref Frequency 2 Summing]		Reference frequency 2 summing
[Torque limitation]		Torque limitation: activation by an analog value
[Torque limitation 2]		Torque limitation: activation by an analog value
[Subtract Ref Freq 2]		Subtract reference frequency 2
[Ref Frequency 3 Summing]		Reference frequency 3 summing
[Subtract Ref Freq 3]		Subtract reference frequency 3
[Ref Frequency 2 multiplier]		Reference frequency 2 multiplier
[Ref Frequency 3 multiplier]		Reference frequency 3 multiplier

[AIV1 Channel Assignment]

Channel assignment for virtual analog input AIV1.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Not Configured]		Not assigned Factory setting
[Ref. Freq-Modbus]		Reference frequency via Modbus
[Ref. Freq-CANopen]		Reference frequency via CANopen if a CANopen module has been inserted
[Ref. Freq-Com. Module]		Reference frequency via fieldbus module if a fieldbus module has been inserted
[Embedded Ethernet]		Embedded Ethernet NOTE: This selection can be accessed on ATV340***N4E drives.

Section 8.40

[Input/Output] - [Relay]

What Is in This Section?

This section contains the following topics:

Topic	Page
[R1 configuration] ↵ 1 - Menu	471
[R2 configuration] ↵ 2 - Menu	474
[R3 configuration] ↵ 3 - Menu	475
[R4 configuration] ↵ 4 - Menu	475
[R5 configuration] ↵ 5 - Menu	476
[R6 configuration] ↵ 6 - Menu	476
[Input/Output] ↵ o - Menu	477

[R1 configuration] ↵ / - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Input/Output] → [Relay] → [R1 configuration]

[R1 Assignment] ↵ /

R1 assignment.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[No]	↙ ↘	Not assigned
[Operating State Fault]	F L E	Operating state fault Factory setting
[Drive Running]	r u n	Drive running
[Mot Freq High Thd]	F E R	Motor frequency threshold ([Motor Freq Thd] F E d) reached
[High Speed Reached]	F L R	High speed reached
[Current Thd Reached]	C E R	Motor current threshold ([High Current Thd] C E d) reached
[Ref Freq Reached]	S r R	Frequency reference reached
[Motor Therm Thd Reached]	E S R	Motor thermal threshold ([Motor Therm Thd] E E d) reached
[PID Error Warning]	P E E	PID error warning
[PID Feedback Warning]	P F R	PID feedback warning
[Mot Freq High Thd 2]	F 2 R	Second frequency threshold ([Freq. threshold 2] F 2 d) reached
[Drv Therm Thd Reached]	E R d	Drive thermal threshold reached
[Ref Freq High Thd Reached]	r E R H	Frequency reference high threshold reached
[Ref Freq Low Thd Reached]	r E R L	Frequency reference low threshold reached
[Mot Freq Low Thd]	F E R L	Frequency low threshold ([Low Freq.Threshold] F E d L) reached
[Motor Freq Low Thd 2]	F 2 R L	Second frequency low threshold ([2 Freq. Threshold] F 2 d L) reached
[Low Current Reached]	C E R L	Current low threshold ([Low I Threshold] C E d L) reached
[Process Undld Warning]	u L R	Underload warning
[Process Overload Warning]	o L R	Overload warning
[Forced Run]	E r n	Emergency Run
[Slack Rope Warning]	r S d R	Rope Slack
[High Torque Warning]	E E H R	High torque threshold
[Forward]	Π F r d	Run forward
[Reverse]	Π r r S	Run reverse
[HMI Cmd]	b Π P	Control via the Graphic Display Terminal is active.
[Ramp switching]	r P 2	Ramp switching state
[Mot2 Therm Thd reached]	E S 2	Motor 2 thermal threshold (TTD2) reached
[Mot3 Therm Thd reached]	E S 3	Motor 3 thermal threshold (TTD3) reached
[Mot4 Therm Thd reached]	E S 4	Motor 4 thermal threshold (TTD4) reached
[Neg Torque]	A E S	Actual torque sign
[Cnfg.0 act.]	C n F 0	Configuration 0 active
[Cnfg.1 act.]	C n F 1	Configuration 1 active
[Cnfg.2 act.]	C n F 2	Configuration 2 active
[Configuration 3 Active]	C n F 3	Configuration 3 active
[set 1 active]	C F P 1	Parameter set 1 active
[set 2 active]	C F P 2	Parameter set 2 active
[set 3 active]	C F P 3	Parameter set 3 active
[DC Bus Charged]	d b L	DC bus charged
[In braking]	b r S	In braking sequence
[Pulse Warn Thd Reached]	F 9 L R	Pulse warning threshold reached

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[I present]	<i>I C P</i>	Motor current present
[Limit Switch Reached]	<i>L S R</i>	Limit switch function activated
[Dynamic Load Warning]	<i>d L d R</i>	Dynamic load detection
[Warning Grp 1]	<i>R G 1</i>	Warning group 1
[Warning Grp 2]	<i>R G 2</i>	Warning group 2
[Warning Grp 3]	<i>R G 3</i>	Warning group 3
[Warning Grp 4]	<i>R G 4</i>	Warning group 4
[Warning Grp 5]	<i>R G 5</i>	Warning group 5
[External Error Warning]	<i>E F R</i>	External error warning
[Undervoltage Warning]	<i>u S R</i>	Undervoltage warning
[Preventive UnderV Active]	<i>u P R</i>	Undervoltage prevention warning
[Slipping warn]	<i>R n R</i>	Anti-veering warning
[Drive Thermal Warning]	<i>t H R</i>	Drive thermal state warning
[Load Mvt Warn]	<i>b S R</i>	Brake speed warning
[Brake Contact Warn]	<i>b C R</i>	Brake contact warning
[Lim T/I Reached]	<i>S S R</i>	Torque current limitation warning
[Trq ctrl Warning]	<i>r t R</i>	Torque control time-out warning
[IGBT Thermal Warning]	<i>t J R</i>	Thermal junction warning
[BR Temp Warning]	<i>b o R</i>	Braking resistor temperature warning
[AI3 4-20 Loss Warning]	<i>R P 3</i>	AI3 4-20 mA loss warning
[AI4 4-20 Loss Warning]	<i>R P 4</i>	AI4 4-20 mA loss warning
[AI5 4-20 Loss Warning]	<i>R P 5</i>	AI5 4-20 mA loss warning
[Ready]	<i>r d Y</i>	Ready to start
[AI1 4-20 Loss Warning]	<i>R P 1</i>	AI1 4-20 mA loss warning
[AI1 Th Warning]	<i>t P 1 R</i>	Thermal 1 alarm
[Fallback speed]	<i>F r F</i>	Reaction on event / fallback speed
[Speed Maintained]	<i>r L S</i>	Reaction on event / maintain speed
[Per Type of Stop]	<i>S t t</i>	Reaction on event / stop on STT without an error triggered after stop.
[AI3 Th Warning]	<i>t P 3 R</i>	Thermal 3 warning
[AI4 Th Warning]	<i>t P 4 R</i>	Thermal 4 warning
[AI5 Th Warning]	<i>t P 5 R</i>	Thermal 5 warning
[AI5 4-20 Loss Warning]	<i>R P 5</i>	AI5 4-20 mA loss warning
[Pump 1 Cmd]	<i>P P o I</i>	Pump 1 command

[R1 Delay time] *r / d*

R1 activation delay time.

The change in state takes effect once the configured time has elapsed when the information becomes true.

The delay cannot be set for the [Operating State Fault] *F L t* assignment; and remains at 0.

Setting	Description
0...60,000 ms	Setting range Factory setting: 0 ms

[R1 Active at] *r* / 5

R1 status (output active level).

Setting	Code / Value	Description
1	<i>P o S</i>	State 1 when the information is true Factory setting
0	<i>n E G</i>	State 0 when the information is true

Configuration [1] *P o S* cannot be modified for the **[Operating State "Fault"] F L E** assignment.

[R1 Holding time] *r* / 1H

R1 holding delay time.

The change in state takes effect once the configured time has elapsed when the information becomes false.

The holding time cannot be set for the **[Operating State "Fault"] F L E** assignment, and remains at 0.

Setting	Description
0...9,999 ms	Setting range Factory setting: 0 ms

[R2 configuration] ↳ 2 - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Input/Output] → [Relay] → [R2 configuration]

About This Menu

Identical to [R1 configuration] ↳ 1 - Menu (*see page 471*).

[R2 Assignment] ↳ 2

R2 assignment.

Identical to [R1 Assignment] ↳ 1 (*see page 471*) in addition to:

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[No]	n o	Not assigned Factory setting
[Brake Sequence]	b L C	Brake sequence
[Mains Contactor]	L L C	Mains contactor control
[DC charging]	d L o	DC charging

[R2 Delay time] ↳ 2 d

R2 activation delay time.

[R2 Active at] ↳ 2 5

R2 status (output active level).

[R2 Holding time] ↳ 2 H

R2 holding delay time.

[R3 configuration] ↳ 3 - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Input/Output] → [Relay] → [R3 configuration]

About This Menu

Identical to [R1 configuration] ↳ 1 - Menu (*see page 471*).

[R3 Assignment] ↳ 3

R3 assignment.

Identical to [R2 Assignment] ↳ 2 (*see page 474*).

[R3 Delay time] ↳ 3 d

R3 activation delay time.

[R3 Active at] ↳ 3 5

R3 status (output active level).

[R3 Holding time] ↳ 3 H

R3 holding delay time.

[R4 configuration] ↳ 4 - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Input/Output] → [Relay] → [R4 configuration]

About This Menu

Identical to [R1 configuration] ↳ 1 - Menu (*see page 471*).

Following parameters can be accessed if VW3A3204 relay output option module has been inserted.

[R4 Assignment] ↳ 4 ★

R4 assignment.

Identical to [R2 Assignment] ↳ 2 (*see page 474*).

[R4 Delay time] ↳ 4 d★

R4 activation delay time.

[R4 Active at] ↳ 4 5 ★

R4 status (output active level).

[R4 Holding time] ↳ 4 H★

R4 holding delay time.

[R5 configuration] ↳ 5 - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Input/Output] → [Relay] → [R5 configuration]

About This Menu

Identical to [R1 configuration] ↳ 1 - Menu (*see page 471*).

Following parameters can be accessed if VW3A3204 relay output option module has been inserted.

[R5 Assignment] ↳ 5 ★

R5 assignment.

Identical to [R2 Assignment] ↳ 2 (*see page 474*).

[R5 Delay time] ↳ 5 d ★

R5 activation delay time.

[R5 Active at] ↳ 5 5 ★

R5 status (output active level).

[R5 Holding time] ↳ 5 H ★

R5 holding delay time.

[R6 configuration] ↳ 6 - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Input/Output] → [Relay] → [R6 configuration]

About This Menu

Identical to [R1 configuration] ↳ 1 - Menu (*see page 471*).

Following parameters can be accessed if VW3A3204 relay output option module has been inserted.

[R6 Assignment] ↳ 6 ★

R6 assignment.

Identical to [R2 Assignment] ↳ 2 (*see page 474*).

[R6 Delay time] ↳ 6 d ★

R6 activation delay time.

[R6 Active at] ↳ 6 5 ★

R6 status (output active level).

[R6 Holding time] ↳ 6 H ★

R6 holding delay time.

[Input/Output] - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Input/Output]

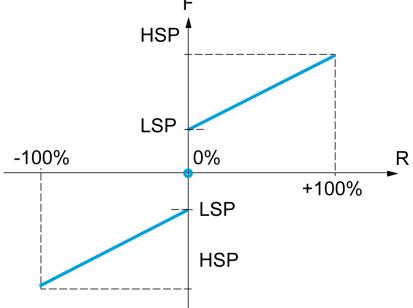
[Ref Freq Template] b 5 P

Reference frequency template selection.

This parameter defines how the speed reference is taken into account, for analog inputs and pulse input. In the case of the PID controller, this is the PID output reference.

The limits are set by the [Low speed] L 5 P and [High speed] H 5 P parameters

Setting ()	Code / Value	Description
[Standard]	b 5 d	<p>F Frequency R Reference</p> <p>At zero reference the frequency = LSP Factory setting</p>
[Deadband]	b L 5	<p>F Frequency R Reference</p> <p>At reference = 0 to LSP the frequency = LSP</p>
[Pedestal]	b n 5	<p>F Frequency R Reference</p> <p>At reference = 0 to LSP the frequency = 0</p>

Setting (S)	Code / Value	Description
[Deadband 0]	b n 5 d	 <p>F Frequency R Reference</p> <p>This operation is the same as [Standard] b 5 d, except that in the following cases at zero reference, the frequency = 0: The signal is less than [Min nvalue], which is greater than 0 (example: 1 Vdc on a 2–10 Vdc input) The signal is greater than [Min nvalue], which is greater than [Max value] (example: 11 Vdc on a 10–0 Vdc input). If the input range is configured as “bidirectional”, operation remains identical to [Standard] b 5 d.</p>

Section 8.41

[Encoder configuration]

[Encoder configuration] → E n - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Encoder configuration]

About This Menu

This menu can be accessed if an encoder module (VW3A3420, VW3A3422, or VW3A3423) has been inserted, and the available selections depend on the type of encoder module used.

Encoder Check Procedure

This procedure applies to all types of encoder.

Step	Action
1	Configure the parameters of the encoder used
2	Set [Motor control type] L E E to a value other than [FVC] F V L even if it is the required configuration. For example, use [SVC V] V V L for an asynchronous motor and [Sync. mot.] S Y n for a synchronous motor.
3	Configure the motor parameters in accordance with the specifications on the nameplate. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Asynchronous motor: [Nominal motor power] n P r, [Nom Motor Voltage] u n 5, [Nom Motor Current] n L r, [Nominal Motor Freq] F r 5, [Nominal Motor Speed] n 5 P. Synchronous motor: [Sync Nominal I] n L r 5, [Nom SyncMotor Speed] n 5 P 5, [Pole pairs] P P n 5, [Syn. EMF constant] P H 5, [Autotune L d-axis] L d 5, [Autotune L q-axis] L q 5, [SyncMotor Stator R] r 5 A 5. [Current Limitation] L L i must not exceed the maximum motor current, otherwise demagnetization may occur.
4	Set [Encoder usage] E n u to [No] n o.
5	Perform auto-tuning
6	Set [Encoder check] E n L to [Yes] Y E 5
7	Set the motor rotating at stabilized speed around 15% of the rated speed for at least 3 seconds, and use the [Display] D o n menu to monitor its behavior
8	If an [Encoder] E n F error is detected, [Encoder check] E n L returns to [No] n o. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check the parameter settings (see steps 1 to 5 above). Check that the mechanical and electrical operation of the encoder, its power supply, and connections are all OK. Reverse the direction of rotation of the motor ([Output Ph Rotation] P H r parameter) or the encoder signals
9	Repeat the operations from step 6 onwards until [Encoder check] E n L changes to [Done] d o n E
10	If necessary, change [Motor control type] L E E to [FVC] F V L or [Sync.CL] F S Y. In the case of [Sync.CL] F S Y.

[Encoder Type] $\sqcup E \sqsubset P$

Encoder type.

This parameter can be accessed if VW3A3420 or VW3A3422 are inserted.

The list of choice depends on the encoder module inserted.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Undefined]	<i>u n d</i>	Unknow / No encoder type selected Factory setting
[Hiperface]	<i>S C H P</i>	SinCos Hiperface encoder
[SinCos]	<i>S C</i>	SinCos encoder
[SSI]	<i>S S I</i>	SSI encoder
[RS422]	<i>A b</i>	AB encoder
[Resolver]	<i>r E S</i>	Resolver encoder
[Biss]	<i>b i s s</i>	BISS encoder
[EnDat 2.2]	<i>E n d A t 2 . 2</i>	Endat 2.2 encoder

[Encoder supply volt.] $\sqcup E \sqsubset V$ ★

Encoder supply voltage.

Rated voltage of encoder used. The list of choice depends on the encoder module inserted.

This parameter can be accessed if [Encoder Type] $\sqcup E \sqsubset P$ is not set to:

- [Undefined] *u n d*, or
- [Resolver] *r E S*.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Undefined]	<i>u n d</i>	Not defined Factory setting
[5 Vdc]	<i>5 V</i>	5 Volts
[12 Vdc]	<i>1 2 V</i>	12 Volts
[24 Vdc]	<i>2 4 V</i>	24 Volts

[Number of pulses] $P G$, ★

Number of pulses per encoder revolution.

The parameter can be accessed if an encoder module VW3A3420 has been inserted and if [Encoder Type] $\sqcup E \sqsubset P$ is set to [RS422] *A b*

Setting	Description
100...10,000	Factory setting: 1024

[Encoder check] $E \sqsubset C$

Encoder check activation.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Not done]	<i>n o</i>	Check not performed
[Yes]	<i>y E S</i>	Activates monitoring of the encoder.
[Done]	<i>d o n E</i>	Check performed successfully. The check procedure checks: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The direction of rotation of the encoder/motor • The presence of signals (wiring continuity) • The number of pulses/revolution. If an error is detected, the drive triggers an [Encoder] <i>E n F</i> .

[Encoder usage] $E \text{ n } u$

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[No]	$\text{n } \square$	Function inactive
[Speed Monitoring]	$S E L$	The encoder provides speed feedback for monitoring only.
[Speed Regulation]	$r E G$	The encoder provides speed feedback for regulation and monitoring. This configuration is automatic if the drive is configured for closed-loop operation ([Motor control type] $L E E = [FVC] F V L$). If [Motor control type] $L E E = [SVC V] V V L$ the encoder operates in speed feedback mode and enables static correction of the speed to be performed. This configuration is not accessible for other [Motor control type] $L E E$ values.

[Encoder rotation inv.] $E \text{ n } r$

Inversion of encoder rotation direction.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[No]	$\text{n } \square$	Inversion of the encoder deactivated Factory setting
[Yes]	$Y E S$	Inversion of the encoder activated

[Resolver Ext. Freq.] $r E F q$

Resolver excitation frequency.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[3 kHz]	3	3 kHz
[4 kHz]	4	4 kHz
[5 kHz]	5	5 kHz
[6 kHz]	6	6 kHz
[7 kHz]	7	7 kHz
[8 kHz]	8	8 kHz Factory setting
[9 kHz]	9	9 kHz
[10 kHz]	10	10 kHz
[11 kHz]	11	11 kHz
[12 kHz]	12	12 kHz

[Transformation ratio] $L r E S$

Resolver transformation ratio.

This parameter can be accessed if [Encoder Type] $\text{u } E L P$ is set to [Resolver] $r E S$.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[0.3]	0.3	0.3
[0.5]	0.5	0.5 Factory setting
[0.8]	0.8	0.8
[1.0]	1.0	1.0

[Resolver poles nbr] *r P P n* ★

Resolver poles pair number.

This parameter can be accessed if [Encoder Type] *u E L P* is set to [Resolver] *r E S*.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[2 poles]	<i>2 P</i>	2 poles Factory setting
[4 poles]	<i>4 P</i>	4 poles
[6 poles]	<i>6 P</i>	6 poles
[8 poles]	<i>8 P</i>	8 poles

[SinCos lines count] *u E L C* ★

SinCos lines count.

This parameter can be accessed if [Encoder Type] *u E L P* is set to [SinCos] *S C*.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Undefined]	<i>u n d</i>	Undefined Factory setting
[1...10000]		Setting range

[SSI parity] *S S C P* ★

SSI Parity

This parameter can be accessed if [Encoder Type] *u E L P* is set to [SSI] *S S*,

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Undefined]	<i>u n d</i>	Undefined Factory setting
[No parity]	<i>n o</i>	No parity
[Even parity]	<i>E V E n</i>	Even parity

[SSI frame size] *S S F S* ★

SSI frame size (in number of bits).

The parameter can be accessed if [Encoder Type] *u E L P* is set to [SSI] *S S*,

Setting	Description
[Auto] <i>R u t o</i> ...31	Setting range Factory setting: [Auto] <i>R u t o</i>

[Nbr of revolutions] *E n P r* ★

Number of revolutions.

Format of the number of revolutions (in number of bits).

The parameter can be accessed if [Encoder Type] *u E L P* is set to [SSI] *S S*,

Setting	Description
[Undefined] <i>u n d</i> ...25	Setting range Factory setting: [Undefined] <i>u n d</i>

[Turn bit resolution] E n E r ★

Turn bit resolution.

Resolution per revolution (in number of bits).

The parameter can be accessed if [Encoder Type] uECP is set to [SSI] S5 ,

Setting	Description
[Undefined] u n d...25	Setting range Factory setting: [Undefined] u n d

[SSI code type] S5C d ★

SSI code type.

The parameter can be accessed if [Encoder Type] uECP is set to [SSI] S5 ,

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Undefined] u n d	Undefined Factory setting	
[Binary code] b i n	Binary code	
[Gray code] G r A Y	Gray code	

[Clock frequency] E n S P ★

Clock frequency.

The parameter can be accessed if [Encoder Type] uECP is set to [SSI] S5 ,

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[200 kHz] 2 0 0	200 kHz Factory setting	
[1 MHz] 1 M	1 MHz	

[AB Encoder Max Freq] R b P F ★

AB encoder maximum frequency.

This parameter can be accessed if [Encoder Type] uECP is set to [RS422] R b and, [Access Level] L R C is set to [Expert] E P r .

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[150 kHz] 1 5	150 kHz	
[300 kHz] 3 0	300 kHz Factory setting	
[500 kHz] 5 0	500 kHz	
[1000 kHz] 1 0 0	1000 kHz	

[Encoder filter activ.] F F A ★

Encoder feedback filter activation.

This parameter can be accessed if:

- [Encoder usage] E n u is not set to [No] n o , or
- [Emb Enc Usage] E E n u is not set to [No] n o .

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[No] n o	Filter deactivated Factory setting	
[Yes] y e s	Filter activated	

[Encoder filter value] *F F r* ★

Encoder feedback filter value.

This parameter can be accessed if:

- [Access Level] *L R L* is set to [Expert] *E P r*, and
- [Encoder filter activ.] *F F R* is set to [Yes] *Y E S*.

Setting	Description
0.0...40.0 ms	Setting range Factory setting: according to encoder rating

[Stop on top Z] *E o S E* ★

Stop on next top Z detection.

This parameter can be used for homing. If the approach speed is set to high an [DC Bus Overvoltage] *a b F* error will be triggered.

This parameter can be accessed if:

- A VW3A3420 Digital encoder module has been inserted, and
- [Encoder type] *u E L P* is set to [RS422] *R b*.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Not Assigned]	<i>n o</i>	Not assigned Factory setting
[DI1]...[DI8]	<i>L , I...L , B</i>	Digital input DI1...DI8 NOTE: DI8 selection can be accessed on drives with a power greater than 22 kW.
[DI11]...[DI16]	<i>L , I I...L , I B</i>	Digital input DI11...DI16 if VW3A3203 I/O extension module has been inserted
[CD00]...[CD10]	<i>C d 0 0...C d 1 0</i>	Virtual digital input CMD.0...CMD.10 in [I/O profile] <i>i o</i> configuration
[CD11]...[CD15]	<i>C d 1 1...C d 1 5</i>	Virtual digital input CMD.11...CMD.15 regardless of configuration
[C101]...[C110]	<i>C 1 0 1...C 1 1 0</i>	Virtual digital input CMD1.01...CMD1.10 with integrated Modbus Serial in [I/O profile] <i>i o</i> configuration
[C111]...[C115]	<i>C 1 1 1...C 1 1 5</i>	Virtual digital input CMD1.11...CMD1.15 with integrated Modbus Serial regardless of configuration
[C201]...[C210]	<i>C 2 0 1...C 2 1 0</i>	Virtual digital input CMD2.01...CMD2.10 with CANopen® fieldbus module in [I/O profile] <i>i o</i> configuration
[C211]...[C215]	<i>C 2 1 1...C 2 1 5</i>	Virtual digital input CMD2.11...CMD2.15 with CANopen® fieldbus module regardless of configuration
[C301]...[C310]	<i>C 3 0 1...C 3 1 0</i>	Virtual digital input CMD3.01...CMD3.10 with a fieldbus module in [I/O profile] <i>i o</i> configuration
[C311]...[C315]	<i>C 3 1 1...C 3 1 5</i>	Virtual digital input CMD3.11...CMD3.15 with a fieldbus module regardless of configuration
[C501]...[C510]	<i>C 5 0 1...C 5 1 0</i>	Virtual digital input CMD5.01...CMD5.10 with integrated Ethernet in [I/O profile] <i>i o</i> configuration NOTE: This selection can be accessed on ATV340...N4E drives.
[C511]...[C515]	<i>C 5 1 1...C 5 1 5</i>	Virtual digital input CMD5.11...CMD5.15 with integrated Ethernet regardless of configuration NOTE: This selection can be accessed on ATV340...N4E drives.

[Reset Position Assign] *r P o S*

Reset position assignment.

This parameter resets the value of [PLC Encoder Pulse] *P u L* parameter.

This parameter can be accessed if [Access Level] *L R L* is set to [Expert] *E P r*

Identical to [Stop on top Z] *E o S E*.

Section 8.42

[Embedded Encoder]

[Embedded Encoder] , E E - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Embedded Encoder]

About This Menu

This menu can be accessed on drives with power up to 22 kW and if no encoder module (VW3A3420, VW3A3422, or VW3A3423) has been inserted.

[Emb Enc Type] E E E P

Encoder type.

The list of choice depends on the encoder module inserted.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[None]	n o n E	No encoder connected Factory setting
[AB]	R b	AB encoder
[SinCos]	S C	SinCos encoder

[Emb Enc Supply Volt] E E E V ★

Embedded encoder supply voltage.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[5 Vdc]	5 V	5 Volts
[12 Vdc]	12 V	12 Volts Factory setting
[24 Vdc]	24 V	24 Volts

[Emb Enc Pulses Nb] E P G , ★

Number of pulses per encoder revolution.

The parameter can be accessed if [Emb Encoder Type] E E E P is set to [RS422] R b

Setting	Description
100...10,000	Factory setting: 1024

[Encoder check] E n C

Encoder check activation.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Not done]	n o	Check not performed
[Yes]	Y E S	Activates monitoring of the encoder.
[Done]	d o n E	Check performed successfully. The check procedure checks: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• The direction of rotation of the encoder/motor• The presence of signals (wiring continuity)• The number of pulses/revolution. If an error is detected, the drive triggers an [Encoder] E n F .

[Emb Enc Usage] E E n u

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[No]	n o	Function inactive Factory setting
[Speed Monitoring]	S E L	The encoder provides speed feedback for monitoring only.
[Speed Regulation]	r E G	The encoder provides speed feedback for regulation and monitoring. This configuration is automatic if the drive is configured for closed-loop operation ([Motor control type] L E L = [FVC] F V L). If [Motor control type] L E L = [SVC V] V V L the encoder operates in speed feedback mode and enables static correction of the speed to be performed. This configuration is not accessible for other [Motor control type] L E L values.

[Emb Enc Rotation Inv] E E r ,

Inversion of encoder rotation direction.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[No]	n o	Inversion of the encoder deactivated Factory setting
[Yes]	y E S	Inversion of the encoder activated

[Emb Enc Sincos lines] E E L L ★

SinCos lines count.

This parameter can be accessed if [Emb Encoder Type] E E L P is set to [SinCos] 5 L .

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Undefined]	u n d	Undefined Factory setting
[1...10000]		Setting range

[Encoder filter activ.] F F R ★

Encoder feedback filter activation.

This parameter can be accessed if [Encoder usage] E n u is not set to [No] n o .

This parameter can be accessed if:

- [Encoder usage] E n u is not set to [No] n o , or
- [Emb Enc Usage] E E n u is not set to [No] n o .

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[No]	n o	Filter deactivated Factory setting
[Yes]	y E S	Filter activated

[Encoder filter value] F F r ★

Encoder feedback filter value.

This parameter can be accessed if:

- [Access Level] L R L is set to [Expert] E P r , and
- [Encoder filter activ.] F F R is set to [Yes] y E S .

Setting	Description
0.0...40.0 ms	Setting range Factory setting: according to encoder rating

[Stop on top Z] $E \square 5 E$ ★

Stop on next top Z detection.

This parameter can be used for homing. If the approach speed is set to high an **[DC Bus Overvoltage]** $\square b F$ error will be triggered.

This parameter can be accessed if:

- **[Emb Encoder Type]** $E E L P$ is set to **[RS422] A b**.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Not Assigned]	$\square \square$	Not assigned Factory setting
[DI1]...[DI8]	$L \square I \dots L \square B$	Digital input DI1...DI8 NOTE: DI8 selection can be accessed on drives with a power greater than 22 kW.
[DI11]...[DI16]	$L \square I I \dots L \square I B$	Digital input DI11...DI16 if VW3A3203 I/O extension module has been inserted
[CD00]...[CD10]	$C d 0 0 \dots C d 1 0$	Virtual digital input CMD.0...CMD.10 in [I/O profile] $\square \square$ configuration
[CD11]...[CD15]	$C d 1 1 \dots C d 1 5$	Virtual digital input CMD.11...CMD.15 regardless of configuration
[C101]...[C110]	$C 1 0 \square I \dots C 1 1 \square I$	Virtual digital input CMD1.01...CMD1.10 with integrated Modbus Serial in [I/O profile] $\square \square$ configuration
[C111]...[C115]	$C 1 1 \square I \dots C 1 1 \square S$	Virtual digital input CMD1.11...CMD1.15 with integrated Modbus Serial regardless of configuration
[C201]...[C210]	$C 2 0 \square I \dots C 2 1 \square O$	Virtual digital input CMD2.01...CMD2.10 with CANopen® fieldbus module in [I/O profile] $\square \square$ configuration
[C211]...[C215]	$C 2 1 \square I \dots C 2 1 \square S$	Virtual digital input CMD2.11...CMD2.15 with CANopen® fieldbus module regardless of configuration
[C301]...[C310]	$C 3 0 \square I \dots C 3 1 \square O$	Virtual digital input CMD3.01...CMD3.10 with a fieldbus module in [I/O profile] $\square \square$ configuration
[C311]...[C315]	$C 3 1 \square I \dots C 3 1 \square S$	Virtual digital input CMD3.11...CMD3.15 with a fieldbus module regardless of configuration
[C501]...[C510]	$C 5 0 \square I \dots C 5 1 \square O$	Virtual digital input CMD5.01...CMD5.10 with integrated Ethernet in [I/O profile] $\square \square$ configuration NOTE: This selection can be accessed on ATV340...N4E drives.
[C511]...[C515]	$C 5 1 \square I \dots C 5 1 \square S$	Virtual digital input CMD5.11...CMD5.15 with integrated Ethernet regardless of configuration NOTE: This selection can be accessed on ATV340...N4E drives.

[Reset Position Assign] $r P \square 5$

Reset position assignment.

This parameter resets the value of **[PLC Encoder Pulse]** $P \square L$ parameter.

This parameter can be accessed if **[Access Level]** $L R C$ is set to **[Expert]** $E P r$

Identical to **[Stop on top Z] $E \square 5 E$** .

Section 8.43

[Error/Warning handling]

What Is in This Section?

This section contains the following topics:

Topic	Page
[Auto fault reset] <i>A E r</i> - Menu	489
[Fault reset] <i>r S E</i> - Menu	490
[Catch on the fly] <i>F L r</i> - Menu	492
[Error detection disable] <i>, n H</i> - Menu	494
[External error] <i>E E F</i> - Menu	496
[Output phase loss] <i>o P L</i> - Menu	498
[Input phase loss] <i>, P L</i> - Menu	499
[4-20mA loss] <i>L F L</i> - Menu	500
[Fallback speed] <i>L F F</i> - Menu	502
[Fieldbus monitoring] <i>C L L</i> - Menu	503
[Embedded Modbus TCP] <i>E P E C</i> - Menu	504
[Communication module] <i>C o P o</i> - Menu	505
[Undervoltage handling] <i>u S b</i> - Menu	508
[Ground Fault] <i>G r F L</i> - Menu	510
[Motor thermal monit] <i>E H E</i> - Menu	511
[Encoder monitoring] <i>S d d</i> - Menu	512
[Braking Resistor monit] <i>b r P</i> - Menu	513
[Torque or i lim. detect] <i>E , d</i> - Menu	514
[Drive overload monit] <i>o b r</i> - Menu	515
[Warn grp 1 definition] <i>A 1 C</i> - Menu	517
[Warn grp 2 definition] <i>A 2 C</i> - Menu	519
[Warn grp 3 definition] <i>A 3 C</i> - Menu	519
[Warn grp 4 definition] <i>A 4 C</i> - Menu	519
[Warn grp 5 definition] <i>A 5 C</i> - Menu	519

[Auto fault reset] - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Error/Warning handling] → [Auto fault reset]

[Auto Fault Reset]

Automatic fault reset.

This function can be used to automatically perform individual or multiple Fault Resets. If the cause of the error that has triggered the transition to the operating state Fault disappears while this function is active, the drive resumes normal operation. While the Fault Reset attempts are performed automatically, the output signal [Operating state Fault] is not available. If the attempts to perform the Fault Reset are not successful, the drive remains in the operating state Fault and the output signal [Operating state Fault] becomes active.

WARNING

UNANTICIPATED EQUIPMENT OPERATION

- Verify that activating this function does not result in unsafe conditions.
- Verify that the fact that the output signal "Operating state Fault" is not available while this function is active does not result in unsafe conditions.

Failure to follow these instructions can result in death, serious injury, or equipment damage.

The drive fault relay remains activated if this function is active. The speed reference and the operating direction must be maintained.

It is recommended to use 2-wire control ([2/3-wire control]  is set to [2 wire]  and [2-wire type]  is set to [Level] , refer to [2/3-wire control] .

If the restart has not taken place once the configurable time [Fault Reset Time]  has elapsed, the procedure is aborted and the drive remains locked until it is turned off and then on again.

The detected error codes, which permit this function, are listed in the Diagnostics part of the manual.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[No]		Function inactive Factory setting
[Yes]		Automatic restart, after locking in error state, if the detected error has disappeared and the other operating conditions permit the restart. The restart is performed by a series of automatic attempts separated by increasingly longer waiting periods: 1 s, 5 s, 10 s, then 1 minute for the following attempts.

[Fault Reset Time]

Maximum time for automatic restart function.

This parameter appears if [Auto Fault Reset]  is set to [Yes] . It can be used to limit the number of consecutive restarts on a recurrent detected error.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[5 minutes]		5 minutes Factory setting
[10 minutes]		10 minutes
[30 minutes]		30 minutes
[1 hour]		1 hour
[2 hours]		2 hours
[3 hours]		3 hours
[Unlimited]		Continuous

[Fault reset] ↳ 5 E - Menu**Access**

[Complete settings] → [Error/Warning handling] → [Fault reset]

[Fault Reset Assign] ↳ 5 F

Fault reset input assignment.

Detected errors are cleared manually when the assigned input or bit changes to 1 if the cause of the detected error has disappeared.

The **STOP/RESET** key on the Display Terminal performs the same function.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Not Assigned]	<i>n o</i>	Not assigned
[DI1]...[DI6]	<i>L , I ... L , 6</i>	Digital input DI1...DI6 NOTE: DI8 selection can be accessed on drives with a power greater than 22 kW.
[DI11]...[DI16]	<i>L , I I ... L , 16</i>	Digital input DI11...DI16 if VW3A3203 I/O extension module has been inserted
[CD00]...[CD10]	<i>C d 0 0 ... C d 1 0</i>	Virtual digital input CMD.0...CMD.10 in [I/O profile] ↳ <i>o</i> configuration
[CD11]...[CD15]	<i>C d 1 1 ... C d 1 5</i>	Virtual digital input CMD.11...CMD.15 regardless of configuration
[C101]...[C110]	<i>C 1 0 1 ... C 1 1 0</i>	Virtual digital input CMD1.01...CMD1.10 with integrated Modbus Serial in [I/O profile] ↳ <i>o</i> configuration
[C111]...[C115]	<i>C 1 1 1 ... C 1 1 5</i>	Virtual digital input CMD1.11...CMD1.15 with integrated Modbus Serial regardless of configuration
[C201]...[C210]	<i>C 2 0 1 ... C 2 1 0</i>	Virtual digital input CMD2.01...CMD2.10 with CANopen® fieldbus module in [I/O profile] ↳ <i>o</i> configuration
[C211]...[C215]	<i>C 2 1 1 ... C 2 1 5</i>	Virtual digital input CMD2.11...CMD2.15 with CANopen® fieldbus module regardless of configuration
[C301]...[C310]	<i>C 3 0 1 ... C 3 1 0</i>	Virtual digital input CMD3.01...CMD3.10 with a fieldbus module in [I/O profile] ↳ <i>o</i> configuration
[C311]...[C315]	<i>C 3 1 1 ... C 3 1 5</i>	Virtual digital input CMD3.11...CMD3.15 with a fieldbus module regardless of configuration
[C501]...[C510]	<i>C 5 0 1 ... C 5 1 0</i>	Virtual digital input CMD5.01...CMD5.10 with integrated Ethernet in [I/O profile] ↳ <i>o</i> configuration NOTE: This selection can be accessed on ATV340...N4E drives.
[C511]...[C515]	<i>C 5 1 1 ... C 5 1 5</i>	Virtual digital input CMD5.11...CMD5.15 with integrated Ethernet regardless of configuration NOTE: This selection can be accessed on ATV340...N4E drives.

[Product Restart]

The Restart function performs a Fault Reset and then restarts the drive. During this Restart procedure, the drive goes through the same steps as if it had been switched off and on again. Depending on the wiring and the configuration of the drive, this may result in immediate and unanticipated operation.

 WARNING	
UNANTICIPATED EQUIPMENT OPERATION	
The Restart function performs a Fault Reset and restarts the drive.	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Verify that activating this function does not result in unsafe conditions. <p>Failure to follow these instructions can result in death, serious injury, or equipment damage.</p>	

Product restart.

This parameter can be accessed if **[Access Level]** *L A L* is set to **[Expert]** *E P r* mode.

This parameter can be used to reset all detected errors without having to disconnect the drive from the supply mains.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[No]	<i>n o</i>	Function inactive Factory setting
[Yes]	<i>y E S</i>	Reinitialization. Press and hold down the OK key for 2 s. The parameter changes back to [No] <i>n o</i> automatically as soon as the operation is complete. The drive can only be reinitialized when locked.

[Prod Restart Assign]

Product restart assignment.

The Restart function performs a Fault Reset and then restarts the drive. During this Restart procedure, the drive goes through the same steps as if it had been switched off and on again. Depending on the wiring and the configuration of the drive, this may result in immediate and unanticipated operation. The Restart function can be assigned to a digital input

 WARNING	
UNANTICIPATED EQUIPMENT OPERATION	
The Restart function performs a Fault Reset and restarts the drive.	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Verify that activating this function does not result in unsafe conditions. <p>Failure to follow these instructions can result in death, serious injury, or equipment damage.</p>	

This parameter can be accessed if **[Access Level]** *L A L* is set to **[Expert]** *E P r* mode.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Not Assigned]	<i>n o</i>	Not assigned Factory setting
[DI1]...[DI8]	<i>L , I...L , B</i>	Digital input DI1...DI8 NOTE: DI8 selection can be accessed on drives with a power greater than 22 kW.
[DI11]...[DI16]	<i>L , I I...L , I B</i>	Digital input DI11...DI16 if VW3A3203 I/O extension module has been inserted

[Catch on the fly] $F L r$ - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Error/Warning handling] → [Catch on the fly]

[Catch On Fly] $F L r$

Catch on the fly.

Used to enable a smooth restart if the run command is maintained after the following events:

- Loss of line supply or disconnection.
- Clearance of current detected error or automatic restart.
- Freewheel stop.

The speed given by the drive resumes from the estimated or measured speed of the motor at the time of the restart, then follows the ramp to the reference speed.

This function requires 2-wire level control.

When the function is operational, it activates at each run command, resulting in a slight delay of the current (0.5 s max).

$F L r$ is forced to [No] $n \square$ if

- Motor Control Type $L E L$ is set to [FVC] $F V L$ or [Sync.CL] $F S Y$, or
- [Auto DC Injection] $A d L$ is set to [Continuous] $L E$, or
- [Brake assignment] $b L L$ is not set to [No] $n \square$, or
- [BL Mode] $b Q P$ is not set to [No] $n \square$.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[No]	$n \square$	Function inactive Factory setting
[Yes]	$y E S$	Function active

NOTE: For synchronous reluctance motor, it is recommended to set [Angle Setting Type] $A S E$ to [Rotational Current Injection] $r L$.

[Catch on Fly Sensitivity] $V C b$ ★

Catch on fly sensitivity.

This parameter can only be accessed if [Access Level] $L R L$ is set to [Expert] $E P r$.

Setting the value of parameter [Catch on Fly Sensitivity] $V C b$ too low may cause a wrong estimation of the speed of the motor.

WARNING

LOSS OF CONTROL

- Only reduce gradually the value of parameter [Catch on Fly Sensitivity] $V C b$.
- During commissioning, verify that the drive and the system operate as intended by performing tests and simulations in a controlled environment under controlled conditions

Failure to follow these instructions can result in death, serious injury, or equipment damage.

Setting	Description
0.10...100.00 V	Setting range Factory setting: 0.20 V

[Catch On Fly Mode] $C \square F \Pi$

Velocity detection method for the Catch on Fly function.

[Catch On Fly Mode] $C \square F \Pi$ is forced to **[Measured] $H \backslash W C \square F$** for synchronous motors.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Measured]	$H \backslash W C \square F$	<p>Hardware catch on the fly The motor voltage signal should be greater than [Catch on Fly Sensitivity] $V \square b$ to be able to estimate the speed Factory setting</p>
[Computed]	$S \backslash W C \square F$	<p>Software catch on the fly A signal is injected to estimate the speed and the position of the rotor. [Computed] $S \backslash W C \square F$ method is effective for a motor velocity range included in -1.1*HSP to 1.1*HSP.</p>

[Error detection disable]  - Menu**Access**

[Complete settings] → [Error/Warning handling] → [Error detection disable]

[ErrorDetect Disabled] 

Disable error detection.

In rare cases, the monitoring functions of the drive may be unwanted because they impede the purpose of the application. A typical example is a smoke extractor fan operating as a part of a fire protection system. If a fire occurs, the smoke extractor fan should operate as long as possible, even if, for example, the permissible ambient temperature of the drive is exceeded. In such applications, damage to or destruction of the device may be acceptable as collateral damage, for example, to keep other damage from occurring whose hazard potential is assessed to be more severe.

A parameter is provided to disable certain monitoring functions in such applications so that automatic error detection and automatic error responses of the device are no longer active. You must implement alternative monitoring functions for disabled monitoring functions that allow operators and/or master control systems to adequately respond to conditions which correspond to detected errors. For example, if overtemperature monitoring of the drive is disabled, the drive of a smoke extractor fan may itself cause a fire if errors go undetected. An overtemperature condition can be, for example, signaled in a control room without the drive being stopped immediately and automatically by its internal monitoring functions.

! DANGER**MONITORING FUNCTIONS DISABLED, NO ERROR DETECTION**

- Only use this parameter after a thorough risk assessment in compliance with all regulations and standards that apply to the device and to the application.
- Implement alternative monitoring functions for disabled monitoring functions that do not trigger automatic error responses of the drive, but allow for adequate, equivalent responses by other means in compliance with all applicable regulations and standards as well as the risk assessment.
- Commission and test the system with the monitoring functions enabled.
- During commissioning, verify that the drive and the system operate as intended by performing tests and simulations in a controlled environment under controlled conditions.

Failure to follow these instructions will result in death or serious injury.

This parameter can be accessed if **[Access Level] L R C** is set to **[Expert] E P r**.

If the assigned input or bit state is:

- 0: error detection is enabled.
- 1: error detection is disabled.

Current errors are cleared on a rising edge (change from 0 to 1) of the assigned input or bit.

Detection of following errors can be disabled: AnF, bOF, CnF, COF, dLF, EnF, EPF1, EPF2, FCF2, ETHF, InFA, InFB, InFV, LFF1, LFF3, ObF, OHF, OLC, OLF, OPF1, OPF2, OSF, PHF, SLF1, SLF2, SLF3, SOF, SPF, SSF, TFd, TJF, TnF, ULF, USF.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Not Assigned]	<i>n</i> □	Not assigned Factory setting
[DI1]...[DI8]	<i>L</i> , <i>I</i> ... <i>L</i> , <i>B</i>	Digital input DI1...DI8 NOTE: DI8 selection can be accessed on drives with a power greater than 22 kW.
[DI11]...[DI16]	<i>L</i> , <i>I</i> <i>I</i> ... <i>L</i> , <i>I</i> <i>B</i>	Digital input DI11...DI16 if VW3A3203 I/O extension module has been inserted
[CD00]...[CD10]	<i>C</i> <i>d</i> <i>0</i> <i>0</i> ... <i>C</i> <i>d</i> <i>1</i> <i>0</i>	Virtual digital input CMD.0...CMD.10 in [I/O profile] □ configuration
[CD11]...[CD15]	<i>C</i> <i>d</i> <i>1</i> <i>1</i> ... <i>C</i> <i>d</i> <i>1</i> <i>5</i>	Virtual digital input CMD.11...CMD.15 regardless of configuration
[C101]...[C110]	<i>C</i> <i>1</i> <i>0</i> <i>I</i> ... <i>C</i> <i>1</i> <i>1</i> <i>0</i>	Virtual digital input CMD1.01...CMD1.10 with integrated Modbus Serial in [I/O profile] □ configuration
[C111]...[C115]	<i>C</i> <i>1</i> <i>1</i> <i>I</i> ... <i>C</i> <i>1</i> <i>1</i> <i>5</i>	Virtual digital input CMD1.11...CMD1.15 with integrated Modbus Serial regardless of configuration
[C201]...[C210]	<i>C</i> <i>2</i> <i>0</i> <i>I</i> ... <i>C</i> <i>2</i> <i>1</i> <i>0</i>	Virtual digital input CMD2.01...CMD2.10 with CANopen® fieldbus module in [I/O profile] □ configuration
[C211]...[C215]	<i>C</i> <i>2</i> <i>1</i> <i>I</i> ... <i>C</i> <i>2</i> <i>1</i> <i>5</i>	Virtual digital input CMD2.11...CMD2.15 with CANopen® fieldbus module regardless of configuration
[C301]...[C310]	<i>C</i> <i>3</i> <i>0</i> <i>I</i> ... <i>C</i> <i>3</i> <i>1</i> <i>0</i>	Virtual digital input CMD3.01...CMD3.10 with a fieldbus module in [I/O profile] □ configuration
[C311]...[C315]	<i>C</i> <i>3</i> <i>1</i> <i>I</i> ... <i>C</i> <i>3</i> <i>1</i> <i>5</i>	Virtual digital input CMD3.11...CMD3.15 with a fieldbus module regardless of configuration
[C501]...[C510]	<i>C</i> <i>5</i> <i>0</i> <i>I</i> ... <i>C</i> <i>5</i> <i>1</i> <i>0</i>	Virtual digital input CMD5.01...CMD5.10 with integrated Ethernet in [I/O profile] □ configuration NOTE: This selection can be accessed on ATV340...N4E drives.
[C511]...[C515]	<i>C</i> <i>5</i> <i>1</i> <i>I</i> ... <i>C</i> <i>5</i> <i>1</i> <i>5</i>	Virtual digital input CMD5.11...CMD5.15 with integrated Ethernet regardless of configuration NOTE: This selection can be accessed on ATV340...N4E drives.

[External error] E E F - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Error/Warning handling] → [External error]

[Ext Error Assign] E E F

External error assignment.

If the assigned bit state is:

- 0: there is no external error.
- 1: there is an external error

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Not Assigned]	<i>n o</i>	Not assigned Factory setting
[DI1]...[DI8]	<i>L , I...L , B</i>	Digital input DI1...DI8 NOTE: DI8 selection can be accessed on drives with a power greater than 22 kW.
[DI11]...[DI16]	<i>L , I I...L , I B</i>	Digital input DI11...DI16 if VW3A3203 I/O extension module has been inserted
[CD00]...[CD10]	<i>C d 0 0...C d 1 0</i>	Virtual digital input CMD.0...CMD.10 in [I/O profile] <i>i o</i> configuration
[CD11]...[CD15]	<i>C d 1 1...C d 1 5</i>	Virtual digital input CMD.11...CMD.15 regardless of configuration
[C101]...[C110]	<i>C 1 0 I...C 1 1 0</i>	Virtual digital input CMD1.01...CMD1.10 with integrated Modbus Serial in [I/O profile] <i>i o</i> configuration
[C111]...[C115]	<i>C 1 1 I...C 1 1 5</i>	Virtual digital input CMD1.11...CMD1.15 with integrated Modbus Serial regardless of configuration
[C201]...[C210]	<i>C 2 0 I...C 2 1 0</i>	Virtual digital input CMD2.01...CMD2.10 with CANopen® fieldbus module in [I/O profile] <i>i o</i> configuration
[C211]...[C215]	<i>C 2 1 I...C 2 1 5</i>	Virtual digital input CMD2.11...CMD2.15 with CANopen® fieldbus module regardless of configuration
[C301]...[C310]	<i>C 3 0 I...C 3 1 0</i>	Virtual digital input CMD3.01...CMD3.10 with a fieldbus module in [I/O profile] <i>i o</i> configuration
[C311]...[C315]	<i>C 3 1 I...C 3 1 5</i>	Virtual digital input CMD3.11...CMD3.15 with a fieldbus module regardless of configuration
[C501]...[C510]	<i>C 5 0 I...C 5 1 0</i>	Virtual digital input CMD5.01...CMD5.10 with integrated Ethernet in [I/O profile] <i>i o</i> configuration NOTE: This selection can be accessed on ATV340...N4E drives.
[C511]...[C515]	<i>C 5 1 I...C 5 1 5</i>	Virtual digital input CMD5.11...CMD5.15 with integrated Ethernet regardless of configuration NOTE: This selection can be accessed on ATV340...N4E drives.

[Ext Error Resp] E P L

Drive response to external error.

Type of stop in the event of an external detected error.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Ignore]	<i>n o</i>	External detected error ignored
[Freewheel Stop]	<i>y E S</i>	Freewheel stop Factory setting
[Per STT]	<i>S E E</i>	Stop according to configuration of [Type of stop] <i>S E E</i> (<i>see page 317</i>), without tripping. In this case, the detected error relay does not open and the drive is ready to restart as soon as the detected error disappears, according to the restart conditions of the active command channel (for example, according to [2/3-wire control] <i>E E E</i> and [2-wire type] <i>E E E</i> (<i>see page 227</i> if control is via the terminals). Configuring a warning for this detected error is recommended (assigned to a digital output, for example) in order to indicate the cause of the stop.
[Fallback speed]	<i>L F F</i>	Change to fallback speed, maintained as long as the detected error persists and the run command has not been removed ⁽¹⁾
[Speed maintained]	<i>r L S</i>	The drive maintains the speed being applied when the detected error occurred, as long as the detected error is active and the run command has not been removed ⁽¹⁾
[Ramp stop]	<i>r N P</i>	Stop on ramp
[Fast stop]	<i>F S E</i>	Fast stop
[DC Injection]	<i>d E i</i>	DC injection stop. This type of stop cannot be used with some other functions.
(1) Because, in this case, the detected error does not trigger a stop, it is recommended to assign a relay or digital output to its indication.		

[Fallback Speed] L F F ★

Fall back speed.

This parameter can be accessed if the error response parameter is set to [Fallback Speed] *L F F*.

Setting	Description
0.0...599.0 Hz	Setting range Factory setting: 0.0 Hz

[Output phase loss] - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Error/Warning handling] → [Output phase loss]

[OutPhaseLoss Assign]

Output phase loss assignment.

DANGER

HAZARD OF ELECTRIC SHOCK, EXPLOSION OR ARC FLASH

If output phase monitoring is disabled, phase loss and, by implication, accidental disconnection of cables, are not detected.

- Verify that the setting of this parameter does not result in unsafe conditions.

Failure to follow these instructions will result in death or serious injury.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Function Inactive]	 	Function inactive
[OPF Error Triggered]	 	Tripping on [OutPhaseLoss Assign]  with freewheel stop Factory setting
[No Error Triggered]	 	No detected error triggered, but management of the output voltage in order to avoid an overcurrent when the link with the motor is re-established and catch on the fly performed (even if this function has not been configured). The drive switches to [Output cut]  state after [OutPhL Time]  time. Catch on fly is possible as soon as the drive is in stand by output cut [Output cut]  state.

[OutPhaseLoss Delay]

Output (motor) phase loss detection time.

Time delay for taking the [OutPhaseLoss Assign]  detected error into account.

Setting 	Description
0.5...10 s	Setting range Factory setting: 0.5 s

[Input phase loss] , PL - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Error/Warning handling] → [Input phase loss]

[InPhaseLoss Assign] , PL

Loss of input phase error response.

If one supply mains phase is missing and if this leads to performance decrease, an [Input phase loss] PHF error is triggered.

If 2 or 3 supply mains phases are missing, the drive operate until an [Supply Mains UnderV] UF error is triggered.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Ignore]	OFF	The input phase loss monitoring function is disabled to be used when the drive is supplied via a single-phase supply or by the DC bus
[Freewheel]	YES	The drive stops in freewheel in case of a supply mains phase loss has been detected

[4-20mA loss] $L F L$ - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Error/Warning handling] → [4-20mA loss]

[AI1 4-20mA Loss] $L F L _ I$

Response to 4-20mA loss on AI1.

Drive behavior on AI1 4-20 event.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Ignore]	$n \square$	Detected error ignored. This is the only possible configuration if [AI1 min. value] $L r L _ I$ is not greater than 3 mA Factory setting
[Freewheel]	$y E S$	Freewheel stop
[Per STT]	$S E E$	Stop according to configuration of [Type of stop] $S E E$, without tripping. In this case, the error relay does not open and the drive is ready to restart as soon as the detected error disappears, according to the restart conditions of the active command channel (for example, according to [2/3-wire control] $E E E$ and [2-wire type] $E E E$ if control is via the terminals). Configuring a warning for this detected error is recommended (assigned to a digital output, for example) in order to indicate the cause of the stop
[fallback spd]	$L F F$	Change to fallback speed, maintained as long as the detected error persists and the run command has not been removed ⁽¹⁾
[Spd maint.]	$r L S$	The drive maintains the speed being applied when the detected error occurred, as long as the detected error is active and the run command has not been removed ⁽¹⁾
[Ramp stop]	$r \Pi P$	Stop on ramp
[Fast stop]	$F S E$	Fast stop
[DC injection]	$d E _$	DC injection stop. This type of stop cannot be used with some other functions

(1) Because, in this case, the detected error does not trigger a stop, it is recommended to assign a relay or digital output to its indication.

[AI3 4-20mA loss] $L F L _ E$

Response to 4-20mA loss on AI3.

Drive behavior on AI3 4-20 event.

Identical to [AI1 4-20mA Loss] $L F L _ I$

[AI4 4-20mA loss] $L F L _ 4\star$

Response to 4-20mA loss on AI4.

Drive behavior on AI4 4-20 event.

Identical to [AI1 4-20mA Loss] $L F L _ I$

This parameter can be accessed if VW3A3203 I/O extension module has been inserted.

[AI5 4-20mA loss] L F L 5★

Response to 4-20mA loss on AI5.

Drive behavior on AI5 4-20 event.

Identical to **[AI1 4-20mA Loss] L F L I**

This parameter can be accessed if VW3A3203 I/O extension module has been inserted.

[Fallback Speed] L F F ★

Fall back speed.

Setting	Description
0.0...599.0 Hz	Setting range Factory setting: 0.0 Hz

[Fallback speed] L F F - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Error/Warning handling] → [Fallback speed]

[Fallback Speed] L F F

Fall back speed.

Setting	Description
0.0...599.0 Hz	Setting range Factory setting: 0.0 Hz

[Fieldbus monitoring] L L L - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Error/Warning handling] → [Fieldbus monitoring]

[Modbus Error Resp] S L L

Response to Modbus interruption.

 WARNING	
LOSS OF CONTROL	
<p>If this parameter is set to n o, Modbus communication monitoring is disabled.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Only use this setting after a thorough risk assessment in compliance with all regulations and standards that apply to the device and to the application. Only use this setting for tests during commissioning. Verify that communication monitoring has been re-enabled before completing the commissioning procedure and performing the final commissioning test. <p>Failure to follow these instructions can result in death, serious injury, or equipment damage.</p>	

Behavior of the drive in the event of a communication interruption with integrated Modbus.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Ignore]	n o	Detected error ignored
[Freewheel]	Y E S	Freewheel stop Factory setting
[Per STT]	S E E	Stop according to configuration of [Type of stop] S E E , without tripping. In this case, the error relay does not open and the drive is ready to restart as soon as the detected error disappears, according to the restart conditions of the active command channel (for example, according to [2/3-wire control] E C C and [2-wire type] E C E if control is via the terminals) ⁽¹⁾
[fallback spd]	L F F	Change to fallback speed, maintained as long as the detected error persists and the run command has not been removed ⁽¹⁾
[Spd maint.]	r L S	The drive maintains the speed being applied when the detected error occurred, as long as the detected error is active and the run command has not been removed ⁽¹⁾
[Ramp stop]	r P P	Stop on ramp
[Fast stop]	F S E	Fast stop
[DC injection]	d C 	DC injection stop. This type of stop cannot be used with some other functions
(1) Because, in this case, the detected error does not trigger a stop, it is recommended to assign a relay or digital output to its indication.		

[Fallback Speed] L F F

Fall back speed.

Setting	Description
0.0...599.0 Hz	Setting range Factory setting: 0.0 Hz

[Embedded Modbus TCP] E M E L - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Error/Warning handling] → [Embedded Modbus TCP]

[Eth Error Response] E E H L

Ethernet error response.

 WARNING	
LOSS OF CONTROL	
<p>If this parameter is set to n o, Ethernet communication monitoring is disabled.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Only use this setting after a thorough risk assessment in compliance with all regulations and standards that apply to the device and to the application. Only use this setting for tests during commissioning. Verify that communication monitoring has been re-enabled before completing the commissioning procedure and performing the final commissioning test. <p>Failure to follow these instructions can result in death, serious injury, or equipment damage.</p>	

The error response to a communication interruption is effective if the communication channel is involved in the active command channel.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Ignore]	n o	Detected error ignored
[Freewheel Stop]	Y E S	Freewheel stop Factory setting
[Per STT]	S E E	Stop according to [Type of stop] S E E parameter but without an error triggered after stop
[Fallback Speed]	L F F	Change to fallback speed, maintained as long as the detected error persists and the run command has not been removed ⁽¹⁾
[Spd maintained]	r L S	Speed maintained as long as the detected error persists and the run command has not been removed ⁽¹⁾
[Ramp stop]	r P P	Stop on ramp
[Fast stop]	F S E	Fast stop
[DC injection]	d C ,	DC injection
<p>1 Because, in this case, the detected error does not trigger a stop, it is recommended to assign a relay or logic output to its indication.</p>		

[Fallback Speed] L F F ★

Fall back speed.

Setting	Description
0.0...599.0 Hz	Setting range Factory setting: 0.0 Hz

[Communication module] - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Error/Warning handling] → [Communication module]

[Fieldbus Interrupt Resp]

 WARNING	
LOSS OF CONTROL	
If this parameter is set to n o , fieldbus communication monitoring is disabled.	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Only use this setting after a thorough risk assessment in compliance with all regulations and standards that apply to the device and to the application. • Only use this setting for tests during commissioning. • Verify that communication monitoring has been re-enabled before completing the commissioning procedure and performing the final commissioning test. 	
Failure to follow these instructions can result in death, serious injury, or equipment damage.	

Response to fieldbus module communication interruption.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Ignore]	n o	Detected error ignored
[Freewheel]	y E S	Freewheel stop Factory setting
[Per STT]	s t t	Stop according to configuration of [Type of stop] s t t , without tripping. In this case, the error relay does not open and the drive is ready to restart as soon as the detected error disappears, according to the restart conditions of the active command channel (for example, according to [2/3-wire control] t c c and [2-wire type] t c t if control is via the terminals) ⁽¹⁾
[fallback spd]	L F F	Change to fallback speed, maintained as long as the detected error persists and the run command has not been removed ⁽¹⁾
[Spd maint.]	r L S	The drive maintains the speed being applied when the detected error occurred, as long as the detected error is active and the run command has not been removed ⁽¹⁾
[Ramp stop]	r n P	Stop on ramp
[Fast stop]	F S t	Fast stop
[DC injection]	d C ,	DC injection stop. This type of stop cannot be used with some other functions
(1) Because, in this case, the detected error does not trigger a stop, it is recommended to assign a relay or digital output to its indication.		

[CANopen Error Resp] $\text{L} \square \text{L}$
 **WARNING**
LOSS OF CONTROL

If this parameter is set to $\text{n} \square$, CANopen communication monitoring is disabled.

- Only use this setting after a thorough risk assessment in compliance with all regulations and standards that apply to the device and to the application.
- Only use this setting for tests during commissioning.
- Verify that communication monitoring has been re-enabled before completing the commissioning procedure and performing the final commissioning test.

Failure to follow these instructions can result in death, serious injury, or equipment damage.

Response to CANopen error.

Behavior of the drive in the event of a communication interruption with CANopen®.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Ignore]	$\text{n} \square$	Detected error ignored
[Freewheel Stop]	Y E S	Freewheel stop Factory setting
[Per STT]	S E E	Stop according to [Type of stop] S E E parameter but without an error triggered after stop
[Fallback Speed]	L F F	Change to fallback speed, maintained as long as the detected error persists and the run command has not been removed ⁽¹⁾
[Spd maintained]	r L S	Speed maintained as long as the detected error persists and the run command has not been removed ⁽¹⁾
[Ramp stop]	r P P	Stop on ramp
[Fast stop]	F S E	Fast stop
[DC injection]	d C ,	DC injection

1 Because, in this case, the detected error does not trigger a stop, it is recommended to assign a relay or logic output to its indication.

[Eth Error Response] **E E H L**

⚠ WARNING	
LOSS OF CONTROL	
If this parameter is set to n o , Ethernet communication monitoring is disabled.	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Only use this setting after a thorough risk assessment in compliance with all regulations and standards that apply to the device and to the application. Only use this setting for tests during commissioning. Verify that communication monitoring has been re-enabled before completing the commissioning procedure and performing the final commissioning test. 	
Failure to follow these instructions can result in death, serious injury, or equipment damage.	

Response to Ethernet error.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Ignore]	n o	Detected error ignored
[Freewheel Stop]	y E S	Freewheel stop Factory setting
[Per STT]	s t t	Stop according to [Type of stop] s t e parameter but without an error triggered after stop
[Fallback Speed]	L F F	Change to fallback speed, maintained as long as the detected error persists and the run command has not been removed ⁽¹⁾
[Spd maintained]	r L S	Speed maintained as long as the detected error persists and the run command has not been removed ⁽¹⁾
[Ramp stop]	r P P	Stop on ramp
[Fast stop]	F S t	Fast stop
[DC injection]	d C i	DC injection
1 Because, in this case, the detected error does not trigger a stop, it is recommended to assign a relay or logic output to its indication.		

[Fallback Speed] *L F F* ★

Fall back speed.

Setting	Description
0.0...599.0 Hz	Setting range Factory setting: 0.0 Hz

[Undervoltage handling] ↴ 5 b - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Error/Warning handling] → [Undervoltage handling]

[Undervoltage Resp] ↴ 5 b

Response to undervoltage.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Error Triggered]	0	The drive trips and the external detected error signal are triggered (the detected error relay assigned to [Operating State Fault] F L E will be opened) Factory setting
[Error Triggered w/o Relay]	1	The drive trips but the external detected error signal is not triggered (the detected error relay assigned to [Operating State Fault] F L E remains closed)
[Warning Triggered]	2	The warning and detected error relay remain closed. The warning can be assigned to a digital output or a relay

[Mains Voltage] ↴ E 5

Rated voltage of the mains supply in Vac.

Settings	Code / Value	Description
[380 Vac]	3 8 0	380 Vac
[400 Vac]	4 0 0	400 Vac
[415 Vac]	4 1 5	415 Vac
[440 Vac]	4 4 0	440 Vac
[460 Vac]	4 6 0	460 Vac
[480 Vac]	4 8 0	480 Vac

[Undervoltage Level] ↴ 5 L

Undervoltage level.

The factory setting is determined by the drive voltage rating.

Setting	Description
100...345 V	Setting range, according to drive rating Factory setting: According to drive rating

[UnderVolt Timeout] ↴ 5 E

Undervoltage timeout.

Setting	Description
0.2...999.9 s	Setting range Factory setting: 0.2 s

[CtrlStopPLoss] 5 E P

Controlled stop on power loss.

Behavior in the event of the undervoltage prevention level being reached.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[No]	n o	No action Factory setting
[DC Maintain]	P P S	This stop mode uses the inertia of the application to maintain the control block powered, and thus to keep operational I/O state and fieldbus link as long as possible.
[Ramp stop]	r P P	Stop following an adjustable deceleration ramp [Max stop time] 5 E P in order to help to prevent from uncontrolled stop of the application.
[Freewheel Stop]	L n F	Lock (freewheel stop) without triggering an error

[UnderV. Restart Tm] E S P

Undervoltage restart time.

This parameter can be accessed if [CtrlStopPLoss] 5 E P is set to [Ramp stop] r P P.

The time delay before authorizing the restart after a complete stop for [CtrlStopPLoss] 5 E P is set to [Ramp stop] r P P if the voltage has returned to normal.

Setting ()	Description
1.0...999.9 s	Setting range Factory setting: 1.0 s

[Prevention Level] u PL

Undervoltage prevention level.

This parameter can be accessed if [CtrlStopPLoss] 5 E P is set to [No] n o .

The adjustment range and factory setting are determined by the drive voltage rating and the [Mains Voltage] u r E S value.

Setting	Description
141...414 V	Setting range Factory setting: According to drive rating

[Max Stop Time] 5 E P

Maximum stop time.

This parameter can be accessed if [CtrlStopPLoss] 5 E P is set to [Ramp stop] r P P.

This parameter defines the deceleration ramp time in case of mains loss. During this controlled stop, the drive is powered thanks to the inertia of the application, the motor is in generator mode. It is recommended to verify that the deceleration set is compatible with the application inertia.

Setting ()	Description
0.01...60.00 s	Setting range Factory setting: 1.00 s

[DC Bus Maintain Time] E b S

DC bus maintain time.

This parameter can be accessed if [CtrlStopPLoss] 5 E P is set to [DC Maintain] P P S .

Setting ()	Description
1...9999 s	Setting range Factory setting: 9999 s

[Ground Fault] *G r F L* - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Error/Warning handling] → [Ground Fault]

About This Menu

This menu can be accessed if [Access Level] is set to [Expert] *E P r*

[Ground Fault Activation] *G r F L*

Ground fault error response.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[ErrorDetect Disable]	<i>1 n H</i>	Disables error detection
[Yes]	<i>Y E S</i>	Use product internal value Factory setting
0.0...100.0%	_	Setting range, in % of the drive nominal current

[Motor thermal monit] - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Error/Warning handling] → [Motor thermal monit]

[Motor Th Current]

Motor thermal monitoring current to be set to the rated current indicated on the nameplate.

Setting	Description
0.2...1.8_!n ⁽¹⁾	Setting range Factory setting: According to drive rating
⁽¹⁾ Corresponding to the rated drive current indicated in the installation manual and on the drive nameplate.	

[Motor Thermal Mode]

Motor thermal monitoring mode.

NOTE: An error is detected when the thermal state reaches 118% of the rated state and reactivation occurs when the state falls back below 100%.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[No]	<i>n o</i>	No thermal monitoring
[Self cooled]	<i>R C L</i>	Self ventilated motor Factory setting
[Force-cool]	<i>F C L</i>	Fan-cooled motor

[Encoder monitoring] ***S d d*** - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Error/Warning handling] → [Encoder monitoring]

[Load slip detection] ***S d d***

Load slipping monitoring function.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[No]	n o	No error triggered. The warning may be assigned to a digital output or a relay Factory setting
[Yes]	y E 5	Error triggered. [Load slip detection] <i>S d d</i> is forced to [Yes] y E 5 if [Motor control type] C E E is set to [FVC] F V C . The [Load slipping] R n F error is triggered by comparing the ramp output and the speed feedback, and is effective for speeds greater than 10% of the [Nominal Motor Freq] F r 5 . In the event of an error is triggered, the drive will stop in freewheel, and if the brake logic control function has been configured, the brake command will be set to 0.

[Encoder Coupling Monit] ***E C C*** ★

Encoder coupling monitoring.

This parameter can be accessed if [Encoder usage] **E n u** is not set to [No] **n o**.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[No]	n o	Error not monitored Factory setting
[Yes]	y E 5	Error monitored. If the brake logic control function has been configured, the factory setting changes to [Yes] y E 5 . [Encoder Coupling Monit] <i>E C C</i> set to [Yes] y E 5 is only possible if: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• [Load slip detection] <i>S d d</i> is set to [Yes] y E 5, and• [Motor control type] C E E is set to [FVC] F V C, and• [Brake assignment] b L C is not set to [No] n o The error monitored is the break in the mechanical coupling of the encoder. In the event of an error, the drive will switch to a freewheel stop, and if the brake logic control function has been configured, the brake command will be released.

[Encoder check time] ***E C E*** ★

Encoder check time.

This parameter can be accessed if:

- [Encoder usage] **E n u** is not set to [No] **n o**, and
- [Encoder Coupling Monit] ***E C C*** is not set to [No] **n o**.

Setting ()	Description
2.0...10.0 s	Setting range Factory setting: 2.0 s

[Braking Resistor monit] *b r P* - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Error/Warning handling] → [Braking Resistor monit]

[Braking Resistor Monit] *b r o*

Braking resistor monitoring.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Ignore]	<i>n o</i>	No braking resistor monitoring (thereby preventing access to the other function parameters). Factory setting
[Warning]	<i>Y E S</i>	The warning may be assigned to a logic output or a relay.
[Error]	<i>F L E</i>	Triggering a [Braking Resistor ovld] <i>b o F</i> with locking of drive (freewheel stop).

[Braking Resistor Power] *b r P* ★

Rated power of the resistor used.

Insert the total power of all installed braking resistors.

This parameter can be accessed if [Braking Resistor Monit] *b r o* is not set to [No] *n o*.

Setting ()	Description
0.1...1000.0 kW	Setting range Factory setting: 0.1 kW

[Braking Resistor Value] *b r V* ★

Rated value of the braking resistor in ohms.

This parameter can be accessed if [Braking Resistor Monit] *b r o* is not set to [No] *n o*.

Setting ()	Description
0.1...200.0 Ohm	Setting range Factory setting: 0.1 Ohm

[Braking Resist T Constant] *b r E* ★

Braking resistor time constant.

This parameter can be accessed if [Braking Resistor Monit] *b r o* is not set to [No] *n o*.

Setting ()	Description
0...200 s	Setting range Factory setting: 45 s

[DBR thermal state] *E H B*

BR thermal state.

Setting	Description
0...118%	Setting range Factory setting: _

[Torque or I lim. detect] E_{torq} - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Error/Warning handling] → [Torque or I limit detect]

[Trq/I limit. stop] S_{stop}

Torque current limitation: behaviour configuration.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Ignore]	$n \circ$	Detected error ignored Factory setting
[Freewheel Stop]	$y E S$	Freewheel stop
[Per STT]	$S t t$	Stop according to [Type of stop] $S t t$ parameter but without an error triggered after stop
[Fallback Speed]	$L F F$	Change to fallback speed, maintained as long as the detected error persists and the run command has not been removed ⁽¹⁾
[Spd maintained]	$r L S$	Speed maintained as long as the detected error persists and the run command has not been removed ⁽¹⁾
[Ramp stop]	$r P P$	Stop on ramp
[Fast stop]	$F S t$	Fast stop
[DC injection]	$d C ,$	DC injection

1 Because, in this case, the detected error does not trigger a stop, it is recommended to assign a relay or logic output to its indication.

[Trq/I limit. time out] S_{time}

Torque current limitation: [Torque Limitation Error] S_{err} error delay and [Torque Limit Reached] S_{warning} warning delay.

Setting $\langle \rangle$	Description
1...9,999 ms	Setting range Factory setting: 1,000 ms

[Drive overload monit] $\square b r$ - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Error/Warning handling] → [Drive overload monit]

Drive Overload Monitoring

When [Drive Overload Monit] $E L \square L$ is set to [I2t Current Reduction] $\square \square E$, the drive will adapt automatically its overload capabilities.

The current limitation will be automatically reduced depending of the machine cycles.

If [Dual Rating] $d r E$ is set to [Normal rating] $n o r \square R L$, the maximum overload capabilities are:

- 110% of drive nominal current for 60 seconds.
- 135% of drive nominal current for 2 seconds.

If [Dual Rating] $d r E$ is set to [High rating] $H \square D H$, the maximum overload capabilities are:

- 150% of drive nominal current for 60 seconds.
- 180% of drive nominal current for 2 seconds.

If the drive currents is greater than the 2 or 60 seconds limits given above, the current limitation of the drive will be reduced automatically and the [Current Reduction] $E L \square W$ warning will be activated.

The current limitation can be reduced up to drive nominal current.

NOTE: The overload state is stored when the product is powered off. At next power on, the drive will react according to the value of [I2t Actual Load Value] $E L \square R$.

[DriveTemp ErrorResp] $\square H L$

Drive overtemperature error response.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Ignore]	$n o$	Detected error ignored
[Freewheel Stop]	$Y E S$	Freewheel stop Factory setting
[Per STT]	$S E E$	Stop according to [Type of stop] $S E E$ parameter but without an error triggered after stop
[Fallback Speed]	$L F F$	Change to fallback speed, maintained as long as the detected error persists and the run command has not been removed ⁽¹⁾
[Spd maintained]	$r L S$	Speed maintained as long as the detected error persists and the run command has not been removed ⁽¹⁾
[Ramp stop]	$r \square P$	Stop on ramp
[Fast stop]	$F S E$	Fast stop
[DC injection]	$d C \square$	DC injection
⁽¹⁾ Because, in this case, the detected error does not trigger a stop, it is recommended to assign a relay or logic output to its indication.		

[Drv Thermal Warning] $E H R$

Drive thermal state warning.

Setting \square	Description
0...118%	Setting range Factory setting: 100%

[Drive Overload Monit] $E_L \square L$

Drive overload monitoring activation.

NOTICE**OVERHEATING AND DAMAGE TO THE DRIVE**

If [Drive Overload Monit] $E_L \square L$ is set to [Disable] $d \square 5$, the monitoring of the drive overheating is disabled.

- Verify that the settings of this parameter does not result in equipment damage.

Failure to follow these instructions can result in equipment damage.

The factory setting is [I²t Current Reduction] $\square 2 E$ for drives with power up to 22 kW and [Disabled] $d \square 5$ for drives with power greater than 22 kW.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Disabled]	$d \square 5$	Disabled
[I ² t Current Reduction]	$\square 2 E$	I ² t Current Reduction
[Error Triggered]	$E_r \square P$	Error triggered
[Reduce to I Nom Drive]	$L \square \Pi$	The motor current is limited to drive nominal current.

[I²t Actual Load Value] $E_L \square A$

I²t actual integral load value.

If the value of this parameter is greater than 100%, the current limitation is automatically reduced.

- This value increases only if the actual current is greater than the drive nominal current.
- This value decreases automatically depending of internal calculations.

Setting (□)	Description
-3276.7...3276.7 %	Setting range Factory setting: -

[I²t Mean Load Value] $E_L \square \Pi$

I²t mean load value

This parameter indicates the average load value of the drive.

Setting (□)	Description
-3276.7...3276.7 %	Setting range Factory setting: -

[Warn grp 1 definition] - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Error/Warning handling] → [Warning groups config] → [Warn grp 1 definition]

About This Menu

The following submenus group the warnings into 1 to 5 groups, each of which can be assigned to a relay or a digital output for remote signaling.

When one or a number of warnings selected in a group occur, this warning group is activated.

List of Warnings

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Fallback Frequency]	F r F	Fallback frequency
[Speed Maintained]	r L S	Speed maintained
[Type of stop]	S t t	Type of stop
[Ref Frequency Warning]	S r R	Reference frequency warning
[PID Error Warning]	P E E	PID error warning
[PID Feedback Warning]	P F R	PID feedback warning
[Limit Switch Reached]	L S R	Limit switch reached
[Slack Rope Warning]	r S d R	Slack rope warning
[Dynamic Load Warning]	d L d R	Dynamic load warning
[AI3 Th Warning]	t P 3 R	AI3 thermal sensor warning
[AI4 Th Warning]	t P 4 R	AI4 thermal sensor warning
[AI5 Th Warning]	t P 5 R	AI5 thermal sensor warning
[AI1 4-20 Loss Warning]	R P 1	AI1 4-20 loss warning
[AI3 4-20 Loss Warning]	R P 3	AI3 4-20 loss warning
[AI4 4-20 Loss Warning]	R P 4	AI4 4-20 loss warning
[AI5 4-20 Loss Warning]	R P 5	AI5 4-20 loss warning
[Drive Thermal Warning]	t H R	Drive thermal state warning
[IGBT Thermal Warning]	t J R	IGBT thermal warning
[Fan Counter Warning]	F C t R	Fan counter warning
[Fan Feedback Warning]	F F d R	Fan feedback warning
[BR Thermal Warning]	b o R	Braking resistor thermal warning
[Ext. Error Warning]	E F R	External error warning
[Undervoltage Warning]	u S R	Undervoltage warning
[Preventive UnderV Active]	u P R	Preventive undervoltage active
[Mot Freq High Thd]	F t R	Motor frequency high threshold reached
[Mot Freq Low Thd]	F t R L	Motor frequency low threshold reached
[Mot Freq High Thd 2]	F q L R	Motor frequency high threshold 2 reached
[Mot Freq Low Thd 2]	F 2 R L	Motor frequency low threshold 2 reached
[High speed reached]	F L R	High speed reached
[Ref Freq High Thd reached]	r t R H	Reference frequency high threshold reached
[Ref Freq Low Thd reached]	r t R L	Reference frequency low threshold reached
[2nd Frequency Thd Reached]	F 2 R	Second frequency threshold reached
[Current Thd Reached]	C t R	Current threshold reached
[Low Current Reached]	C t R L	Low Current Reached
[High Torque Warning]	t t H R	High torque warning
[Low Torque Warning]	t t L R	Low torque warning
[Process Undld Warning]	u L R	Process underload warning
[Process Overload Warning]	o L R	Process overload warning
[Torque Limit Reached]	S S R	Torque limit reached

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Torque Control Warning]	<i>r E R</i>	Torque control warning
[Drv Therm Thd reached]	<i>E R d</i>	Drive thermal threshold reached
[Motor Therm Thd Reached]	<i>E S R</i>	Motor thermal threshold reached
[Mot2 Therm Thd Reached]	<i>E S 2</i>	Motor 2 thermal threshold reached
[Mot3 Therm Thd Reached]	<i>E S 3</i>	Motor 3 thermal threshold reached
[Mot4 Therm Thd Reached]	<i>E S 4</i>	Motor 4 thermal threshold reached
[Power High Threshold]	<i>P E H R</i>	Power high threshold reached
[Power Low Threshold]	<i>P E H L</i>	Power low threshold reached
[Cust Warning 1]	<i>C R S 1</i>	Customer Warning 1
[Cust Warning 2]	<i>C R S 2</i>	Customer Warning 2
[Cust Warning 3]	<i>C R S 3</i>	Customer Warning 3
[Cust Warning 4]	<i>C R S 4</i>	Customer Warning 4
[Cust Warning 5]	<i>C R S 5</i>	Customer Warning 5
[Slipping warn]	<i>R n R</i>	Slipping warning
[Load Mvt Warn]	<i>b S R</i>	Load movement warning
[Brake Cont Warn]	<i>b C R</i>	Brake contact warning
[AI1 Th Warning]	<i>E P I R</i>	AI1 thermal sensor warning
[M/S Device Warn]	<i>P S 9 R</i>	Master Slave device warning
[Backlash Warn]	<i>b S 9 R</i>	Backlash warning
[Encoder Thermal Warn]	<i>E P E R</i>	Encoder module thermal warning

[Warn grp 2 definition] *R 2 C* - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Error/Warning handling] → [Warning groups config] → [Warn grp 2 definition]

About This Menu

Identical to [Warn grp 1 definition] *R 1 C* (*see page 517*)

[Warn grp 3 definition] *R 3 C* - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Error/Warning handling] → [Warning groups config] → [Warn grp 3 definition]

About This Menu

Identical to [Warn grp 1 definition] *R 1 C* (*see page 517*)

[Warn grp 4 definition] *R 4 C* - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Error/Warning handling] → [Warning groups config] → [Warn grp 4 definition]

About This Menu

Identical to [Warn grp 1 definition] *R 1 C* (*see page 517*)

[Warn grp 5 definition] *R 5 C* - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Error/Warning handling] → [Warning groups config] → [Warn grp 5 definition]

About This Menu

Identical to [Warn grp 1 definition] *R 1 C* (*see page 517*)

Section 8.44

[Maintenance]

What Is in This Section?

This section contains the following topics:

Topic	Page
[Diagnostics] <i>D R u</i> - Menu	521
[Customer event 1] <i>C E 1</i> - Menu	522
[Customer event 2] <i>C E 2</i> - Menu	523
[Customer event 3] <i>C E 3</i> - Menu	523
[Customer event 4] <i>C E 4</i> - Menu	524
[Customer event 5] <i>C E 5</i> - Menu	524
[Customer events] <i>C u E V</i> - Menu	525
[Fan management] <i>F R M R</i> - Menu	526
[Maintenance] <i>C S P R</i> - Menu	527

[Diagnostics] - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Maintenance] → [Diagnostics]

About This Menu

This menu allows you to make simple test sequences for diagnostics.

[FAN Diagnostics]

Diagnostics of internal fan(s).

This starts a test sequence.

[LED Diagnostics]

Diagnostics of product LED(s).

This starts a test sequence.

[IGBT Diag w motor]

Diagnostics of internal fan(s).

This starts a test sequence with the motor (open circuit/short-circuit).

[IGBT Diag w/o motor]

Diagnostics of product IGBT(s).

This starts a test sequence without the motor (short-circuit).

[Customer event 1] - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Maintenance] → [Customer events] → [Customer event 1]

About This Menu

This menu allows you to define customized customer events based on the time.

[Config Warning 1]

Configuration of customer warning 1.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Not Configured]	n o	Not configured Factory setting
[Counter]	C P E	Counter
[Date And Time]	d t	Date and time

[Counter Limit 1]

Configuration counter limit 1.

Setting	Description
0...4294967295 s	Setting range Factory setting: 0 s

[Counter Source 1]

Configuration counter source 1.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Mains/Control ON]	0	Mains or control supply on
[Mains Supply ON]	1	Mains supply on
[Drv In Run State]	2	Drive in running state Factory setting

[Current Counter 1]

Current counter 1.

Setting	Description
0...4294967295 s	Setting range Factory setting: 0 s

[Date Time Warn 1]

Date time warning 1.

This parameter can be accessed with the Display Terminal only.

Setting	Description
hh:mm DD/MM/YYYY	Setting range Factory setting: 00:00 01/01/2000

[Customer event 2] - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Maintenance] → [Customer events] → [Customer event 2]

About This Menu

Identical to [Customer event 1]  - menu (*see page 522*).

[Config Warning 2] 2

Configuration of customer warning 2.

[Counter Limit 2] 2

Configuration counter limit 2.

[Counter Source 2] 2

Configuration counter source 2.

[Current Counter 2] 2

Current counter 2.

[Date Time Warn 2] 2

Date time warning 2.

This parameter can be accessed with the Display Terminal only.

[Customer event 3] - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Maintenance] → [Customer events] → [Customer event 3]

About This Menu

Identical to [Customer event 1]  - menu (*see page 522*).

[Config Warning 3] 3

Configuration of customer warning 3.

[Counter Limit 3] 3

Configuration counter limit 3.

[Counter Source 3] 3

Configuration counter source 3.

[Current Counter 3] 3

Current counter 3.

[Date Time Warn 3] 3

Date time warning 3.

This parameter can be accessed with the Display TerminalGraphic display terminal only.

[Customer event 4] **C E 4** - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Maintenance] → [Customer events] → [Customer event 4]

About This Menu

Identical to [Customer event 1] **C E 1** - menu (*see page 522*).

[Config Warning 4] **C C R 4**

Configuration of customer warning 4.

[Counter Limit 4] **C C L 4**

Configuration counter limit 4.

[Counter Source 4] **C C S 4**

Configuration counter source 4.

[Current Counter 4] **C C 4**

Current counter 4.

[Date Time Warn 4] **C d E 4**

Date time warning 4.

This parameter can be accessed with the Display TerminalGraphic display terminal only.

[Customer event 5] **C E 5** - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Maintenance] → [Customer events] → [Customer event 5]

About This Menu

Identical to [Customer event 1] **C E 1** - menu (*see page 522*).

[Config Warning 5] **C C R 5**

Configuration of customer warning 5.

[Counter Limit 5] **C C L 5**

Configuration counter limit 5.

[Counter Source 5] **C C S 5**

Configuration counter source 5.

[Current Counter 5] **C C 5**

Current counter 5.

[Date Time Warn 5] **C d E 5**

Date time warning 5.

This parameter can be accessed with the Display Terminal only.

[Customer events] *C E V* - Menu**Access**

[Complete settings] → [Maintenance] → [Customer events]

[Warning Clearing] *C R r*

Customer warning clearing.

Setting ()	Code / Value	Description
[No Warning Clearing]	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <i>n o</i>	No warning clearing Factory setting
[Clear Event 1 Warning]	<input type="checkbox"/> <i>r R 1</i>	Clear event 1 warning
[Clear Event 2 Warning]	<input type="checkbox"/> <i>r R 2</i>	Clear event 2 warning
[Clear Event 3 Warning]	<input type="checkbox"/> <i>r R 3</i>	Clear event 3 warning
[Clear Event 4 Warning]	<input type="checkbox"/> <i>r R 4</i>	Clear event 4 warning
[Clear Event 5 Warning]	<input type="checkbox"/> <i>r R 5</i>	Clear event 5 warning

[Fan management] $F\#N\#$ - Menu

Access

[Complete settings] → [Maintenance] → [Fan management]

About This Menu

If [Fan Mode] $F\#N\#$ is set to [Never] $S\#P\#$, the fan of the drive is disabled.

Service life of Electronic component is reduced.

NOTICE

DAMAGE TO THE DRIVE

The ambient temperature must be limited to 40 °C (104°F).

Failure to follow these instructions can result in equipment damage.

Fan speed and [Fan Operation Time] $F\#P\#L\#$ are monitored values.

An abnormal low speed or the fan trigger a warning [Fan Feedback Warning] $F\#F\#d\#R$. As soon as [Fan Operation Time] $F\#P\#L\#$ reach the predefined value of 45,000 hours, a warning [Fan Counter Warning] $F\#C\#E\#R$ is triggered.

[Fan Operation Time] $F\#P\#L\#$ counter can be set to 0 by using the [Counter Reset] $r\#P\#r\#$ parameter.

[Fan Mode] $F\#N\#$

Fan activation mode.

Setting (S)	Code / Value	Description
[Standard]	$S\#d\#$	The fan is activated during the all run time of the motor. According to the drive rating, this could be the only available setting Factory setting
[Always]	$r\#u\#n\#$	The fan is always activated
[Never]	$S\#P\#$	The fan is stopped
[Economy]	$E\#c\#o\#$	The fan is activated only if necessary, according to the internal thermal state of the drive

[Maintenance] *C S P R* - Menu**Access**

[Complete settings] → [Maintenance]

[Time Counter Reset] *r P r*

Time counter reset.

NOTE: The list of possible values depends on the product size.

Setting ()	Code / Value	Description
[No]	<i>n o</i>	No Factory setting
[Run Time Reset]	<i>r t H</i>	Run time reset
[Power ON Time Reset]	<i>P t H</i>	Power ON time reset
[Reset Fan Counter]	<i>F t H</i>	Reset fan counter
[Clear NSM]	<i>n S n</i>	Clear number of motor starts

Chapter 9

[Communication] -

Introduction



[Communication]  - menu presents the fieldbus submenus.

What Is in This Chapter?

This chapter contains the following topics:

Topic	Page
[Modbus Fieldbus]  - Menu	530
[Com. scanner input]  - Menu	532
[Com. scanner output]  - Menu	533
[Modbus HMI]  - Menu	534
[Embd Eth Config]  - Menu	535
[Fast Device Replacement]  - Menu	536
[CANopen]  - Menu	538
[DeviceNet]  - Menu	538
[Profibus]  - Menu	538
[Profinet]  - Menu	538
[EtherCAT Module]  - Menu	539

[Modbus Fieldbus] - Menu

Access

[Communication] → [Comm parameters] → [Modbus SL] → [Modbus Fieldbus]

About This Menu

This menu is related to the Modbus serial communication port on the bottom of the control block.

Refer to the Modbus serial manual.

[Modbus Address]

Drive Modbus address.

Setting	Description
[OFF]  ...247	Setting range Factory setting: [OFF] 

[Modbus add Com.C.]

Modbus address of COM option board

Setting	Description
[OFF]  ...247	Setting range Factory setting: [OFF] 

[Bd.RateModbus]

Baud rate Modbus.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[4800 bps]	 4 K B	4,800 Bauds
[9600 bps]	 9 K B	9,600 Bauds
[19200 bps]	 19 K 2	19,200 Bauds Factory setting
[38.4 Kbps]	 38.4 K	38,400 Bauds

[Term Word Order]

Terminal Modbus: word order.

This parameter can be accessed if [Access Level]  is set to [Expert] .

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[OFF]	 F F	Low word first
[ON]	 n n	High word first Factory setting

[Modbus Format]

Modbus communication format.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[8-O-1]	 B o I	8 bits odd parity 1 stop bit
[8-E-1]	 B E I	8 bits even parity 1 stop bit Factory setting
[8-N-1]	 B n I	8 bits no parity 1 stop bit
[8-N-2]	 B n 2	8 bits no parity 2 stop bits

[Modbus Timeout] *t t o*

Modbus timeout.

Setting	Description
0.1 ...30.0 s	Setting range Factory setting: 10. s

[Modbus Com Stat] *L o P l*

Modbus communication status.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[r0t0]	<i>r 0 t 0</i>	Modbus no reception, no transmission
[r0t1]	<i>r 0 t 1</i>	Modbus no reception, transmission
[r1t0]	<i>r 1 t 0</i>	Modbus reception, no transmission
[r1t1]	<i>r 1 t 1</i>	Modbus reception and transmission

[Com. scanner input] → 5 - Menu

Access

[Communication] → [Comm parameters] → [Modbus SL] → [Modbus Fieldbus] → [Com. scanner input]

[Scan. IN1 address] nPA1

Address of the first input word.

Setting	Description
0...65535	Setting range Factory setting: 3201 (E1R)

[Scan. IN2 address] nPA2

Address of the second input word.

Setting	Description
0...65535	Setting range Factory setting: 8604 (rFr d)

[Scan. IN3 address] nPA3

Address of the third input word.

Setting	Description
0...65535	Setting range Factory setting: 0

[Scan. IN4 address] nPA4

Address of the fourth input word.

Identical to [Scan. IN3 address] nPA3.

[Scan. IN5 address] nPA5

Address of the fifth input word.

Identical to [Scan. IN3 address] nPA3.

[Scan. IN6 address] nPA6

Address of the sixth input word.

Identical to [Scan. IN3 address] nPA3.

[Scan. IN7 address] nPA7

Address of the seventh input word.

Identical to [Scan. IN3 address] nPA3.

[Scan. IN8 address] nPA8

Address of the eighth input word.

Identical to [Scan. IN3 address] nPA3.

[Com. scanner output] ▶ C 5 - Menu

Access

[Communication] → [Comm parameters] → [Modbus SL] → [Modbus Fieldbus] → [Com. scanner output]

[Scan.Out1 address] ▶ C R 1

Address of the first output word.

Setting	Description
0...65535	Setting range Factory setting: 8501(C R d)

[Scan.Out2 address] ▶ C R 2

Address of the second output word.

Setting	Description
0...65535	Setting range Factory setting: 8602(C F r d)

[Scan.Out3 address] ▶ C R 3

Address of the third output word.

Setting	Description
0...65535	Setting range Factory setting: 0

[Scan.Out4 address] ▶ C R 4

Address of the fourth output word.

Identical to [Scan.Out3 address] ▶ C R 3.

[Scan.Out5 address] ▶ C R 5

Address of the fifth output word.

Identical to [Scan.Out3 address] ▶ C R 3.

[Scan.Out6 address] ▶ C R 6

Address of the sixth output word.

Identical to [Scan.Out3 address] ▶ C R 3.

[Scan.Out7 address] ▶ C R 7

Address of the seventh output word.

Identical to [Scan.Out3 address] ▶ C R 3.

[Scan.Out8 address] ▶ C R 8

Address of the eighth output word.

Identical to [Scan.Out3 address] ▶ C R 3.

[Modbus HMI] - Menu

Access

[Communication] → [Comm parameters] → [Modbus SL] → [Modbus HMI]

About This Menu

This menu is related to the Modbus serial communication port on the front of the control block. It is used by default for the Display Terminal. The Display Terminal is compliant with baud rate equal to or lower than 19,200 bps.

[HMI Baud Rate]

Baud rate Modbus.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[4800 bps]	4 K B	4,800 Bauds
[9600 bps]	9 K B	9,600 Bauds
[19200 bps]	19 K 2	19,200 Bauds Factory setting
[38.4 Kbps]	3 B K 4	38,400 Bauds

[Term 2 word order]

Terminal Modbus 2: Word order.

This parameter can be accessed if [Access Level]  is set to [Expert] .

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[LOW]	0 F F	Low word first
[HIGH]	0 n	High word first Factory setting

[HMI Format]

HMI format.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[8-O-1]	8 o 1	8.o.1.
[8-E-1]	8 E 1	8.E.1. Factory setting
[8-N-1]	8 n 1	8.n.1.
[8-N-2]	8 n 2	8.n.2.

[Mdb com start]

Modbus communication status.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[r0t0]	r 0 t 0	Modbus no reception, no transmission
[r0t1]	r 0 t 1	Modbus no reception, transmission
[r1t0]	r 1 t 0	Modbus reception, no transmission
[r1t1]	r 1 t 1	Modbus reception and transmission

[Embd Eth Config] E E - Menu

Access

[Communication] → [Comm parameters] → [Embd Eth Config]

About This Menu

Refer to the Ethernet embedded manual.

[Device Name] P R n

The FDR (Fast Device Replacement) service is based on identification of the device by a “Device Name”. In the case of the Altivar drive, this is represented by the [Device Name] P R n parameter. Check that all the network devices have different “Device Names”.

[IP Mode Ether. Embd] , P D D

IP mode Ethernet embedded.

Setting ()	Code / Value	Description
[Fixed]	P R n u	Fixed address
[BOOTP]	b o o t P	BOOTP
[DHCP]	d H C P	DHCP Factory setting

[IP address] , C D

IP Address (, C D 1, , C D 2, , C D 3, , C D 4).

Setting	Description
0...255	Setting range Factory setting: 0.0.0.0

[Mask] , P D

Subnet mask (, P D 1, , P D 2, , P D 3, , P D 4).

Setting	Description
0...255	Setting range Factory setting: 0.0.0.0

[Gateway] , G D

Gateway address (, G D 1, , G D 2, , G D 3, , G D 4).

Setting	Description
0...255	Setting range Factory setting: 0.0.0.0

[Fast Device Replacement] *F d r* - Menu

Access

[Communication] → [Comm parameters] → [Embd Eth Config] → [Fast Device Replacement]

About This Menu

This menu can be accessed if [IP mode Ether. Embd] , *N D D* is set to [DHCP] *d H C P*.

[Enable FDR] *F d V D*

Enable FDR function.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[No]	<i>n o</i>	FDR service disabled Factory setting
[Yes]	<i>y E S</i>	FDR service enabled

[FDR Action] *F d R D*

FDR action.

Setting (S)	Code / Value	Description
[Not active]	<i>i d L E</i>	No FDR action Factory setting
[Save]	<i>S A V E</i>	FDR save command
[Rest]	<i>r E S t</i>	FDR restore command

[FDR Operating State] *F d S D*

FDR operating state.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Initialization]	<i>i n i t</i>	Initialization
[Not active]	<i>i d L E</i>	Function not active Factory setting
[Operational]	<i>o P E</i>	Operational
[Ready]	<i>r E A d Y</i>	Ready
[IP Configuration]	<i>i P C</i>	IP configuration
[Not Configured]	<i>u n C F</i>	Function not configured
[Reading Configuration]	<i>G E t</i>	Download the current configuration
[Writing Configuration]	<i>S E t</i>	Save the current configuration
[Applying Configuration]	<i>A P P</i>	Applying the configuration to the drive

[FDR Error Status] F d r O

FDR error status.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[No Error]	N O	No error Factory setting
[Server Timeout]	T o u t	Server timeout
[Server No File]	S n F	No file on server
[Server Corrupt File]	C r P t	Corrupted file on server
[Server Empty File]	E P t Y	Empty file on server
[Drive Invalid File]	H i n V	Invalid file on drive
[CRC Error]	C r C	CRC error
[Version Incompatibility]	V r I	Version incompatibility between drive and file
[Drive No File]	H n F	No file on drive
[Server Reading Size]	S i Z E	File size reading error on server
[Drive Opening File]	o P E n	Drive can not open the file
[Drive Reading File]	r E R d	Drive can not read the file
[Incompatibility]	S C n t	File incompatibility
[Drive Invalid Name]	n i n V	Drive name is invalid
[Server Incorrect File Size]	F S i Z	Incorrect file size on server
[Drive Writing File]	H W F	Drive can not write the file
[Server Writing File]	S W F	Server can not write the file

[CANopen] - Menu

Access

[Communication] → [Comm parameters] → [CANopen]

About This Menu

Refer to the CANopen fieldbus module manual.

[DeviceNet] - Menu

Access

[Communication] → [Comm parameters] → [DeviceNet]

About This Menu

Refer to the DeviceNet fieldbus module manual.

[Profibus] - Menu

Access

[Communication] → [Comm parameters] → [Profibus]

About This Menu

Refer to the Profibus DP fieldbus module manual.

[Profinet] - Menu

Access

[Communication] → [Comm parameters] → [Profinet]

About This Menu

Refer to the PROFINET fieldbus module manual.

[EtherCAT Module] E E L - Menu

Access

[Communication] → [EtherCAT Module]

About This Menu

Following parameters can be accessed if EtherCAT module has been inserted.

Refer to the EtherCAT manual.

[EthCat slave status] E L S S ★

EtherCAT slave status

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Init]	<i>i n i t</i>	Init
[PrOP]	<i>P r o P</i>	Pre-operational
[bOOt]	<i>b o o t</i>	Pre-operational
[SFOP]	<i>S F o P</i>	Safe operational
[OP]	<i>o P</i>	Operational

[EthCat 2nd addr] E L S R ★

EtherCAT second address

Setting	Description
0...65,535	Setting range Factory setting: 0

[EthCat addr] E L A R ★

EtherCAT second address actual value

Setting	Description
0...65,535	Setting range Factory setting: 0

Chapter 10

[File management] *F* *N* *E* -

Introduction



[File management] *F* *N* *E* - menu presents the management of drive configuration files.

What Is in This Chapter?

This chapter contains the following topics:

Topic	Page
[Transfer config file] <i>E</i> <i>C</i> <i>F</i> - Menu	542
[Factory settings] <i>F</i> <i>C</i> <i>S</i> - Menu	542
[Parameter group list] <i>F</i> <i>r</i> <i>G</i> - Menu	543
[Factory settings] <i>F</i> <i>C</i> <i>S</i> - Menu	544
[Firmware update diag] <i>F</i> <i>W</i> <i>u</i> <i>d</i> - Menu	545
[Identification] <i>I</i> <i>d</i> - Menu	547
[Package version] <i>P</i> <i>F</i> <i>V</i> - Menu	547
[Firmware update] <i>F</i> <i>W</i> <i>u</i> <i>P</i> - Menu	548

[Transfer config file] *E C F* - Menu**Access**

[File management] → [Transfer config file]

[Copy to the drive] *o P F*

This allows to select a previously saved drive configuration from the Display Terminal memory and transfer it to the drive.

The drive needs to be restarted after a configuration file transfer.

[Copy from the drive] *S R F*

This allows to save the actual drive configuration into the Display Terminal memory.

NOTE: The Graphic Display Terminal can store up to 16 configuration files.

[Factory settings] *F C S* - Menu**Access**

[File management] → [Factory settings]

About This Menu

This parameter allows to select the configuration to restore in case of factory setting operation.

[Config. Source] *F C S*, ★

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Macro-Conf]	'0'	Factory setting parameter set Factory setting
[Config 1]	C F G 1	Customer parameter set 1
[Config 2]	C F G 2	Customer parameter set 2
[Config 3]	C F G 3	Customer parameter set 3

[Parameter group list] *F r Y* - Menu

Access

[File management] → [Factory settings] → [Parameter group list]

About This Menu

Selection of menus to be loaded.

NOTE: In factory configuration and after a return to "factory settings", [Parameter group list] *F r Y* will be empty.

[All] *A L L*

All parameters in all menus.

[Drive Configuration] *d r P*

Load [Complete settings] *C S E* - menu.

[Motor Param] *P o E*

Load [Motor parameters] *P P R* - menu.

[Comm. Menu] *C o P* ★

Load [Communication] *C o P* - menu.

This parameter can be accessed if [Config. Source] *F C S* is set to [Macro-Conf] *on*.

[Display Config.] *d , S* ★

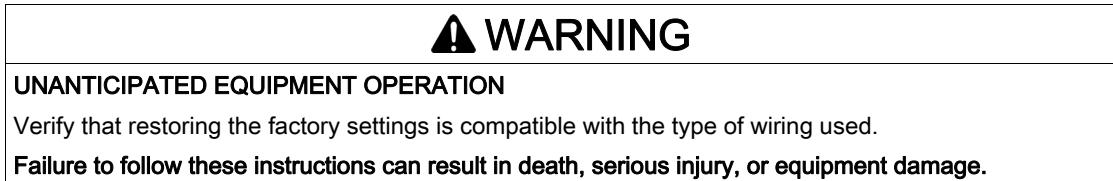
Load [Display screen type] *P S C* - menu.

This parameter can be accessed if [Config. Source] *F C S* is set to [Macro-Conf] *on*.

[Factory settings] *F* *C* *S* - Menu**Access**

[File management] → [Factory settings]

[Go to Factory settings] *G* *F* *S*



It is only possible to revert to the factory settings if at least one group of parameters has previously been selected.

[Save Configuration] *S* *C* *S* ,★

Save configuration.

The active configuration to be saved does not appear for selection. For example, if it is [**Config 0**] *S* *E* *r* *0*, only [**Config 1**] *S* *E* *r* *1*, [**Config 2**] *S* *E* *r* *2* and [**Config 3**] *S* *E* *r* *3* appear. The parameter changes back to [**No**] *n* *o* as soon as the operation is complete.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[No]	<i>n</i> <i>o</i>	No Factory setting
[Config 0]	<i>S</i> <i>E</i> <i>r</i> <i>0</i>	Store customer parameter set 0
[Config 1]	<i>S</i> <i>E</i> <i>r</i> <i>1</i>	Store customer parameter set 1
[Config 2]	<i>S</i> <i>E</i> <i>r</i> <i>2</i>	Store customer parameter set 2
[Config 3]	<i>S</i> <i>E</i> <i>r</i> <i>3</i>	Store customer parameter set 3

[Firmware update diag] FWUd - Menu

Access

[File management] → [Firmware update] → [Firmware update diag]

About This Menu

This menu can be accessed in expert mode and Graphic Display Terminal must be used to complete the firmware update procedure.

[Firmware Update Status] FWST

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Inactive]	CHECK	Firmware update inactive
[PwrUpd in progress]	PWR	Power update in progress
[PwrUpd Pending]	PEND	Power update pending
[Ready]	RDY	Firmware update ready
[Inactive]	NO	Firmware update inactive
[Succeeded]	SUCCE	Firmware update succeeded
[Update Error]	FAIL	Update error
[In Progress]	PROG	Firmware update in progress
[Requested]	REQST	Firmware update requested
[Transfer In Progress]	TRNS	Transfer in progress
[Transfer Done]	TRAN	Transfer done
[Package cleared]	CLER	Package cleared
[Warning]	SUCWR	Firmware update succeeded with warnings
[Drive State Error]	FLSET	Drive state error
[Package Error]	FLPK	Package error
[Saving conf]	SAVE	Firmware update is saving the current configuration
[Post Script]	POST	Firmware update is doing the post FWUPD

[Firmware Update Error] F W E r

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[No Error]	n o	No error
[Lock Error]	L o C K	Lock error
[Package Error]	P d S	Package error
[Package compatibility error]	C o P P	Package compatibility error
[Ask error]	A S K	Ask error
[Reset Drive Error]	r E S E t	Reset drive error
[Conf Saving Warning]	S A V E	Configuration saving warning
[Conf Loading Warning]	L o A d	Configuration loading warning
[Post Script Warning]	S C P	Post script warning
[Package Description Error]	d E S	Package description error
[Package not found]	P K G	Package not found
[Power Supply error]	S P w r	Power supply issue
[Boot M3 error]	b t n 3	Boot M3 error
[Boot C28 error]	b t c 2 8	Boot C28 error
[M3 Error]	n 3	M3 error
[C28 error]	C 2 8	C28 error
[CPLD error]	C P L d	CPLD error
[Boot Power Error]	P w r	Boot power error
[Emb. Eth Boot Error]	E n b t	Embedded ethernet boot error
[Emb. Eth Error]	E n , l	Embedded ethernet error
[Emb. Eth Web Error]	E n w b	Embedded ethernet WebServer error
[Module Eth Boot Error]	o P t b t	Module ethernet boot error
[Module Eth Error]	o P t , l	Module ethernet error
[Module Eth Web Error]	o P t w b	Module ethernet WebServer error
[Password enabled]	P S w d	Password enabled
[Flash Error]	n E n	Flash error
[Package error]	, F o	Package information error

[Identification] *o , d* - Menu

Access

[File management] → [Firmware update] → [Identification]

About This Menu

This is a read-only menu that cannot be configured. It enables the following information to be displayed:

- Drive reference, power rating, and voltage
- Drive software version
- Drive serial number
- Type of option modules present, with their software version
- Display Terminal type and version

[Package version] *P F V* - Menu

Access

[File management] → [Firmware update] → [Package version]

About This Menu

This menu can be accessed in expert mode.

[Package Type] *P K E P*

Firmware Update Package Type

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Product]	<i>P r d</i>	Firmware update product package
[Module]	<i>o P E</i>	Firmware update option package
[Spare part]	<i>S P r</i>	Firmware update spare parts package
[Customized]	<i>C u S</i>	Firmware update customized package
[Indus]	<i>i n d</i>	Firmware update industrialization package

[Package Version] *P K V S*

Firmware Update Package Version

Setting ()	Description
0...65,535	Setting range Factory setting: _

[Firmware update] FWU P - Menu**Access**

[File management] → [Firmware update]

About This Menu

This menu can be accessed in expert mode.

[Update Firmware] FWUP

Firmware Update Application.

Setting (S)	Code / Value	Description
[No]	n o	No Factory setting
[Yes]	y E S	Yes

[Abort Firmware Update] FWCL

Firmware Update Clear.

Setting (S)	Code / Value	Description
[No]	n o	No Factory setting
[Yes]	y E S	Yes

Chapter 11

[My preferences] ПУР -

Introduction



[My preferences] ПУР - menu presents the possible settings for the user-defined HMI and parameter access.

What Is in This Chapter?

This chapter contains the following sections:

Section	Topic	Page
11.1	[Language]	550
11.2	[Password]	551
11.3	[Parameter access]	553
11.4	[Customization]	556
11.5	[Date & Time settings]	560
11.6	[Access level]	561
11.7	[Webserver]	562
11.8	[Functions key mgnt]	563
11.9	[LCD settings]	564
11.10	[QR code]	565
11.11	[QR code] - [My link 1]	566
11.12	[QR code] - [My link 2]	567
11.13	[QR code] - [My link 3]	568
11.14	[QR code] - [My link 4]	569
11.15	[Pairing password]	570

Section 11.1

[Language]

[Language] *L* ↵ *L* - Menu

Access

[My preferences] → [Language]

About This Menu

This menu allows to select the Display Terminal language.

Section 11.2

[Password]

[Password] *L o d* - Menu

Access

[My preferences] → [Password]

About This Menu

Enables the configuration to be protected with an access code or a password to be entered in order to access a protected configuration:

- The drive is unlocked when the password is set to **[No password defined]** *n o* or when the correct password has been entered. All menus can be accessed.
- Before protecting the configuration with a password, you must:
 - Define the **[Upload rights]** *u L r* and **[Download rights]** *d L r*.
 - Make a careful note of the password and keep it in a place where you are able to find it.

[Password status] *P S S t*

Password status.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[No password defined]	<i>n o</i>	No password defined Factory setting
[Password is unlocked]	<i>u L</i>	Password is unlocked
[Password is locked]	<i>L o C</i>	Password is locked

[Password] *P W d*

6-digits password. The password must be entered in order to unlock the drive. Once the correct code has been entered, the drive is unlocked until the next time the supply mains is disconnected.

[Upload rights] *u L r*

Upload rights.

Setting 	Code / Value	Description
[Permitted]	<i>u L r D</i>	Commissioning tools or the Display Terminal can save the whole configuration (password, monitoring, configuration) Factory setting
[Not allowed]	<i>u L r I</i>	Commissioning tools or the Display Terminal cannot save the configuration if the drive is not protected by a password or if the correct password has been entered

[Download rights] dLr

Download rights.

Setting()	Code / Value	Description
[Locked drv]	$dLr0$	Lock drive: the configuration can be download to the drive only if the drive is protected by a password, which is the same as the password of the configuration to be downloaded
[Unlock. drv]	$dLr1$	Unlock drive: the configuration can be downloaded to the drive or a configuration can be modified if the drive is unlocked or is not protected by a password Factory setting
[Not allowed]	$dLr2$	The configuration can never be downloaded
[Lock/unlock]	$dLr3$	Combination of [Locked drv] $dLr0$ and [Unlock. drv] $dLr1$

Section 11.3

[Parameter access]

What Is in This Section?

This section contains the following topics:

Topic	Page
[Restricted channels] <i>P C d</i> - Menu	554
[Restricted param] <i>P P R</i> - Menu	554
[Visibility] <i>V , S</i> - Menu	555

[Restricted channels] *P C d* - Menu

Access

[My preferences] → [Parameter access] → [Restricted access] → [Restricted channels]

About This Menu

Following channels can be selected to disable the accessibility to the related parameters.

[HMI] *C o n*

Display Terminal.

[PC Tool] *P w 5*

DTM-based commissioning software.

[Modbus] *T d b*

Embedded Modbus serial.

[CANopen] *C R n*

CANopen fieldbus module.

[Com. Module] *n E t*

Fieldbus option module.

[Restricted param] *P P R* - Menu

Access

[My preferences] → [Parameter access] → [Restricted access] → [Restricted param]

About This Menu

In these screens, all parameters in the [Complete settings] *C S t* - menu can be protected and are displayed for selection, except for the Expert parameters.

Press the **All** key to select all the parameters. Press the **All** key again to deselect all the parameters.

Content of the [Complete settings] *C S t* - menu. No selections can be made in this screen if there are no parameters.

[Visibility] V , S - Menu

Access

[My preferences] → [Parameter access] → [Visibility]

About This Menu

Selection to display all parameters or only the active parameters.

[Parameters] P V , S

Parameters.

Setting()	Code / Value	Description
[Active]	R L E	Only active parameters can be accessed Factory setting
[All]	R L L	All parameters can be accessed

Section 11.4

[Customization]

What Is in This Section?

This section contains the following topics:

Topic	Page
[My menu config.] <i>M Y C</i> - Menu	557
[Display screen type] <i>D S C</i> - Menu	557
[Param. Bar Select] <i>P b S</i> - Menu	558
[Customer parameters] <i>C Y P</i> - Menu	558
[Service message] <i>S E r</i> - Menu	559

[My menu config.] ПУС - Menu

Access

[My preferences] → [Customization] → [My menu config.]

About This Menu

This menu allows to customize the [My Menu] ПУПН - menu (*see page 55*).

[Parameter Selection] ПРС

Content of the [Complete settings] ЛСЕ - menu.

No selection can be made in this screen if there are no parameters.

[Selected List] ПЛС

This menu allows to sort the selected parameters.

[My Menu] ПУПН

Used to define the name of the customized menu.

[Display screen type] ПСТ - Menu

Access

[My preferences] → [Customization] → [Display screen type]

About This Menu

This parameter allows to select the type of display for the default screen.

[Display value type] ПДТ

Type of screen display.

Setting ()	Code / Value	Description
[Digital]	ДЕС	Digital values Factory setting
[Bar graph]	БАР	Bar graph
[List]	ЛСТ	List of values
[Vu Meter]	ВУМЕТ	Vu meter

[Parameter Selection] ПРС

Customized selection.

This view allows to select the parameters to display on the default screen.

[Param. Bar Select] *P B S* - Menu

Access

[My preferences] → [Customization] → [Param. Bar Select]

About This Menu

This view allows to select the parameters to display on the top line of the Display Terminal screen.

[Customer parameters] *C Y P* - Menu

Access

[My preferences] → [Customization] → [Customer parameters]

About This Menu

This menu allows to rename up to 15 parameters.

[Parameter Selection] *S C P*

Parameter selection.

This view allows to select up to 15 parameters.

[Custom Selection] *C P P*

Customized selection.

This view allows to set for each selected parameter:

- The name
- The unit if relevant (a custom unit is available)
- A multiplier (1...1000) if relevant
- A divisor (1...1000) if relevant
- An offset (-99.00...99.00) if relevant

[Service message] 5 E r - Menu

Access

[My preferences] → [Customization] → [Service message]

About This Menu

This menu allows to define a user-defined service message (5 lines, 23 digits per line).

This message can be displayed in [**theDiagnostics**] d , R - , [**Diag. data**] d d t - menu and [**Service message**] 5 E r - submenus.

[LINE 1] 5 n L D 1

Line 1.

[LINE 2] 5 n L D 2

Line 2.

[LINE 3] 5 n L D 3

Line 3.

[LINE 4] 5 n L D 4

Line 4.

[LINE 5] 5 n L D 5

Line 5.

Section 11.5

[Date & Time settings]

[Date/time settings] ↵ ↺ ↻ - Menu

Access

[My preferences] → [Date/time settings]

About This Menu

This view allows to set date and time. This information is used for the time stamping of all logged data.

If a time server is connected over Ethernet and configured in the webserver, date and time data are updated automatically according to the configuration.

Date and time information shall be available (time server available and configured, or Display Terminal plugged) at drive power up to enable the time stamping of the logged data.

Modifying these settings will modify previously logged data value in case of average data based on time.

Section 11.6

[Access level]

[Access level] L A C - Menu

Access

[My preferences] → [Access level]

About This Menu

[Access Level] L A C

Level of access control.

Setting ()	Code / Value	Description
[Basic]	b A S	Access to all menus. Access to the [Simply start] S Y S - , [Dashboard] d S H - , [Diagnostics] d , R - and [My preferences] P Y P - menus only.
[Standard]	S E d	Access to all menus. Factory setting
[Expert]	E P r	Access to all menus and to additional parameters.

Section 11.7

[Webserver]

[Webserver] **W b 5** - Menu

Access

[My preferences] → [Webserver]

About This Menu

This menu allows to manage Web services.

[EnableWebserver] **E W E**

Enable Web services for the embedded Ethernet adapter.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[No]	<i>n o</i>	Webserver disabled
[Yes]	<i>y E S</i>	Webserver enabled Factory setting

[Reset EmbWeb] **r W P E**

Reset the embedded Ethernet webserver to its default configuration.

Setting ()	Code / Value	Description
[No]	<i>n o</i>	No Factory setting
[Yes]	<i>y E S</i>	Yes

[Webserver default password] **W d P**

8-digits password. A unique password is provided and must be entered at the first connection of the webserver in order to have access to the administrator account (username = ADMIN).

NOTE: The Webserver default password is also written on the product nameplate.

Section 11.8

[Functions key mgnt]

[Functions key mgnt] *F K G* - Menu

Access

[My preferences] → [Functions key mgnt]

About This Menu

This menu allows to assign functions to the Display Terminal function keys.

[F1 key assignment] *F n 1*

Function key 1. Following possible assignments cannot be accessed in [I/O profile] configuration.

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[Not assigned]	<i>n o</i>	Not assigned Factory setting
[Jog]	<i>F J o G</i>	Function key jog affectation
[Preset Speed 1]	<i>F P S 1</i>	Function key preset speed 1 assignment
[Preset Speed 2]	<i>F P S 2</i>	Function key preset speed 2 assignment
[PID Ref Frequency 1]	<i>F P r 1</i>	Function key preset PID 1 assignment
[PID Ref Frequency 2]	<i>F P r 2</i>	Function key preset PID 2 assignment
[+Speed]	<i>F u S P</i>	Function key faster assignment
[-Speed]	<i>F d S P</i>	Function key slower assignment

[F2 key assignment] *F n 2*

Function key 2.

Identical to [F1 key assignment] *F n 1*.

[F3 key assignment] *F n 3*

Function key 3.

Identical to [F1 key assignment] *F n 1*.

[F4 key assignment] *F n 4*

Function key 4.

Identical to [F1 key assignment] *F n 1*.

Section 11.9

[LCD settings]

[LCD settings] *L n L* - Menu

Access

[My preferences] → [LCD settings]

About This Menu

This menu allows to set the Display Terminal related parameters.

[Screen Contrast] *L S t*

Screen contrast setting.

Setting	Description
0...100%	Setting range Factory setting: 50%

[Standby] *S b Y*

Stand-by delay.

NOTE: Disabling the automatic standby function of the display terminal backlight will reduce the backlight service time.

Setting	Description
<i>n</i> □ ...10 min	Automatic backlight OFF time Factory setting: 10 min

[Display Terminal locked] *K L L K*

Display Terminal key locked. Press **ESC** and **Home** keys to Lock manually & unlock the Display Terminal keys. The **Stop** key remains active when the Display Terminal is locked.

Setting <i>(</i>)	Description
<i>n</i> □ ...10 min	Setting range Factory setting: 5 min

Section 11.10

[QR code]

[QR code]  - Menu

Access

[My preferences] → [QR code]

About This Menu

This menu gives access to a QR Codes on the Display Terminal.

[QR Code]  

Scan of this QR code brings to a landing page on Internet with the information on:

- Technical product datasheet,
- Link for Schneider Electric App available for services.

Section 11.11

[QR code] - [My link 1]

[My link 1]  - Menu

Access

[My preferences] → [QR code] → [My link 1]

About This Menu

This menu gives access to a QR Code customized with the commissioning software.

[MyLink 1] 

Section 11.12

[QR code] - [My link 2]

[My link 2]  - Menu

Access

[My preferences] → [QR code] → [My link 2]

About This Menu

This menu gives access to a QR Code customized with the commissioning software.

[MyLink 2] 

Section 11.13

[QR code] - [My link 3]

[My link 3] ΠΥΛΞ - Menu

Access

[My preferences] → [QR code] → [My link 3]

About This Menu

This menu gives access to a QR Code customized with the commissioning software.

[MyLink 3] ΨΛΞ

Section 11.14

[QR code] - [My link 4]

[My link 4]  - Menu

Access

[My preferences] → [QR code] → [My link 4]

About This Menu

This menu gives access to a QR Code customized with the commissioning software.

[MyLink 4] 

Section 11.15

[Pairing password]

[Pairing password] *P P*,

Access

[My preferences] → [Pairing password]

About This Menu

This function can only be accessed in Expert mode. This function is used to detect whenever an option module has been replaced or the software has been modified in any way. When a pairing password is entered, the parameters of the option modules currently inserted are stored. On every subsequent power-up, these parameters are verified and, in the event of a discrepancy, the drive locks in [Boards Compatibility] *H C F*. Before the drive can be restarted, it is necessary to revert to the original situation or reenter the pairing password.

The following parameters are verified:

- The type of option modules.
- The software version of the drive and the option modules.
- The serial number for the control block boards.

[Pairing password] *P P*,

Operation as a pair password.

Setting	Description
[OFF] <i>o F F</i> ...9,999	Setting range Factory setting: <i>o F F</i>

The [OFF] *o F F* value signifies that the pairing password function is inactive.

The [ON] *o n* value signifies that the pairing password function is active and that a password is required to start the drive in the event of a [Boards Compatibility] *H C F* detected error.

As soon as the password has been entered, the drive is unlocked and the code changes to [ON] *o n*.

Part III

Maintenance and diagnostics

What Is in This Part?

This part contains the following chapters:

Chapter	Chapter Name	Page
12	Maintenance	573
13	Diagnostics and Troubleshooting	575

Chapter 12

Maintenance

Maintenance

Limitation of Warranty

The warranty does not apply if the product has been opened, except by Schneider Electric services.

Servicing



Environment	Part concerned	Action	Periodicity
Mechanical impact on the product	Housing - control block (led - display)	Verify the drive visual aspect	At least each year
Corrosion	Terminals - connector - screws - EMC plate	Inspect and clean if required	
Dust	Terminals - fans blowholes		
Temperature	Around the product	Verify and correct if required	After 3 to 5 years, depending on the operating conditions
Cooling	Fan	Verify the fan operation	
Vibration	Terminal connections	Replace the fan	
		Verify tightening at recommended torque	At least each year

Spares and Repairs

Serviceable product. Please contact your Schneider Electric representative.

Long Time Storage

If the drive was not connected to mains for an extended period of time, the capacitors must be restored to their full performance before the motor is started.

NOTICE

REDUCED CAPACITOR PERFORMANCE

- Apply mains voltage to the drive for one hour before starting the motor if the drive has not been connected to mains for the following periods of time:
 - 12 months at a maximum storage temperature of +50°C (+122°F)
 - 24 months at a maximum storage temperature of +45°C (+113°F)
 - 36 months at a maximum storage temperature of +40°C (+104°F)
- Verify that no Run command can be applied before the period of one hour has elapsed.
- Verify the date of manufacture if the drive is commissioned for the first time and run the specified procedure if the date of manufacture is more than 12 months in the past.

Failure to follow these instructions can result in equipment damage.

If the specified procedure cannot be performed without a Run command because of internal mains contactor control, perform this procedure with the power stage enabled, but the motor being at standstill so that there is no appreciable mains current in the capacitors.

Fan Replacement

It is possible to order a new fan for the drive maintenance, see the catalog numbers on www.schneider-electric.com.

Chapter 13

Diagnostics and Troubleshooting

Overview

This chapter describes the various types of diagnostics and provides troubleshooting assistance.

DANGER

HAZARD OF ELECTRIC SHOCK, EXPLOSION OR ARC FLASH

Read and understand the instructions in **Safety Information** chapter before performing any procedure in this chapter.

Failure to follow these instructions will result in death or serious injury.

What Is in This Chapter?

This chapter contains the following sections:

Section	Topic	Page
13.1	Warning Codes	576
13.2	Error Codes	578
13.3	FAQ	631

Section 13.1

Warning Codes

Warning Codes

List of Available Warnings

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[AI1 4-20 Loss Warning]	<i>R P I</i>	4-20 loss warning on analog input AI1
[AI3 4-20 Loss Warning]	<i>R P 3</i>	4-20 loss warning on analog input AI3
[AI4 4-20 Loss Warning]	<i>R P 4</i>	4-20 loss warning on analog input AI4
[AI5 4-20 Loss Warning]	<i>R P 5</i>	4-20 loss warning on analog input AI5
[Cust Warning 1]	<i>C R S 1</i>	Customer warning 1
[Cust Warning 2]	<i>C R S 2</i>	Customer warning 2
[Cust Warning 3]	<i>C R S 3</i>	Customer warning 3
[Cust Warning 4]	<i>C R S 4</i>	Customer warning 4
[Cust Warning 5]	<i>C R S 5</i>	Customer warning 5
[Current Thd Reached]	<i>C t R</i>	Motor current high threshold reached
[Low Current Reached]	<i>C t R L</i>	Motor current low threshold reached
[Ext. Error Warning]	<i>E F R</i>	External error warning
[2nd Frequency Thd Reached]	<i>F 2 R</i>	Second frequency threshold reached
[Motor Freq Low Thd 2]	<i>F 2 R L</i>	Motor frequency low threshold 2 reached
[Fan Counter Warning]	<i>F C t R</i>	Fan counter warning
[Fan Feedback Warning]	<i>F F d R</i>	Fan feedback warning
[High Speed Reached]	<i>F L R</i>	High speed reached
[Fallback Frequency]	<i>F r F</i>	Fallback frequency reaction
[Motor Freq High Thd]	<i>F t R</i>	Motor frequency high threshold reached
[Motor Freq Low Thd]	<i>F t R L</i>	Motor frequency low threshold reached
[Life Cycle Warn 1]	<i>L C R 1</i>	Life cycle warning 1
[Life Cycle Warn 2]	<i>L C R 2</i>	Life cycle warning 2
[No Warning stored]	<i>n o R</i>	No warning stored
[Process Overload Warning]	<i>o L R</i>	Process overload warning
[PumpCycle warning]	<i>P C P R</i>	Pumcycle warning
[PID Error Warning]	<i>P E E</i>	PID error warning
[PID Feedback Warning]	<i>P F R</i>	PID feedback warning
[PID High Fdbck Warning]	<i>P F R H</i>	PID feedback high threshold warning
[PID Low Fdbck Warning]	<i>P F R L</i>	PID feedback low threshold warning
[Power Cons Warning]	<i>P o W d</i>	Power consumption warning
[Speed Maintained]	<i>r L S</i>	Speed maintained function is active
[Ref Freq High Thd reached]	<i>r t R H</i>	Reference frequency high threshold reached
[Ref Freq Low Thd reached]	<i>r t R L</i>	Reference frequency low threshold reached
[Ref Frequency Warning]	<i>S r R</i>	Reference frequency reached
[Type of stop]	<i>S t E</i>	Detected error without stop according to [Type of stop] <i>S t E</i>
[Drv Therm Thd Reached]	<i>t R d</i>	Drive thermal threshold reached
[Drive Thermal Warning]	<i>t H R</i>	Drive thermal state warning

Setting	Code / Value	Description
[IGBT Thermal Warning]	<i>E JR</i>	IGBT thermal state warning
[AI3 Th Warning]	<i>E P 3 R</i>	Thermal sensor warning on analog input AI3
[AI4 Th Warning]	<i>E P 4 R</i>	Thermal sensor warning on analog input AI4
[AI5 Th Warning]	<i>E P 5 R</i>	Thermal sensor warning on analog input AI5
[Motor Therm Thd Reached]	<i>E 5 R</i>	Motor thermal threshold reached
[Process Undld Warning]	<i>u L R</i>	Process underload warning
[Preventive UnderV Active]	<i>u P R</i>	Preventive undervoltage active
[Undervoltage Warning]	<i>u S R</i>	Undervoltage warning

Section 13.2

Error Codes

What Is in This Section?

This section contains the following topics:

Topic	Page
Overview	581
[Load slipping] <i>R n F</i>	582
[Angle error] <i>R S F</i>	582
[Brake Control] <i>b L F</i>	583
[Brake Resistor ovid] <i>b o F</i>	583
[Brake Feedback] <i>b r F</i>	584
[Backlash Error] <i>b S q F</i>	584
[DB unit sh. circuit] <i>b u F</i>	585
[DB unit op. circuit] <i>b u F o</i>	585
[Circuit Breaker Error] <i>C b F</i>	586
[Incorrect Configuration] <i>C F F</i>	586
[Invalid Configuration] <i>C F ,</i>	587
[Conf Transfer Error] <i>C F ,2</i>	587
[Empty Configuration] <i>C F ,4</i>	588
[Fieldbus Com Interrupt] <i>C n F</i>	588
[CANopen Com Interrupt] <i>C o F</i>	589
[Precharge Capacitor] <i>C r F</i>	589
[Channel Switch Error] <i>C S F</i>	590
[Dynamic Load Error] <i>d L F</i>	590
[Encoder Coupling] <i>E C F</i>	591
[EEPROM Control] <i>E E F ,1</i>	591
[EEPROM Power] <i>E E F ,2</i>	592
[Encoder] <i>E n F</i>	592
[External Error] <i>E P F ,1</i>	593
[Fieldbus Error] <i>E P F ,2</i>	593
[Embd Eth Com Interrupt] <i>E t H F</i>	594
[Firmware Update Error] <i>F W E r</i>	594
[Boards Compatibility] <i>H C F</i>	595
[Input Overheating] <i>,H F</i>	595
[Internal Link Error] <i>,L F</i>	596
[Internal Error 0] <i>,n F 0</i>	596
[Internal Error 1] <i>,n F 1</i>	597
[Internal Error 2] <i>,n F 2</i>	597
[Internal Error 3] <i>,n F 3</i>	598
[Internal Error 4] <i>,n F 4</i>	598
[Internal Error 6] <i>,n F 6</i>	599
[Internal Error 7] <i>,n F 7</i>	599
[Internal Error 8] <i>,n F 8</i>	600
[Internal Error 9] <i>,n F 9</i>	600
[Internal Error 10] <i>,n F R</i>	601

Topic	Page
[Internal Error 11] <i>i n F b</i>	601
[Internal Error 12] <i>i n F C</i>	602
[Internal Error 13] <i>i n F d</i>	602
[Internal Error 14] <i>i n F E</i>	603
[Internal Error 15] <i>i n F F</i>	603
[Internal Error 16] <i>i n F G</i>	604
[Internal Error 17] <i>i n F H</i>	604
[Internal Error 18] <i>i n F i</i>	605
[Internal Error 19] <i>i n F J</i>	605
[Internal Error 20] <i>i n F K</i>	606
[Internal Error 21] <i>i n F L</i>	606
[Internal Error 22] <i>i n F N</i>	607
[Internal Error 25] <i>i n F P</i>	607
[Internal Error 27] <i>i n F r</i>	608
[Input Contactor] <i>L C F</i>	608
[AI1 4-20mA loss] <i>L F F I</i>	609
[AI3 4-20mA loss] <i>L F F 3</i>	609
[AI4 4-20mA loss] <i>L F F 4</i>	610
[AI5 4-20mA loss] <i>L F F 5</i>	610
[DC Bus Overvoltage] <i>a b F</i>	611
[Overcurrent] <i>a C F</i>	611
[Drive Overheating] <i>a H F</i>	612
[Process Overload] <i>a L C</i>	612
[Motor Overload] <i>a L F</i>	613
[Single Output Phase Loss] <i>a P F I</i>	613
[Output Phase Loss] <i>a P F 2</i>	614
[Supply Mains Overvoltage] <i>a S F</i>	614
[Program Loading Error] <i>P G L F</i>	615
[Program Running Error] <i>P G r F</i>	615
[Input phase loss] <i>P H F</i>	616
[Rotation Angle Monit] <i>r A d F</i>	616
[Safety Function Error] <i>S R F F</i>	617
[Motor short circuit] <i>S C F I</i>	617
[Ground Short Circuit] <i>S C F 3</i>	618
[IGBT Short Circuit] <i>S C F 4</i>	618
[Motor Short Circuit] <i>S C F 5</i>	619
[Modbus Com Interruption] <i>S L F I</i>	619
[PC Com Interruption] <i>S L F 2</i>	620
[HMI Com Interruption] <i>S L F 3</i>	620
[Motor Overspeed] <i>S a F</i>	621
[Encoder Feedback Loss] <i>S P F</i>	621
[Torque timeout] <i>S r F</i>	622
[Torque Limitation Error] <i>S S F</i>	622
[Motor Stall Error] <i>S E F</i>	623
[AI1 Thermal Sensor Error] <i>E / C F</i>	623
[AI3 Thermal Sensor Error] <i>E 3 C F</i>	624

Topic	Page
[AI4 Thermal Sensor Error] $E \downarrow 4 \square F$	624
[AI5 Thermal Sensor Error] $E \downarrow 5 \square F$	625
[Encoder Th Sensor Error] $E \downarrow E \square F$	625
[AI1 Th Detected Error] $E \downarrow H \downarrow 1 F$	626
[AI3 Th Detected Error] $E \downarrow H \downarrow 3 F$	626
[AI4 Th Detected Error] $E \downarrow H \downarrow 4 F$	627
[AI5 Th Detected Error] $E \downarrow H \downarrow 5 F$	627
[Encoder Th Detected Error] $E \downarrow H \downarrow E F$	628
[IGBT Overheating] $E \downarrow J F$	628
[Drive Overload] $E \downarrow L \square F$	629
[Autotuning Error] $E \downarrow n F$	629
[Process Underload] $\square L F$	630
[Supply Mains UnderV] $\square S F$	630

Overview

Clearing the Detected Error

This table presents the steps to follow if intervention on the drive system is required:

Step	Action
1	Disconnect all power, including external control power that may be present.
2	Lock that all power disconnects in the open position.
3	Wait 15 minutes to allow the DC bus capacitors to discharge (the drive LEDs are not indicators of the absence of DC bus voltage).
4	Measure the voltage of the DC bus between the PA/+ and PC/- terminals to ensure that the voltage is less than 42 Vdc.
5	If the DC bus capacitors do not discharge completely, contact your local Schneider Electric representative. Do not repair or operate the drive.
6	Find and correct the cause of the detected error.
7	Restore power to the drive to confirm that the detected error has been rectified.

After the cause has been removed, the detected error can be cleared by:

- Switching off the drive.
- Using the **[Product Restart] *P*** parameter.
- Using the **[Auto Fault Reset] *A E r*** - function.
- A digital input or control bit set to the **[Fault reset] *S E r*** - function.
- Pressing the **STOP/RESET** key on the Display Terminal if the active command channel is set to **[Ref. Freq-Rmt.Term] *L C C***.

[Load slipping] $R \text{ } n \text{ } F$



Probable Cause

The difference between the output frequency and the speed feedback is not correct.



Remedy

- Confirm the drive rating according to the application (motor, load, and so on.)
- Verify the motor, gain, and stability parameters.
- Add a braking resistor.
- Verify the mechanical coupling and wiring of the encoder.
- If the torque control function is used and if the encoder is assigned to speed feedback,
 - Set [Load slip detection] $S \text{ } d \text{ } d = [\text{No}] \text{ } n \text{ } o$.
 - Set both [Positive deadband] $d \text{ } b \text{ } P$ and [Negative deadband] $d \text{ } b \text{ } n$ to a value less than 10% of the nominal motor frequency.



Clearing the Error Code

This detected error can be cleared with the [Auto Fault Reset] $R \text{ } E \text{ } r$ or manually with the [Fault Reset Assign] $r \text{ } S \text{ } F$ parameter after the cause has disappeared.

[Angle error] $R \text{ } S \text{ } F$



Probable Cause

For synchronous motors, wrong setting of the speed loop when the reference goes through 0.



Remedy

- Verify the speed loop parameters.
- Verify the motor phases and the maximum current allowed by the drive.



Clearing the Error Code

This detected error can be cleared manually with the [Fault Reset Assign] $r \text{ } S \text{ } F$ parameter after the cause has disappeared.

[Brake Control] *b L F*



Probable Cause

- Brake release current not reached.
- Brake engages frequency threshold [Brake engage freq] *b E n* only regulated when brake logic control is assigned.



Remedy

- Verify the drive/motor connection.
- Verify the motor windings.
- Verify the [Brk Release Current] *b r* and [Brake release I Rev] *r d* settings.
- Apply the recommended settings for [Brake engage freq] *b E n*.



Clearing the Error Code

This detected error can be cleared with the [Auto Fault Reset] *A E r* or manually with the [Fault Reset Assign] *r S F* parameter after the cause has disappeared.

[Brake Resistor ovid] *b o F*



Probable Cause

The braking resistor is overloaded



Remedy

- Wait for the braking resistor to cool down.
- Check the nominal power of the braking resistor.
- Check the [Braking Resistor Power] *b r P* and [Braking Resistor Value] *b r V* parameters.



Clearing the Error Code

This detected error can be cleared with the [Auto Fault Reset] *A E r* or manually with the [Fault Reset Assign] *r S F* parameter after the cause has disappeared.

[Brake Feedback] *b r F*



Probable Cause

- The status of the brake feedback contact is not correct compared to the brake logic control.
- The brake does not stop the motor quickly enough (detected by measuring the speed on the "Pulse input" input).



Remedy

- Verify the brake feedback circuit.
- Verify the brake logic control circuit.
- Verify the brake behavior.



Clearing the Error Code

This detected error can be cleared with the [Auto Fault Reset] *A E r* or manually with the [Fault Reset Assign] *r S F* parameter after the cause has disappeared.

[Backlash Error] *b S q F*



Probable Cause

The torque threshold used for backlash function can not be reached after [BL Monit Delay] *b q E*.



Remedy

- Verify the settings
- Verify the coupling



Clearing the Error Code

This detected error can be cleared with the [Auto Fault Reset] *A E r* or manually with the [Fault Reset Assign] *r S F* parameter after the cause has disappeared.

[DB unit sh. circuit] *b u F***Probable Cause**

- Short-circuit from braking circuit.

**Remedy**

- Verify the wiring of the braking unit.
- Verify that the braking unit value is not too low.

**Clearing the Error Code**

This detected error requires a power reset.

[DB unit op. circuit] *b u F o***Probable Cause**

- Open-circuit from braking circuit.
- Braking resistor not connected.

**Remedy**

- Verify the wiring of the braking resistor.
- Verify that the braking resistor value is not too high.

**Clearing the Error Code**

This detected error requires a power reset.

[Circuit Breaker Error] *L b F*



Probable Cause

The DC bus voltage level is not correct compared to the circuit breaker logic control (start or stop pulse) after the configured timeout [Mains V. time out] *L E E*.



Remedy

- Verify the circuit breaker logic control (pulse time for start and stop).
- Verify the mechanical state of the circuit breaker.



Clearing the Error Code

This detected error requires a power reset.

[Incorrect Configuration] *L F F*



Probable Cause

- Option module changed or removed.
- Control block replaced by a control block configured on a drive with a different rating.
- The current configuration is inconsistent.



Remedy

- Verify that there is no detected error on the option module.
- In the event of the control block being changed deliberately, see the remarks below.
- Return to factory settings or retrieve the backup configuration if it is valid.



Clearing the Error Code

This detected error is cleared as soon as its cause disappears.

[Invalid Configuration] *E F , 1*



Probable Cause

Invalid configuration. The configuration loaded in the drive via the commissioning tool or fieldbus is inconsistent.



Remedy

- Verify the previously loaded configuration.
- Load a compatible configuration.



Clearing the Error Code

This detected error is cleared as soon as its cause disappears.

[Conf Transfer Error] *E F , 2*



Probable Cause

- The configuration has not been transferred properly.
- The configuration loaded is not compatible with the drive.



Remedy

- Check the configuration loaded previously.
- Load a compatible configuration.



Clearing the Error Code

This detected error is cleared as soon as its cause disappears.

[Empty Configuration] $L F$, 4



Probable Cause

The selected configuration for the [Multimotors config] $M M C$ - function has not been created previously.



Remedy

- Verify the configurations saved.
- Switch to a compatible configuration.



Clearing the Error Code

This detected error is cleared as soon as its cause disappears.

[Fieldbus Com Interrupt] $L n F$



Probable Cause

Communication interruption on fieldbus module.



Remedy

- Verify the environment (electromagnetic compatibility).
- Verify the wiring.
- Verify the timeout.
- Replace the option module.
- Contact your local Schneider Electric representative



Clearing the Error Code

This detected error can be cleared with the [Auto Fault Reset] $A F r$ or manually with the [Fault Reset Assign] $r S F$ parameter after the cause has disappeared.

[CANopen Com Interrupt] $E \square F$



Probable Cause

Communication interruption on the CANopen® fieldbus



Remedy

- Verify the communication fieldbus.
- Verify the timeout.
- Refer to the CANopen® user manual.



Clearing the Error Code

This detected error can be cleared with the [Auto Fault Reset] $R E r$ or manually with the [Fault Reset Assign] $r S F$ parameter after the cause has disappeared.

[Precharge Capacitor] $E \square F$



Probable Cause

Charging circuit control detected error or charging resistor damaged.



Remedy

- Turn off the drive and then turn on again.
- Verify the internal connections.
- Contact your local Schneider Electric representative



Clearing the Error Code

This detected error requires a power reset.

[Channel Switch Error] *C S F*



Probable Cause

Switch to a not valid channel.



Remedy

Verify the function parameters.



Clearing the Error Code

This detected error is cleared as soon as its cause disappears.

[Dynamic Load Error] *d L F*



Probable Cause

Abnormal load variation.



Remedy

Check for a mechanical cause of load instability.



Clearing the Error Code

This detected error can be cleared with the **[Auto Fault Reset]** *A F r* or manually with the **[Fault Reset Assign]** *r S F* parameter after the cause has disappeared.

[Encoder Coupling] *E L F*



Probable Cause

The mechanical coupling of the encoder is broken.



Remedy

Verify the mechanical coupling of the encoder.



Clearing the Error Code

This detected error can be cleared with the [Auto Fault Reset] *A E r* or manually with the [Fault Reset Assign] *r S F* parameter after the cause has disappeared.

[EEPROM Control] *E E F I*



Probable Cause

An error of the internal memory of the control block has been detected.



Remedy

- Verify the environment (electromagnetic compatibility).
- Switch off the product.
- Return to factory settings.
- Contact your local Schneider Electric representative.



Clearing the Error Code

This detected error requires a power reset.

[EEPROM Power] *E E F 2*



Probable Cause

An error of the internal memory of the power board has been detected.



Remedy

- Verify the environment (electromagnetic compatibility).
- Switch off the product.
- Return to factory settings.
- Contact your local Schneider Electric representative.



Clearing the Error Code

This detected error requires a power reset.

[Encoder] *E n F*



Probable Cause

Encoder feedback error.



Remedy

- Verify the configuration parameters for the encoder used.
- Verify the mechanical and electrical operation of the encoder.
- Check the consistency between the encoder signals and the direction of rotation of the motor.
- If necessary, reverse the direction of rotation of the motor (**[Output Ph rotation] P H r** parameter)



Clearing the Error Code

This detected error can be cleared with the **[Auto Fault Reset] R E r** or manually with the **[Fault Reset Assign] r S F** parameter after the cause has disappeared.

[External Error] E P F 1



Probable Cause

- Event triggered by an external device, depending on user.
- An external error has been triggered via Embedded Ethernet.



Remedy

Remove the cause of the external error.



Clearing the Error Code

This detected error can be cleared with the **[Auto Fault Reset]** *A F r* or manually with the **[Fault Reset Assign]** *r S F* parameter after the cause has disappeared.

[Fieldbus Error] E P F 2



Probable Cause

An external error has been triggered via fieldbus.



Remedy

Remove the cause of the external error.



Clearing the Error Code

This detected error can be cleared with the **[Auto Fault Reset]** *A F r* or manually with the **[Fault Reset Assign]** *r S F* parameter after the cause has disappeared.

[Embd Eth Com Interrupt] *E E H F*



Probable Cause

Communication interruption on the Ethernet IP ModbusTCP bus.



Remedy

- Check the communication bus.
- Refer to the Ethernet user manual.



Clearing the Error Code

This detected error can be cleared with the [Auto Fault Reset] *A E r* or manually with the [Fault Reset Assign] *r S F* parameter after the cause has disappeared.

[Firmware Update Error] *F W E r*



Probable Cause

Firmware update function has detected an error.



Remedy

Contact your local Schneider Electric representative.



Clearing the Error Code

This detected error is cleared as soon as its cause disappears.

[Boards Compatibility] *H C F*



Probable Cause

The **[Pairing password]** *P P*, parameter has been enabled and an option module has been changed.



Remedy

- Refit the original option module.
- Confirm the configuration by entering the **[Pairing password]** *P P*, if the module was changed deliberately.



Clearing the Error Code

This detected error is cleared as soon as its cause disappears.

[Input Overheating] *, H F*



Probable Cause

The AFE brick temperature is too high.



Remedy

Verify the drive ventilation and the ambient temperature. Wait for the drive to cool down before restarting.



Clearing the Error Code

This detected error can be cleared with the **[Auto Fault Reset]** *A E r* or manually with the **[Fault Reset Assign]** *r S F* parameter after the cause has disappeared.

[Internal Link Error] L F



Probable Cause

Communication interruption between option module and the drive.



Remedy

- Verify the environment (electromagnetic compatibility).
- Verify the connections.
- Replace the option module.
- Contact your local Schneider Electric representative.



Clearing the Error Code

This detected error requires a power reset.

[Internal Error 0] n F D



Probable Cause

Communication interruption between microprocessors of the control board.



Remedy

Contact your local Schneider Electric representative.



Clearing the Error Code

This detected error requires a power reset.

[Internal Error 1] *in F 1***Probable Cause**

The power board rating is not valid.

**Remedy**

Contact your local Schneider Electric representative.

**Clearing the Error Code**

This detected error requires a power reset.

[Internal Error 2] *in F 2***Probable Cause**

The power board is incompatible with the control block software.

**Remedy**

Contact your local Schneider Electric representative.

**Clearing the Error Code**

This detected error requires a power reset.

[Internal Error 3] *i n F 3*



Probable Cause

Internal communication detected error.



Remedy

- Verify the wiring on drive control terminals (internal 10 V supply for analog inputs overloaded).
- Contact your local Schneider Electric representative.



Clearing the Error Code

This detected error requires a power reset.

[Internal Error 4] *i n F 4*



Probable Cause

Internal data inconsistent.



Remedy

Contact your local Schneider Electric representative.



Clearing the Error Code

This detected error requires a power reset.

[Internal Error 6] *i n F 6***Probable Cause**

- The option module installed in the drive is not recognized.
- The removable control terminal modules (if existing) are not present or not recognized.
- The embedded Ethernet adapter is not recognized.

**Remedy**

- Verify the catalog number and compatibility of the option module.
- Plug the removable control terminal modules after the drive has been switched off.
- Contact your local Schneider Electric representative.

**Clearing the Error Code**

This detected error requires a power reset.

[Internal Error 7] *i n F 7***Probable Cause**

Communication interruption with CPLD component of Control board.

**Remedy**

Contact your local Schneider Electric representative.

**Clearing the Error Code**

This detected error requires a power reset.

[Internal Error 8] *i n F 8*



Probable Cause

The internal power switching supply is not correct.



Remedy

Contact your local Schneider Electric representative.



Clearing the Error Code

This detected error requires a power reset.

[Internal Error 9] *i n F 9*



Probable Cause

An error on the current circuit measurement has been detected.



Remedy

Contact your local Schneider Electric representative.



Clearing the Error Code

This detected error requires a power reset.

[Internal Error 10] *i n F A***Probable Cause**

The input stage is not operating correctly.

**Remedy**

Contact your local Schneider Electric representative.

**Clearing the Error Code**

This detected error requires a power reset.

[Internal Error 11] *i n F b***Probable Cause**

The internal drive thermal sensor is not operating correctly.

**Remedy**

Contact your local Schneider Electric representative.

**Clearing the Error Code**

This detected error can be cleared with the **[Auto Fault Reset]** *A F r* or manually with the **[Fault Reset Assign]** *r S F* parameter after the cause has disappeared.

[Internal Error 12] *i n F L*



Probable Cause

Internal current supply error.



Remedy

Contact your local Schneider Electric representative.



Clearing the Error Code

This detected error requires a power reset.

[Internal Error 13] *i n F d*



Probable Cause

Differential current deviation.



Remedy

Contact your local Schneider Electric representative.



Clearing the Error Code

This detected error requires a power reset.

[Internal Error 14] *nn F E***Probable Cause**

Internal microprocessor detected error.

**Remedy**

- Verify that the error code can be cleared.
- Contact your local Schneider Electric representative.

**Clearing the Error Code**

This detected error requires a power reset.

[Internal Error 15] *nn F F***Probable Cause**

Serial memory flash format error.

**Remedy**

Contact your local Schneider Electric representative.

**Clearing the Error Code**

This detected error requires a power reset.

[Internal Error 16] *i n F G*



Probable Cause

Communication interruption with the Extension module of output relays module or internal error of the Extension module of output relays



Remedy

- Replace the option module.
- Contact your local Schneider Electric representative.



Clearing the Error Code

This detected error requires a power reset.

[Internal Error 17] *i n F H*



Probable Cause

Communication interruption with the Extension module of digital & analog I/O or internal error of the Extension module of digital & analog I/O.



Remedy

- Replace the option module.
- Contact your local Schneider Electric representative.



Clearing the Error Code

This detected error requires a power reset.

[Internal Error 18] *in F***Probable Cause**

Communication interruption with Safety function module or internal error of the Safety function module.

**Remedy**

- Replace the option module.
- Contact your local Schneider Electric representative.

**Clearing the Error Code**

This detected error requires a power reset.

[Internal Error 19] *in F J***Probable Cause**

An error on the encoder module has been detected.

**Remedy**

- Verify the compatibility of the encoder.
- Contact your local Schneider Electric representative.

**Clearing the Error Code**

This detected error requires a power reset.

[Internal Error 20] *i n F K*



Probable Cause

Option module interface board error.



Remedy

Contact your local Schneider Electric representative.



Clearing the Error Code

This detected error requires a power reset.

[Internal Error 21] *i n F L*



Probable Cause

Internal Real Time Clock error.



Remedy

Contact your local Schneider Electric representative.



Clearing the Error Code

This detected error requires a power reset.

[Internal Error 22] *i n F P***Probable Cause**

An error on the embedded Ethernet adapter has been detected.

**Remedy**

Contact your local Schneider Electric representative.

**Clearing the Error Code**

This detected error requires a power reset.

[Internal Error 25] *i n F P***Probable Cause**

Incompatibility between Control Board hardware version and firmware version.

**Remedy**

- Update the firmware package.
- Contact your local Schneider Electric representative.

**Clearing the Error Code**

This detected error requires a power reset.

[Internal Error 27] *i n F r*



Probable Cause

Diagnostics in CPLD have detected an error.



Remedy

Contact your local Schneider Electric representative.



Clearing the Error Code

This detected error requires a power reset.

[Input Contactor] *L C F*



Probable Cause

The drive is not switched on even though [Mains V. time out] *L C E* timeout has elapsed.



Remedy

- Verify the input contactor and its wiring.
- Verify the [Mains V. time out] *L C E* timeout.
- Verify the supply mains/contactor/drive wiring.



Clearing the Error Code

This detected error can be cleared with the [Auto Fault Reset] *A E r* or manually with the [Fault Reset Assign] *r S F* parameter after the cause has disappeared.

[AI1 4-20mA loss] L F F 1**Probable Cause**

Loss of the 4-20 mA on analog input AI1.

**Remedy**

Verify the connection on the analog inputs.

**Clearing the Error Code**

This detected error can be cleared with the **[Auto Fault Reset]** *A E r* or manually with the **[Fault Reset Assign]** *r S F* parameter after the cause has disappeared.

[AI3 4-20mA loss] L F F 3**Probable Cause**

Loss of the 4-20 mA on analog input AI3.

**Remedy**

Verify the connection on the analog inputs.

**Clearing the Error Code**

This detected error can be cleared with the **[Auto Fault Reset]** *A E r* or manually with the **[Fault Reset Assign]** *r S F* parameter after the cause has disappeared.

[AI4 4-20mA loss] L F F 4



Probable Cause

Loss of the 4-20 mA on analog input AI4.



Remedy

Verify the connection on the analog inputs.



Clearing the Error Code

This detected error can be cleared with the **[Auto Fault Reset]** *A E r* or manually with the **[Fault Reset Assign]** *r S F* parameter after the cause has disappeared.

[AI5 4-20mA loss] L F F 5



Probable Cause

Loss of the 4-20 mA on analog input AI5.



Remedy

Verify the connection on the analog inputs.



Clearing the Error Code

This detected error can be cleared with the **[Auto Fault Reset]** *A E r* or manually with the **[Fault Reset Assign]** *r S F* parameter after the cause has disappeared.

[DC Bus Overvoltage] $\square b F$



Probable Cause

- Deceleration time too short or driving load.
- Supply mains voltage too high.



Remedy

- Increase the deceleration time.
- Configure the [Dec ramp adapt.] $b r R$ function if it is compatible with the application.
- Verify the supply mains voltage.
- Verify the braking circuit capability if present.



Clearing the Error Code

This detected error can be cleared with the [Auto Fault Reset] $R E r$ or manually with the [Fault Reset Assign] $r S F$ parameter after the cause has disappeared.

[Overcurrent] $\square C F$



Probable Cause

- Parameters in the [Motor data] $N \square R$ - menu are not correct.
- Inertia or load too high.
- Mechanical locking.



Remedy

- Verify the parameters.
- Verify the size of the motor/drive/load.
- Verify the state of the mechanism.
- Decrease [Current limitation] $C L r$.
- Increase the switching frequency.



Clearing the Error Code

This detected error requires a power reset.

[Drive Overheating] $\square H F$



Probable Cause

Drive temperature too high.



Remedy

Verify the motor load, the drive ventilation, and the ambient temperature. Wait for the drive to cool down before restarting.



Clearing the Error Code

This detected error can be cleared with the [Auto Fault Reset] $R E r$ or manually with the [Fault Reset Assign] $r S F$ parameter after the cause has disappeared.

[Process Overload] $\square L C$



Probable Cause

Process overload.



Remedy

- Verify and remove the cause of the overload.
- Verify the parameters of the [Process overload] $\square L d$ - function.



Clearing the Error Code

This detected error can be cleared with the [Auto Fault Reset] $R E r$ or manually with the [Fault Reset Assign] $r S F$ parameter after the cause has disappeared.

[Motor Overload] L F



Probable Cause

Triggered by excessive motor current.



Remedy

Verify the setting of the motor thermal monitoring, verify the motor load. Wait for the motor to cool down before restarting.



Clearing the Error Code

This detected error can be cleared with the **[Auto Fault Reset]**  or manually with the **[Fault Reset Assign]**  parameter after the cause has disappeared.

[Single Output Phase Loss] P F /



Probable Cause

Loss of one phase at drive output.



Remedy

Verify the wiring from the drive to the motor.



Clearing the Error Code

This detected error can be cleared with the **[Auto Fault Reset]**  or manually with the **[Fault Reset Assign]**  parameter after the cause has disappeared.

[Output Phase Loss] P F 2



Probable Cause

- Motor not connected or motor power too low.
- Output contactor opened.
- Instantaneous instability in the motor current.



Remedy

- Verify the wiring from the drive to the motor.
- If an output contactor is being used, set [OutPhaseLoss Assign]  PL to [No Error Triggered]  RL.
- If the drive is connected to a low-power motor or not connected to a motor: In factory settings mode, motor phase loss detection is active [Output Phase Loss]  PL = [OPF Error Triggered]  YE 5. Deactivate motor phase loss detection [Output Phase Loss]  PL = [Function Inactive] .
- Verify and optimize the following parameters: [IR compensation]  Fr, [Nom Motor Voltage]  n 5 and [Rated mot. current]  Lr and perform [Autotuning]  t .



Clearing the Error Code

This detected error can be cleared with the [Auto Fault Reset]  Fr or manually with the [Fault Reset Assign]  SF parameter after the cause has disappeared.

[Supply Mains Overvoltage] S F



Probable Cause

- Supply mains voltage too high.
- Disturbed supply mains.



Remedy

Verify the supply mains voltage.



Clearing the Error Code

This detected error can be cleared with the [Auto Fault Reset]  Fr or manually with the [Fault Reset Assign]  SF parameter after the cause has disappeared.

[Program Loading Error] PGLF



Probable Cause

Verify that the error code can be cleared.



Remedy

Contact your local Schneider Electric representative.



Clearing the Error Code

This detected error is cleared as soon as its cause disappears.

[Program Running Error] PGRF



Probable Cause

Verify that the error code can be cleared.



Remedy

Contact your local Schneider Electric representative.



Clearing the Error Code

This detected error requires a power reset.

[Input phase loss] *P H F*



Probable Cause

- Drive incorrectly supplied or a tripped fused.
- One phase missing.
- 3-phase drive used on a single-phase supply mains.
- Unbalanced load.



Remedy

- Check the power connection and the fuses.
- Use a 3-phase supply mains.
- Disable the detected error by [Input phase loss] *P L = [No]* if single phase supply mains or DC bus supply is used.



Clearing the Error Code

This detected error can be cleared with the [Auto Fault Reset] *A E r* or manually with the [Fault Reset Assign] *r S F* parameter after the cause has disappeared.

[Rotation Angle Monit] *R d F*



Probable Cause

The monitoring of the rotation angle has detected a too high deviation.



Remedy

- Check for mechanical problems in the system.
- Verify the settings of the monitoring function.



Clearing the Error Code

This detected error can be cleared with the [Auto Fault Reset] *A E r* or manually with the [Fault Reset Assign] *r S F* parameter after the cause has disappeared.

[Safety Function Error] *S F F*



Probable Cause

- Debounce time exceeded.
- Internal hardware error.



Remedy

- Verify the wiring of the digital inputs STOA and STOB.
- Contact your local Schneider Electric representative.



Clearing the Error Code

This detected error requires a power reset.

[Motor short circuit] *S C F* / *I*



Probable Cause

Short-circuit or grounding at the drive output.



Remedy

- Verify the cables connecting the drive to the motor, and the motor insulation.
- Adjust the switching frequency.
- Connect chokes in series with the motor.
- Verify the adjustment of speed loop and brake.
- Increase the [Time to restart] *E E r*



Clearing the Error Code

This detected error requires a power reset.

[Ground Short Circuit] 5 E F 3



Probable Cause

Significant ground leakage current at the drive output if several motors are connected in parallel.



Remedy

- Verify the cables connecting the drive to the motor, and the motor insulation.
- Adjust the switching frequency.
- Connect chokes in series with the motor.
- Verify the adjustment of speed loop and brake.
- Increase the [Time to restart] t_{tr}



Clearing the Error Code

This detected error requires a power reset.

[IGBT Short Circuit] 5 E F 4



Probable Cause

Power component detected error.



Remedy

Contact your local Schneider Electric representative.



Clearing the Error Code

This detected error can be cleared with the [Auto Fault Reset] A_{tr} or manually with the [Fault Reset Assign] r_{SF} parameter after the cause has disappeared.

[Motor Short Circuit] 5 L F 5



Probable Cause

Short-circuit at drive output.



Remedy

- Verify the cables connecting the drive to the motor, and the motor's insulation.
- Contact your local Schneider Electric representative.



Clearing the Error Code

This detected error can be cleared with the **[Auto Fault Reset]** $A E r$ or manually with the **[Fault Reset Assign]** $r 5 F$ parameter after the cause has disappeared.

[Modbus Com Interruption] 5 L F 1



Probable Cause

Communication interruption on the Modbus port.



Remedy

- Verify the communication bus.
- Verify the timeout.
- Refer to the Modbus user manual.



Clearing the Error Code

This detected error can be cleared with the **[Auto Fault Reset]** $A E r$ or manually with the **[Fault Reset Assign]** $r 5 F$ parameter after the cause has disappeared.

[PC Com Interruption] *S L F 2*



Probable Cause

Communication interruption with the commissioning software.



Remedy

- Verify the commissioning software connecting cable.
- Verify the timeout.



Clearing the Error Code

This detected error can be cleared with the **[Auto Fault Reset]** *A E r* or manually with the **[Fault Reset Assign]** *r S F* parameter after the cause has disappeared.

[HMI Com Interruption] *S L F 3*



Probable Cause

Communication interruption with the Display Terminal.



Remedy

- Verify the Display Terminal connection.
- Verify the timeout.



Clearing the Error Code

This detected error can be cleared with the **[Auto Fault Reset]** *A E r* or manually with the **[Fault Reset Assign]** *r S F* parameter after the cause has disappeared.

[Motor Overspeed] 5 □ F



Probable Cause

- Instability or driving load too high.
- If a downstream contactor is used, the contacts between the motor and the drive have not been closed before applying a Run command.



Remedy

- Verify the motor parameter settings.
- Verify the size of the motor/drive/load.
- Verify and close the contacts between the motor and the drive before applying a Run command.



Clearing the Error Code

This detected error requires a power reset.

[Encoder Feedback Loss] 5 P F



Probable Cause

- Encoder feedback signal missing.
- No top Z signal after two rotations has been done.
- No signal on the pulse input, if the input is used for speed measurement.



Remedy

- Check the error code value [Encoder Fdbck Error] E n L E .
- Verify the wiring between the encoder and the drive.
- Verify the encoder.
- Verify the encoder settings.
- Check the wiring of the pulse input and the sensor used.



Clearing the Error Code

This detected error can be cleared with the [Auto Fault Reset] A E r or manually with the [Fault Reset Assign] r S F parameter after the cause has disappeared.

[Torque timeout] *S r F*



Probable Cause

The torque control function is not able to regulate the torque within the configured dead band. The drive has switched to speed control for longer than [Torque ctrl time out] *r E o*.



Remedy

- Verify the settings of the [Torque control] *E o r -* function..
- Verify that there are no mechanical constraints.



Clearing the Error Code

This detected error can be cleared with the [Auto Fault Reset] *A E r* or manually with the [Fault Reset Assign] *r S F* parameter after the cause has disappeared.

[Torque Limitation Error] *S S F*



Probable Cause

The drive was in torque limitation or current limitation state during [Trq/I Limit Timeout] *S E o*.



Remedy

- Verify the settings of the [Torque limitation] *E o L -* function.
- Verify that there are no mechanical constraints.



Clearing the Error Code

This detected error can be cleared with the [Auto Fault Reset] *A E r* or manually with the [Fault Reset Assign] *r S F* parameter after the cause has disappeared.

[Motor Stall Error] *S E F*



Probable Cause

The stall monitoring function has detected an error.



Remedy

- Search for a mechanical blocking of the motor.
- Search for a possible cause of motor overload.
- Verify the settings of the monitoring function.



Clearing the Error Code

This detected error can be cleared with the **[Auto Fault Reset]** *A E r* or manually with the **[Fault Reset Assign]** *r S F* parameter after the cause has disappeared.

[AI1 Thermal Sensor Error] *E I C F*



Probable Cause

The thermal sensor monitoring function has detected a thermal sensor error on analog input AI1:

- Open circuit, or
- Short circuit



Remedy

- Verify the sensor and its wiring.
- Replace the sensor.



Clearing the Error Code

This detected error can be cleared with the **[Auto Fault Reset]** *A E r* or manually with the **[Fault Reset Assign]** *r S F* parameter after the cause has disappeared.

[AI3 Thermal Sensor Error] $E\ 3\ L\ F$



Probable Cause

The thermal sensor monitoring function has detected a thermal sensor error on analog input AI3:

- Open circuit, or
- Short circuit.



Remedy

- Verify the sensor and its wiring.
- Replace the sensor.



Clearing the Error Code

This detected error can be cleared with the **[Auto Fault Reset]** $A\ E\ r$ or manually with the **[Fault Reset Assign]** $r\ S\ F$ parameter after the cause has disappeared.

[AI4 Thermal Sensor Error] $E\ 4\ L\ F$



Probable Cause

The thermal sensor monitoring function has detected a thermal sensor error on analog input AI4:

- Open circuit, or
- Short circuit.



Remedy

- Verify the sensor and its wiring.
- Replace the sensor.



Clearing the Error Code

This detected error can be cleared with the **[Auto Fault Reset]** $A\ E\ r$ or manually with the **[Fault Reset Assign]** $r\ S\ F$ parameter after the cause has disappeared.

[AI5 Thermal Sensor Error] $E\ 5\ L\ F$



Probable Cause

The thermal sensor monitoring function has detected a thermal sensor error on analog input AI5:

- Open circuit, or
- Short circuit.



Remedy

- Verify the sensor and its wiring.
- Replace the sensor.



Clearing the Error Code

This detected error can be cleared with the **[Auto Fault Reset]** $A\ E\ r$ or manually with the **[Fault Reset Assign]** $r\ 5\ F$ parameter after the cause has disappeared.

[Encoder Th Sensor Error] $E\ E\ L\ F$



Probable Cause

The thermal sensor monitoring function has detected a thermal sensor error on the encoder module analog input:

- Open circuit, or
- Short circuit.



Remedy

- Verify the sensor and its wiring.
- Replace the sensor.



Clearing the Error Code

This detected error can be cleared with the **[Auto Fault Reset]** $A\ E\ r$ or manually with the **[Fault Reset Assign]** $r\ 5\ F$ parameter after the cause has disappeared.

[AI1 Th Detected Error] $E\ H\ 1\ F$



Probable Cause

The thermal sensor monitoring function has detected a high temperature error on analog input AI1.



Remedy

- Search for a possible cause of overheating.
- Verify the settings of the monitoring function.



Clearing the Error Code

This detected error can be cleared with the **[Auto Fault Reset]** $A\ E\ r$ or manually with the **[Fault Reset Assign]** $r\ S\ F$ parameter after the cause has disappeared.

[AI3 Th Detected Error] $E\ H\ 3\ F$



Probable Cause

The thermal sensor monitoring function has detected a high temperature error on analog input AI3.



Remedy

- Search for a possible cause of overheating.
- Verify the settings of the monitoring function.



Clearing the Error Code

This detected error can be cleared with the **[Auto Fault Reset]** $A\ E\ r$ or manually with the **[Fault Reset Assign]** $r\ S\ F$ parameter after the cause has disappeared.

[AI4 Th Detected Error] E H 4 F



Probable Cause

The thermal sensor monitoring function has detected a high temperature error on analog input AI4.



Remedy

- Search for a possible cause of overheating.
- Verify the settings of the monitoring function.



Clearing the Error Code

This detected error can be cleared with the **[Auto Fault Reset]** *A E r* or manually with the **[Fault Reset Assign]** *r S F* parameter after the cause has disappeared.

[AI5 Th Detected Error] E H 5 F



Probable Cause

The thermal sensor monitoring function has detected a high temperature error on analog input AI5.



Remedy

- Search for a possible cause of overheating.
- Verify the settings of the monitoring function.



Clearing the Error Code

This detected error can be cleared with the **[Auto Fault Reset]** *A E r* or manually with the **[Fault Reset Assign]** *r S F* parameter after the cause has disappeared.

[Encoder Th Detected Error] *E HE F*



Probable Cause

The thermal sensor monitoring function has detected a high temperature error on encoder module analog input.



Remedy

- Search for a possible cause of overheating.
- Verify the settings of the monitoring function.



Clearing the Error Code

This detected error requires a power reset.

[IGBT Overheating] *E J F*



Probable Cause

Drive power stage overheating.



Remedy

- Verify the size of the load/motor/drive according to environment conditions.
- Reduce the switching frequency.
- Increase the ramp time.
- Decrease the current limitation.



Clearing the Error Code

This detected error can be cleared with the [Auto Fault Reset] *A E r* or manually with the [Fault Reset Assign] *r S F* parameter after the cause has disappeared.

[Drive Overload] $E\ L\ o\ F$



Probable Cause

The [Drive overload monit] $\sigma\ b\ r$ - function has detected an error.



Remedy

- Verify the size of the load/motor/drive according to environment conditions.
- Verify the settings of the [Drive Overload Monit] $E\ L\ o\ L$ parameter.



Clearing the Error Code

This detected error can be cleared with the [Auto Fault Reset] $A\ E\ r$ or manually with the [Fault Reset Assign] $r\ S\ F$ parameter after the cause has disappeared.

[Autotuning Error] $E\ n\ F$



Probable Cause

- Special motor or motor whose power is not suitable for the drive.
- Motor not connected to the drive.
- Motor not stopped.



Remedy

- Verify that the motor/drive are compatible.
- Verify that the motor is connected to the drive during autotuning.
- If an output contactor is being used, verify that it is closed during autotuning.
- Verify that the motor is stopped during autotuning.
- In case of reluctance motor, reduce [PSI Align Curr Max] $\pi\ C\ r$.



Clearing the Error Code

This detected error can be cleared manually with the [Fault Reset Assign] $r\ S\ F$ parameter after the cause has disappeared.

[Process Underload] $\sqcup L F$



Probable Cause

Process underload.



Remedy

- Verify and remove the cause of the underload.
- Verify the parameters of the [PROCESS UNDERLOAD] $\sqcup L d$ - function



Clearing the Error Code

This detected error can be cleared with the [Auto Fault Reset] $A E r$ or manually with the [Fault Reset Assign] $r S F$ parameter after the cause has disappeared.

[Supply Mains UnderV] $\sqcup S F$



Probable Cause

- supply mains too low.
- Transient voltage dips.



Remedy

Verify the voltage and the parameters of [Undervoltage handling] $\sqcup S b$.



Clearing the Error Code

This detected error is cleared as soon as its cause disappears.

Section 13.3

FAQ

FAQ

Introduction

If the display does not light up, verify the supply mains to the drive.

The assignment of the fast stop or freewheel functions help to prevent the drive starting if the corresponding digital inputs are not switched on. The drive then displays **[Freewheel] n 5 L** in freewheel stop and **[Fast stop] F 5 L** in fast stop. This is a normal behavior since these functions are active at zero so that the drive is stopped if there is a wire break.

Verify that the run command input is activated in accordance with the selected control mode (**[2/3-wire control] L L L** and **[2-wire type] L L L** parameters).

If the reference channel or command channel is assigned to a fieldbus, when the supply mains is connected, the drive displays **[Freewheel] n 5 L**. It remains in stop mode until the fieldbus gives a command.

Option Module Changed or Removed

When an option module is removed or replaced by another, the drive locks in **[Incorrect configuration] L F F** error mode at power-on. If the option module has been deliberately changed or removed, the detected error can be cleared by pressing the **OK** key twice, which causes the factory settings to be restored for the parameter groups affected by the option module.

Control Block Changed

When a control block is replaced by a control block configured on a drive with a different rating, the drive locks in **[Incorrect configuration] L F F** fault mode at power-on. If the control block has been deliberately changed, the detected error can be cleared by pressing the **OK** key twice, which **causes all the factory settings to be restored**.

Glossary



D

Display terminal

The display terminal menus are shown in square brackets.

For example: **[Communication]**

The codes are shown in round brackets.

For example: **L □ N -**

Parameter names are displayed on the display terminal in square brackets.

For example: **[Fallback Speed]**

Parameter codes are displayed in round brackets.

For example: **L F F**

E

Error

Discrepancy between a detected (computed, measured, or signaled) value or condition and the specified or theoretically correct value or condition.

F

Factory setting

Factory settings when the product is shipped

Fault

Fault is an operating state. If the monitoring functions detect an error, a transition to this operating state is triggered, depending on the error class. A "Fault reset" is required to exit this operating state after the cause of the detected error has been removed. Further information can be found in the pertinent standards such as IEC 61800-7, ODVA Common Industrial Protocol (CIP).

Fault Reset

A function used to restore the drive to an operational state after a detected error is cleared by removing the cause of the error so that the error is no longer active.

M

Monitoring function

Monitoring functions acquire a value continuously or cyclically (for example, by measuring) in order to check whether it is within permissible limits. Monitoring functions are used for error detection.

P

Parameter

Device data and values that can be read and set (to a certain extent) by the user.

PELV

Protective Extra Low Voltage, low voltage with isolation. For more information: IEC 60364-4-41

PLC

Programmable logic controller

Power stage

The power stage controls the motor. The power stage generates current for controlling the motor.

W

Warning

If the term is used outside the context of safety instructions, a warning alerts to a potential problem that was detected by a monitoring function. A warning does not cause a transition of the operating state.

